

English as a
Foreign
Language (EFL)
and Peace
Studies

中英文对照!

A socially egalitarian approach to
Intermediate EFL

GREGORY BRUNDAGE

英语作为外语

和平研究



英语作为外语 (EFL) 与和平研究

English as a Foreign Language (EFL) and Peace Studies

中级 EFL 的社会平均主义方法

A socially egalitarian approach to Intermediate EFL

阅读段落, 词汇, 语法, 讨论, 辩论, 演示, 角色扮演和测验

With Reading Passages, Vocabulary, Grammar, Discussion,

Debate, Presentations, Role Plays and Quizzes

中英文对照

In Chinese and English

By Gregory Brundage (dba: 石龙)

按作者分类的翻译 Translations by author

ISBN: 9798667209706

Independently Published

© 2018

题词

Dedication

这本书献给所有相信人人人生而平等，享有平等的生命权、高质量教育权以及由此带来的自由和幸福的人们。

This book is dedicated to all people who believe that all humans are created equal and have an equal right to life, high quality education and the liberty and happiness it makes possible.

无知的生活永远不会是真正的自由或真正的幸福。

[A life of ignorance can never be really free or genuinely happy.]

CONTENTS 目录

CONTENTS 目录.....	III
PROLOGUE.....	IX
<i>Journey to peace in our lifetime 我们一生的和平之旅.....</i>	<i>ix</i>
<i>Redefining Socialism in the 21st Century 重新定义21世纪的社会主义.....</i>	<i>x</i>
<i>Waking up and building a beautiful fair world 醒来并建立一个美丽的公平世界.....</i>	<i>xv</i>
<i>Question everything and think 质疑一切, 思考.....</i>	<i>xxi</i>
<i>Target Audience 目标观众.....</i>	<i>xxiv</i>
<i>Synopsis 简介.....</i>	<i>xxv</i>
<i>Education - A Vaccine Against the American "Hate Virus" 教育作为针对美国“仇恨病毒”的疫苗.....</i>	<i>xxvii</i>
<i>The Sapir-Whorf Hypothesis - Sapir-Whorf 假说.....</i>	<i>xxx</i>
PREFACE 前言.....	XXXIII
<i>Imagine! 想象一下!.....</i>	<i>xxxiii</i>
<i>The World Today 当今世界.....</i>	<i>xxxvi</i>
<i>The Bouficha Appeal 布菲卡上诉.....</i>	<i>xli</i>
<i>The American DoD Engineered "Hate China" Virus 美国国防部设计的“讨厌中国”病毒.....</i>	<i>xlvi</i>
<i>The "Great Game" "伟大的游戏".....</i>	<i>xlviii</i>
<i>Language Toolbox - Similes and Metaphors 语言工具箱-明喻和隐喻.....</i>	<i>xliv</i>
<i>Vocabulary 词汇.....</i>	<i>li</i>
<i>Cautious Optimism 谨慎乐观.....</i>	<i>lii</i>
<i>Funny English Expression: "Lies like a rug!" 有趣的英语表达: 像地毯一样的谎言!.....</i>	<i>lv</i>
<i>Language is a Vehicle 语言是一种载体.....</i>	<i>lv</i>
<i>Bird's Eye View of This Book 这本书的鸟瞰图.....</i>	<i>lvi</i>
<i>Global Health Report 全球健康报告.....</i>	<i>lvi</i>
<i>Edgar Dale's Cone of Experience 埃德加·戴尔 (Edgar Dale) 的经验之塔.....</i>	<i>lxiii</i>
<i>The Strange Case of President Trump 特朗普总统的奇怪案.....</i>	<i>lxiv</i>
<i>Election Year Politics 选举年政治.....</i>	<i>lxvi</i>
<i>Would Hillary Clinton have been better? 希拉里·克林顿会更好吗?.....</i>	<i>lxix</i>
<i>Fatal Flaws in the Existing EFL Paradigm 现有外语教学范式的致命缺陷.....</i>	<i>lxx</i>
<i>Teaching Tools 教学工具.....</i>	<i>lxxvi</i>
<i>Grammar 1 Pronouns, Conjunctions, Prepositions and a Stone 语法1代词, 连词和介词以及一块石头.....</i>	<i>lxxvi</i>
<i>The Wealth Gap 贫富差距.....</i>	<i>lxxviii</i>
<i>What is an "Educated Person?" 什么是“受过教育的人”?.....</i>	<i>lxxix</i>
<i>Critical Need for Peace Studies Worldwide 世界各地对和平研究课程的迫切需要.....</i>	<i>lxxx</i>
<i>The "Status Quo" in the EFL World 英语世界的“现状”.....</i>	<i>lxxxii</i>
<i>"Dumbing Down" America & the World 弱智化美国与世界.....</i>	<i>lxxxvi</i>
<i>Manifest Destiny (天命).....</i>	<i>lxxxix</i>
<i>Arts and Sciences 艺术与科学.....</i>	<i>xciii</i>
<i>Holism 整体论.....</i>	<i>xcvi</i>
<i>Global Capitalism and the Deep State 全球资本主义与深层政府的.....</i>	<i>xcvii</i>
<i>Mini-Quiz 小测验.....</i>	<i>cii</i>
<i>Thinking questions 思考问题.....</i>	<i>cii</i>
<i>The Military-Industrial Complex 但其中最危险的是, 那就是军工综合体.....</i>	<i>ciii</i>
<i>The Defence Planning Guidance (DPG) 国防规划指南 (DPG).....</i>	<i>civ</i>
<i>COVID-19 and American Bioweapons Research COVID-19和美国生物武器研究.....</i>	<i>cviii</i>
<i>The Alt-Right and ANTIFA 右翼和反翼.....</i>	<i>cx</i>
<i>The WOKE political movement "觉醒"的政治运动.....</i>	<i>cxx</i>
<i>Why not join? 为什么不加入?.....</i>	<i>cxxi</i>

Fixing the broken American government 修复破碎的美国政府.....	CXXii
Student Challenges! 学生挑战赛.....	CXXix
Chinese Language, Culture and the “Concept of Knowledge” 语文、文化与“知识观”.....	CXXix
A Simple Knowledge Hierarchy in English 英语中的简单知识层次.....	CXXXi
Preface Conclusions 前言结论.....	CXXXi
INTRODUCTION 介绍.....	CXXXii
Brief Overview of Topics in This Book 回顾本书的不同主题.....	CXXXii
Commonalities in Writing and Speaking 交流中的共同点：写作和口语.....	CXXXvi
Commonalities in Listening and Reading 听与读的共性.....	CXXXvii
A Good Foreign Language Teacher 一位优秀的外语老师.....	CXXXviii
Mini-quiz 迷你测验.....	CXXXix
CHAPTER 1 – READING 第一章-阅读.....	1
Curiosity and Playfulness 好奇心和嬉戏.....	1
Reading, Intelligence and Empathy 阅读、智力和移情.....	5
20 th and 21 st Century Cacophony 20 世纪和21 世纪的混沌噪声.....	6
Who is Making the Monsters? 谁在制造怪物?.....	8
American Capitalist Pillaging of Africa 美国资本主义掠夺非洲.....	13
Reading Quiz Questions 阅读测验问题.....	16
Nurturing the Reading Habit, Books and Freedom 培养阅读习惯、书籍和自由.....	18
Student Challenge: Compare and Contrast 学生挑战：比较和对比.....	19
Jokes! 开玩笑!.....	19
The Twitter Era – A Huge Step Backwards 推特时代—一个巨大的倒退.....	20
Questions – Food for Thought 问题-值得深思.....	24
Mainstream Media (MSM) and “Alternative News” 主流媒体 (MSM) 与“替代新闻”.....	24
Demonizing China 妖魔化中国.....	26
Ivy League Universities and Deception 阅读练习：常春藤盟校与欺骗.....	28
Word Focus: Egalitarianism 词汇焦点：平等主义 (名词).....	31
CHAPTER 2 WRITING AND SPEAKING ENGLISH 第二章英语写作与口语.....	34
Why Do People Write? 人们为什么写作?.....	34
Start and Keep a Journal 开始并保留日记.....	35
Writing Essays, Articles and Speeches 写作散文、文章和演讲.....	35
Writing and Memory 写作与记忆.....	37
A More Detailed History of Writing 写作史的概要.....	37
Immanuel Kant (1724–1804) and Toxic Sophistry 伊曼纽尔·康德和有毒的诡辩.....	37
Early Bronze Age 3rd Millennium BC 早青铜时代公元前3 千年.....	39
Middle Bronze Age: 2000 - 1600 BCE 青铜时代中期：公元前2000-1600 年.....	39
The Code of Hammurabi 汉谟拉比法典.....	39
Ancient Chinese and Greek Writing and Literature 中国古代文学与希腊文学.....	41
“Ancient Writing” Summary 《古代写作》小结.....	41
Contemporary Writing 当代写作.....	42
Common Attitudes Towards Writing 对写作的共同态度.....	42
Beginner Formats - 初学者格式.....	42
Level 1 - Intermediate Basic Writing Format 一级-最基本的写作格式.....	43
Level 2 - Building to a Crescendo 二级-建筑达到高潮.....	46
Level 3 – Higher Level Writing 三级-高级写作.....	47
Writing a Vacation Story 写一个度假故事.....	48
Manipulating Emotion 操纵情绪.....	52
Parallel Track Story 平行轨道故事.....	54
Teaching Sequence 教学顺序.....	56
Describing Personality 描述人格.....	56
Compare and Contrast 比较和对比.....	56
Review Questions 检视问题.....	57

<i>The Writing Process</i> 写作过程.....	58
<i>Research Articles</i> 研究文章.....	58
TEXT TYPE 1 - WRITING A JOURNAL/DIARY 文本类型1-写日记.....	63
TEXT TYPE 2 - HARD NEWS ARTICLES 文本类型2-硬新闻文章.....	65
<i>Writing a KO Article</i> 写一篇惊人的文章.....	65
FEATURE NEWS STORIES 专题新闻.....	70
WRITING AN ARTICLE WITH AN INTERVIEW 用采访写文章.....	73
<i>Reporting/Journalism Vocabulary</i> 报告/新闻词汇.....	78
<i>Practice Questions: Writing an Article</i> 练习题: 撰写文章.....	80
<i>Bonus Questions</i> 奖励问题.....	86
TEXT TYPE 3 - WRITING A SPEECH 文字类型3-撰写演讲.....	87
<i>Quiz on Writing a speech</i> 撰写演讲测验.....	88
<i>Read Some Famous Speeches</i> 阅读一些著名的演讲.....	89
<i>Speech Writing Project</i> 演讲写作项目.....	90
TEXT TYPE 4 - BUSINESS PROPOSAL 文字类型4-商业计划书.....	91
<i>Proposal Templates</i> 投标模板.....	92
<i>Sample New Business 1</i> 新业务示例1.....	92
<i>Sample New Business 2</i> 新业务示例2.....	95
<i>A Different Proposal Format</i> 提案格式不同.....	99
<i>New Business 3 (Joint-Venture)</i> 新业务3 (联合创业).....	99
<i>Business Plan Writing and Presentation</i> 商业计划书的撰写和陈述.....	101
TEXT TYPE 5 - INSTRUCTIONS 文字类型5-说明.....	102
TEXT TYPE 6 - EXPERIMENTAL SCIENCE ARTICLE WRITING 文字类型6-实验科学文章写作.....	104
TEXT TYPE 7 - POETRY 文字类型7-诗歌.....	106
JUST FOR FUN! LEARNING ENGLISH AND "STUPIDITY" 只是为了好玩! 学英语与“愚蠢”.....	109
<i>Conjugating (词形) the Subject Verb (主语动词) "to be"</i>	110
<i>Using Object Pronouns (宾语代词) With the Verb "Give"</i>	110
<i>Let's Practice</i> 让我们来练习.....	111
<i>Are We All Getting Stupider? 我们都变得愚蠢吗?</i>	111
<i>Comparative Adjectives</i> 比较形容词.....	112
<i>Irregular Comparative and Superlative Adjectives</i> 不规则的比较级和最高级形容词.....	113
<i>Student Challenge! 学生挑战!</i>	114
<i>Refugee Youth Realities - Some Truths Will Not be Silenced</i> 难民青年的现实-一些真相不会被压制.....	115
<i>Word Focus - Muse</i> 单词焦点-缪斯.....	124
<i>Speaking Practice</i> 口语练习.....	124
<i>Using Props</i> 道具.....	126
<i>Finding Foreign Hangouts</i> 寻找外国视讯聚会.....	127
CHAPTER 3 FOURTEEN MAJOR PHILOSOPHIES AND RELIGIONS - 14种世界主要哲学和宗教.....	129
<i>Discussion Questions 1: 讨论问题1:</i>	129
<i>Debate Topic: Free Will vs. Fate/Destiny</i> 辩论主题: 自由意志与命运/命运.....	129
<i>Goals of This Topic</i> 本主题的目标如下:.....	129
<i>How old are religions and philosophies? 宗教和哲学几岁了?</i>	129
<i>Discussion Questions 2 讨论题2</i>	133
<i>Atheism, Animism, Agnosticism, Polytheism and Monotheism</i> 无神论, 万物有灵, 不可知论, 多神论和一神论.....	134
<i>Summaries of 14 Major Philosophies and Religions - 14种主要哲学和宗教的摘要</i>	135
1. <i>Hinduism</i> 印度教.....	137
2. <i>Zoroastrianism</i> 拜火教.....	137
<i>A Hundred Schools of Thought 诸子百家 - In China</i>	138
3. <i>Taoism</i> 道教.....	139
4. <i>Confucianism</i> 儒.....	139
5. <i>Mohism</i> 墨家.....	140
6. <i>Buddhism</i> 佛教.....	141

7. Zen 禅 Chán	142
Abrahamic Religions 亚伯拉罕的宗教	143
8. Judaism 犹太教	144
9. Christianity 基督教	145
10. Islam 伊斯兰教	147
Religion summary 宗教总结	152
A Few Other Major Philosophies 其他一些主要哲学	153
11. Humanism 人道主义	153
12. Nihilism 虚无主义	154
13. Atheism 无神论	154
14. Agnosticism 不可知论	155
Timeline of the Great Religions and Philosophies 伟大宗教和哲学的时间表	155
Major Arguments for a Belief in God or Gods 信仰上帝的主要论据	156
Major Arguments Against a Belief in God or Gods 反对信仰上帝的主要论据	156
Religion, Socialism and Communism 宗教、社会主义和共产主义	157
More British People Believe in Aliens than God 英国人相信外星人多于相信上帝	164
Religion and Ancient Legal Systems 宗教与古代法制	165
Commonalities of All Great Philosophies and Religions 所有伟大哲学和宗教的共性	167
Vocabulary 1 - With no definitions or translations 词汇1-没有定义或翻译	169
Vocabulary 2 - With Simplified English Definitions 词汇2-有简化的英语定义	174
Vocabulary 3 - With Eng. Definitions & Chinese Transl. 词汇3-有英文定义和中文翻译	180
Review 回顾	187
Multiple Choice Quiz 多项选择测验	187
Grammar Check 语法检查	189
Match the following 匹配以下内容	189
Additional questions 其他问题	189
Conclusion 结论	190
CHAPTER 4 – CAPITALISM, EGO AND ADAM SMITH 第三章-资本主义，自我和亚当斯密	191
The Greedy World of Adam Smith 亚当·斯密的贪婪世界	197
Discussion/Debate/Roleplay 讨论/辩论/角色扮演	199
Monopolies 垄断	199
Trade Unions 贸易联盟	201
The Instability of Global Capitalism and Disposable Workers 全球资本主义的不稳定和可支配工人	202
Global Wealth Gap 全球贫富差距	205
Vocabulary 词汇	207
Vocabulary with English Definitions 带有英语定义的词汇	209
Vocabulary - English Definitions & Chinese Translations 词汇-英文定义和中文翻译	211
Multiple Choice Quiz 多项选择测验	213
Parts of Speech 词类	214
Grammar Check: Articles 语法检查：冠词	215
Using Key Words and Phrases for Research 使用关键词和短语进行研究	216
Essay Topics 散文专题	217
Word Focus: "Impunity" 焦点词：“有罪不罚”	217
CHAPTER 5 - SOCIALISM AND COMMUNISM 第四章社会主义与共产主义	220
Let's Take a Little Stroll... 让我们漫步一下	220
Theories of Karl Marx and Friedrich Engels 马克思与恩格斯的理论	223
Socialism with Chinese Characteristics 中国特色社会主义	229
The People's War on COVID-19 关于COVID-19的人民战争	229
Vocabulary with English Definitions 带有英语定义的词汇	234
Vocabulary with English Definitions and Chinese Translations 带有英语定义和中文翻译的词汇	235
Discussion, Debate and/or Writing 讨论，辩论和/或写作	236

Be sensitive – Regarding Religions and Politics 灵敏-关于宗教和政治.....	237
Grammar Check – Prepositions 介词.....	238
Preposition Quiz 介词测验.....	239
CHAPTER 6 – CONFLICT RESOLUTION 冲突的解决.....	240
Questions 问题.....	240
1. Sharing Experiences 分享经验.....	240
2. Confucian Conflict Resolution Strategies 儒家冲突解决策略.....	240
3. Five Most Common Conflict Resolution Strategies 五种最常见的冲突解决策略.....	242
Conflict Management Styles Quiz 冲突管理风格测验.....	245
4. Positive and Negative Effects of Conflict 冲突的正面和负面影响.....	246
Thinking Question 思考问题.....	247
5. Conflict Resolution in the EFL Classroom EFL 课堂中的冲突解决.....	247
6. Conflict Resolution Strategies Vocabulary with Chinese Translations 中文翻译中的冲突解决策略词汇.....	247
Conflict Resolution Vocabulary Quiz 冲突解决词汇测验.....	248
What Would You Do? 你会怎么做?	248
Role Plays 角色扮演.....	250
CHAPTER 7 – COUNSELING ANYONE? 咨询心理学.....	252
Introduction 介绍.....	252
Counselor Questions 辅导员问题.....	253
Counseling Quiz 咨询测验.....	258
Active Listening 主动倾听.....	260
Let's Practice! 让我们来练习!	263
Word Focus – Etymology 单词焦点-词源.....	268
CHAPTER 8 - CURRENT ARMED CONFLICTS 现在正在进行的战争.....	271
The American Rogue Empire 美国流氓帝国.....	271
Wars That Are Not Wars? 不是战争的战争?	277
Basic War Vocabulary 基本战争词汇.....	278
Student Research Project 学生研究计划.....	279
Questions for Students (discussion) 给学生的问題 (讨论)	281
Vocabulary Quiz 词汇测验.....	282
CHAPTER 9 - HUMANITARIAN AID ORGANIZATIONS (人道主义援助组织).....	283
Introduction 介绍.....	283
Four Humanitarian Principles 四项人道主义原则.....	283
Mnemonic Aids: 4 Humanitarian Principles (4HuPrin) 助记符: 4条人道主义原则.....	284
Why are Impartiality, Neutrality and Independence so important? 为什么公正, 中立和独立如此重要?	284
Overview of International Aid Organizations 国际援助组织概述.....	284
Presentation Assignment 演示作业.....	286
Aspirational Principles 志向原则.....	286
Quiz 测验.....	286
CHAPTER 10 – DIPLOMACY 外交.....	290
Introduction 介绍.....	290
Ancient History of Diplomacy 古代外交史.....	291
Mesopotamian Diplomacy 美索不达米亚外交.....	291
Mesopotamian Diplomacy Quiz 1 美索不达米亚外交测验 1.....	293
Amarna Diplomacy (14 th Century BC) 阿玛娜外交 (公元前14世纪)	294
Persian Diplomacy 波斯外交.....	295
Linguistics: Akkadian and Semitic Languages of Arabic and Hebrew 语言学: 阿拉伯和希伯来语的阿卡德语和闪族语.....	296
Ancient Diplomacy Vocabulary Quiz 2 古代外交词汇测验2.....	297
Kautilya & Ancient Indian Diplomacy 和古代印度外交.....	299
Ancient Chinese Diplomacy 中国古代外交.....	303
Proxeny - Ancient Greek Diplomacy 代理-古希腊外交.....	306

Modern Diplomacy 现代外交.....	307
Greatest Diplomats in History 历史上最伟大的外交官.....	310
Student Presentation Project 学生介绍项目.....	320
Practice Being a Diplomat 练习当外交官.....	321
How to Make a Peace Treaty 如何订立和平条约.....	321
Confidence Building Measures (CBM) 建立信任措施 (CBM).....	322
Starting an Agreement Instead of a Fight 达成协议而不是打架.....	322
Peace Treaty Vocabulary 和平条约词汇.....	322
Some Famous Treaties 一些著名条约.....	323
Unequal Treaties 不平等条约.....	324
Roleplay: 'Negotiate' or 'Arbitrate' a Treaty 角色扮演：“谈判”或“仲裁”条约.....	328
Diplomacy and Intercultural Competence 外交与跨文化能力.....	330
Resources and Quiz 资源和测验.....	330
Vocabulary for Diplomacy 外交词汇.....	330
Student Challenge 学生挑战赛.....	330
CHAPTER 11 – UTOPIAS 乌托邦.....	332
Discussion/Debate Questions 讨论/辩论问题.....	332
Ancient Utopias 古代乌托邦.....	332
All-Under-Heaven - Tiānxià 天下 - Zhou Dynasty 周朝.....	333
Greek Utopias 希腊乌托邦.....	338
Enlightenment as a form of psychological utopia 启蒙作为一种心理乌托邦.....	339
Modern Utopias 现代乌托邦.....	341
Discussion 讨论.....	342
Brief Return to Tiānxià 短暂天下.....	342
Final Discussion 最后讨论.....	346
APPENDIX 1: SUGGESTIONS FOR TEACHERS 附件1：对教师的建议.....	347
APPENDIX 2 - CHINAS DIPLOMACY 外交.....	349
APPENDIX 3: A CRITICAL REVIEW OF THE IB (ENG)/ 国际预科 (IB) 课程的批判性评审.....	354
ABSTRACT.....	354
INTRODUCTION.....	354
CRITICISMS OF THE IB PROGRAM.....	355
Abrogation of the classical languages of people of color.....	355
Overuse of Obscure Acronyms and the Ivory Tower.....	356
The “Theory of Knowledge” (TOK) Textbook: Validity, Reliability and Faith.....	358
Other Issues Regarding IB Structure and Curriculum Raised by critics.....	362
CONCLUSIONS.....	362
REFERENCES.....	363
国际预科® (IB) 课程的批判性评审.....	365
摘要.....	365
对IB课程的批判.....	365
废除有色人种的古典语言.....	365
模糊缩写和象牙塔的过度使用.....	367
《认识论》(TOK) 课本：有效性、可靠性和信念.....	368
评论者提出的关于IB结构和课程的其他问题.....	371
结论.....	371
参考文献.....	372
Appendix 4 – Good Books and Movies 附录4——好书和电影.....	374
The Future 未来.....	380
About the Author 关于作者.....	381

Prologue

Journey to peace in our lifetime 我们一生的和平之旅

Language is an amazing thing. With language we can share the wisdom of the ages and illuminate the greatest truths. Or, we can use language in the creation of a web of deceit and abuse to enslave the world.

语言是一件了不起的事情。有了语言，我们可以分享人类历史上的集体智慧，揭示最伟大的真理。或者，我们也可以用语​​言来建立一个欺骗和虐待的网络来奴役这个世界。

A new journey beckons. It is a journey of mind; personal and even global transformation and evolution.

一次新的旅程在此召唤你。这是一次心灵之旅；个人乃至全球的转变和进化。

In the year 2020 the world finds itself poised on a fulcrum between an age of revelation and an age of extinction. The pandemics of starvation and diseases suffered for centuries in substantial parts of Africa, Latin America and Asia have suddenly hit the kingdoms of the wealthy in Europe and the United States. Now one of five children in the USA face hunger as a real possibility.

<https://www.brookings.edu/blog/up-front/2020/05/06/the-covid-19-crisis-has-already-left-too-many-children-hungry-in-america>

COVID-19 has - to some extent - leveled the global condition. What are new challenges in the west are just more of the same for most people of color in the world.

在 2020 年，世界正处于启示时代与灭绝时代之间的支点上。几个世纪以来，非洲、拉丁美洲和亚洲大部分地区的人民饱受战争、饥饿和疾病的肆虐。突然间，疾病的大流行袭击了欧洲和美国的富人王国。现在每五个美国儿童中就有一个第一次面临饥饿。COVID-19 在一定程度上平衡了全球环境。西方的新挑战对世界上大多数有色人种来说都是“老挑战”。

First of all, the point needs to be strongly made: The world needs a total revolution in education. Priorities needs to be reassessed and the entire structures remade to serve humanity and the ecosystems of the earth. Right now, education is designed to crush creative thinking and serve only the interests of the rich capitalists.

首先，必须明确指出这一点：世界需要一场彻底的教育革命。需要重新评估优先事项，并重新设计整个结构，以服务于人类和地球生态系统。目前，教育的目的是粉碎创造性思维，仅服务于富裕资本家的利益。

To describe the state of the world today as “bleak” would not be an overstatement. Why?

把当今世界的状况形容为“凄凉”并不过分。为什么？

A new “paradigm shift” is desperately needed to bring humanity back together again; to infuse universal human values like truth, justice and compassion back into the structure of global power and governance.

迫切需要一种新的“范式转变”，以使人类重新团结起来；将真理、正义和同情等人类普遍价值观注入全球权力和治理结构。

Absolute selfishness and greed have been revealed (again) as the root causes of most human suffering. The wise among us work to illuminate the great truths that have been enshrouded in the webs of deceit for far too long.

绝对的自私和贪婪再次被揭示为大多数人类痛苦的根源。我们中间的智者努力阐明隐藏在欺骗网中的伟大真理太久了。我们当中的智者致力于阐明长期以来被蒙蔽在欺骗网中的伟大真理。

Redefining Socialism in the 21st Century 重新定义 21 世纪的社会主义

Since President Nixon's visit in 1972 most Chinese people have more openly admired and imitated the American people. This includes fashion, music, movies, (most but not all) social relationships, and even sports preferences at least in regards to basketball. This pattern of imitation extends into most professional fields as well including virtually all arts, sciences and education. When "data-driven" education became very popular in the west suddenly the top schools in China embraced this as well. "The truth is in the numbers," they happily concluded.

自从尼克松总统于 1972 年访问美国以来，大多数中国人更加公开地仰慕和模仿美国人。这包括时尚，音乐，电影，（大多数但不是全部）社交关系，至少在篮球方面的运动偏好。这种模仿模式延伸到了大多数专业领域，包括几乎所有其他艺术和科学领域，包括教育领域。当“数据驱动”的教育变得非常流行时，中国的顶尖学校也突然接受了这种教育。他们高兴地总结道：“事实是数字。”

And thus, Chinese learned to be "American." Yes, Chinese children have to memorize some quotations from Chinese philosophy when they are very young, but it is taught as a grueling task rather than an entertaining one. American movies however are entertaining!

Though most Chinese didn't know it at the time, Hillary Clinton declared war on China with her "Pivot to Asia" article published in Foreign Policy Magazine in October 2011.

因此，中国人学会了成为美国人。是的，中国孩子很小的时候就必须记住一些中国哲学的名言，但这被认为是一项艰巨的任务，而不是一种娱乐性的任务。美国电影却很有趣！

尽管当时大多数中国人还不知道，但希拉里·克林顿（Hillary Clinton）于 2011 年 10 月宣布了“转向亚洲”政策，向中国宣战。

America's Pacific Century - The future of politics will be decided in Asia, not Afghanistan or Iraq, and the United States will be right at the center of the action.

By Hillary Clinton, October 11, 2011

美国的太平洋世纪-政治的未来将在亚洲而不是阿富汗或伊拉克来决定，而美国将是行动的中心。

希拉里·克林顿（Hillary Clinton），2011 年 10 月 11 日

<https://foreignpolicy.com/2011/10/11/americas-pacific-century>

This wasn't the only war that she started –she started many others as well, but this was and is to be her biggest war.

这不是她发动的唯一战争-她也发动了许多其他战争，但这也是她将来最大的战争。

It is President Trump who made this war more visible when he started his trade war against China. Suddenly and for the first time some Chinese people have on some levels started to realize that the USA is not necessarily all things bright and beautiful.

是特朗普总统在与中国进行贸易战时使这场战争更加明显。突然之间，而且第一次，一些中国人开始在某种程度上认识到，美国不一定是光鲜亮丽的万物。

This realization however is not new to minorities in the USA, people who live in Africa, the poorer countries in Asia and everywhere in Latin America. This realization is too well-known by Muslims who have been the primary targets of American aggression since the Nakba in 1947. Being the Primary Targets means being killed by the millions in a relentless series of wars.

然而，这种认识对于美国的少数群体，居住在非洲的人们，亚洲的较贫穷国家以及拉丁美洲的其他地方并不是陌生的。自从 1947 年纳卡（Nakba）以来，穆斯林就一直是美国侵略的主要目标。穆斯林对此认识太深。成为主要目标意味着在无休止的一系列战争中被数百万人杀死。

At the time of this writing it is 2020. Chinese have been indoctrinated into American culture for 48 years. It is safe to say most Chinese in government and industry grew up enthralled by the wonderfulness of the USA, and find it difficult or impossible to let go of that – thinking perhaps things will go back to the way they were before – the good old days.

在撰写本文时，时间是 2020 年。48 年以来，中国人已经被灌输到美国文化中。可以肯定地说，中国政府和行业中的大多数华人都对美国的精彩着迷，并发现很难或不可能放弃这一点-认为事情可能会回到以前的样子-好事过去。

Unfortunately, that is probably not going to happen. The reasons are explained in this book.

不幸的是，这可能不会发生。原因在本书中进行了解释。

Chinese who grew up hugely impressed by the wonderfulness of the USA may well feel “disturbed” by some of the revelations in the Preface to this book. This would not be surprising as China has been profitable to many American industrialists since the 1970s and basked in the glow of American magnanimity. However even the briefest review of current newspapers reveals that American foreign policy has two radically different faces. For example:

对美国的奇妙印象深刻的中国人，可能会被本书序言中的某些启示所“打扰”。这不足为奇，因为自 1970 年代以来，中国对许多美国工业家都是有利可图的，并且沉浸在美国宽容的光辉中。但是，即使是对当前报纸的最简短评论也表明，美国的外交政策具有两个截然不同的面孔。例如：

Egypt’s parliament greenlights deployment of troops abroad to secure ‘western front,’ paving way for intervention in Libyan war

埃及议会批准在国外部署部队以确保“西线”，为干预利比亚战争铺平道路

21 Jul, 2020

<https://www.rt.com/news/495344-egypt-parliament-troops-libya>

For those not familiar with this situation, Libya had a stable government and prosperous economy until 2011 when then Secretary of State Hillary Clinton decided to have the sovereign leader Muammar Gaddafi murdered. She laughed quite a lot about it on TV too. She is very proud of herself.

对于那些不熟悉这种情况的人来说，利比亚拥有稳定的政府和繁荣的经济，直到 2011 年，当时的国务卿希拉里·克林顿（Hillary Clinton）决定杀害主权领导人卡扎菲（Muammar Gaddafi）。她也为他在电视上被谋杀而大笑。她为自己感到骄傲。

<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=mlz3-OzcExI>

There has been a civil war in Libya ever since. 此后，利比亚内战不断。

Egypt on the other hand had a nice democratically elected government, but USA did not like the President of Egypt, Mohamed Morsi and staged a coup replacing him with General Abdel Fattah el-Sisi. Thousands of Morsi's supporters were rounded up, tortured and killed. This is the "American" thing to do.

另一方面，埃及有一个不错的民主选举产生的政府，但是美国不喜欢埃及总统穆罕默德·莫尔西（Mohamed Morsi），并发动政变，由阿卜杜勒·法塔赫·西西将军接任。成千上万的莫尔西支持者遭到围捕，酷刑和杀害。这是“美国人”要做的事。

Now in Libya there is a UN backed "transitional government," but the USA does not like the UN backed government, and is supplying weapons and money to Field Marshal Khalifa Belqasim Haftar to fight against the UN backed government. Field Marshal Khalifa Belqasim Haftar helped in the American backed murder of the former sovereign leader Gaddafi. Now, with American help again he's leading a war against the UN backed government in Libya. It sounds crazy, (cruel and evil) but that is American foreign policy. And, American tax payers pay for all this betrayal, mass murder, torture and chaos.

现在利比亚有一个联合国支持的“过渡政府”，但美国不喜欢联合国支持的政府。因此，美国正在向陆军元帅哈夫塔提供武器和资金。陆军元帅哈利法·哈夫塔尔协助谋杀卡扎菲。现在，在美国的帮助下，他正在领导一场反对联合国支持的利比亚政府的战争。这听起来很疯狂，（残忍和邪恶），但这是美国的外交政策。而且，美国纳税人为所有这些谋杀、死亡、侵权和混乱买单。

(Incidentally, former sovereign leader of Libya Muammar Gaddafi (that former Secretary of State Hillary Clinton ordered to be murdered) was raped with an iron rod before they murdered him. The video was also on YouTube. He was 69 years old.)

（顺便说一下，利比亚前主权领导人卡扎菲（前国务卿希拉里·克林顿下令被谋杀）在被谋杀前被铁棍强奸。该视频也在 YouTube 上发布。他今年 69 岁。）

I, the writer of this book have traveled a lot during my life. I worked as a journalist in at least a few of America's wars. Before that I was an anti-Vietnam war protestor during the early 1970s and got my name put on an "Un-American List." I've also been a Muslim for 32 years. I know too well the cruel side of the USA, a side most Chinese are now seeing for the first time.

从 1963 年开始，我（这本书的作者）一生中曾多次出国旅行。在至少几次美国战争中，我还担任过记者的工作。在 1970 年代初期，我曾是反越南战争的抗议者，而我的名字也被列入了“非美国人名单”。我也是穆斯林 32 年了。我非常了解美国的残酷一面，这是当今世界上大多数中国人第一次看到的一面。

And, I'm worried. Why? The worship of American everything here in China appears to be continuing just like before. Forty-eight years of programming is difficult to change.

而且，我很担心。为什么？像以前一样，在中国这里崇拜美国人的一切似乎仍在继续。四十八年的编程很难改变。

Most Chinese in my opinion don't really understand the causes of the system failures in the USA. They don't understand the real problems in the democratic system, problems that were spelled out more than 2,000 years ago by Socrates, Aristotle and Plato very clearly.

我认为大多数中国人并不真正了解美国系统故障的原因。他们并不真正了解民主制度中的真正问题，这些问题是 2000 年前苏格拉底，亚里斯多德和柏拉图清楚阐明的。

I hope Chinese readers will forgive me if I'm wrong, but I sense a very large lack of appreciation for the Chinese system of government by Chinese people right here in China. I appreciate the Chinese government because I've lived in so many countries, I know what a good thing is.

我希望如果我错了，中国读者会原谅我，但是我感到中国人民对中国的政府制度缺乏极大的赞赏。我钦佩中国政府，因为我生活在很多国家，所以我很清楚知道什么是好事。

It's my impression that the Chinese people are the freest people in the world, but they don't seem to know that. Why not? Because most Chinese people have been so programmed by American propaganda (movies and lies in the international media) over the last 48 years they have no idea how lucky they are to live here in China.

我的印象是中国人是世界上最自由的人，但他们似乎并不知道这一点。为什么不？因为在过去的 48 年中，大多数中国人都受到美国宣传（在国际媒体上的电影和谎言）的精心策划，所以他们不知道他们在中国生活有多么幸运。

And, what makes them so lucky? It is my impression that most Chinese people don't really understand that socialism is a vastly superior system to the absolutely corrupted democracy and wildly out of balance and ultimately self-destructive capitalism of the USA.

而且，是什么让他们如此幸运？我的印象是，大多数中国人并不真正了解，社会主义确实比绝对腐败的民主制度优越得多，完全失去了平衡，最终导致了美国的自我毁灭性资本主义。

The above are just a few of the observations that need to be made at the beginning of a book about peace studies. There never was a nation in history that pursued as many, and as deadly wars as the USA. Frankly speaking dear readers, the USA is not worthy of worship. Yes, there are many good things about the USA, like Disney movies for example.

以上只是在一本关于和平研究的书的开头需要做的一些观察。历史上从来没有一个国家像美国那样进行过如此多的致命战争。坦白地说，亲爱的读者，美国不值得崇拜。是的，美国有很多美好的事物，例如迪士尼电影。

But American capitalist driven foreign aggression kills millions of people every year. The cost of American "entertainment," is too high in my opinion.

但是美国资本家驱使的外国侵略每年造成数百万人死亡。在我看来，美国人“娱乐”的代价太高了。

The two-word combination: absolute and selfishness can be summarized in one word: capitalism. Unrestrained capitalism is the root cause underlying the nine million people that starve to death every year and the proliferation of wars and disease. Socialism and communism are seen untenable to most Americans because of 100 years of intense defamatory propaganda.

<https://www.theworldcounts.com/challenges/people-and-poverty/hunger-and-obesity/how-many-people-die-from-hunger-each-year>

But now, in the midst of the racist chaos and death emanating from the citadels of the Lords of Capitalism, the light of truth is starting to shine through: late stage capitalism is devouring itself. As always however, it is minorities, the poor and elderly that pay the highest price for the absolute selfishness of the Lords of Capitalism.

绝对和自私这两个词的组合可以概括为一个词：资本主义。肆无忌惮的资本主义是每年造成 900 万人挨饿致死，战争和疾病扩散的根本原因。由于 100 年的激烈诽谤宣传，大多数美国人认为社会主义和共产主义站不住脚。

但是现在，在资本主义堡垒引发的种族主义混乱和死亡之中，真理之光开始闪耀：最后阶段，资本主义正在吞噬自己。但是，与往常一样，少数群体，穷人和老年人为假冒资本主义神灵的绝对自私付出了最高的代价。

How we use language, as a tool to broaden and elevate individual and collective awareness or as a knife to further divide and betray universal human values, is up to us. People of the west are waking up a bit now and questioning their fundamental assumptions about their “representative” governments and real meanings of truth, justice and equality.

我们如何使用语言，作为扩大和提高个人和集体意识的工具，或作为进一步分裂和背叛人类普遍价值观的刀子，取决于我们自己。西方人民现在正在慢慢地醒来，并质疑他们关于“代议制”政府的基本假设以及真理，正义与平等的真实含义。

Socialism as a peaceful alternative to capitalism has never been more relevant than today.

社会主义作为资本主义的和平替代品从来没有像今天这样重要。

Indict and Punish the Perpetrators of COVID-19 Mass Death,

起诉并惩治 Covid 大屠杀的肇事者, by Glen Ford, May 21, 2020

Not just Trump, but the whole US ruling class must pay for the mass Covid death toll among Blacks, because only the ruling class has the power to systematically allocate life-death chances for whole populations over generations.

不仅是特朗普，整个美国统治阶级都必须为黑人的集体死亡付出代价，因为只有统治阶级才有能力在不同的人口系统中系统地分配生死。

The United States finds myriad ways of killing Black people – of negating the term “Black lives matter.” The novel, or new, coronavirus is ending the lives of African Americans at a nationwide rate that is 2.6 times that of whites... Collectively Blacks have suffered 27 percent of all Covid-19 deaths in the United States, which would mean that 24,930 of the 92,333 total U.S. deaths from the virus as of this week, were African Americans, who make up only 13 percent of the population.

美国发现了无数杀死黑人的方法——否定了“黑人生命的重要性”这个词。小说，或者说新的冠状病毒正在以全国范围内 2.6 倍于白人的速度结束非洲裔美国人的生命.....在美国，黑人共遭受了 27%的 Covid-19 死亡，这意味着，截至本周，美国因该病毒死亡的 92333 人中，有 24930 人是非洲裔美国人，仅占总人口的 13%。

Researchers at Yale University and the University of Pittsburgh put the proportionate Black death toll considerably higher, with Blacks 3.5 times more likely to die than whites, and Latinos twice as likely to succumb to the virus. The actual ratios of death may never be known since, according to the Yale study, “almost half the states do not track the race and ethnicity of those who have died in the pandemic...

耶鲁大学和匹兹堡大学的研究人员认为，黑人死亡的比例要高得多，黑人死亡的几率是白人的 3.5 倍，拉丁美洲人死于病毒的几率是白人的两倍。实际的死亡比例可能永远都不知道，因为，根据耶鲁大学的研究，“几乎一半的州没有追踪在大流行病中死亡的人的种族和种族。。。

<https://blackagenda.com/indict-and-punish-perpetrators-covid-mass-death>

Trumps advisors knew perfectly well COVID-19 would kill African Americans at a much higher rate than whites before they made the decision to let COVID-19 run rampant.

特朗普的顾问们非常清楚，在他们决定让 COVID-19 肆虐之前，COVID-19 杀死非裔美国人的速度将远远高于白人。

<https://www.medpagetoday.com/infectiousdisease/covid19/86023>

<https://jamanetwork.com/journals/jama/fullarticle/2764789>

<https://www.nature.com/articles/s41421-020-0147-1>

Questions! 问题!

How does the reader feel about this? Can you name some emotions in English to describe those feelings?

读者对此有何感想？你能用英语说出一些情绪来描述这些情绪吗？

How many people of color were and continue to be killed in Euro-American capitalist-driven colonial wars?

在欧美资本主义主导的殖民战争中有多少有色人种并继续遭到杀害？

Waking up and building a beautiful fair world 醒来并建立一个美丽的公平世界

Silk Road Trade vs. Colonial Tyranny 丝绸之路贸易还是殖民暴政

(Ming Dynasty Emperor) Zhu Di (Yong Le) brought down the (former) Emperor in 1402 and took the name Yong Le. A year later he had already commissioned Zheng He as admiral, and ordered him to supervise the construction of a large fleet to explore the seas around China.

明朝皇帝朱棣（永乐）在 1402 年推翻了（前）皇帝。一年后，他已任命郑和为上将，并命令他监督建造一支大型舰队，以探索中国周边海域。

Thus from 1405 to 1433, roughly three decades, Zheng He led seven expeditions across the seas all the way to Arabia and Eastern Africa, leaving from Nanjing in the Yangtze and benefiting from monsoon winds. They hit Champa, Borneo, Java, Malacca, Sumatra, Ceylon, Calicut, Hormuz, Aden, Jeddah/Mecca, Mogadiscio and the Eastern African coast south of the Equator.

因此，从 1405 年到 1433 年，大约三十年，郑和率领七支远征队，一路穿越海洋到达阿拉伯和非洲东部，从长江南京出发，受益于季风。他们访问了查姆巴、婆罗洲、爪哇、马六甲、苏门答腊、锡兰、卡利卡特、霍尔木兹、亚丁、吉达/麦加、摩加迪沙和赤道以南的非洲东部海岸。

Those were real armadas, sometimes with over 200 ships, including the 72 main ones, carrying as many as 30,000 men and vast amounts of precious merchandise for trade: silk, porcelain, silver, cotton, leather products, iron utensils. The leading vessel of the first expedition, with Zheng He as captain, was 140 meters long, 50 meters wide and carrying over 500 men.

这些是真正的无敌舰队，有时有 200 多艘船只，其中包括 72 艘主力舰，运载多达 30000 人和大量珍贵的贸易商品：丝绸、瓷器、白银、棉花、皮革制品、铁器。第一次远征的主力船，郑和为船长，长 140 米，宽 50 米，载客 500 多人。

This was the original Maritime Silk Road, now revived in the 21st century. And it was coupled with another extension of the overland Silk Road: after all the dreaded Mongols were in retreat, there were new allies all the way to Transoxiana, the Chinese managed to strike a peace deal with the successor of Tamerlane. So the Silk Roads were booming again. The Ming court sent diplomats all over Asia – Tibet, Nepal, Bengal, even Japan.

这是最初的海上丝绸之路，现在在 21 世纪复兴。再加上陆上丝绸之路的另一个延伸：在所有令人恐惧的蒙古人撤退之后，新的盟友一路到达了德西亚纳，中国人设法与塔梅兰的继任者达成了和平协议。因此，丝绸之路再次繁荣起来。明朝朝廷派遣外交官到亚洲各地——西藏、尼泊尔、孟加拉，甚至日本。

The main objective of pioneering Chinese seafaring has always puzzled Western historians. Essentially, it was a diplomatic, commercial and military mix. It was important to have Chinese suzerainty recognized – and materialized via the payment of a tribute. But most of all this was about trade; no wonder the ships had special cabins for merchants.

开拓中国航海事业的主要目标一直困扰着西方历史学家。基本上，这是外交、商业和军事的混合体。重要的是要承认中国的宗主权，并通过朝贡来实现。但这一切都是为了贸易，难怪船上有专门的船舱供商人使用。

The armada was designated as the Treasury Fleet – but denoting more a prestige operation than a vehicle for capturing riches. Yong Le was strong on soft power and economics – as he took control of overseas trade by imposing an imperial monopoly over all transactions. So in the end this was a clever, comprehensive application of the Chinese tributary system – in the commercial, diplomatic and cultural spheres.

无敌舰队被指定为财政部舰队，但它更多的是一种威望行动，而不是一种攫取财富的工具。永乐皇帝在软实力和经济上都很强大，因为他通过对所有交易实行帝国垄断来控制海外贸易。因此，这最终是中国朝贡制度在商业、外交和文化领域的巧妙、全面的运用。

Yong Le wanted to establish Chinese – and pan-Asian – stability via a true Pax Sinica. That was not imposed by force but rather by diplomacy, coupled with a subtle demonstration of power. The Armada was the aircraft carrier of the time, with cannons on sight – but rarely used – and practicing “freedom of navigation”.

永乐希望通过一个真正的中国和平来建立中国和泛亚的稳定。这不是武力强加的，而是外交手段加上微妙的权力展示。无敌舰队是当时的航空母舰，可以看到大炮，但很少使用，并且实行“航行自由”。

What the emperor wanted was allied local rulers, and for that he used intrigue and commerce rather than shock and awe via battles and massacres. For instance, Zheng He proclaimed Chinese suzerainty over Sumatra, Cochin and Ceylon. He privileged equitable commerce. So this was never a colonization process.

皇帝想要的是联合的地方统治者，为此他使用计划和商业，而不是通过战争和屠杀来震惊和敬畏。例如，郑和宣布中国对苏门答腊、科钦和锡兰拥有宗主权。他享有公平贸易的特权。所以这绝不是一个殖民过程。

On the contrary: before each expedition, as its planning proceeded, emissaries from countries to be visited were invited to the Ming court and treated, well, royally.

相反，在每次远征之前，随着计划的进行，被访国的使节都被邀请到明朝朝廷，受到皇室般的待遇。

Plundering Europeans 欧洲掠夺

Now compare that with the European colonization led a decade later by the Portuguese across these same lands and these same seas. Between (a little) carrot and (a lot of) stick, the Europeans drove commerce mostly via massacres and forced conversions. Trading posts were soon turned into forts and military installations, something that Zheng He’s expeditions never attempted.

现在将其与十年后葡萄牙人领导的欧洲殖民统治进行比较。在（一点点）胡萝卜和（很多）大棒之间，欧洲人主要通过屠杀和强迫（宗教）皈依来推动商业。贸易站很快就变成了堡垒和军事设施，这是郑和远征从未尝试过的。

In fact, Zheng He left so many good memories that he was divinized under his Chinese name, San Bao, which means “Three Treasures,” in such places in Southeast Asia as Malacca and Siam’s Ayutthaya.

事实上，郑和留下了如此多美好的回忆，以至于在东南亚的马六甲、暹罗的大城府等地，他都被用自己的中文名“三宝”占卜。

What can only be described as Judeo-Christian sadomasochism focused on imposing suffering as virtue, the only path to reach Paradise. Zheng He would never have considered that his sailors – and the populations he made contact with – had to pay this price...

什么只能被描述为犹太教基督教虐待狂集中于把痛苦作为美德，唯一的途径达到天堂。郑和永远不会想到他的水手们——以及他接触的人群——不得不付出这样的代价…

For the Portuguese, the “discovered” lands were all potential colonization territory. And for that the few colonizers needed slaves. For the Chinese, slavery amounted to domestic chores at best. For the Europeans, it was all about the massive exploitation of a workforce in the fields and in mines, especially concerning black populations in Africa.

对葡萄牙人来说，“发现”的土地都是潜在的殖民地。为此，少数殖民者需要奴隶。对中国人来说，奴隶制度充其量只是家务活。对欧洲人来说，这一切都是关于在田地和矿井里对劳动力的大规模剥削，尤其是对非洲黑人人口的剥削。

In Asia, in contrast to Chinese diplomacy, the Europeans went for massacre. Via torture and mutilations, Vasco da Gama and other Portuguese colonizers deployed a real war of terror against civilian populations.

在亚洲，与中国外交不同的是，欧洲人倾向于屠杀。通过酷刑和残害，瓦斯科·达伽马和其他葡萄牙殖民者对平民发动了一场真正的恐怖战争。

This absolutely major structural difference is at the root of the world- system and the geo-historical organization of our world, as analyzed by crack geographers such as Christian Grataloup and Paul Pelletier. Asian nations did not have to manage – or to suffer – the painful repercussions of slavery.

这种绝对重大的结构差异是世界体系和我们世界的地理历史组织的根源，正如克里斯汀·格拉塔鲁和保罗·佩莱蒂埃等杰出地理学家所分析的那样。亚洲国家不必承受奴隶制的痛苦后果。

<https://asiatimes.com/2020/05/why-xi-wont-repeat-ming-dynasty-mistakes>

The racist “charnel house” that is western capitalism must be cleaned up and replaced with a socially responsible system.

种族主义的“查内尔之家”即西方资本主义必须清理干净，取而代之的是一个对社会负责的制度。

[Charnel house: A building or vault in which corpses or bones are piled; a place associated with violent death.]

[Charnel house: 堆放尸体或骨头的建筑物或金库；与暴力死亡有关的地方.]

Truly positive and long-lasting changes are not going to magically appear. Some mysterious entity is not going to give us the changes we as a species need to face the challenges, and discover and implement the desperately needed solutions.

真正积极和持久的变化不会神奇地出现。一些神秘的实体不会给我们作为一个物种所需要的改变来面对挑战，并发现和实施迫切需要的解决方案。

The fabulously wealthy in Europe and the USA “aided and abetted” by the reptilian creatures in the American National Security Council (NSC) - are not going to give us honest answers. (If you don't know what NSC is, read this book. They rule the world.)

在欧洲和美国，那些超级富有的人——在美国国家安全委员会的爬虫类动物的帮助和教唆下——不会给我们诚实的答案。（如果您不知道什么是 NSC，请阅读本书。他们统治着整个世界。）

Reptiles? 爬行动物?

US Blocks Vote on UN's Bid for Global Ceasefire Amid COVID-19

美国阻止联合国在 COVID-19 疫情期间争取全球停火的投票

The US veto trashes the UN's efforts to convince armed factions in more than a dozen countries to call for temporary truces as the world battles the pandemic.

美国的否决权破坏了联合国说服十多个国家的武装派别在全球抗击这一流行病之际呼吁暂时停火的努力。

“The U.S. is playing the "blame game.”

美国在玩“指责游戏”

International diplomats were stunned and frustrated Friday after the United States again blocked a United Nations resolution to call for a global ceasefire during the COVID-19 pandemic, only because the Trump administration objected to an indirect reference to the World Health Organization (WHO).

在美国再次阻止联合国呼吁在 COVID-19 大流行期间达成全球停火的决议后，国际外交官感到震惊和沮丧。这仅仅是因为特朗普政府反对间接提及世界卫生组织（WHO）。

The Security Council has been wrangling for more than six weeks over the resolution, which was intended to demonstrate global support for the call for a ceasefire by the U.N. Secretary-General Antonio Guterres.

安理会就这项决议争论了六个多星期，其目的是表明全球支持联合国秘书长安东尼奥·古特雷斯的停火呼吁。

However, the main source for the delay was the U.S. refusal to endorse a resolution that urged support for the WHO's operations during the COVID-19 pandemic.

然而，拖延的主要原因是美国拒绝批准一项决议，该决议敦促支持世界卫生组织在 COVID-19 大流行病期间的行动。

<https://blackagendareport.com/us-blocks-vote-uns-bid-global-ceasefire-amid-covid-19>

Column: Trump's brand of war is killing more civilians than before By Doyle McManus Washington Columnist, September 8, 2019

The United Nations mission in Afghanistan reported recently that U.S. airstrikes and Afghan security forces killed more civilians in the first half of 2019 than the Taliban did.

The mission says “pro-government forces” killed 717 civilians while “anti-government forces” killed 531, and 118 deaths could not be attributed.

特朗普的战争烙印比以往更多地杀死了平民

多伊尔·麦克马纳斯 (Doyle McManus) 华盛顿专栏作家, 2019 年 9 月 8 日

联合国阿富汗特派团最近报告说, 美国的空袭和阿富汗安全部队在 2019 年上半年杀死的平民人数比塔利班多。

访问团说, “亲政府部队”杀死了 717 名平民, 而“反政府部队”杀死了 531 名平民。118 人的死亡原因不明。

<https://www.latimes.com/politics/story/2019-09-07/trumps-shameful-rules-of-engagement-are-killing-civilians>

That's one point of view.

Are 90% of War Victims Civilians? By Adam Roberts (President of the British Academy and Senior Research Fellow at the Centre for International Studies in Oxford University's Department of Politics and International Relations)

Throughout the post-Cold War period there has been a widespread view that war has changed radically since the early twentieth century to the point where some 80–90% of war victims are now civilians. This view was reflected in the European Union's European Security Strategy, adopted by the European Council in Brussels in December 2003, which stated as fact that 'since 1990, almost 4 million people have died in wars, 90% of them civilians.' (1) Many other individuals and institutions have made similar statements.

90% 的战争受害者是平民吗? Adam Roberts (英国学院院长兼牛津大学政治与国际关系系国际研究中心资深研究员)

在整个冷战后时期, 人们普遍认为, 自 20 世纪初以来, 战争已经发生了根本变化, 到现在大约 80-90% 的战争受害者是平民。欧洲联盟于 2003 年 12 月在布鲁塞尔通过的《欧洲安全战略》反映了这一观点, 事实表明, “自 1990 年以来, 几乎有 400 万人死于战争, 其中 90% 为平民”。

(1) 许多其他个人和机构也发表了类似的声明。

https://weblearn.ox.ac.uk/access/content/user/1044/survival_jun-jul_2010_-_ar_on_lives___statistics_-_non-printable.pdf

Reptilian? Most people who know the realities of American wars believe reptilian is the best description for American wars. They are cold-blooded killers.

爬虫类动物? 大多数了解美国战争现实的人都认为, 爬虫类动物是对美国战争的最好描述。他们是冷血滥杀者。

Trump administration sanctions International Criminal Court officials investigating US war crimes

特朗普政府制裁调查美国战争罪行的国际刑事法院官员

11 June, 2020

The Donald Trump administration is imposing economic sanctions on International Criminal Court officials who are engaged with “any effort” to investigate or prosecute US personnel for war crimes.

唐纳德·特朗普政府正在对国际刑事法院官员实施经济制裁，这些官员正“尽一切努力”调查或起诉美国人员的战争罪行。

In a statement on Thursday, the White House press office said President Donald Trump has also authorized the “expansion of visa restrictions” against ICC officials and their family members.

白宫新闻办公室周四发表声明说，美国总统特朗普还授权“扩大对国际刑事法院官员及其家属的签证限制”。

https://www.rt.com/news/491537-us-economic-sanctions-icc/?utm_source=browser&utm_medium=push_notifications&utm_campaign=push_notifications

Please dear readers, do not imitate that man. 亲爱的读者们，请不要模仿那个人。

In addition to all that: 除此之外:

COVID-19 has dramatically brought the war home to Americans and they can see for the first time - in person - the kinds of reptile-like decisions their politicians make when it comes to protecting innocent men, women and children. The failure to protect marginalized individuals, and inequalities in health care are now starkly apparent to the common working person in America.

COVID-19 戏剧性地把战争带到了美国人的家里，他们第一次亲眼看到了政客们在保护无辜的男人、女人和孩子方面做出的爬行动物般的决定。保护边缘化个人的失败和医疗保健方面的不平等，现在在美国的普通劳动者看来已经非常明显。

For the common working person - the first step in finding real and lasting solutions to the growing inequality in the world - is to be honest with ourselves and each other.

对于普通劳动者-为世界上日益严重的不平等寻找真正持久的解决方案的第一步-就是对自己和彼此诚实。

That's why I wrote this book. 这就是我写这本书的原因。

Learning how to learn is the most important learning. Thinking critically is essential to discovering optimal approaches to every kind of challenge and learning opportunity.

Question everything and think 质疑一切，思考

Socratic education is based on asking questions. Asking questions is critical for stimulating critical thinking.

学习如何学习是最重要的学习。批判性思考对于发现应对各种挑战和学习机会的最佳方法至关重要。

苏格拉底式教育是以提问为基础的。提问对激发批判性思维至关重要。



free-clipart-Socrates <http://www.clker.com>

Why? (Please try to answer. It's a thought-stimulating question!)

为什么？（请尝试回答。这是一个令人振奋的问题！）

In the world today, one learns to ask insightful questions or one gets turned into a slave very quickly. So, it's vastly better to ask and try to answer questions.

在当今世界上，一个人学会问一些有见地的问题，或者一个人很快就变成了奴隶。因此，提出并尝试回答问题要好得多。

The truth may set you free. But, how can someone know the truth? Just believe your teachers? Maybe not. That can be the fastest road to slavery of them all.

事实可能会让你自由。但是，可是人们怎么知道真相呢？只相信您的老师？哈！这是成为奴隶的最快方法！



QUESTION EVERYTHING! 一切问题!

Turn it around in your mind. Look at it from all sides. Listen to it. Feel it, smell it. Take a bite out of it. Bounce it on the floor and see what happens. Observe it over a long period of time. Compare it to other similar things. Ask your friends what they think. Research it!

将其旋转 360 度即可。从各个方面看它。听这个。感觉一下，闻一下。咬一口。把它弹到地板上看看会发生什么。长期观察。把它和其他类似的东西比较一下。问问你的朋友他们是怎么想的。去研究！

Welcome again to a “different” textbook for learning English as a Foreign Language (EFL).

欢迎再次来到一本“不同”的外语学习教材。

First of all, please do not believe anything you read in this book.

首先，请不要相信你在这本书中读到的任何东西。

Instead, question everything. Read **peripheral** research. Talk to your friends. Ask questions. Play with ideas. Then try to think of alternative answers to anything and everything in this book.

相反，质疑一切。阅读外围研究。与您的朋友交谈，问问题，玩创意。然后尝试用本书学到的思考内容找答案。

What does the word “**peripheral**” mean? Do you know this word? Can you figure it out from the context? Was the reader curious?

“外围”一词是什么意思？你知道这个词吗？您能通过上下文弄清楚吗？对整个词汇你是否产生了足够好奇和感官理解？

Peripheral: relating to “around the edges of something,” or relating to something but not always directly. Everything relates to something else. Nothing in the multiverses (all the universes) exists in isolation. Look for the relationships between things, not just things in isolation. The meaning and usefulness of things are determined by their connections. So, yes, please read related research on subjects discussed in this book.

周边的：与“某物边缘周围”有关的，或与某物有关但不总是直接的。一切都和别的东西有关。多元宇宙（所有的宇宙）中没有任何东西是孤立存在的。寻找事物之间的关系，而不仅仅是孤立的事物。事物的意义和有用性是由它们之间的联系决定的。所以，是的，请阅读本书所讨论主题的相关研究。

To “know” something it must be looked at from all points of view. There’s a proverb in English: “A little knowledge is a dangerous thing.”

要“知道”某件事，必须从所有角度来看它。英语里有句谚语：“学一点是危险的。”

This is true. Please don’t blindly believe anything in this book, but at the same time don’t judge this book too quickly either. It takes time to examine things as complicated as the world, the interactions between nations and cultures, and how those interactions interface within the context of the English language.

这是真的。请不要盲目相信本书中的任何内容，但同时也不要太快地判断本书。需要花费时间来研究与世界一样复杂的事物，国家与文化之间的相互作用以及这些相互作用如何在英语环境中进行交互。

Dialogue (with a man who would not be a false god) 对话（与一个不会是假神的人）

Writer: Knock, Knock. (作家：当当当。)

Reader: Who’s there?

Writer: The writer. 作者：是我，作家。

Reader: Are you talking me? Like a person? 读者：你在跟我说话吗？喜欢一个人吗？

Writer: Yep! 作者：是的！

Reader: Textbook writers never talk to readers! Textbook writers are like gods! 读者：教科书作者永远不会与读者交谈！教科书作家就像假神！

Writer: Not me. 作者：我不是。

Reader: What's so different about you? 读者：那您有什么与众不同的地方吗？

Writer: Most textbook writers live high up in the “Ivory Tower (象牙塔).” They don't need references for example like scientists do. Readers are just the “little people” to them. Readers are mindless obedient consumers to them. Readers are milked for money the same as cows are milked. Everybody is supposed to bow down and worship those writers like gods; and of course, memorize and obey everything they say. I don't like the snobby arrogance of the ivory tower. Ivory tower textbook writers are trained to worship western hegemony and totally avoid the millions of real issues that illuminate the “feet of clay” of the false gods living and working in the ivory tower. To me such work would be slavery and promoting the enslavement of others. I refuse to do it.

作家：大多数教科书作家都生活在“象牙塔”中。他们不需要参考。科学家必须引用文献证明他们的工作是客观，有效，可靠和相关的。大多数教科书作者使读者成为盲目听话的消费者。读者被“挤钱”，就像牛被“挤奶”。每个人都应该屈服并像神一样崇拜那些作家。每个人都应该记住并服从教科书作者所说的一切。我不喜欢象牙塔的傲慢自大。象牙塔教科书作家受过训练，崇拜西方霸权，完全避免了数百万个真实的问题，这些问题照亮了在象牙塔中生活和工作的虚假神的脚。对我来说，这样的工作将成为奴隶制，并促进使他人成为奴役，我拒绝这样做。

Reader: That's very strange. How can someone trust you?

读者：真奇怪。怎么会有人相信你？

Writer: Don't trust me. Question everything and think for yourself. But, whatever you do, don't look too closely at the top floors of the Ivory Tower. It's so horrifying you can lose your mind.

作家：不要相信我，去质疑一切，为自己着想。但是，无论你做什么，都不要太仔细地看象牙塔的顶层。太可怕了，你会失去理智的。

Reader: You've got to be crazy! I love western institutions of higher education. What could be so terrible? 读者：你一定要疯了！我们喜欢西方的高等教育机构，有什么好可怕的？

Writer: Read the last section of Chapter 1 on Ivy League universities. You'll see what I mean.

作者：请阅读第1章关于常春藤盟校的最后一节。您会明白我的意思。

Reader: Well, maybe, but I'll tell you right, now, I don't trust you, Mr. Writer.

读者：好吧，也许吧，但我现在就告诉你，我不相信你，作家先生。

Writer: Good. Stay that way. Always doubt. Thank you. You just passed the first test.

作家：好。总是怀疑是好事，谢谢。您刚刚通过了第一个测试。

Target Audience 目标观众

I originally wrote this book for high school juniors and seniors who wanted to study at western universities. Most of them were studying TOEFL or IELTS at the same time.

我最初是为想在西方大学学习的 11 至 12 年级的高中生写这本书的。他们中的大多数人同时学习托福或雅思。

I taught EFL in East Asia for 18 years (2002-2020). In the 1970s and 1980s, I helped hundreds of foreign students prepare for the TOEFL exam. In Korea, I helped students prepare for the SAT and GRE exams, the medical school (MCAT) and law school (LSAT) exams. During this period, I used more than 100 different EFL textbooks which were mainly published by Oxford University Press, Cambridge University Press and Longman Press. In the past ten years, I have also used EFL books by Chinese writers and publishers.

我在东亚（East Asia）教授 EFL 已有 18 年（2002-2020）。在 1970 年代和 1980 年代，我帮助了数百名外国学生为 TOEFL 考试做准备。在韩国，我帮助学生准备 SAT 和 GRE 考试以及医学院和法学院的考试。在此期间，我使用了 100 多种不同的 EFL 教科书，这些教科书主要由牛津大学出版社，剑桥大学出版社和朗文出版社出版。在过去的十年中，我还使用过中国作家和出版商的 EFL 书籍。

But not one of those textbooks prepares East Asian students for the realities of life in western countries. 但是，这些教科书中没有一部让东亚学生为西方国家的现实生活做准备。

Synopsis 简介

Right now, most Chinese students going to the USA for example, cannot be “good Chinese” because they can’t describe or explain Confucian, Taoist, or Buddhist philosophies in even the simplest terms. They don’t know anything about the roots of capitalism, socialism or communism and can’t possibly explain the advantages and disadvantages of each.

例如，现在，大多数去美国的中国学生不能成为“好中国人”，因为他们甚至不能用最简单的语言用英语描述或解释儒家、道家或佛教哲学。他们对资本主义、社会主义和共产主义的根源一无所知，也不可能解释它们各自的优缺点。

In addition, Chinese students going to the USA are in danger, because virtually none of them have studied conflict resolution strategies. So, wherever a difference of opinion occurs, Chinese students usually just totally accommodate the more aggressive Americans (give them whatever they want) or avoid them. A study of the science of conflict resolution strategies opens other possibilities.

此外，前往美国的中国学生确实处于危险之中，因为他们中几乎没有人研究冲突解决策略的科学。因此，无论意见分歧在哪里，中国学生要么完全容纳更具攻击性的美国人（给他们想要的一切），要么就避开他们。对解决冲突战略科学的研究开辟了其他可能性。

Right now, many or most Chinese students who go to the USA are targeted by highly aggressive and seductive religious groups that teach them to hate Islam and denigrate socialism/communism. This is one reason Chinese students going to the USA should know the basic outlines of each of the major philosophies and religions – how they are the same and how they are different. Likewise, students should know something about the political/economic systems of capitalism, socialism and communism *in English*.

现在，许多或大多数去美国的中国学生都被极具侵略性和诱惑力的宗教团体盯上了，这些团体教导他们憎恨伊斯兰教和社会主义/共产主义。这就是为什么中国赴美留学生应该了解每一个主要宗教的基本轮廓——它们是如何相同和不同的。同样，学生应该了解资本主义、社会主义和共产主义的政治/经济制度。

Having the “best and brightest” Chinese youth taught to hate Islam (and consequently Muslims) and socialism/communism is not a positive thing. It is extremely arrogant prejudice – exactly the same as the emerging “hate Chinese” belief systems being pushed by politicians in the USA today. Chinese students need to know some basic history and an outline of the major philosophies, religions and political systems before they go to the USA.

让“最优秀、最聪明”的中国青年接受憎恨伊斯兰教（因此也包括穆斯林）和社会主义/共产主义的教育并不是一件积极的事情。这是一种极其傲慢的偏见，与当今美国政客们正在推行的“憎恨中国人”的信仰体系一模一样。中国学生在去美国之前需要了解一些基本的历史和主要的哲学、宗教和政治制度的概要。

This is an undeniable truth. I have known hundreds of such cases.

Recently for example a former student of mine was in the USA. He started criticizing the Soviet Union and its expansion into Eastern Europe.

这是不可否认的事实。我知道这样的案子有几百件。

例如，最近我的一个前学生在美国，他开始批评苏联及其向东欧的扩张。

In response, I sent him a quote from one of William Blum’s books:

作为回应，我给他发了一封引用自威廉·布鲁姆的一本书的内容：

“The main problem with the media today, as earlier, is what is left out of articles dealing with controversial issues. For example, the very common practice during the first Cold War of condemning the Soviet Union for taking over much of Eastern Europe after the Second World War. This takeover is certainly based on fact. But the condemnation is very much misapplied if no mention is made of the fact that Eastern Europe became communist because Hitler, with the approval of the West, used it as a highway to reach the Soviet Union to wipe out Bolshevism once and for all; the Russians in World Wars I and II lost about 40 million people because the West had twice used this highway to invade Russia. It should not be surprising that after World War II the Soviets were determined to close down the highway. It was not simply “communist expansion”.

“与之前一样，今天媒体的主要问题是，在处理有争议问题的文章中遗漏了什么。例如，在第一次冷战期间，谴责苏联在第二次世界大战后接管东欧大部分地区的非常普遍的做法。这次收购当然是基于事实。但是，如果不提东欧之所以成为共产主义，是因为希特勒在西方的同意下，把它当作通往苏联的公路，一劳永逸地消灭布尔什维克主义，那么这种谴责就大错特错了；第一次和第二次世界大战中的俄罗斯人损失了大约 4000 万人，因为西方曾两次利用这条高速公路入侵俄罗斯。第二次世界大战后，苏联决心关闭这条公路，这并不奇怪。这不仅仅是“共产主义扩张”。

<https://williamblum.org/aer/read/155>

[Permission to quote granted by William Blum via email March 15, 2018]

Chinese in the USA are often or usually taught to ridicule the Chinese government. Most Chinese students don't know the history of capitalism, socialism and communism, and certainly cannot explain for example how "Socialism with Chinese characteristics" works. They have no idea. Consequently, many or most Chinese students in the USA learn to hate their own government. They also learn to hate China's historic allies, e.g. Russia and other countries in the region that are not closely aligned with political objectives of the USA. This is not education. This is brainwashing. But this is what has been going on for decades now.

这是不可否认的真理。我已经知道数百个这样的案例。同样，经常在美国学习的中国青年被教导憎恨中国政府。大多数中国学生不了解资本主义，社会主义和共产主义的历史，当然也不能解释例如“中国特色社会主义”是如何运作的。他们不知道。因此，许多或大多数在美国的中国学生学会了讨厌自己的政府。他们还学会憎恨中国的历史盟友，例如俄罗斯和该地区其他与美国的政治目标不符的国家。这不是教育。这是洗脑。但是，这是几十年来一直在发生的事情。

Education - A Vaccine Against the American "Hate Virus" 教育作为针对美国“仇恨病毒”的疫苗

This book was written as an EFL textbook. It was also written as a vaccine for the people of the world - to protect them from the most dangerous virus coming from the USA. That virus is not COVID-19 or HIV/AIDS. That virus is hatred. The government of the United States of America - from the beginning of its history - has cultivated hatred of one or more ethnic groups to achieve political and economic gains. Then, they killed large numbers of those groups, and after that transferred that hatred to another group in order to achieve the next strategic goal.

这本书是作为英语课本写的。它也被写为世界人民的疫苗，以保护他们免受来自美国的最危险病毒的侵害。这种病毒不是 COVID-19 或 HIV/AIDS。那病毒就是仇恨。美利坚合众国政府从其历史开始，就培养了对一个或多个族裔/文化群体的仇恨，以实现政治和经济利益。然后，他们杀死了大量的这些团体，然后把仇恨转移到另一个团体，以实现下一个战略目标。

"Presidential Power and National Violence: (American President) James K. Polk's Rhetorical Transfer of Savagery

"总统权力与国家暴力：（美国总统）詹姆斯波尔克对野蛮的修辞转换

"President James Knox Polk is often lauded for his achievements as president, including the territorial acquisition of the western portion of the nation. Critical attention to this legacy mostly focuses on his rhetorical strategy for putting the nation into war with Mexico.

To date, no studies focus on Polk's rhetorical strategy for ending the war. In this article, I examine Polk's end-of war rhetoric, attending to his rationalizations for exiting the war, his justification for resuming diplomatic relations with Mexico, and his identification of a new enemy requiring presidential and national attention.

I argue that Polk's pivot from Mexicans to Indians rhetorically transferred tropes of savagery to Indians, reenergized violence against Indians, and facilitated the institutionalization of management of Indian affairs via the creation of the Department of the Interior.

I conclude that rhetorical critics should closely attend to the way end-of-war rhetoric enables presidents to transition from one enemy to another while reaping institutional benefits.”

Rhetoric & Public Affairs, Vol. 19, Number 3, Fall 2016, pp. 365-396

(Can be downloaded from JSTOR and Academia.edu)

“詹姆斯·诺克斯·波尔克总统经常因其作为总统的成就而受到赞扬，其中包括对该国西部地区的领土征用。对这一遗产的批评主要集中在他对墨西哥发动战争的修辞策略上。迄今为止，还没有研究集中在波尔克结束战争的修辞策略上。在这篇文章中，我考察了波尔克的战争结束论调，关注他退出战争的合理化，他与墨西哥恢复外交关系的理由，以及他对一个需要总统和国家关注的新敌人的识别。我认为，波尔克从墨西哥人到印度人的支点，在修辞上把野蛮的比喻转移到了印度人身上，使针对印度人的暴力行为重新活跃起来，并通过成立内政部促进了印度事务管理的制度化。我的结论是，修辞批评家应密切关注战争结束的言论如何使总统能够从一个敌人过渡到另一个敌人，同时获得体制利益。”

The above article is extremely important to understand the American strategy of transferring hate from one group to another to achieve territorial and economic gain. The US is currently in the process of transferring hate from hatred of so-called “Islamic terrorists” (that the American Department of Defense intentionally created) to hatred of Chinese. This hatred is an essential component of American governance and growth which encourages mass murder. It has been a part of American history from the beginning.

上述文章对于理解美国将仇恨从一个群体转移到另一个群体以实现领土和经济利益的战略极为重要。美国目前正在将仇恨从对所谓“伊斯兰恐怖分子”（美国国防部故意制造的）的仇恨转变为对中国人的仇恨。这种仇恨是美国治理和增长的一个重要组成部分，它鼓励大规模谋杀。它从一开始就是美国历史的一部分。

Chinese students for 40 years have been thrown like sheep to the wolves in the USA. Too many of the best and the brightest Chinese youth have learned to hate socialism, and Chinese culture, and blindly follow all other American strategically engineered political, cultural and social philosophies.

40年来，中国学生像羊一样被扔向美国的狼群。太多最聪明，最聪明的中国年轻人学会了讨厌社会主义和中国文化，并机器人地遵循了美国其他所有经过战略设计的政治，文化，社会和宗教哲学。

The One Belt One Road Project launched by President Xi Jinping is brilliant. And, it has helped millions of people in very poor countries access greater opportunities. It should be noted that the majority of One Belt One Road nations are Muslim nations. Chinese students definitely need a vaccine to protect them from the virulent “hate Islam” philosophies taught in the United States if the One Road One Belt project is going to succeed. Nobody wants to do business with other people who have been brainwashed into religious prejudice.

习近平主席推出的“一带一路”工程是辉煌的。而且，它还帮助极贫穷国家的数百万人获得了更多的机会。应该指出的是，一条最好的道路上的大多数国家都是穆斯林国家。如果“一带一路”计划要取得成功，中国学生肯定需要一种疫苗来保护他们免受美国教授的恶毒的“仇恨伊斯兰教”哲学的伤害。没有人愿意和被洗脑成宗教偏见的人做生意。

There are definitely strategic goals woven through the highly dubious “education” Chinese students receive in the USA. Much of that education is outside of the classroom from “friends.” At least some of those friends are not really friends. In some cases, they are deliberately following a USA government driven agenda designed to divide China and undermine the One Belt One Road project.

通过许多中国学生在美国接受的可疑“教育”，确实可以确定战略目标。这些教育大部分在教室外面。它来自似乎是中国学生的“朋友”的美国学生。至少其中一些不是真正的朋友。在某些情况下，他们故意遵循美国政府制定的议程，该议程旨在分裂中国并破坏“一带一路”项目。



<https://www.tooopen.com/view/1207662.html>

The U.S. Military is Hell-Bent on Trying to Overpower China, 美国军方试图压倒中国 by Vijay Prashad, May 14, 2020

The real focus is China. In January 2019, Acting U.S. Defense Secretary Patrick Shanahan told U.S. military officials that the problem is “China, China, China.” This has been the key focus of all U.S. President Donald Trump’s nominees for the Defense Department, whether it be Shanahan or the current chief Mark Esper. Esper cannot open his mouth without blaming China; he recently told the Italian paper *La Stampa* that China is using the coronavirus emergency to push its advantage through “malign” forces such as Huawei and by sending aid to Italy. As far as Trump and Esper are concerned, China and—to a lesser extent—Russia are to be contained by the United States with armed force...

真正的重点是中国。2019年1月，代理美国国防部长帕特里克·沙纳汉（Patrick Shanahan）告诉美国军方，问题出在“中国，中国，中国”。这一直是美国总统唐纳德·特朗普提名国防部所有候选人的重点，无论是沙纳汉还是现任首席马克·埃斯珀。埃斯珀不能不怪中国就张开嘴。他最近在意大利报纸《*La Stampa*》上表示，中国正在利用冠状病毒紧急情况，通过华为等“恶性”力量并向意大利提供援助，以发挥其优势。就特朗普和埃斯珀而言，中国和（在较小程度上）俄罗斯将由武装力量的美国控制。

<https://www.counterpunch.org/2020/05/14/the-u-s-military-is-hell-bent-on-trying-to-overpower-china>

Seducing the youth of China that goes to the USA for education is only one aspect of a long-term program to undermine China. What better way than to turn the youth of China against its own country?

对去美国接受教育的中国青年进行洗脑，只是破坏中国长期计划的一个方面。还有什么比让中国的年轻人反对自己的国家更好的办法呢？

This American Department of Defense funded program has been remarkably successful in Hong Kong.

美国国防部资助的项目在香港取得了显著的成功。

The only “cure” for these diseases is a better more comprehensive EFL education here in China.

这些疾病的唯一“治愈”方法是在中国进行更好，更全面的 EFL 教育。

Learning a foreign language opens up new doorways and windows to the world. Learning a new language can actually lead to the development of a new and different personality. There has been a lot of research on this topic over the past 80 years.

学习外语为世界打开了新的大门和窗户。学习一种新语言实际上可以导致一种新的和不同的个性发展。在过去的 80 年中，对此主题进行了大量研究。

The Sapir-Whorf Hypothesis - Sapir-Whorf 假说

The Sapir-Whorf Hypothesis Today, by Basel Al-Sheikh Hussein

The Sapir-Whorf hypothesis proclaimed the influence of language on thought and perception. This, in turn, implies that the speakers of different languages think and perceive reality in different ways and that each language has its own world view. The issues this hypothesis raised not only pertain to the field of linguistics but also had a bearing on Psychology, Ethnology, Anthropology, Sociology, Philosophy, as well as on the natural sciences. For, if reality is perceived and structured by the language we speak, the existence of an objective world becomes questionable, and the scientific knowledge we may obtain is bound to be subjective. Such a principle of relativity then becomes a principle of determinism. Whether the language we speak totally determines our attitude towards reality or whether we are merely influenced by its inherent world view remains a topic of heated discussion.

... The fact that language plays a role in shaping our thoughts, in modifying our perception and in creating reality is irrefutable.

Sapir-Whorf 假说宣称语言对思想和感知的影响。反过来，这意味着说不同语言的人以不同的方式思考和感知现实，并且每种语言都有其自己的世界观。该假设提出的问题不仅涉及语言学领域，而且与心理学，民族学，人类学，社会学，哲学以及自然科学有关。因为，如果用我们说的语言来感知和构造现实，那么客观世界的存在就变得可疑，而我们可能获得的科学知识必定是主观的。这样的相对论就变成了确定论。我们说的语言是否完全决定了我们对现实的态度，还是仅受其固有的世界观影响，仍然是激烈讨论的话题。

…语言在塑造我们的思想，改变我们的看法和创造现实中发挥作用这一事实是无可辩驳的。

Theory and Practice in Language Studies, Vol. 2, No. 3, pp. 642-646, March 2012, ISSN 1799-2591

<http://www.academypublication.com/issues/past/tpls/vol02/03/30.pdf>

What happens when someone learns a language like English, wherein denigration and hatred of my native culture, political system and/or religion are inextricably woven into the culture?

当一个人学了一门像英语这样的语言，对我的本土文化、政治制度和/或宗教的诋毁和仇恨交织在一起，会发生什么？

Question: Do people who learn English as a foreign language develop a “split personality?”

问：把英语作为外语学习的人是否会形成“分裂人格”？

Split personality: Multiple personality disorder, a neurosis in which the personality becomes dissociated into two or more distinct parts each of which becomes dominant and controls behavior from time to time to the exclusion of the other parts. A modern name for this condition is dissociative identity disorder.

分裂人格：多重人格障碍，一种神经症，人格分裂成两个或两个以上不同的部分，其中每一个部分成为主导，并控制行为时，排除其他部分。这种情况的现代名称是分离性身份障碍。

<https://www.medicinenet.com/script/main/art.asp?articlekey=11257>

Word focus: What does the word “denigrate” mean?

单词焦点：单词“denigrate”是什么意思？

On one level it means: 在一个层面上，它意味着：

To speak damagingly of; criticize in a derogatory manner; sully; defame: to denigrate someone's character. to treat or represent as lacking in value or importance; belittle; disparage

诋毁；以贬义的方式批评；玷污；诽谤：诋毁某人的性格。贬低，贬低认为或表现为缺乏价值或重要性；贬低

On another level it means: 在另一个层面上，它意味着：

The English word “denigrate” comes from the Latin word “niger,” meaning “black,” via the verb *denigrare*, to blacken. When it first appeared in the sixteenth century, it also had a figurative sense of blackening somebody's character or staining their reputation. This goes back to ancient ideas in western culture that black is the color of despair, misery, wickedness or infamy.

英语单词“denigrate”来自拉丁语单词“niger”，意思是“black”，通过动词 *denigare*，转为 *blacken*。当它第一次出现在 16 世纪时，它也有一种形象化的感觉，即抹黑某人的性格或玷污他们的名誉。这可以追溯到西方文化中的古老观念，即黑色是绝望、痛苦、邪恶或耻辱的颜色。

Adapted from: <https://www.worldwidewords.org/qa/qa-den1.htm>

Stereotypes of African Americans, Latinos, Asians, native Americans, other non-white people and Muslims and Jewish people are centuries old. They are woven deeply into the English language and Euro-American culture.

非裔美国人，拉丁美洲人，亚洲人，美洲原住民，其他非白人以及穆斯林和犹太人的刻板印象已有数百年历史。这些负面刻板印象深深地融入了英语和欧美文化中。

The Sapir-Whorf Hypothesis emphasizes the real need for “people of color” to study *this English as a Foreign Language (EFL) and Peace Studies* textbook. Why? It illuminates *in English* the “other side” of the Euro-American culture and language.

Sapir-Whorf 假说强调真正需要“有色人种”来学习这本英语作为外语（EFL）和和平研究课本。为什么？它用英语阐明了欧美文化和语言的“另一面”。

Most EFL books presents Euro-American life and culture as clean and perfect. This textbook shows both sides of Euro-American culture and the “system flaws” that led to the current situation. This developmental process perspective, and textbook can help EFL students integrate the idealized image of Euro-American culture on one hand with real histories and some unfortunate realities of today.

大部分 EFL 书籍都将欧美生活和文化展现得既干净又完美。这本教科书展示了欧美文化的两面以及导致当前局势的“系统缺陷”。这种发展过程的观点和教科书可以帮助 EFL 学生一方面将欧美文化的理想形象与真实的历史和当今的一些不幸现实结合起来。

Lastly, I will admit some bias. I am a socialist. My father gave me “Mao’s little Red Book” with quotations from Chairman Mao when I was 13 in 1969 in the USA. I was and remain disgusted and horrified at American wars around the world. As a professional journalist I worked in several of them. I am also disgusted and horrified at how education in the USA has been “weaponized” to brainwash foreign students. I’ve taught at least a thousand Chinese students over the past 10 years. Before that I taught English in South Korea for seven years and published articles in their largest national newspapers. I have lived in and traveled through 40 countries in my life and published articles in several of them. I know the subjects I’m writing about. And I know there are no greater evils than hatred and war. So, I wrote this book to help teach peace, truth, justice and fairness, history, many major philosophies, the outlines of major religions, political science, conflict resolution strategies, counseling, diplomacy and most importantly - critical thinking - to (primarily) Chinese youth, in an EFL context.

最后，我承认一些偏见。我是社会主义者。1969 年我 13 岁时，父亲给了我“毛的小红皮书”。

过去和现在，我对世界各地的美国战争感到厌恶。

作为专业记者，我拜访了其中的几位。我也对现在在美国向许多或大多数中国学生教授的武器化教育感到厌恶。

在过去的 10 年中，我至少教了 1000 名中国学生。我曾在 40 个国家/地区生活和旅行。我知道我正在写的主题。我知道没有比仇恨和战争更大的邪恶。所以，我写这本书是为了帮助中国年轻人在英语学习的背景下，教授和平、真理、正义与公平、历史、许多主要哲学、主要宗教概要、政治学、冲突解决策略、咨询、外交以及最重要的批判性思维。

Preface 前言

Imagine! 想象一下!

Imagine a world at peace. A world with no war. A world where all the governments can devote all their energy to helping the people live happy and meaningful lives.

想象一个和平的世界。一个没有战争的世界。在这个世界上，所有的政府都可以投入所有的精力来帮助人民过上幸福而有意义的生活。

Imagine a world where the balances of nature are restored. A world with grass, trees and forests; where wild deer might eat some wild berries in your backyard. When you wake up in the morning you can hear birds singing; not just cars and trucks from traffic. A world where you can get the best education for free. You can study whatever you want for as long as you want.

想象一个自然平衡得以恢复的世界。一个有草、树和森林的世界；在那里，野鹿可以在你的后院吃一些野生浆果。当你早上醒来时，你能听到鸟儿的歌唱，而不仅仅是汽车和卡车的声音。如果你想玩游戏，你可以玩游戏。一个你可以免费得到最好教育的世界。你想学什么就学多久。

Imagine a world where you can travel wherever you want easily. If you want to live here, you can live here. If you want to live there, you can live there.

想象下一个可以随处旅行的世界。如果您想住在这里，可以住在这里。如果您想住在那里，可以住在那里。

Imagine a world where nobody is “better” than anybody else. A world where everyone can fulfill their potential, free of bias.

想象一个世界，没有人比其他人“天生”更好。每个人都可以在没有偏见的情况下发挥潜力的世界。

And yes, if you want shopping malls and computer games you can find those too. Humans are incredibly diverse and the goal is help everyone live healthy, happy and productive lives.

是的，如果你想要购物中心和电脑游戏，你也可以找到它们。人类的多样性令人难以置信，其目标是帮助每个人过上健康、快乐和富有成效的生活。

The reader might be surprised at this, but it is possible.

读者可能对此感到惊讶，但这是可能的。

And the reader might be even more surprised to learn that this is the communist dream.

当读者得知这是共产主义梦想时，可能会更加惊讶。

People who grew up in western nations might not believe this, but it is true.

在西方国家长大的人可能不相信，但这是真的。

People who grow up in western countries have some very strange (and wrong!) ideas about communism but in fact communism can be a beautiful world.

在西方国家长大的人可能对共产主义有一些非常奇怪（也是错误的！）的想法，但实际上，共产主义是一个美丽的世界。

Yes, yes, it's true. This will not happen tomorrow. This will not happen next week or next month. But it is possible, maybe in 20 or 30 years.

是的，是的，这是真的。这不会在明天发生。这不会在下周或下个月发生。但这是可能的，也许在二三十年后。

For now, the best we have is socialism. Socialism is the bridge between the old world based on total greed (capitalism) and the beautiful peaceful world of communism.

现在，我们最好的是社会主义。社会主义是连接以贪婪为基础的旧世界（资本主义）和美丽和平的共产主义世界的桥梁。

Does this mean everyone is the same? No. Everyone has different potential. Everyone has different needs and interests. Everyone has different motivation levels. Some people will try harder. Some people may need to think more before they do things. Everyone is unique. In a communist world people can rise to the level of their abilities, interests and motivation. So, yes, some may get a little more reward, some perhaps a little less. But nobody will die of hunger. Nobody will be alone. Everyone will help others to be happy, and live a meaningful life.

这是否意味着每个人都是一样的？不，每个人都有不同的潜力。每个人都有不同的需求和兴趣。每个人都有不同的动机水平。有些人会更加努力。有些人在做事之前可能需要多想想。每个人都是独一无二的。在一个共产主义的世界里，人们可以提高自己的能力、兴趣和动力。所以，是的，有些人可能会得到更多的奖励，有些人可能会得到更少的奖励。但是没有人会饿死。没有人会孤独。每个人都会帮助别人快乐，过上有意义的生活。

Does this mean no religion? No. In some ways communalism/communism is the natural tribal state of humanity. People have – off and on – lived in communal fashion since our ancestors came down from the trees 4.2 million years ago. Humans have been burying our dead for around 100,000 years, suggesting some belief beyond pure pragmatism. Even Neanderthal buried their dead some 60,000 – 70,000 years ago.

<https://www.newscientist.com/article/2233918-70000-year-old-remains-suggest-neanderthals-buried-their-dead>

Why? It appears some sort of spiritual/ metaphysical/religious beliefs may be inherent in humans. (See Chapter 3: Fourteen Major Philosophies and Religions.) The Russian suppression of religion at the beginning of Marxism had more to do with fear of political/economic competition than a lack of spiritual understanding (see Chapter 5: Socialism and Communism).

这是否意味着没有宗教信仰？不。在某些方面，公社主义/共产主义是人类的自然部落状态。自从我们的祖先 420 万年前从树上下来以来，人们一直断断续续地以共同的方式生活。人类埋葬死者已有 10 万年之久，这表明人们有一些超越纯粹实用主义的信仰。甚至尼安德特人也在大约 6 万到 7 万年前埋葬了他们的死者。为什么？似乎某种精神/形而上学/宗教信仰可能是人类固有的。（见第 3 章：十四大哲学和宗教）俄国在马克思主义开始时对宗教的压制更多的是因为害怕政治/经济竞争，而不是缺乏精神上的理解（见第 5 章：社会主义和共产主义）。

Socialism is the logical “stepping stone” back to the more natural and organic political organization of communalism/communism, from our current world system of unrestrained capitalism.

社会主义是从当今世界不受限制的资本主义体系回到更自然和有机的共产主义/共产主义政治组织的逻辑“垫脚石”。

In socialism there is a very powerful state government. It works to serve all the people. Everyone should have equal opportunity.

在社会主义中，有一个非常强大的州政府。它为所有人服务。每个人都应有平等的机会。

The governments of Western capitalist countries work only to serve the rich.

西方资本主义国家的政府只为富人服务。

Because of western capitalism nine million people starve to death every year.

由于西方资本主义，每年有 900 万人饿死。

<https://www.theworldcounts.com/challenges/people-and-poverty/hunger-and-obesity/how-many-people-die-from-hunger-each-year>

Yes, western capitalist countries make great movies, music, and games!

是的，西方资本主义国家制作了很棒的电影，音乐和游戏！

There is much that is good and bad in western capitalist countries.

西方资本主义国家有许多好的坏的东西和思想。

Most European countries have socialist political parties. Usually they are called “labor parties.”

大多数欧洲国家都有社会主义政党。通常，他们被称为“劳动党”。

The USA has a socialist party, but it is very weak. Why? The rich capitalists in the USA really hate socialism and communism. The people in the USA government that control the military have attacked every socialist and communist country in the world. They always try to destroy socialism and communism.

美国有一个社会主义政党，但它很弱。为什么？美国的富裕资本家们真的痛恨社会主义和共产主义。控制军队的美国政府的人民攻击了世界上每一个社会主义和共产主义国家。他们总是试图摧毁社会主义和共产主义。

Why? The rich capitalists in the USA, UK and France like slavery. They like the poor people working like slaves just to make the rich people even richer. They don't care about the poor. They will happily steal the natural resources of people in Africa, South America and parts of Asia and let the poor people die of hunger and disease. This is just the same as slavery. Socialists and communists really don't like that.

为什么？美国、英国和法国的富有资本家喜欢奴隶制。他们喜欢穷人像奴隶一样工作，只是为了让富人更富有！他们不关心穷人。他们会很高兴地偷走非洲、南美和亚洲部分地区人民的自然资源，让穷人死于饥饿和疾病！这和奴隶制是一样的。社会主义者和共产党人真的不喜欢这样。

For the super-rich capitalists in western Europe and the USA, it's wonderful! For the poor in the capitalists' colonies in Africa, South America and parts of Asia life is a hopeless hell.

对于西欧和美国的超级富豪资本家来说，这太棒了！对于非洲、南美和亚洲部分地区资本家殖民地的穷人来说，生活是一个无望的地狱。

The Chinese people and government should be proud. Because of Chinese socialism, “more than 730 million Chinese have lifted themselves out of poverty from 1990 to 2015, something that took most industrialized nations 100–150 years to accomplish.” That’s a truly amazing accomplishment! 中国人民和政府应该为此感到自豪。由于中国的社会主义，“从 1990 年到 2015 年，超过 7.3 亿中国人摆脱了贫困，这是大多数工业化国家花了 100-150 年的时间才能实现的。”这是一个了不起的成就！

<https://www.chinadaily.com.cn/a/201911/15/WS5dce6bc4a310cf3e35577b6e.html>

Simultaneously, the Chinese government works very hard to give Chinese youth a positive view of the world. But, if the reader is planning to go to an English-speaking country, it is critically important some knowledge about the world is known before leaving on that great adventure.

同时，中国政府为使中国年轻人对世界保持积极的看法而努力。但是，如果读者打算去一个讲英语的国家，那么在离开这个伟大的冒险之前，了解一些有关世界的知识至关重要。

The World Today 当今世界

For Chinese suddenly coming “under the gun” of America’s ultimate aggression must seem shocking and unbelievable, but Muslims know all too well what it’s like to be hunted by the super-predator – a global scale serial killer that feasts on the blood of innocent men, women and children 24/7 over the period of decades and centuries.

对中国人民来说，突然成为美国终极侵略的焦点，一定是令人震惊和难以置信的。但是穆斯林非常清楚被超级捕食者猎杀是什么感觉，超级捕食者是一个全球工业规模的连环杀手，在几十年和几百年的时间里，每天 24/7 地以无辜的男人、女人和孩子的鲜血为食。

I’ve been living in China for more than 11 years and I know some Chinese who are angry at the Chinese government for this. To that I can only say: Please don’t be so simple minded. As China develops its economy gets bigger. This is a natural and good thing. The problem is the US government has something called the “Defense Guidance Planning” (DPG) mandate, which says “no other nation will be allowed to compete with the US economically, politically or militarily.”

我在中国生活了 11 年多，我认识一些中国人，他们为此对中国政府感到愤怒。对此我只能说：请不要那么单纯。随着中国经济的发展，它的规模越来越大。这是一件自然的好事。问题在于，美国政府有一项称为“国防指导计划”（DPG）的任务规定，即“不允许任何其他国家在经济、政治或军事上与美国竞争”

So, the American “Department of Defense” “must” now destroy the Chinese economy. Should anyone blame the Chinese government for lifting people out of poverty and having a successful economy? A normal sane person will say “no,” but the US Department of Defense will use any excuse, and make up incredible lies to attack China. This is normal for the American government and to be expected. It is the manifestation of the American “hate virus,” as embodied in the DPG.

所以，美国“国防部”“必须”现在摧毁中国经济。有人应该责怪中国政府让人们摆脱贫困，经济成功吗？正常理智的人会说“不”，但美国国防部将利用任何借口，编造难以置信的谎言攻击中国。这对美国政府来说是正常的，也是意料之中的。它是美国“仇恨病毒”的表现，体现在 DPG 上。

The bottom line is this: If you do good things in this world, evil people will hate you. Does this mean nobody should do good things? Should we all join in with the evil people to enslave, rob and murder the poor around the world? My answer is: “No!”

底线是：如果你在这个世界上做好事，坏人就会恨你。这是否意味着没有人应该做好事？我们是否应该和邪恶的人们一起奴役、抢劫和谋杀世界各地的穷人？我的回答是：“不！”

This new wave of American aggression against China didn't “just happen.” It's been a long time in the making. Anti-communism had been the principal pillar of US foreign policy from the Russian Revolution* until now with only a few brief pauses, e.g. WWII and the entire “war on terror” – a war against terrorists - terrorists that the American Department of Defense itself created.

[*William Blum, America's Deadliest Export 威廉布鲁姆，美国最致命的出口 <https://williamblum.org/>]

美国对中国发动的新一轮侵略并不是“刚刚发生”，而是酝酿了很长一段时间。从俄国革命到现在，反共一直是美国外交政策的主要支柱，只有几次短暂的停顿，例如第二次世界大战和整个“反恐战争”。这里病态和隐藏的事实是，美国国防部自己制造了这些恐怖分子。美国制造了塔利班（利用沙特中间人和资金），美国在决定攻击伊拉克，然后解散其军事力量时制造了伊斯兰国。

The scale of the buildup of American aggression against China cannot be underestimated. It's huge. It's unquestionably (by far) the largest buildup of American military aggressive forces in its long horribly bloody history of unprovoked aggression.

美国对华侵略的规模不可小觑。它很大。毫无疑问（到目前为止），这是美国在其无端侵略的漫长血腥历史中最大规模的军事侵略力量集结。

Below is an insightful editorial article by independent journalist Caitlin Johnson.

以下是独立记者凯特琳·约翰逊的一篇颇有见地的社论文章。

The US is treating China like it's Nazi Germany. This slide towards a 3rd world war needs to end before it's too late, Caitlin Johnston, May 22, 2020

美国对待中国就像对待纳粹德国一样。这场第三次世界大战的集结需要在一切为时已晚之前结束

Anti-Beijing sentiment is being deliberately whipped up by an imperialist America, its supine allies and supportive media oligarchs. But it's just self-serving propaganda that needs to be called out.

反北京情绪正被一个帝国主义的美国、其仰卧的盟友和支持的媒体寡头蓄意煽动起来。但这只是自我服务的宣传，需要被照亮和制止。

China is in the news all the time because of imperialism.

因为帝国主义，中国一直是新闻。

To understand what's going on with China and why the “news” media keep punching you in the face with stories about how awful it is, you really only need to grasp two basic points:

要了解中国发生了什么，以及为什么“新闻”媒体不断用可怕的故事打你的脸，你只需要掌握两个基本点：

Point 1: We are in the middle of a slow-motion third world war between the US-centralized power alliance and the nations which have resisted being absorbed into it.

第一点：我们正处于第三次世界大战的缓慢进行中。这场战争发生在美国中央集权联盟和抵制美国绝对霸权的国家之间。

A loose alliance of nationless oligarchs who use governments as weapons have secured control over a large empire-like cluster of nations with economic and military might loosely centralized around the United States. In order to gain more power and ensure its ongoing hegemony, this oligarchic empire must keep expanding by absorbing more nations and brutalizing them if they resist. China is by far the most powerful of the unabsorbed nations, followed by Russia at a distant second and Iran at a distant third.

一个由利用政府作为武器的无国籍寡头组成的松散联盟，已经确保了对一个大型帝国式国家集群的控制，这些国家的经济和军事力量可能会松散地集中在美国周围。

为了获得更多的权力并确保其持续的霸权，这个寡头帝国必须不断扩张，吸收更多的国家，如果他们反抗，就必须残酷地对待他们。中国是迄今为止未被吸收的国家中最强大的，其次是俄罗斯，排在第二位，伊朗排在第三位。

Nuclear weapons make another hot world war undesirable, so this one takes the form of resource control, economic warfare, staging coups, arming oppositional militias to use as proxy armies, expanding military presence in key geostrategic regions under the pretense of fighting terrorism, and “humanitarian interventionism,” with old-school full-scale ground invasions used only as a last resort, and only after manufacturing sufficient international approval to ensure the continued cohesion of the empire-like power alliance.

核武器使另一场激烈的世界大战变得不受欢迎，因此这场战争采取了资源控制、经济战、发动政变、武装反对派民兵充当代理军、以打击恐怖主义为借口扩大在关键地缘战略地区的军事存在以及“人道主义干涉主义”等形式，“与老派全面的地面入侵仅作为最后手段使用，并只有在制造业获得足够的国际认可后，才能确保帝国式的权力联盟的持续凝聚力。

But the end goal is the same as that of a conventional world war: to beat the other side into submission and compliance. And, in this case, absorption into the imperial blob. After the fall of the Soviet Union, the prevailing orthodoxy in US power structures became that the US must maintain unipolar hegemony at all cost to maintain a “liberal world order” (even if it means abandoning “liberal” values whenever it’s convenient). From that point on, the agenda has been global domination and the slow, suffocating subversion of anyone who gets in the way.

但最终目标与常规世界大战的目标相同：击败对方，使其屈服并顺从。在这种情况下，吸收到帝国集团。苏联解体后，美国权力结构中盛行的正统观念变成，美国必须不惜一切代价维持单极霸权，以维持“自由的世界秩序”（即使这意味着只要方便就放弃“自由的”价值观）。从那时起，议程一直是全球统治和缓慢，窒息颠覆任何人谁得到的方式。

Point 2: Propaganda is used to move this world war along.

要点二：宣传是用来推动这场世界大战的。

The various agendas against the governments of Iran, Venezuela, Russia, Syria, China, etc. appear different and unrelated when looked at individually, and indeed you will see different political factions supporting some of these agendas but not others.

单独审视美国针对伊朗，委内瑞拉，俄罗斯，叙利亚，中国等国政府的各项议程似乎是不同且无关的。确实，您会看到不同的政治派别支持某些议程，但不支持其他议程。

The only thing unifying this slow-motion movement toward the destruction and absorption of all unabsorbed nations is carefully constructed propaganda narratives.

只有研究精心构建的宣传叙事，才能看到这场旨在摧毁和吸收所有未被吸收的国家的缓慢运动的统一性。

The way these unifying propaganda narratives operate is simple. It would never occur to rank-and-file citizens that a nation on the other side of the planet that's pretty much just doing its own thing needs to be sanctioned, subverted and brought to heel, so the imperialist oligarchs who own the political/media class make sure everyone is fed custom-made narratives according to their own ideological echo chamber to prevent any domestic inertia from being thrown on these agendas.

这些统一的宣传故事的运作方式很简单。普通民众永远不会想到，地球另一边的一个国家，几乎只是在做自己的事情，需要被制裁、颠覆和践踏，因此，拥有政治/媒体阶层的帝国主义寡头确保每个人都能根据自己的意识形态回音室获得定制的叙述，以防止任何国内惰性被抛到这些议程上。

If you can understand points one and two, you can understand everything that's happening with China, and everything that will continue to happen. Propaganda narratives will be rolled out with increasing aggression which have the long-term goal of alienating China from its allies, hurting its economic interests, and preventing its rise to true superpower status and creating a multipolar world.

如果你能理解第一点和第二点，你就能理解中国正在发生的一切，以及将继续发生的一切。宣传叙事将随着侵略的增加而展开，侵略的长期目标是疏远中国与盟国的关系，损害中国的经济利益，阻止中国崛起为真正的超级大国，建立一个多极世界。

And the funny thing is, none of this is necessary. Westerners have been deliberately propagandized into believing that China wants to take over the world and will do so unless kept in line by the United States, which has surrounded China with military bases in an act of extreme aggression that the US itself would never tolerate from any unabsorbed government. But if you really grill people on how they know that China wants to take over the world, you'll find they don't have any substantial evidence for it...

有趣的是，这些都不是必要的。西方人被故意宣传相信中国想接管世界，除非美国保持一致，否则他们会这样做。美国以军事基地包围中国，采取极端侵略行动，美国自己绝不能容忍任何一个没有吸收的政府。但如果你真的盘问人们，他们是如何知道中国想要接管世界的，你会发现他们没有任何实质性的证据证明这一点...

They won't be able to produce any actual, hard evidence that China is trying to take over the world and censor your internet and take away your rights, because no such evidence exists. It's a completely empty belief arising from aggressive narrative manipulation.

他们将无法提供任何真实、确凿的证据，证明中国正试图接管世界，审查你的互联网，剥夺你的权利，因为没有这样的证据存在。这是一个完全空洞的信仰，源自于激进的叙事手法。

"One myth I think really that needs to be dispelled is that somehow China is aiming to replace America and going to run the world, and it's not," said Chinese venture capitalist and social scientist Eric Li on the John Pilger documentary *The Coming War on China*. "First of all, the Chinese are not that stupid. The West, with its Christian roots, are about converting other people into their beliefs. The Chinese are not about that. It's just that — again, I'm not degrading the Western culture, I'm just pointing out the inherent nature, the DNA of two different cultures — the Chinese two thousand years ago built the Great Wall to keep the barbarians out, not to invade them."

中国风险投资家和社会科学家埃里克·李（Eric Li）在约翰·皮尔格（John Pilger）的纪录片《即将到来的中国战争》（*the Coming War on China*）中说：“我认为真正需要消除的一个神话是，不知何故，中国的目标是取代美国，统治世界，而事实并非如此。”“首先，中国人没那么傻。西方有着基督教的根基，是要把其他人转变成他们的信仰。中国人不在乎这个。这只是两种不同文化的 DNA——中国人两千年前修建长城是为了把野蛮人挡在外面，而不是为了入侵他们。”

I'd say this is a reasonable summary. After European nations tried to conquer the planet just a few generations ago in the name of spreading Christianity and "civilization," we're projecting our sick vestigial colonialist values on a nation whose culture never drove it to such madness.

我认为这是一个合理的总结。就在几代前，欧洲国家以传播基督教和“文明”的名义试图征服地球之后，我们正在把我们病态的残余殖民主义价值观投射到一个国家身上，这个国家的文化从未使它如此疯狂。

<https://www.rt.com/op-ed/489362-us-propaganda-china-like-nazi-germany>

<https://caitlinjohnstone.com>

There are efforts towards making peace, but none of the corporate-owned mainstream media (MSM) will report on them. War for the United States has always been good business.

我们正在努力实现和平，但是没有一家公司拥有的主流媒体（MSM）对此进行报道。战争一直是美国的好生意。但是，这种趋势是否会继续下去是另一个问题。中国和伊朗不是阿富汗和伊拉克。

The Bouficha Appeal 布菲卡上诉

Fortunately, there are good people in the world who are working to promote peace and stop the infinitely cruel and evil American war machine.

幸运的是，世界上有善良的人们正在努力促进和平，阻止无限残酷和邪恶的美国战争机器。

A Universal Appeal for Humanity to End Militarism and Stop War, by Abdallah El Harif and Vijay Prashad, May 20, 2020

一个呼吁人类结束军国主义和停止战争的普遍呼吁，由阿卜杜拉·哈里夫和维杰·普拉沙德，2020年5月20日

A bloc of countries, led by the United States of America, is stubbornly persisting in using force to maintain and extend their global dominance.

以美利坚合众国为首的一个国家集团顽固地坚持使用武力来维持和扩大其全球主导地位。

Now, 70 years later, the nuclear arsenal is far more lethal, and the conventional weapons themselves dwarf the atom bomb that was dropped by the United States on Hiroshima and Nagasaki in 1945. In 1950, there were 304 nuclear warheads (299 in the United States), while now there are 13,355 warheads; and each of the 2020 warheads is far more destructive than those from the early years of this terrible technology. Something like the Stockholm Appeal is imperative now.

70年后的今天，核武库的杀伤力要大得多，而常规武器本身也使1945年美国在广岛和长崎投下的原子弹相形见绌。1950年，有304枚核弹头（美国有299枚），而现在有13355枚核弹头；2020年的每一枚核弹头的破坏力都远远超过这项可怕技术早期的那些核弹头。像“斯德哥尔摩呼吁”这样的事情现在势在必行。

To call for a ban on weapons of mass destruction is not an abstract issue; it is one that points directly toward a bloc of countries, led by the United States of America, that is stubbornly persisting in using force to maintain and extend their global dominance. In the midst of this global pandemic, the United States threatens to deepen conflicts with China, Iran, and Venezuela, including moving a naval carrier group to effectively embargo Venezuelan ports and moving ships into the Persian Gulf to challenge the right of Iranian boats to international waters; meanwhile, the United States has said it will position aggressive missile batteries and anti-missile radar arrays in a ring around China. None of these countries—China, Iran, and Venezuela—have made any aggressive move against the United States; it is the United States that has imposed a conflict on these countries. If an appeal is to be drafted now, it cannot be made in an anemic, universal fashion.

呼吁禁止大规模毁灭性武器并不是一个抽象的问题；而是一个直接指向以美利坚合众国为首、顽固坚持使用武力维持和扩大其全球主导地位的国家集团的问题。在这场全球大流行病中，美国有可能加深与中国、伊朗和委内瑞拉的冲突，包括移动一个海军航母集团以有效封锁委内瑞拉港口，并将船只移入波斯湾，挑战伊朗船只进入国际水域的权利；同时，美国表示，将在中国周边地区部署攻击性导弹电池和反导雷达阵列。这些国家中，中国、伊朗和委内瑞拉都没有对美国采取任何侵略性行动；正是美国对这些国家施加了冲突。如果现在要起草上诉，就不能以一种贫乏、普遍的方式提出。

Any call for peace in our time must specifically be a call against the imperialist warmongering that emanates from—but is not only authored by—Washington, D.C.

任何要求和平的呼吁都必须具体地说是反对来自（但不仅是由）华盛顿特区的帝国主义战争贩子。

Our assessment of the imposition of a state of a war by the United States relies upon four points:

我们对美国实施战争状态的评估依赖于四点：

1. The United States already has the largest military arsenal and the widest military footprint in the world. According to the most recent data, the U.S. government spent at least \$732 billion in 2019 on its military; we say “at least” because there are secret disbursements of funds to the massive intelligence wings that are not publicly available. From 2018 to 2019, the United States increased its military budget by 5.3 percent, the amount of which is the same as the total German military budget. Almost 40 percent of global military spending is done by the United States. The United States has a combined total of more than 500 military bases in almost every country on the planet. The United States Navy has 20 of the world’s 44 active aircraft carriers, while other U.S. allies have 21 of them; this means that the U.S. and its allied states have 41 of the 44 aircraft carriers (China has two and Russia has one). There is no question about the overwhelming superiority of U.S. military force.

美国已经拥有世界上最大的军事武库和最广泛的军事足迹。根据最新数据，美国政府在 2019 年的军费开支至少为 7320 亿美元；我们之所以说“至少”，是因为有秘密资金拨付给庞大的情报部门，而这些资金并没有公开。从 2018 年到 2019 年，美国增加了 5.3% 的军事预算，其数额与德国的军事预算总额相同。全球近 40% 的军费开支由美国承担。美国在地球上几乎每个国家总共有 500 多个军事基地。美国海军拥有全球 44 艘现役航空母舰中的 20 艘，而其他美国盟国拥有其中的 21 艘；这意味着美国及其盟国拥有 44 艘航空母舰中的 41 艘（中国有两艘，俄罗斯有一艘）。美国军队的压倒性优势是毫无疑问的。

2. Yet, the United States is now using its full ability to expand its nuclear and conventional domination into space and into cyber-warfare with its Space Command (re-established in 2019) and Cyber Command (created in 2009). The United States has developed an interceptor ballistic missile (SM-3) that it has tested in space, and it is testing such fanciful weapons as particle-beam weaponry, plasma-based weaponry, and kinetic bombardment. In 2017, Trump announced his government's commitment to such new weaponry. The U.S. government will spend at least \$481 billion between 2018 and 2024 to develop new advanced weapons systems, including autonomous vehicles, counter-drones, cyber-weapons, and robotics. The U.S. Army has already tested its Advanced Hypersonic Weapon that can travel at Mach 5 (five times the speed of sound), so that it can reach any place on earth within an hour; this weapon is part of the U.S. military's Conventional Prompt Global Strike program.

然而，美国现在正利用其全部能力，通过其太空指挥部（2019 年重建）和网络指挥部（2009 年创建），将其核和常规控制扩展到太空和网络战。美国研制了一种拦截弹道导弹（SM-3），并在太空进行了试验，目前正在试验粒子束武器、等离子体武器和动能轰击等奇特武器。2017 年，特朗普宣布了他的政府对这种新型武器的承诺。美国政府将在 2018 年至 2024 年间投入至少 4810 亿美元，用于研发新型先进武器系统，包括自主车辆、反无人机、网络武器和机器人技术。美国陆军已经测试了其先进的高超音速武器，这种武器可以以 5 马赫（音速的 5 倍）的速度飞行，因此它可以在一小时内到达地球上的任何地方；这种武器是美军常规的快速全球打击计划的一部分。

3. The U.S. military complex has advanced its hybrid war program that includes a range of techniques to undermine governments and political projects. These techniques include the mobilization of United States power over international institutions (such as the International Monetary Fund and the World Bank, and the SWIFT wire service) to prevent governments from managing basic economic activity, the use of U.S. diplomatic power to isolate governments, the use of sanctions methods to prevent private companies from doing business with certain governments, the use of information warfare to render governments and political forces to be criminals or terrorists, and so on. This powerful complex of instruments is able—in the plain light of day—to destabilize governments and to justify regime change.

美国军事综合体推进了其混合战争计划，其中包括一系列破坏政府和政治项目的技术。这些技术包括调动美国对国际机构（如国际货币基金组织和世界银行，以及快速通讯社）的权力，防止政府管理基本经济活动，利用美国外交权力孤立政府，利用制裁手段阻止私人公司与某些政府做生意，利用信息战使政府和政治力量成为罪犯或恐怖分子，等等。这一强大的复杂工具能够在白天的阳光下破坏政府的稳定，并为政权更迭辩护。

4. Finally, the U.S. government along with its NATO partners as well as U.S. and European weapons manufacturers continue to flood the world with the deadliest weapons. The top five arms exporters (Lockheed Martin, Boeing, Northrop Grumman, Raytheon, and General Dynamics) are located in the United States. These five firms alone account for 35 percent of the top 100 of the world's arms dealer sales in 2018 (the most recent figures); the total U.S. arms sales account for 59 percent of all arms sales that year. This was an increase of 7.2 percent over the U.S. sales in 2017. These weapons are sold to countries that should instead spend their precious surplus on education, on health, and on food programs. For example, in West Asia and North Africa, the greatest threat to the people is not only the terrorist in his Toyota Hilux , but it is also the arms dealer in the air-conditioned hotel room.

四。最后，美国政府及其北约伙伴以及美国和欧洲的武器制造商继续向全世界提供最致命的武器。前五大武器出口国（洛克希德马丁公司、波音公司、诺斯罗普格鲁曼公司、雷神公司和通用动力公司）均位于美国。仅这五家公司就占 2018 年全球军火商销售额前 100 名（最新数据）的 35%；美国当年军火销售总额占全部军火销售总额的 59%。这比 2017 年的美国销售额增长了 7.2%。这些武器被出售给那些应该将其宝贵的盈余用于教育、卫生和粮食计划的国家。例如，在西亚北非，对人民最大的威胁不仅是他的丰田 Hilux 中的恐怖分子，而且是空调旅馆房间里的军火商。

The Stockholm Appeal is now obsolete. A new appeal is needed. We developed it while we were discussing it in Bouficha, Tunisia; let's call it the Bouficha Appeal.

斯德哥尔摩呼吁现已过时。需要一个新的呼吁。我们在突尼斯的布菲卡讨论时开发了它；我们称之为布菲卡呼吁。

We, the peoples of the world: 我们，世界各国人民：

– Stand against the warmongering of U.S. imperialism, which seeks to impose dangerous wars on an already fragile planet.

——反对美国帝国主义的战争贩子，他们企图把危险的战争强加给一个已经脆弱的星球。

– Stand against the saturation of the world with weapons of all kinds, which inflame conflicts and often drive political processes toward endless wars.

——反对世界上充斥着各种武器，这些武器会激化冲突，并经常推动政治进程走向无休止的战争。

– Stand against the use of military power to prevent the social development of the peoples of the world, to allow countries to build their sovereignty and their dignity...

——反对利用军事力量阻碍世界各国人民的社会发展，反对各国建立主权和尊严。。。

<https://blackagendareport.com/universal-appeal-humanity-end-militarism-and-stop-war> &

<https://www.counterpunch.org/2020/05/18/the-bouficha-appeal-universal-call-for-humanity-to-end-militarism-and-stop-war> &

<https://mailchi.mp/thetricontinental.org/the-bouficha-appeal-against-the-preparations-for-war-the-twenty-first-newsletter-2020?e=77bd6c9887>

But you won't find any references to the Bouficha Appeal in western Mainstream Media (MSM)!

但您在西方主流媒体（MSM）中找不到任何有关 Bouficha 上诉的参考！

War is good business for western capitalist nations. Robbery always has been good business for colonialists, slave owners, murderers and other thieves.

对于西方资本主义国家来说，战争是好生意。对于殖民主义者，奴隶主，凶手和其他盗贼，抢劫一直是一件好事。

On 18 May 1987, Hassan Hamdan (also known as Mahdi Amel) was assassinated on the streets of Beirut. Mahdi Amel remains one of the most important Marxist thinkers in the Arab world. In what appear to be decidedly bleak times, one of his most important—and most poetic—lines shine brightly for us:

1987年5月18日，哈桑·哈姆丹（又称迈赫迪·阿梅尔）在贝鲁特街头遇刺身亡。阿迈尔仍然是阿拉伯世界最重要的马克思主义思想家之一。在这段看似十分凄凉的岁月里，他最重要、最富有诗意的一句台词为我们闪耀着光芒：

You are not defeated
As long as you are resisting.

你没有被打败，
只要你反抗。

On 11 May 2020, Evelyn Hamdan, Mahdi Amel's partner and an avid reader of this newsletter, left our world. This newsletter is dedicated to our comrade Evelyn and to their children.

2020年5月11日，马赫迪·艾默尔的合伙人、本通讯的热心读者埃维林·哈姆丹离开了我们的世界。这份通讯是献给我们的艾维林同志和他们的孩子的。

<https://mronline.org/2020/05/22/the-bouficha-appeal-against-the-preparations-for-war>

The American DoD Engineered "Hate China" Virus 美国国防部设计的“讨厌中国”病毒

And who will be the next puppet of the American military industrial complex to sit in the White House and obey orders from the so-called "intelligence community?"

谁将是下一个坐在白宫服从所谓“情报界”命令的美国军工联合体傀儡？”

Trump vs. Biden: The China-Hating Contest Is on Like Donkey Kong

特朗普 vs 拜登：在美国大选中，看谁最讨厌中国的比赛正在像大金刚一样进行

Trump and Biden promise their fans a roaring hate-fest this election cycle, as they vie for the honor of defending America's right to full spectrum dominance of every corner of the globe.

特朗普和拜登向他们的粉丝承诺，在这个选举周期里，他们将举行一个轰轰烈烈的仇恨节日，因为他们将为捍卫美国在全球每个角落的全方位统治权而竞争。

"I'm not eager to see how Trump might respond to Biden's accusation that he's 'all talk and no action on China.'"

“我不急于看到特朗普可能会如何回应拜登的指责，即他'对中国进行全面对话，不采取任何行动。’”

The Trump camp is now calling Joe Biden "Beijing Joe" and "Beijing's ideal candidate," and it looks like China-hating will be the main plank of his platform. Stupid will get stupider, dangerous will get more so.

特朗普阵营现在把拜登称为“北京乔”和“北京的理想候选人”，看来仇视中国将是他的政纲的主要内容。愚蠢会变得更愚蠢，危险会变得更危险。

If there weren't US military bases and nuclear weapons scattered all over the South China Sea, it would be tempting to laugh all this off...

如果没有美国的军事基地和核武器散布在整个南中国海，人们会忍不住笑出声来...

If Russiagate is Count Dracula, then China hate is Godzilla. China is the USA's greatest economic and geostrategic competitor, and now—OMG—it's attempting to establish a military foothold off its own shores in the South China Sea. That couldn't be more incompatible with full-spectrum dominance, the US military doctrine that calls for controlling "all dimensions of the battlespace" on land, at sea, in the air, and in outer space, cyberspace, and every other imaginable space. In John Pilger's film, "The Coming War with China," historian Bruce Cumings says:

如果俄罗斯是德古拉伯爵，那么中国的仇恨就是哥斯拉。中国是美国最大的经济和地缘战略竞争对手，现在它正试图在自己的南海海岸建立军事据点。这与美国军方要求控制陆地、海上、空中、外层空间、网络空间和其他任何可以想象的空间的“作战空间的所有方面”的理论——全谱优势（full-spectrum domination）完全不相容。历史学家布鲁斯·卡明斯在约翰·皮尔格的电影《即将到来的对华战争》中说：

No ocean has ever been dominated the way the US dominates the Pacific [with its] Navy and Air Force... So, Beijing looks at a network of bases, a real archipelago of bases that's been built up since the Korean War.

从来没有哪个海洋像美国海军和空军统治太平洋那样被控制.....所以北京被一个基地网络包围，一个自朝鲜战争以来建立起来的真正的美国军事基地群岛。

Trump said he'll "hit" China harder than anyone, but one of Biden's top advisers, Jake Sullivan, told Reuters that Trump is all talk and no action, and that Biden will soon roll out policies to prove he's a more proactive China hater than Trump.

特朗普说，他将比任何人都更“打击”中国，但拜登的一位高级顾问杰克·沙利文（Jake Sullivan）对路透社表示，特朗普只会说话，不会采取行动，拜登很快就会推出政策，证明他比特朗普更积极主动地憎恨中国。

All this feeds the military industrial complex, which has a simple logic all its own. If deadlier weapons can be manufactured, we must manufacture them because if we don't someone else will. And space is infinite, so we can't cease our efforts to dominate it. Plus we all make more money this way.

所有这些都为军工综合体提供了养分，而军工综合体本身就有简单的逻辑。如果能制造出更致命的武器，我们就必须制造它们，因为如果我们不能制造出致命的武器，别人就会制造出来。空间是无限的，所以我们不能停止控制它的努力。另外，我们都通过这种方式赚更多的钱。

Researchers at Carnegie Mellon University's Language Technologies Institute found that most political candidates use words and grammar typical of students in grades six through eight, but Donald Trump lags behind the rest. "Of the past fifteen U.S. presidents," they concluded, "President Trump has demonstrated the lowest level of spoken literacy."

卡内基梅隆大学语言技术研究所的研究人员发现，大多数政治候选人使用的词汇和语法是六到八年级学生的典型特征，但唐纳德·特朗普落后于其他人。“在过去的 15 位美国总统中，”他们总结道，“特朗普总统的口语素养是最低的。”

Can Joe Biden take us to new depths by matching Trump's China-hating belligerence with more of the same plus his own cognitive decline? He seems to be trying to summon the energy, despite his curious seclusion in Delaware, or at least his handlers are.

乔·拜登能否通过将特朗普憎恨中国的好战性与更多同样的好战性以及他自己认知能力的下降相匹配，把我们带到新的深度？尽管他好奇地隐居在特拉华州，或者至少他的管理者们是这样，但他似乎在试图召唤能量。

I'm not eager to see how Trump might respond to Biden's accusation that he's "all talk and no action on China," especially now that Trump has the new tactical, "usable" nuclear weapons that were part of his Nuclear Posture Review, and he's repeatedly said that he can't see why he shouldn't use them. They include the new W76-2 low-yield Trident submarine warhead, with a mere 5-kiloton explosive yield—as opposed to the 150-ton destroyer of worlds. The W76-2s are now deployed on US nuclear subs, and there are so many of those in the South China Sea that the Defense News warns of a crisis. It seems there may soon be so many US and Chinese warships there that they risk ramming into one another "inadvertently."

我并不急于看到特朗普会如何回应拜登的指责，他“对中国只说不做”，特别是现在特朗普拥有了新的战术性、可使用的核武器，这是他核态势评估的一部分，他一再表示，他看不出他为什么不应该使用这些武器。其中包括新的 W76-2 低产三叉戟潜艇弹头，与 150 吨级的世界级驱逐舰相比，它的爆炸当量只有 5 千吨。W76-2 现在部署在美国的核潜艇上，南海的核潜艇数量之多，以至于《防务新闻》发出危机警告。似乎很快就会有那么多美国和中国军舰在那里，他们冒着“不经意间”撞上对方的风险

<https://blackagenda.com/trump-vs-biden-china-hating-contest-donkey-kong>

The “Great Game” “伟大的游戏”

To a sane person with a moral conscience comparing sowing hatred in anticipation of destroying a nation and potentially killing millions of human beings to a computer game is unthinkable. It's infinitely cruel and evil. It's trivializing genocide. And, it's the American way. It's a successful strategy used during the entire history of the United States. It's a strategy the American government learned from the British. The British call it “The Great Game.” But, it's not a “game” to the targets, the innocent victims of the colonizers. It's not a game to the mothers who hold their dead babies in their arms, the children whose arms and legs are blown off by bombs, the survivors who must live haunted by the blood and horror of western hegemony and their “great game.”

“金刚驴”是一系列视频游戏，讲述了 1981 年宫本茂构思的一个名叫金刚驴的大猩猩角色的冒险经历。对于一个有道德良知的理智的人来说，用一个电脑游戏来比较在毁灭一个国家、潜在地杀死数百万人的预期中播种仇恨是不可想象的。它是无限残忍和邪恶的。它使种族灭绝看起来微不足道，就像一场游戏。而且，这是美国的方式。这是整个美国历史上成功的战略。这是美国政府从英国人那里学到的策略。英国人称之为“伟大的游戏”，但是，这并不是针对殖民主义者无辜受害者的“游戏”。对于那些抱着死去婴儿的母亲，那些胳膊和腿被炸弹炸掉的孩子，那些必须生活在西方霸权和他们的“伟大游戏”的血腥和恐怖中的幸存者来说，这不是一场游戏

Meanwhile Chinese students who dreamed of university study in the US had better think again. At the time of this writing COVID-19 is rampaging around the USA with the same animal ferocity as the China hating rhetoric coming from Washington DC. True, most Americans don't really believe it all, but, hating large groups of people is something that has profited Americans during the past 244 years of American history. It appears to be almost reflexive, something done without thought. In some ways it's like a beer commercial during an NBA game: An entertaining break during the entertainment.

同时，那些梦想在美国上大学的中国学生最好再想想。在写这篇文章的时候，COVID-19 正以同样的动物凶残横行于美国各地，就像来自华盛顿特区的憎恨中国的言论一样。诚然，大多数美国人并不完全相信这一点，但是，在过去 244 年的美国历史中，憎恨一大群人让美国人受益匪浅。它看起来几乎是反射性的，没有经过思考就完成了。在某种程度上，这就像 NBA 比赛中的啤酒广告：娱乐期间的娱乐休息。

“Let's forget about COVID-19 for a while and enjoy some China bashing!” In fact, hated is like an addictive drug. It elicits excitement and is a prelude to war. Tragically, for most Americans, wars are just another form of entertainment. This is the product of the American “Department of Defense,” objectives, centuries of using the “Transfer of Savagery,” and the corporate-controlled Mainstream Media (MSM).

“让我们暂时忘掉 COVID-19，享受一下痛击中国吧！”事实上，仇恨就像一种上瘾的毒品。它引起了人们的兴奋，是战争的前奏。可悲的是，对大多数美国人来说，战争只是另一种娱乐形式。这是美国“国防部”的产物，目标，几百年来使用“野蛮人的转移”，以及企业控制的主流媒体（MSM）。

Language Toolbox - Similes and Metaphors 语言工具箱-明喻和隐喻

Analogy - 比喻 bǐyù & 比方 bǐfang

Simile - 明喻 míngyù

Metaphor - 比喻 bǐyù & 隐喻 yǐnyù

Simile and Metaphors are descriptive tools that help breathe life into written text and spoken language. They can provide strong images and personalize otherwise potentially abstract concepts.

明喻和隐喻是一种描述性工具，有助于在书面语和口语中注入生命。它们可以为其他潜在的抽象概念提供强大的图像和个性化。

An example of a **simile** is: “The American empire’s foreign policy (like the British empire before it) **is like an insatiable predatory beast.**”

一个**明喻**就是：美帝国主义的外交政策（就像之前的英帝国一样）就像是永不满足的掠夺性野兽。”

An example of a **metaphor** is: The American empire's foreign policy is an insatiable predatory beast.

一个隐喻的例子是当我写道：美国帝国的外交政策是一个贪得无厌的掠食者。

Probably the most popular examples of the use of similes and metaphor is the following:

以下是使用明喻和隐喻的最流行示例：

Simile is when I say **you are like** a pig. 明喻就是我说你像猪一样。

Metaphor is when I say **you are** a pig. 隐喻是我说你是猪。

Both similes and metaphors are examples of the use of “analogy.”

明喻和隐喻都是使用“类比”的例子。

American military aggression is far worse than any predatory animal.

美国的军事侵略比任何掠夺性动物都要严重得多。

Predatory animals are part of the natural food chain. They kill to eat and are an indispensable part of the balance of nature.

食肉动物是自然食物链的一部分。它们为了吃而杀人，是自然界平衡不可或缺的一部分。

American foreign military aggression is not to provide food, nor is it part of any natural ecosystem. Because American weapons of mass destruction (including nuclear, biological and chemical weapons) have the potential to extinguish all life on earth, American foreign aggression is more like a cancerous growth than a natural predator.

美国的对外军事侵略不是为了提供食物，也不是任何自然生态系统的一部分。由于美国的大规模杀伤性武器（包括核武器、生物武器和化学武器）有可能消灭地球上的所有生命，美国的对外侵略更像是一种癌症的增长，而不是一种自然的掠食者。

To compare American foreign military aggression to a predatory animal is an insult to predatory animals.

把美国的对外军事侵略比作掠夺性动物是对掠夺性动物的侮辱。

Challenge question: Which classical Greek writer was most famous for writing **analogous** stories for children?

[Aesop's Fables 伊索寓言]

挑战问题： 哪位希腊古典作家最著名的作品是儿童类比故事？

In the year 2020 the world faces many challenges. Some are old challenges, some new. Below is some essential vocabulary needed to begin to understand these challenges.

在 2020 年 5 月 1 日劳动节，世界面临许多挑战。有些是老挑战，有些是新挑战。下面是开始理解这些挑战所需的一些基本词汇。

Vocabulary 词汇

Language (lang-gwuhj) (语言 Yǔyán)

Vehicle (vee-uh-kl) (车辆 Chēliàng)

Peace (pi:s) – (和平 Héping) Synonyms(代名词 Dàimíngcí): harmony, tranquility, calm – the opposite (相反的) of conflict (冲突)

War (wor) – (战争 Zhànzhēng) fighting and killing between large groups of people using weapons (使用武器的大集团之间的战斗和杀戮)

Meaningful (mee-neeng-fl) –有意义的 has value greater than money and power. An activity or thing that transcends materialistic importance. (超越物质重要性的活动或事物。)

Devote (duh-vowt) - (致力于 Zhìlì yú) to focus your attention or activity on something of great importance

Balance of nature -自然平衡 (Zìrán pínghéng) Ecosystem integrity (生态系统的完整性)

Capitalism (ka-puh-tuh-li-zm) – (资本主义 zīběn zhǔyì) a political and economic system designed to produce profit (without regards to human life or needs) 一种旨在产生利润（不考虑人类生活或需求）的政治和经济体系

Socialism (sow-shuh-li-zm) – (社会主义 Shèhuì zhǔyì) A political and economic system between the fall of capitalism and the realization of Communism.

Communism (ko-myuh-ni-zm) – (共产主义 Gòngchǎn zhǔyì) A political and economic system in which each person contributes and receives according to their ability and needs. (每个人根据自己的能力和需要做出贡献和接受的政治和经济体系。) Most property is owned by the community (but of course, people can own their own precious things. [大多数财产归社区所有（当然，人们可以拥有自己的贵重物品）])

Bridge (bridj) – (桥 Qiáo) A structure across a valley, river, road or other obstacle. Example: “Today is a bridge between yesterday and tomorrow.”

Wild deer (waild dyer) – (野鹿 yě lù) Deer that grew up free, in nature

Berries (beh-reez) – (浆果 Jiāngguǒ)

Fulfill (fōol'fil) - (履行 Lǚxíng) To do something until it is complete

Potential (puh-ten-shl) – (潜力 qiánli) Some innate capacity that has not yet been developed. 尚未开发的一些先天能力。

Labor (lei-buh; leɪbə(r)) (spelled “labour” in British English): (劳动[láo dòng]) Work – “Labor party” (劳动党) is a political party designed to help the workers, not just the owners of companies.

Slavery (Noun 名词; 这个概念: 奴隶制 Núlì zhì) Slave (一个人– the person 奴隶 Núlì)

Colonialism (Noun 名词; 这个概念) 殖民主义, (“Colony” the place 这个地方: 殖民地)

Cautious Optimism 谨慎乐观

Should Chinese youth be scared of the awesome military power of the United States and its allies? The USA is flooding the South China Sea with nuclear submarines. Likewise, the US has the “Asian Tigers,” South Korea, Taiwan, Japan and the Philippines fully weaponized. The US has also weaponized radical elements in Hong Kong, Xinjiang and Tibet, and no doubt has “secret cells” of revolutionaries in all major Chinese cities waiting for the “green light” from the CIA.

中国的年轻人应该害怕美国及其盟友的强大军事力量吗？美国正在南中国海填充核潜艇和战列舰。同样，美国也拥有“亚洲虎国”，韩国、台湾、日本和菲律宾的武器装备齐全。美国还武装了香港、新疆和西藏的激进分子。中情局在中国所有主要城市都有中国革命者（叛徒）的“秘密牢房”，等待发动“民主”革命。他们在等待中情局的命令。中情局就是这样工作的。他们的方法论没有例外。

Is this something to worry about? 这种情况值得担心吗？

It sounds pretty bad; terrible in fact. 听起来很糟糕。

There are several issues here. 这里有几个问题。

1. First, some really good news: Most people are not idiots! Most people in the world want the same things. Only a very small percentage of people profit from war. Most people in the world are totally disgusted with American wars.

首先，有个好消息：大多数人都不是白痴！世界上大多数人都想要同样的东西。只有极少数的人从战争中获利。世界上大多数人都对美国战争感到厌恶。

2. Second, it doesn't matter if China is socialist or a democracy. The US attacks and destroys democracies just the same as any other form of government. They overthrew many democracies in Latin America since the 1980s, and most recently in Bolivia. It is the growing size of the Chinese economy that has made China a target, not its form of government. That China is socialist is just an excuse to attack China. It is true however that China has prospered enormously because of Socialist principles.

第二，中国是社会主义国家还是民主国家并不重要。美国经常攻击和摧毁民主政体。自 20 世纪 80 年代以来，他们推翻了拉丁美洲的许多民主政体，最近一次是在玻利维亚。埃及过去是一个民主国家。中情局使用学生示威者在埃及（与香港一样）摧毁埃及民选政府，并派了一名美国傀儡独裁者。正是中国经济规模的不断扩大，使中国成为一个目标，而不是其政府形式。中国是社会主义国家只是攻击中国的借口。然而，由于社会主义的原则，中国确实取得了巨大的繁荣。

3. The Asian Tiger countries do not hate or fear China. They too are disgusted with and horrified at American endless deadly wars. I taught English at the South Korean military headquarters for four years (2005-2009) and had a lot of time to get to know the military officers there. One question I asked on several occasions is: “Are you more worried about Japan, or China? The answer was always the same: They were much more worried about attack from Japan. They do not want or like war.

美国“亚洲虎”国家不恨也不怕中国。他们也对美国发动的无休止的残酷邪恶战争感到厌恶和恐惧。我在韩国军事总部教了四年英语（2005-2009），有很多时间去了解那里的军官。我曾多次问过一个问题：“你更担心日本，还是中国？答案总是一样的：他们更担心来自日本的袭击。他们不想或不喜欢战争。

4. All of the “Asian Tiger” nations have suffered enormously from the obscene and insane abuse of power by the United States. The only time nuclear weapons have been used was against the defenseless cities of Hiroshima and Nagasaki, after Japan had already lost the war. I doubt the Japanese have forgotten that. None of the Asian Tigers are led by idiots. Like most people they will follow the money and try to do best for their people. That means supporting business and trade. The USA is only pursuing the business of killing, and that’s not good business for anyone, except the USA.

所有“亚洲虎”国家都因美国的淫秽和疯狂滥用权力而遭受了巨大的痛苦。唯一一次使用核武器是在日本已经输掉战争之后，针对没有防御能力的广岛和长崎。日本人没有忘记对无辜者的大屠杀。亚洲虎都不是白痴领导的。像大多数人一样，他们会跟着钱走，尽力为他们的人民做最好的事情。这意味着支持商业和贸易。美国正在扼杀国际贸易。美国只追求杀戮，这对任何人都不好，除了美国。

5. Europeans, like everyone else in the world are totally disgusted with American abuse of power and endless wars. The American administration and CIA have been bullying them too. Like everyone else in the world they hate it!

欧洲人和世界上其他人一样，对美国滥用权力和无休止的战争感到十分厌恶。美国政府和中央情报局也一直在欺负欧洲人。他们-和其他人一样-真的讨厌这样！

6. In most respects, the USA is isolated like never before in its history. Nobody trusts or likes the political ambitions of the USA. The American efforts to demonize China are backfiring.

在大多数方面，美国现在都是孤立的，比历史上任何时候都要孤立。没有人相信或喜欢美国的政治野心。美国妖魔化中国的努力适得其反。没有人相信美国政府的任何谎言。

“The Boy Who Cried Wolf” is one of Aesop's Fables that teaches a valuable lesson. This is a lesson American foreign policy planners have not yet learned.

“哭泣的男孩狼”是伊索寓言中的一门，该课讲授了宝贵的一课。这是美国外交政策规划者尚未吸取的教训。

7. Everyone except politicians in Washington DC and CIA headquarters in Langley Virginia knows that China has done nothing wrong. For example, Huawei phones are not diabolical spy devices of the Chinese government. Those are lies and the US sanctioning countries that do business with Huawei is a violation of World Trade Organization “fair trade” laws. Likewise, there is not one atom of evidence that the novel Coronavirus came from a Chinese lab. In fact, evidence is mounting that this virus was circulating in the US before it was identified in China.

除了华盛顿特区的政客和弗吉尼亚州兰利的中情局总部，每个人都知道中国没有做错什么。例如，华为手机并不是中国政府的邪恶间谍设备。这些都是谎言，美国制裁与华为做生意的国家违反了世界贸易组织（WTO）的“公平贸易”法律。没有证据表明这种新型冠状病毒来自中国实验室。实际上，越来越多的证据表明，这种病毒是在中国发现之前在美国传播的。

8. The United States invasion of Afghanistan of 7 October 2001 led to a 19-year war that the USA is losing. The Taliban in 2020 controls a little more than half the country. In 2019 the UNDP ranked Afghanistan's development in the low "human development category," positioning it at 170 out of 189 countries and territories. The US has spent more than \$2 trillion dollars on that war. Despite being the "most powerful nation in the world," the US has failed in most of its wars and attempts to topple government in recent decades. They keep trying to overthrow the government of Venezuela, and keep failing. In terms of Human Development Index Venezuela ranked 96 out of 189 countries and territories in 2019.

http://hdr.undp.org/sites/all/themes/hdr_theme/country-notes/AFG.pdf

http://hdr.undp.org/sites/all/themes/hdr_theme/country-notes/VEN.pdf

2001年10月7日美国入侵阿富汗，导致了美国正在输掉的19年战争。塔利班在2020年控制了略多于一半的国家。2019年，联合国开发计划署将阿富汗的发展列为低“人类发展类别”，在189个国家和地区中，阿富汗的发展为170个。美国在那场战争上花费了超过2万亿美元。尽管美国是“世界上最强大的国家”，但近几十年来，美国的大部分战争和推翻政府的企图都以失败告终。他们一直试图推翻委内瑞拉政府，但一直失败。根据人类发展指数，委内瑞拉在2019年189个国家和地区中排名96位。

9. The only question now for the United States is "will it even remain in the "world leadership club" after its current insanities are completed?" There has never been a pan-global alliance before yet the United States is forming one - against itself - via its absolute abuse of power. Is the United States going to descend into anarchy, violence and ultimate poverty and isolation? If the USA continues along its current path, that will be the inevitable conclusion of its endless aggression. This will not be something foreigners did to the USA. This will be something the USA has done to itself.

美国现在唯一的问题是：在目前的疯狂行为结束后，它还会继续留在“世界领袖俱乐部”吗？“以前从未有过一个泛全球联盟，但美国正通过绝对滥用权力形成一个反对自己的联盟。美国会陷入无政府状态、暴力、极端贫困和孤立吗？如果美国继续沿着目前的道路前进，那将是其无休止侵略的必然结果。这不是外国人对美国做的事，而是美国对自己做的事。

All the above does not mean the Chinese government and people should just relax. Nations that desire peace should prepare for war. American intelligence operations in and around China should be fought vigorously. When and where diplomacy is possible, it should be used first. When that doesn't work, other means will be required which come under the auspices of "law enforcement."

这并不意味着中国政府 and 人民应该放松。渴望和平的国家应该为战争做好准备。美国在中国及其周边地区的情报行动应该积极打击。何时何地有可能进行外交，应首先使用外交手段。当这不起作用时，将需要“执法”主持下的其他手段

My general advice to most people confronting psychopathic bullies is to be healthy, flexible and strong, think critically before believing anything, be fully prepared for attack at any time, and remain cautiously optimistic.

当面对精神变态的欺负时，我对大多数人的一般建议是：

健康、灵活、坚强；在相信任何事情之前要有批判性的思考；随时做好防御任何攻击的充分准备，保持谨慎乐观。

你并不孤单。世界各地的绝大多数人也讨厌恶霸。

Funny English Expression: “Lies like a rug!” 有趣的英语表达：像地毯一样的谎言！

In English the word “lie” can mean: 在英文中，“谎言”一词的意思是：

False statement, falsehood, deception, untruth (说谎 shuōhuǎng) OR 要么

To recline, prostrate, resting flat on a surface (躺 tǎng ; 斜靠 xiéào; 倒 dǎo ; 睡 shuì)

Examples

He lies all the time! = He always tells lies. 他总是撒谎！他总是说谎。

A rug lies on the floor. 地毯躺在地板上。

Rugs always lie on the floor. 地毯总是躺在地板上。

So, the expression: “He lies like a rug!” Means: He lies all the time!

所以，表情是：“他像地毯一样躺着！”意思是：他总是撒谎！

Quiz question: Is the phrase “He lies like a rug,” a simile or a metaphor?

[It’s a simile.]

Language is a Vehicle 语言是一种载体

Language is a vehicle like a car or an airplane. The question is: Where do we want to go? For the children of the wealthy maybe it’s some good university in the west. For the poor, we want self-determination and human dignity; education and meaningful jobs. To get these things we need language. And, English is the international language.

语言是汽车或飞机之类的交通工具。问题是：我们要去哪里？对于有钱人的孩子来说，也许是西方的一所好大学。对于穷人，我们需要自决和人的尊严；教育和有意义的工作。为了获得这些东西，我们需要语言。自第二次世界大战以来，英语一直是国际语言。因此，我们需要英语。

So, I wrote this book. It’s for everyone. I wrote it hoping to wake people up. Half of the world is suffering. But that suffering is hidden by the rich. The rich only want to get richer. So, they steal from the poor. And the poor starve to death and die of diseases. Nine million people die because of hunger every year. Twice as many die from diseases. They don’t even know the names of the diseases.

所以，我写这本书。这是给每个人的。但是，我写这封信是想唤醒人们。半个世界都在受苦。但这种痛苦是富人隐藏的。富人只想变得更富有。所以，他们偷穷人的东西。穷人饿死，死于疾病。每年有 900 万人死于饥饿。死于疾病的人数是前者的两倍。他们甚至不知道这些疾病的名字。

<https://www.theworldcounts.com/challenges/people-and-poverty/hunger-and-obesity/how-many-people-die-from-hunger-each-year>

But, it doesn’t have to be this way. Change is possible.

但是，不一定是这样。改变是可能的。

Many avenues for change. One of the most important is education.

改变的途径很多。其中最重要的是教育。

Is there a law that says English as a Foreign Language (EFL) textbooks must be boring? It seems so. The beauty of language is dissected like a corpse and delivered to students in broken fragments as sharp as glass. "Here, eat this," the mostly well-intentioned teachers say to their eager young students.

有没有法律规定英语作为外语（EFL）的教科书一定很无聊？似乎是这样。语言的美像一具尸体一样被解剖，并以玻璃般锋利的碎块送给学生。“来，吃这个，”大多数好心的老师对他们热切的年轻学生说。

“How are you?”

“I’m fine!” (OMG! So boring! Better would be: Excellent! Terrific! Wonderful! Or Terrible... horrible, awful, or maybe “too busy lately,” or perhaps, happy..., sad..., angry... and so on.)

Bird’s Eye View of This Book 这本书的鸟瞰图

This Preface is necessary to understand the rest of the book. It’s like the foundation of a building. There are some fundamental truths in this world that must be understood for people to have the motivation to try to make a better world.

这篇序言对理解这本书的其余部分是必要的。它就像建筑物的基础。这个世界上有一些基本的真理必须被理解，人们才能有动力去努力创造一个更美好的世界。

Chapter 1 in this book briefly discusses reading from various perspectives. Chapter 2 introduces various kinds of writing skills organized by text-types (e.g. personal journal, standard essay, hard and feature news articles, instructions, formal letters, etc.), focusing on developing greater inner awareness and social egalitarianism.

本书的第一章从不同的角度简要地讨论了阅读。第二章介绍了按文本类型组织的各种写作技巧（如个人日记、标准文章、硬特写新闻文章、说明、正式信函等），重点是培养更大的内在意识和社会平等。

The following chapters deal with some major philosophies and religions of the world as they represent the first great “Peace Guidelines” in history, and then there are quick very basic introductions to capitalism, socialism and communism followed by conflict resolution strategies, counseling, current armed conflicts in the world, humanitarian aid organizations, diplomacy and finally utopias in history and today.

以下几章论述了世界上一些主要的哲学和宗教，因为它们代表了历史上第一个伟大的“和平指导方针”，然后是对资本主义、社会主义和共产主义的快速非常基本的介绍，接着是解决冲突的战略、咨询、目前世界上的武装冲突、人道主义援助组织，外交，最后是历史上和今天的乌托邦。

Global Health Report 全球健康报告

HIV, Polio, Ebola, Dengue Fever, Yellow Fever, are rising. Nine million people a year die of starvation.

每年死于艾滋病毒、小儿麻痹症、埃博拉、登革热、黄热病的人数正在上升。每年有九百万人死于饥饿。

Resistance to HIV drugs 抗 HIV 药物

Kigali, 6 December 2019 – “Growing resistance to HIV drugs in Africa is threatening the significant progress made in the global fight against the virus.”

基加利，2019 年 12 月 6 日—“非洲对艾滋病毒药物的抗药性不断增强，威胁着全球抗击艾滋病毒斗争取得的重大进展。”

<https://www.afro.who.int/news/who-unveils-plan-tackle-rising-hiv-drug-resistance-africa>

Polio outbreaks in several countries in Africa 非洲几个国家爆发小儿麻痹症

Angola, Benin, Cameroon, Central African Republic, Chad, Democratic Republic of the Congo, Ethiopia, Ghana, Mozambique, Niger, Nigeria, Somalia, Togo, Zambia

安哥拉、贝宁、喀麦隆、中非共和国、乍得、刚果民主共和国、埃塞俄比亚、加纳、莫桑比克、尼日尔、尼日利亚、索马里、多哥、赞比亚

<https://wwwnc.cdc.gov/travel/notices/alert/polio-africa>

14 countries seem like more than “several,” the word used on the CDC Internet site.

14 个国家似乎不止“几个”，这个词用在疾控中心的网站上。

Polio outbreaks in several countries in Asia 亚洲几个国家爆发小儿麻痹症

<https://wwwnc.cdc.gov/travel/notices/alert/polio-asia>

Resurgence of Ebola virus disease 埃博拉病毒病死灰复燃

“Eleven new confirmed cases were reported from 11 to 17 December in the ongoing Ebola virus disease (EVD) outbreak in North Kivu and Ituri provinces. The confirmed cases in this week were reported from three health areas in three health zones: Mabalako (82%, n=9), Biena (9%, n=1), and Butembo (9%, n=1). This is the first confirmed case in Butembo Health Zone in 54 days.”

“12 月 11 日至 17 日，在北基伍省和伊图里省正在爆发的埃博拉病毒病中，报告了 11 例新的确诊病例。本周确诊病例来自三个健康区的三个健康区：Mabalako（82%，n=9）、Biena（9%，n=1）和 Butembo（9%，n=1）。这是布滕博健康区 54 天来首次确诊病例。”

<https://www.who.int/csr/don/19-december-2019-ebola-drc/en>

Measles – Global situation 麻疹-全球形势

Disease outbreak news, 27 November 2019

“Many countries around the world are experiencing measles outbreaks. As of 5 November 2019, there have been 413,308 confirmed cases reported to WHO through official monthly reporting by 187 Member States in 2019.”

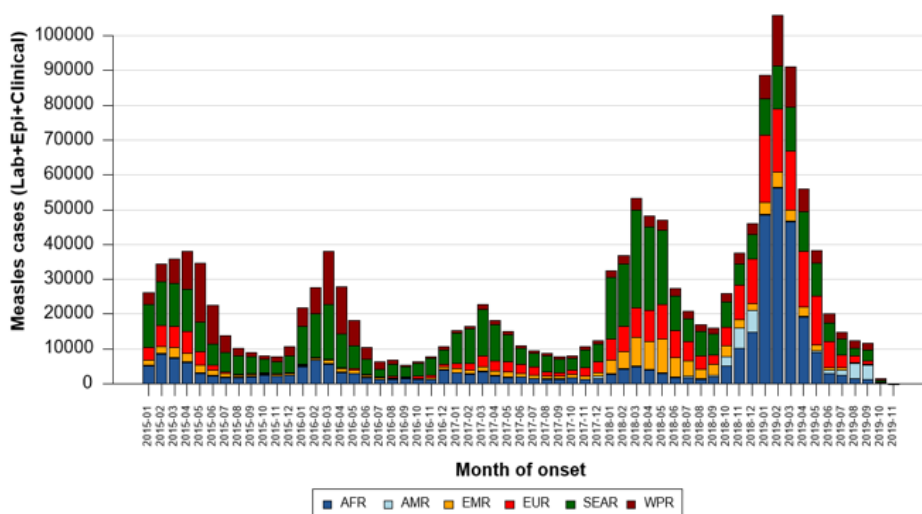
疾病爆发新闻，2019 年 11 月 27 日

“世界上许多国家正在经历麻疹爆发。截至 2019 年 11 月 5 日，2019 年有 187 个会员国通过官方月度报告向世卫组织报告了 413308 例确诊病例。”

https://www.who.int/csr/don/26-november-2019-measles-global_situation/en

Figure 1: Measles case distribution by month and WHO Region (2015-2019), Data as of 8 November 2019*

图 1: 按月份和世卫组织区域分列的麻疹病例分布 (2015-2019 年), 截至 2019 年 11 月 8 日的的数据*



Data Source: IVB Database - This is surveillance data, hence for the last month(s), the data may be incomplete.

数据来源: IVB 数据库-这是监视数据, 因此上个月的数据可能不完整。

Thus, that apparent decline on most recent entries is an artifact of incomplete reporting, not a real decline in Measles cases.

因此, 最近输入的数据明显下降是报告不完整造成的, 而不是麻疹病例的真正下降。

Rise in Yellow Fever 黄热病发作

10 December 2019 年 12 月 10 日

“Yellow fever is an acute infection caused by the yellow fever virus, which mainly infects monkeys and humans. It is endemic in tropical areas of Africa and Central and South America. In recent few years, yellow fever cases have been reported in many countries in Africa and the Americas with major outbreaks in Brazil, Congo, Ethiopia, Nigeria and South Sudan.”

“黄热病是由黄热病病毒引起的急性感染, 主要感染猴子和人类。它在非洲和中南美洲的热带地区流行。最近几年, 非洲和美洲许多国家都报告了黄热病病例, 巴西、刚果、埃塞俄比亚、尼日利亚和南苏丹都有重大疫情。”

<https://www.chp.gov.hk/en/healthtopics/content/24/25044.html>

25 January 2019: Yellow Fever - Epidemiological Update

“In 2019, three countries in the Region of the Americas (Bolivia, Brazil, and Peru) have reported confirmed yellow fever cases occurring between December 2018 and February 2019.”

2019 年 1 月 25 日：黄热病-流行病学更新

“2019 年，美洲地区有三个国家（玻利维亚、巴西和秘鲁）报告了 2018 年 12 月至 2019 年 2 月间确诊的黄热病病例。”

https://www.paho.org/hq/index.php?option=com_topics&view=drdmore&cid=2194&Itemid=40784&lang=en

Hunger and Starvation – Nine million people a year die of starvation; mostly in “conflict zones”
饥饿和饥饿——每年有 900 万人死于饥饿；主要是在“冲突地区”

The 2019 report – Reliefweb 2019 年报告-救济网

“The 2019 GHI measures hunger in 117 countries where the assessment is most relevant and where data on all four component indicators are available.”

“43 countries out of 117 countries have levels of hunger that remain serious.”

“2019 年全球饥饿指数衡量了 117 个国家的饥饿情况，这些国家的评估最具相关性，而且所有四个构成指标的数据都是可得的。”

“117 个国家中有 43 个国家的饥饿程度仍然严重。”

“4 countries Chad, Madagascar, Yemen, and Zambia suffer from hunger levels that are alarming and 1 country Central African Republic from a level that is extremely alarming.”

“4 个国家乍得、马达加斯加、也门和赞比亚的饥饿程度令人震惊，1 个国家中非共和国的饥饿程度令人震惊。”

<https://reliefweb.int/report/world/2019-global-hunger-index-challenge-hunger-and-climate-change>

“Hunger kills - Around 9 million people die of hunger and hunger-related diseases every year, more than the lives taken by AIDS, malaria and tuberculosis combined. **The majority of those who are hungry live in countries experiencing ongoing conflict and violence — 489 million of 821 million.** The numbers are even more striking for children. More than 75 percent of the world's malnourished children (122 million of 155 million) live in countries affected by conflict.”

“饥饿造成死亡——每年约有 900 万人死于饥饿和与饥饿有关的疾病，超过艾滋病、疟疾和结核病夺去的生命总和。大多数饥饿者生活在正在经历冲突和暴力的国家——8.21 亿人中的 4.89 亿人。对儿童来说，这个数字更为惊人。世界上 75% 以上的营养不良儿童（1.55 亿人中的 1.22 亿人）生活在受冲突影响的国家。”

<https://www.mercycorps.org/articles/quick-facts-what-you-need-know-about-global-hunger> (Bold text added by author.)

“World hunger is still not going down after three years and obesity is still growing – UN report

“More than 820 million people are hungry globally.”

15 July 2019

“三年后，世界饥饿率仍没有下降，肥胖率仍在增长——联合国报告

“全球有 8.2 亿多人挨饿。”

2019 年 7 月 15 日

<https://www.who.int/news-room/detail/15-07-2019-world-hunger-is-still-not-going-down-after-three-years-and-obesity-is-still-growing-un-report>

“From Africa and Asia to Latin America and the Near East, there are 821 million people - more than 1 in 9 of the world population - who do not get enough to eat.”

“从非洲和亚洲到拉丁美洲和近东，有 8.21 亿人——超过世界人口的九分之一——得不到足够的食物。”

<https://www.wfp.org/publications/2019-hunger-map>



World Child Hunger Facts 世界儿童饥饿事实

“Overall, 5.6 million children under age five died in 2016, nearly 15,000 daily (World Health Organization [WHO], 2016). The risk of a child dying before five years of age is highest in Africa (76.5 per 1000 live births), about 8 times higher than in Europe (9.6 per 1000 live births) (WHO, 2016).”

“总的来说，2016 年有 560 万 5 岁以下儿童死亡，每天将近 15000 人（世界卫生组织（世卫组织），2016 年）。五岁以下儿童死亡的风险在非洲最高（76.5‰活产），大约是欧洲的 8 倍（9.6‰活产）（世卫组织，2016 年）

“Approximately 3.1 million children die from undernutrition each year (UNICEF, 2018a). Hunger and undernutrition contribute to more than half of global child deaths, as undernutrition can make children more vulnerable to illness and exacerbate disease (UNICEF, 2018a).

“每年约有 310 万儿童死于营养不良（儿童基金会，2018a）。饥饿和营养不良导致全球一半以上的儿童死亡，因为营养不良会使儿童更容易生病并加剧疾病（儿童基金会，2018a）。

“Children who are poorly nourished suffer up to 160 days of illness each year (Glickin, M.D., 2010). Undernutrition magnifies the effect of every disease including measles and malaria. The estimated proportions of deaths in which undernutrition is an underlying cause are roughly similar for diarrhea (61%), malaria (57%), pneumonia (52%), and measles (45%) (Black, Morris, & Bryce, 2003; Bryce et al., 2005). Malnutrition can also be caused by diseases, such as the diseases that cause diarrhea, by reducing the body’s ability to convert food into usable nutrients (Black, Morris, & Bryce, 2003; Bryce et al., 2005)”

“营养不良的儿童每年最多要忍受 160 天的疾病（Glickin，医学博士，2010 年）。营养不良会放大包括麻疹和疟疾在内的各种疾病的影响。营养不良是潜在原因的估计死亡比例与腹泻（61%）、疟疾（57%）、肺炎（52%）和麻疹（45%）大致相似（Black、Morris 和 Bryce，2003；Bryce 等人，2005）。营养不良也可由疾病引起，例如引起腹泻的疾病，通过降低身体将食物转化为可用营养素的能力（Black、Morris 和 Bryce，2003；Bryce 等人，2005）。”

“66 million primary school-age children attend classes hungry across the developing world, 23 million whom live in Africa, which greatly impacts their ability to learn (World Food Programme [WFP], 2012).”

“整个发展中国家有 6600 万小学适龄儿童挨饿上课，其中 2300 万生活在非洲，这对他们的学习能力产生了很大影响（世界粮食计划署（粮食计划署），2012 年）。”

<https://www.worldhunger.org/world-child-hunger-facts>

Global hunger has not gotten better in the last three years, it’s gotten worse at least in Africa; Yemen, Venezuela* and other nations not apparently included in World Bank studies, largely a consequence of conflict and war.

* <https://www.rt.com/news/489193-venezuela-coup-plot-tapes>

全球饥饿在过去三年中没有好转，至少在非洲有所恶化；也门、委内瑞拉和其他国家显然没有被纳入世界银行的研究，这主要是冲突和战争的结果。

And what is the American response to the world health crisis? Sell everyone more weapons and totally cut funding for the World Health Organization. Yes, the country with world’s largest economy contributes nothing now – zero to the WHO. What does the vaunted American “free press” say about this? Almost nothing.

美国对世界卫生危机的反应是什么？向所有人出售更多武器，并完全削减对世界卫生组织的资助。是的，这个拥有世界上最大经济体的国家现在对世界卫生组织的贡献为零。被吹嘘的美国“自由新闻界”对此有何评论？几乎什么都没有。

<https://www.globaltimes.cn/content/1179698.shtml>

A few short stories at the time, but then quickly forgotten, just like the nine million people that starve to death every year, and millions of others that die from other diseases.

当时有几篇短篇小说，但很快就被遗忘了，就像每年饿死的 900 万人，以及死于其他疾病的数百万人一样。

And who created the conditions where those nine million people starve to death every year, and millions of others that die from other diseases? It was and is world capitalism led by the United States of America and heavily supported by the UK and France. How many people are starving to death in China or dying of those other diseases? No one is starving to death, and practically no one is dying of those other diseases because the Chinese government fights disease with a whole heart and whole mind. China is the largest socialist nation, and the American administration is now doing the best it can to destroy China economically.

是谁创造了这样的条件：每年有 900 万人饿死，还有数百万人死于其他疾病？它过去和现在都是以美利坚合众国为首、英国和法国大力支持的世界资本主义。在中国有多少人饿死或死于其他疾病？没有人饿死，实际上也没有人死于其他疾病，因为中国政府是全心全意地与疾病作斗争的。中国是最大的社会主义国家，美国政府现在正尽其所能在经济上摧毁中国。

Please keep in mind that since WWII it was the communist/socialist nations that fought wars to free the people in Africa, South America and Asia from Euro-American colonialism. And in each case the American government sent in huge armies to topple those newly freed governments, and replace them with American dictators.

二战后，是共产主义/社会主义国家为使非洲、南美和亚洲的人民摆脱欧美殖民主义而进行战争。在每一次事件中，美国政府都派出了庞大的军队推翻那些刚刚获得自由的政府，并用美国独裁者取代它们。

These are the realities of the world. Anyone who denies them either didn't study real histories, or is a liar.

这些是世界的现实。任何否认他们的人要么没有研究真实的历史，要么就是个骗子。



World starvation is no joke. It's no lie.

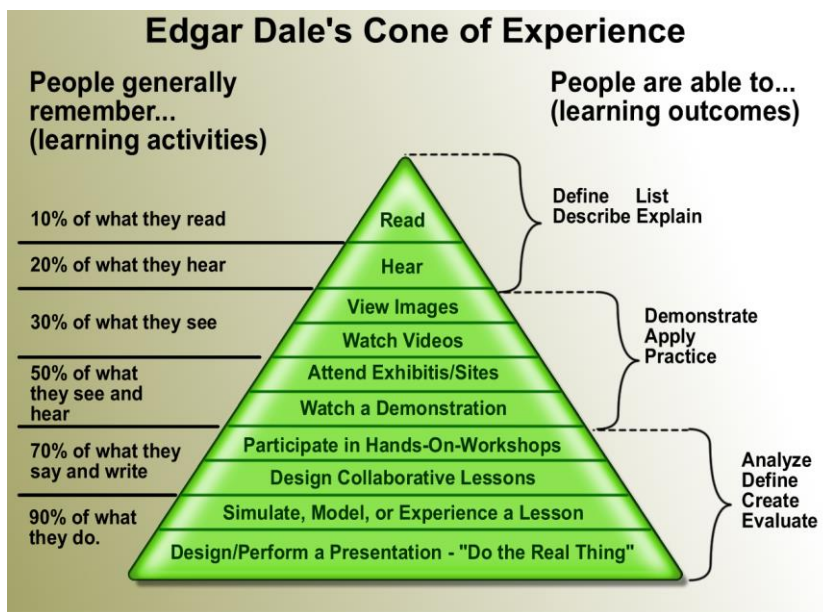
世界饥饿不是玩笑。这不是谎言。

Edgar Dale's Cone of Experience 埃德加·戴尔（Edgar Dale）的经验之塔

Do we think critically? Let's take a test! 我们使用批判性思维技能吗？

Please look at Edgar Dale's "Cone of Experience" below and answer the questions that follow.

请查看下面的 Edgar Dale 的“经验之塔”，并回答以下问题。



This work is licensed under the Creative Commons Attribution-ShareAlike 3.0 License.

https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/File:Cone_of_learning_export_11x17.png

Does the information on the above graphic appear reasonable? 上图中的信息是否合理？

Please read one or more of the many critiques of Dale's work to find out what professional educators think. Compare it with your own answer. For example:

<https://www.td.org/insights/debunk-this-people-remember-10-percent-of-what-they-read>

The fact is if something looks scientific most people will accept it without question. In fact, there are vast numbers of variables dealing with every factor listed on the above “Cone of experience.” How they interact, and how the individuals’ learning style influences their behavior is vastly complex – much more so than the above graphic suggests. The above graphic is interesting. It was a good try. But it’s mostly wrong.

事实是，如果某种东西看起来科学，大多数人将毫无疑问地接受它。实际上，上面的“经验范围”中列出了涉及每个因素的大量变量。他们如何互动以及个人的学习方式如何影响他们的行为非常复杂-远远超过上图所示。上面的图形很有趣。这是一个很好的尝试。但这主要是错误的。

(Also refer to Appendix 3: A Critical Review of the IB (Eng)/ 国际预科 (IB) 课程的批判性评审)

We are taught obedience by parents. We are taught obedience in schools. But to maintain our freedom – our freedom to discover great truths – our freedom to avoid intellectual and physical slavery – we must learn to be more curious, and examine dogma very carefully before we believe it.

父母教导我们服从。我们在学校被教导服从。但是要保持我们的自由-我们发现重大真理的自由-我们避免知识和肉体上的奴役的自由-我们必须学会变得好奇，并在相信之前要非常仔细地检查教条。

According to Edgar Dale, there’s not much point in reading is there? Imagine a person who can’t read or doesn’t like to read. What kind of person is that? Answer: President Donald Trump.

根据埃德加·戴尔（Edgar Dale）的说法，阅读实际上是无用的，因为人们只会记住阅读内容的一小部分。想象一个无法阅读或不喜欢阅读的人。那是什么样的人？答：唐纳德·特朗普总统。

The Strange Case of President Trump 特朗普总统的奇怪案

The President Who Doesn't Read

不读书的总统

Trump’s allergy to the written word and his reliance on oral communication have proven liabilities in office.

特朗普对书面文字的过敏以及他对口头交流的依赖严重限制了他担任美国总统的能力

David A. Graham, January 5, 2018

“He didn’t process information in any conventional sense,” Wolff writes. “He didn’t read. He didn’t really even skim. Some believed that for all practical purposes he was no more than semi--literate.”

沃尔夫写道：“他没有处理任何常规意义上的信息。”“他没有读书。他甚至根本没有脱脂。有些人认为，从实际出发，他只不过是半文盲。”

Wolff quotes economic adviser Gary Cohn writing in an email: “It’s worse than you can imagine ... Trump won’t read anything—not one-page memos, not the brief policy papers, nothing. He gets up halfway through meetings with world leaders because he is bored.”

沃尔夫引述经济顾问加里·科恩（Gary Cohn）在一封电子邮件中写道：“这比你想象的还要糟糕……特朗普不会读任何东西，不会读一页备忘录，不会读简短的政策文件，什么也不会读。他在与世界领导人会晤的中途站了起来，因为他感到无聊。”

<https://www.theatlantic.com/politics/archive/2018/01/americas-first-post-text-president/549794>

Also see:

<https://www.newsweek.com/trump-doesnt-read-and-skips-written-intelligence-report-unlike-past-presidents-802455>

Unfortunately, that is hardly the worst of President Trump. One might wonder if his failure to read might be related to ignorance in many areas, including racism, anti-Muslim bigotry, and intentionally allowing a deadly disease (COVID-19) to run freely around the USA. This last act of infinite arrogance has as of this writing cost over 100,000 human lives just in the US. The number of additional deaths overseas because of his reckless indifference is incalculable.

不幸的是，这并不是特朗普总统最糟糕的时候。有人可能会怀疑，他不识字是否与许多领域的无知有关，包括种族主义、反穆斯林偏见、故意让一种致命疾病（COVID-19）在美国肆虐。截至本文撰写之时，这最后一次的无限傲慢行为已经在美国造成了 10 万人死亡。由于他鲁莽的漠不关心，海外又有多少人死亡，这是无法估量的。

These kinds of strange behaviors were predictable. In fact, in 2017 a book was published warning Americans and the world about the dangerous psychopathologies of President Trump.

这些奇怪的行为是可以预见的。事实上，2017 年出版了一本书，警告美国 and 全世界有关特朗普总统危险的精神病态。

“The Dangerous Case of Donald Trump” is a 2017 book edited by Bandy X. Lee, a forensic psychiatrist, containing essays from 27 psychiatrists, psychologists, and other mental health professionals describing the “clear and present danger” that US President Donald Trump’s mental health poses to the “nation and individual well-being.”

《唐纳德·特朗普的危险案例》是一本由法医精神病医生班迪·X·李（Bandy X. Lee）于 2017 年编辑的一本书，书中收录了 27 名精神病医生、心理学家和其他心理健康专业人士的文章，描述了美国总统特朗普的心理健康对“国家和个人福祉”构成的“明显和当前的危险”

The authors argue that the President’s mental health was affecting the mental health of the people of the United States and that he places the country at grave risk of involving it in a war, and of undermining democracy itself due to his dangerous pathology. (Macmillan Publishers, 2017)

作者们认为，总统的心理健康正在影响美国人民的心理健康，他将美国置于卷入战争的严重危险之中，并因其危险的病态而使民主本身遭到破坏。（麦克米伦出版社，2017 年）

Things have changed since that book was written – and it certainly appears President Trump is laying the groundwork for WWII. The psychiatrists that wrote the articles collected in that book were most certainly correct in assessing him as a danger to Americans, but underestimated exactly how dangerous he clearly is to the entire world.

自从那本书被写出来之后，事情已经发生了变化——显然，特朗普总统正在为第三次世界大战打下基础。写了这本书中收集到的文章的精神病学家们肯定是正确的，认为他是美国人的危险，但低估了他对整个世界的危险程度。

Election Year Politics 选举年政治

One of the bigger problems with late-stage democracy is that when election year comes along the lies of the politicians get even bigger than usual. Their lies are usually huge, so election year lies are going to be even more wildly outrageous than usual. 后期民主的一个更大的问题是，当选举年来临时，政客们的谎言会变得比平时更大。他们的谎言通常是巨大的，所以选举年的谎言会比平常更疯狂。

In this year of 2020 President Trump is really fanning the flames of racism (like always) while sticking (verbal) knives into China and all Chinese everywhere just as fast and furiously as he can. His lies and grotesque exaggerations are actually dangerous. Legally they can be called “reckless endangerment.” That is, he put recklessly puts good people in physical and psychological danger with his outrageous lies.

在 2020 年的这一年，特朗普总统真的在煽动种族主义的火焰（像往常一样），同时以最快和最激烈的速度向中国和所有中国人插上（口头）刀子。他的谎言和荒谬的夸张事实上是危险的。在法律上，他们可以被称为“鲁莽的危害”，也就是说，他肆无忌惮地用他的无耻的谎言把好人置于生理和心理的危险之中。

For example, one of today’s headline news stories: 例如，今天的头条新闻之一

FBI hunts for ‘Chinese military spies’ all across US as Pompeo calls for global crusade against Beijing

美国联邦调查局在美国各地追捕“中国军事间谍”，蓬佩奥呼吁全球打击北京



Home / World News /

FBI hunts for ‘Chinese military spies’ all across US as Pompeo calls for global crusade against Beijing

24 Jul, 2020 04:56 / Updated 6 hours ago

[Get short URL](#)



Americans that use critical thinking, and hear Secretary of State Pompeo and President talk about “Chinese military spies,” mostly just laugh about the hysteria they are trying to create with “election year politics.” Trump and Pompeo are using the “hate virus” to “bring Americans together” to defend themselves from the “evil alien Chinese!” It’s like a sick joke, but that’s election year politics.

使用批判性思维，听到国务卿蓬佩奥和总统谈论“中国军事间谍，大多数人只是嘲笑他们与“选举年政治”有关的歇斯底里。特朗普和蓬佩奥正在利用“仇恨病毒”来“把美国人聚集在一起”，以保护自己免受“邪恶的外星人中国人的伤害！”“这就像一个病态的笑话，但那是选举年的政治。

Americans that don’t use critical thinking however could get upset. “Oh no!” they might think, believing the ridiculous nonsense coming from President Trump and his former head of CIA Michael Pompeo.

然而，不使用批判性思维的美国人可能会感到不安。“哦，不！”“他们可能会认为，相信特朗普总统和他的前中情局局长迈克尔·蓬佩奥（Michael Pompeo）的荒谬言论。

This is where the real-life danger comes in. Suppose you’re a Chinese, Japanese or Korean student in the USA. Maybe you study business or economics, or whatever. And, maybe you like to play basketball, go jogging, lift weights, or do some other sport. And then, a gang of those “non-critical thinking” Americans could come along and do something quite terrible to the innocent Asian student. They might (stupidly) think: “Golly! We got us a Chinese military spy here!” The fact is hate is a dangerous emotion to spread around. Some Asian American Association should sue President Trump and Michael Pompeo for “reckless endangerment.” Most Americans can’t tell the difference between Chinese, Japanese, or Koreans anyways. All Asians in the USA are now in danger. Even if no one does get hurt, Pompeo and Trump created the conditions where some innocent Asians can get hurt or even killed in the USA.

这就是现实生活中的危险出现的地方。假设你是一名在美国的中国、日本或韩国留学生，也许你学的是商业或经济，或者其他什么。也许你喜欢打篮球，慢跑，举重，或者做一些其他的运动。然后，一群“非批判性思维”的美国人可能会出现，对这个无辜的亚裔学生做一些非常可怕的事情。他们可能会（愚蠢地）想：“天哪！我们这里有个中国军事间谍！”“事实上，仇恨是一种危险的情绪传播。一些亚裔美国人协会应该以“鲁莽的危害”起诉特朗普总统和迈克尔·蓬佩奥。大多数美国人无论如何也分不清中国人、日本人和韩国人的区别。美国所有的亚洲人现在都处于危险之中。即使没有人受伤，蓬佩奥和特朗普创造了一些条件，让一些无辜的亚洲人在美国受到伤害甚至死亡。

The fact is nation/states have been spying on each other since the rise of nation states at minimum six thousand years ago. There’s a whole encyclopedia of different kinds of spies. Most spies of course are “unwitting agents.” They don’t even know they are spies. Instead they are manipulated by real spies to do their dirty work. 几千年来，各个国家一直在互相监视。有一本关于各种间谍的百科全书。大多数间谍当然是“不知情的特工”，他们甚至不知道自己是间谍。相反，他们被真正的间谍操纵去做他们的肮脏工作。

Most people also probably don’t know the CIA outsources at least 70% of its spy work to private intelligence organizations. In other words, most CIA agents don’t work directly for the CIA, but rather a subcontracted private intelligence agency. 大多数人可能也不知道中情局将至少 70%的间谍工作外包给私人情报机构。换句话说，大多数中情局特工不直接为中情局工作，而是为分包的私人情报机构工作。

Spies for Hire: New Online Database of U.S. Intelligence Contractors by Tim Shorrock 雇佣间谍：蒂姆·肖洛克（Tim Shorrock）最新的美国情报承包商在线数据库

But there's a big piece missing from the national debate about spying: the role of private intelligence contractors. After journalist Tim Shorrock's 2008 investigation, U.S. officials confirmed that 70 percent of the U.S. intelligence budget goes directly to private companies working under contract to the CIA, the NSA, and other agencies. With the U.S. intelligence budget estimated at \$60 billion a year, the outsourced business of intelligence is a \$45 billion annual industry. 但是，在有关间谍活动的全国性辩论中，有一个大问题没有得到解决：私人情报承包商的作用。在记者蒂姆·肖洛克（Tim Shorrock）2008年的调查之后，美国官员证实，美国 70%的情报预算直接用于与中情局、国家安全局和其他机构签订合同的私营公司。美国情报预算估计为每年 600 亿美元，情报外包业务是一个每年 450 亿美元的行业。

To help the public and media understand this new phenomenon, CorpWatch is joining today with Shorrock, the first journalist to blow the whistle on the privatization of U.S. intelligence, to create a groundbreaking database focusing on the dozens of corporations that provide classified intelligence services to the United States government. 为了帮助公众和媒体了解这一新现象，CorpWatch 今天与第一位揭发美国情报私有化的记者 Shorrock 一道创建一个突破性的数据库，重点关注为美国政府提供机密情报服务的几十家公司。

<https://corpwatch.org/article/spies-hire-new-online-database-us-intelligence-contractors>

What do most national (government) spy agencies do when they discover a foreign spy? Arrest them? No, usually national spy organizations feed foreign spies false information. 大多数国家（政府）间谍机构在发现外国间谍时都做些什么？逮捕他们？不，通常国家间谍组织向外国间谍提供虚假信息。

How do I know so much about spies? Ha! I've lived half my life outside the USA. Of course, I've met hundreds of spies of all nationalities. So, I can confidently say a few things about them: 我怎么知道这么多关于间谍的事？哈！我半辈子都在美国以外的地方生活过。当然，我见过几百个不同国籍的间谍。所以，我可以自信地说几句：

- They are (usually) the most charming people you're ever going to meet until they stick the knife in your back. Betrayal is their business. 他们（通常）是你遇到的最迷人的人，直到他们把刀子插进你的背上。背叛是他们的事。
- Beijing is (and everyone knows it) the spy capital of the world right now. There are definitely more foreign spies, especially Americans, Canadians and Western Europeans in Beijing than any other country in the world. President Trump and his spymaster Michael Pompeo accusing China of using spies is totally ridiculous! No nation employs as many spies as the USA. 北京现在是（每个人都知道）世界间谍之都。在北京的外国间谍绝对比世界上任何国家都多，特别是美国人、加拿大人和西欧人。特朗普总统和他的间谍头目迈克尔·蓬佩奥指责中国使用间谍是完全荒谬的！没有哪个国家像美国那样雇佣间谍。

- Trump and Pompeo are shamelessly pandering to a fake nationalism and fear to try to rescue Trump's reelection in November. President Trump is behind the Democrat Challenger Joe Biden in the polls. President Trump doesn't care how many innocent people will be hurt or killed. He is equally likely to start WWII as start a witch hunt in the USA looking for Chinese spies. Trump and Pompeo are desperate, frightened men and such men are dangerous. 特朗普和蓬佩奥无耻地迎合一种虚假的民族主义和恐惧。他们试图挽救特朗普在 11 月的连任。民主党挑战者拜登在民调中遥遥领先于特朗普总统。特朗普总统不在乎会有多少无辜的人受伤或死亡。特朗普可能会发动第三次世界大战以赢得大选。特朗普和蓬佩奥是绝望、害怕的人，这样的人很危险。

These kinds of outrageous behaviors are symptomatic of a failing democratic state – “late-stage democracy.” It's sad and pathetic really. 这些令人发指的行为是一个失败的民主国家的征兆——“晚期民主”，真是可悲。

Joseph McCarthy is a “notorious” character in American history. He was the major proponent of the “red scare” (anti-communist hysteria in the USA) from 1948 to about 1956. For the past 30 years historians all agree he was a crazy person. It's amazing President Trump and his spymaster Michael Pompeo are repeating Joe McCarthy's mistakes. 约瑟夫·麦卡锡是美国历史上一个“臭名昭著”的人物。从 1948 年到 1956 年，他是“红色恐慌”（美国反共歇斯底里）的主要支持者。过去 30 年来，历史学家都认为他是个疯子。令人惊讶的是，特朗普总统和他的间谍头目迈克尔·蓬佩奥正在重复乔·麦卡锡的错误。

QUESTION: From the context, what do you think the word “notorious” means? Does it sound like a good thing or a bad thing?

问：从上下文来看，你认为“臭名昭著”是什么意思？听起来是好事还是坏事？

Answer: Notorious means “famous for being evil.” 答：臭名昭著的意思是“恶名昭彰”

The current political climate in the USA proves an old English proverb: 美国当前的政治气候证明了一句古老的英国谚语：

“Those who don't learn from history are doomed to repeat it.”

“不向历史学习的人注定要重蹈覆辙。”

Would Hillary Clinton have been better? 希拉里·克林顿会更好吗？

What's really scary is that as President Hillary Clinton probably would have been worse than President Trump.

真正可怕的是，作为总统，希拉里·克林顿可能会比特朗普总统更糟糕。

During her time as Secretary of State “under” President Obama she – from the shadows orchestrated no less than four genocides

在她担任国务卿期间，在奥巴马总统的“领导下”，她从阴影中策划了至少四次种族灭绝

- Syria - 400,000 men, women and children killed from 2011 as of April 2016
叙利亚——截至 2016 年 4 月，从 2011 年起有 40 万名男女和儿童丧生

- Libya – 100,000 killed from 2011 to present
利比亚——2011 年至今 10 万人死亡
<https://www.aljazeera.com/news/2018/11/libyan-detention-hell-refugee-burned-alive-181110102329706.html>
<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=44b-eKMtHl4>
<https://www.aljazeera.com/programmes/specialseries/2019/09/unspeakable-crime-rape-weapon-war-libya-190903102146596.html>
- Yemen - 100,000 - 2015 to present
也门——2015 年至今 10 万人死亡
- Myanmar - 38,000 Rohingya from September 2017
缅甸-自 2017 年 9 月起，38000 名罗兴亚人

Please take a moment and reflect on some of the carnage from just one of the above crimes against humanity:

请花一点时间思考一下上述危害人类罪之一造成的一些大屠杀:

<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=VEsX7ewuB4w>

Gary Aldrich, the author of *Unlimited Access: An FBI Agent Inside the Clinton White House*, clearly and graphically describes Mrs. Clinton as the more toxic of that couple.

这本书的作者加里·奥尔德里奇（Gary Aldrich）清楚而生动地描述了克林顿夫人是这对夫妇中毒性更大的一个。

Fatal Flaws in the Existing EFL Paradigm 现有外语教学范式的致命缺陷

Teaching English as a Foreign Language has been weaponized to program learners to accept Western Euro-American hegemony as unalterable. On the surface western EFL textbooks are perfectly sterile and clean. And that is the problem. They present beautiful illusions to make one aspire to life of the capitalist elite and totally cover the ocean of blood – the blood of the innocents in Africa, Asia and Latin American - upon which it sails.

英语作为一门外语的教学已经成为一种武器，目的是让学习者接受欧美霸权是不可改变的。从表面上看，西方英语教材是完全无菌和干净的。这就是问题所在。它们呈现出美丽的幻觉，让人向往资本主义精英的生活，并完全覆盖了它航行的血海——非洲、亚洲和拉丁美洲无辜者的血海。

“What ridiculous nonsense!” a scion of western hegemony will pompously snort, while sniffing up a line of cocaine and looking down his long nose at me for daring to assert such “drivel.”

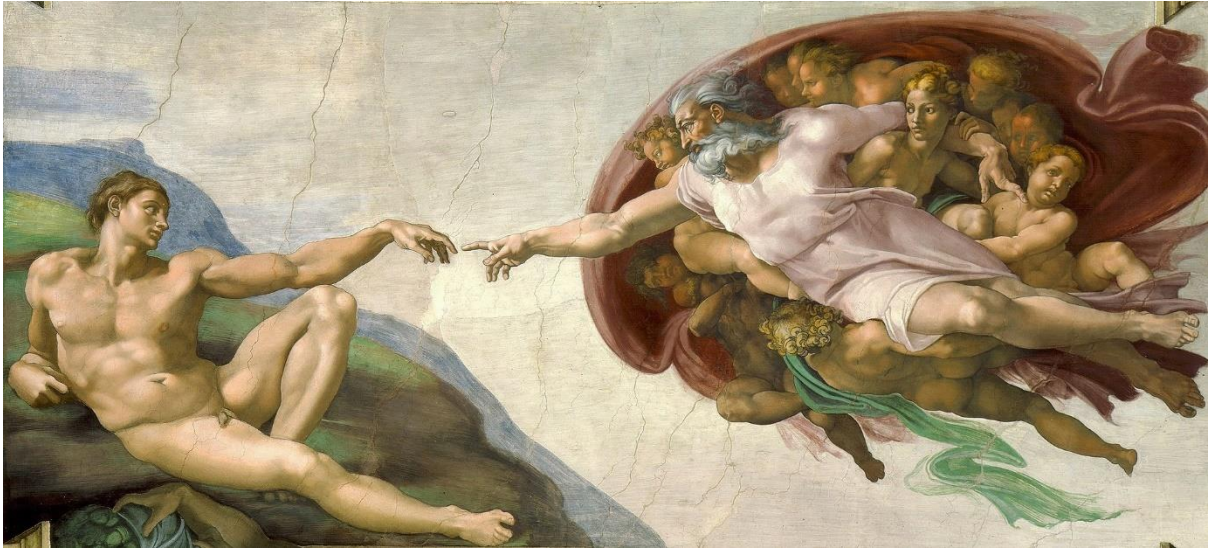
“真是胡说八道！一个西方霸权的接班人会傲慢地哼着鼻子，一边嗅着一排可卡因，低头看着我，因为我敢说这种“胡言乱语”

OK! A couple of concrete examples are needed.

真正地？也许需要一些具体的例子来证实我所写的事实。

Everyone marvels at the glories of Renaissance Europe. The sudden ultra-rapid advances in sciences and arts were spectacular! Take for example the glory of the ceiling fresco called "The Creation of Adam," by Michelangelo (1508–12) in the Sistine Chapel, Vatican City!

每个人都为欧洲文艺复兴的辉煌而惊叹。科学和艺术的突飞猛进是惊人的！以梵蒂冈市西斯廷教堂的米开朗基罗（1508-1502）的天花板壁画《亚当的创造》为例！



This file has been identified as being free of known restrictions under copyright law, including all related and neighboring rights.

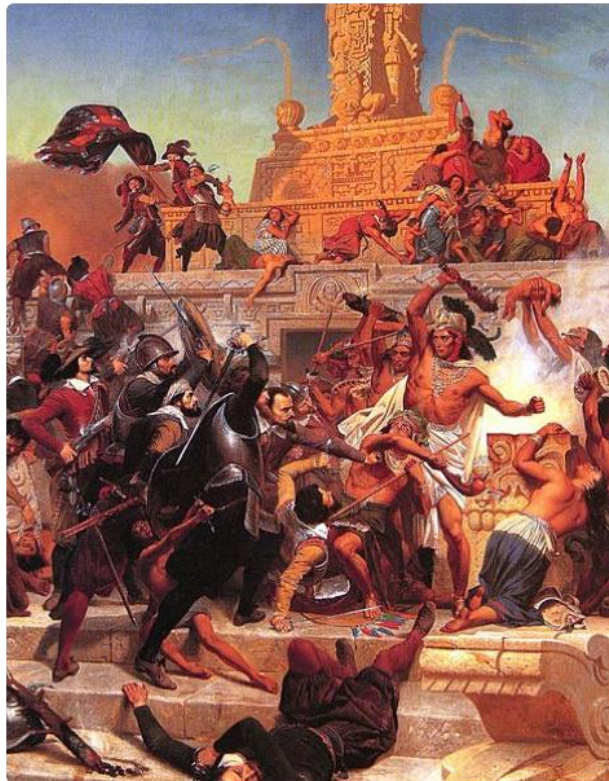
True! Renaissance Europe produced remarkable art, and architecture!

真的！文艺复兴时期的欧洲产生了非凡的艺术和建筑！

But what was the cost? Think beneath the surface. Europe was drenched in gold at the time. They could afford to metaphorically “touch God!”

但代价是什么？在表面下思考。当时欧洲到处都是黄金。他们可以用比喻“触摸上帝！”

But where did the gold come from? 但黄金是从哪里来的？



“The discovery of America, and that of the passage to the East Indies by the Cape of Good Hope, are the two greatest events recorded in the history of [human] kind.”

—Adam Smith, *The Wealth of Nations*

“美洲的发现和好望角通往东印度群岛的通道的发现，是人类历史上最伟大的两件事。”

-亚当·斯密，《国富论》

Ah yes. Adam Smith. Not surprising he should think so.

啊，是的。亚当·斯密。他这么想并不奇怪。

See: Chapter 4 – Capitalism, Ego and Adam Smith

见: 第三章-资本主义，自我和亚当斯密

Conquest of the Americas and Africa were most certainly “great” from the European perspective, but ultimate horror and hell from the point of view of the people they conquered – the people whose gold they stole, the cultures they annihilated, the women and children they raped and murdered.

从欧洲的角度看，征服美洲和非洲无疑是“伟大的”，但最终的恐怖和地狱是：

-他们征服的人

-他们偷走了金子的人，

-他们消灭的文化，

-他们强奸和谋杀的妇女和儿童。

Shocking? Yes and no. Most emphatically “Yes!” from the point of view of the conquered; “Absolutely not!” from the point of view of the conquerors who profited so hugely from those conquests. “We brought them civilization!” the conquerors throughout history proudly proclaim. This however is a lie. In fact, the European conquerors brought them five hundred years of slavery and death. The Americas, then Asia, then Africa. Today, most of the world is still a Euro-American colony.

可怕？最强调“是！”从被征服的角度来看。“绝对不！”从征服者的角度来看。从这些征服中获利巨大的征服者说：

“我们给他们带来了文明！”历史上的征服者自豪地宣布。但是，这是一个谎言。实际上，欧洲征服者对美洲，亚洲和非洲“奴役”了五百年，并造成了死亡。今天，世界上大多数地区仍然是欧美殖民地。



Dahyan air strike - On 9 August 2018, American supported Saudi aircraft bombed a civilian school bus passing through a crowded market with U.S.-made bombs in Dahyan, Saada Governorate, Yemen. At least 40 children were killed, all under 15 years old and most under age 10. Photo credit: Al Masirah TV

达哈扬空袭——2018年8月9日，美国支援的沙特飞机在也门萨阿达省达哈扬炸毁了一辆民用校车，校车穿过拥挤的市场，车上有美国制造的炸弹。至少有40名儿童被杀害，他们都不到15岁，大多数不到10岁。图片来源：Al Masirah TV

It's the same old war. Five hundred years have past and it's still the same old war. I worked as a journalist in three war-torn nations. I know it's the same old war.

这是一场古老的战争。五百年过去了，还是那场古老的战争。我在三个饱受战争蹂躏的国家做记者。我知道这是一场古老的战争。

So, for me to pretend that everything is bright and beautiful in the Kingdom of the Capitalists is quite impossible.

因此，对于我来说，假装资本家王国里所有的事物都是光明的，那是不可能的。

People from the "3rd World" – also called the "developing world" (Africa, Asia, and Latin America) who think they can "assimilate" into Euro-American supremacy are only fooling themselves.

来自“第三世界”（也称为“发展中世界”）（非洲，亚洲和拉丁美洲）的人们认为自己可以“同化”为欧美霸权，只是自欺欺人。

True, there are African, Latin American and Asian "elites," rich capitalists who can lord over the less fortunate where-ever they go. And there are also highly educated, incredibly brilliant people from Africa, Asia and Latin America, but, Euro-American hegemony must never be questioned, or they will be "smacked down into their place."

的确，有非洲，拉丁美洲和亚洲的“精英”富裕的资本家，他们可以支配他们所到之处的不幸。此外，还有来自非洲，亚洲和拉丁美洲的受过良好教育的，非常出色的人，但是，决不能质疑欧美霸权，否则他们将“沦落到自己的位置”。

Like fallen angels we will have our wings cut off, be humiliated, punished and maybe tortured and killed. Even questioning Euro-American domination of the world forever is a dangerous business!

像堕落的天使一样，我们会被砍掉翅膀，被羞辱，被惩罚，甚至被折磨和杀害。甚至质疑欧美永远统治世界也是一件危险的事情！

The wealthy and educated of the 3rd World are “tokens” a tiny, tiny minority that is “permitted” to rise above the sickness and mud of poverty and death as symbols of Euro-American “liberal ideals.” But, in the final analysis, they are only considered slaves too by the white supremacists that rule the world. They are only fooling themselves if they think they are not. Don’t believe it?

第三世界的富人和受过教育的人是“象征”——一小部分人被“允许”超越贫穷和死亡的疾病和泥泞，成为欧美“自由主义理想”的象征。但归根结底，他们也只是统治世界的白人至上主义者的奴隶。他们只是在自欺欺人。不相信吗？

Ask this lady. 问问这位女士。



Fatou Bensouda, Chief Prosecutor of the International Criminal Court, assumed office June 15, 2012, Photo Credit: Max Koot Studio, 法图本苏达，国际刑事法院首席检察官，就职于 2012 年 6 月 15 日，图片来源：Max Koot 工作室 <https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/3.0/deed.en> - No alterations were made.

If the reader is curious why I cite her as an example, read the following:

如果读者好奇我为什么以她为例，请阅读以下内容：

The ICC, Bensouda, and the State Parties to the Rome Statute (3) have been subjected to increasing attacks (4), threats (5) and attempts to discredit them (6).

国际刑事法院，本苏达和《罗马规约》缔约国（3）遭受的攻击不断增加（4），威胁（5）并试图抹黑它们（6）。

https://www.europarl.europa.eu/doceo/document/P-9-2020-001004_EN.html

And of course, read the references used in that article.

当然，请阅读该文章中使用的参考。

Also see: 另请参阅：

<https://www.icc-cpi.int/afghanistan>

<https://news.un.org/en/story/2020/03/1058741>

<https://www.nytimes.com/2020/03/05/world/europe/afghanistan-war-crimes-icc.html>

The terrible fact is western hegemony is supported by mass murder, rape and other extreme tortures on a day to day basis around the world.

可怕的事实是，在世界范围内，每天都有大规模谋杀，强奸和其他极端折磨支持西方霸权。

It's a system based on world-wide denial of human rights and armed theft of natural resources.

这是一个基于全世界否认人权和武装盗窃自然资源的系统。

It's fundamentally racist, and has been for the past 500 years. It has used religious bigotry and hatred of every kind as its most powerful weapons.

它从根本上来讲是种族主义的，已经有 500 年的历史了。它把各种宗教偏见和仇恨作为最强大的武器。

- So why not write an EFL textbook that challenges the status quo?
- Why not write an EFL textbook that illuminates the truth and offers reality-based solutions to conflict?

•那么为什么不写一部挑战现状的 EFL 教科书呢？

•为什么不写一本阐明事实真相并提供基于现实的冲突解决方案的 EFL 教科书？

I first taught EFL in Madrid in 1967/1968. In the 1980s I was a pre-school teacher in a bilingual (Spanish/English) school during some of my post-graduate years and for the past 18 years I've taught mostly secondary and tertiary students in EFL programs in East Asia.

我最初在 1967/1968 年在马德里教过 EFL。在 1980 年代，我在某些研究生时期曾是一所双语（西班牙语/英语）学校的学前老师，并且在过去的 18 年中，我在东亚的 EFL 计划中主要教授了中专和大专学生。

Yet all during this time in East Asia I've felt something is missing; something terribly important.

然而，在这段时间在东亚任教的过程中，我一直感觉到 EFL 课程中缺少一些非常重要的内容。

Only during the past couple of years did those feeling crystalize into more formal theories, and only during the past couple of years did I try to write this book.

只是在过去的几年中，这些感觉才逐渐融入更正式的理论中，并且仅在过去的几年中，我才尝试写这本书。

What I fear in sum is that we foreign EFL educators in Asia and probably world-wide are sending students to western universities entirely unprepared for the onslaught of western philosophies, religions and political and economic beliefs and systems. Most such students are completely unable to describe their own nations' cultures, philosophies, religions, and political and economic systems *in English*.

总而言之，我担心的是，我们在亚洲乃至全球的外国 EFL 教育工作者正在将学生送往西方大学，而他们完全没有为迎接西方哲学，宗教以及政治和经济信仰和体系的冲击做好准备。大多数此类学生完全无法用英语描述自己的祖国的文化，哲学，宗教以及政治和经济体系。

My strong belief is that most students I've taught are politically naïve and easy prey for every sub-group in the west with philosophical, religious or political viewpoints however virtuous or misguided they may be.

我坚信，我所教的大多数学生在政治上都有些天真。 这些大多数学生都是具有哲学，宗教或政治观点的西方各阶层的容易猎物。 这些西方观点中有些是道德，诚实和道德的。 其他人则被误导，有时甚至具有破坏性。

So, don't believe anything I write. Question everything. Research for yourself. But, don't believe the first 20 things you find on the Internet. You can find great truths, but they will mostly be found underneath several layers of seductive illusions. Those illusions are created by those who profit from slavery. Their logic at first can seem very persuasive. But, the suffering of the billions of innocents who live in chains of poverty created by western political and economic hegemony cannot be silenced.

所以，不要相信我写的任何东西。质疑一切。为自己研究。但是，不要相信你在网上找到的前 20 件事。你可以找到伟大的真理，但它们大多会在几层诱人的幻想之下被发现。那些幻想是那些从奴役中获利的人创造的。他们的逻辑一开始似乎很有说服力。但是，生活在西方政治和经济霸权造成的贫困链中的数十亿无辜者的痛苦不能被压制。

Teaching Tools 教学工具

English can be taught using an infinite number of approaches. Most EFL textbooks avoid contemporary issues, politics, philosophy, religion, conflict resolution strategies, counseling skills, diplomacy, and other topics contained in this book. Yet, English can be learned when centered around practically any subject area.

英语可以用无数种方法来教。大多数 EFL 教科书都回避当代问题、政治、哲学、宗教、冲突解决策略、咨询技巧、外交以及本书中包含的其他主题。然而，英语可以学习时，几乎围绕任何学科领域。

I used to joke that I could teach the entire English language using only a single stone.

我曾经开玩笑说我只用一块石头就能教整个英语。

Astronomy, geology, physics, biology, architecture, culture, history, art, sociology, psychology, and so on can be extrapolated from the study of a stone. Where do stones come from? For example, stones, like the earth itself, and the humans on it, all came from a broken off piece of a star. Thus, we can learn astronomy, starting with a stone. We can learn the geology of the earth and physics. We can learn the evolution of biology, and so on.

天文学、地质学、物理学、生物学、建筑、文化、历史、艺术、社会学、心理学等都可以从对石头的研究中推断出来。石头从哪里来？例如，石头，像地球本身，以及上面的人类，都来自一颗恒星的碎片。因此，我们可以从一块石头开始学习天文学。我们可以学习地球的地质学和物理学。我们可以学习生物的进化等等。

All sciences and arts can be explored starting with a simple stone.

所有的科学和艺术都可以从一块简单的石头开始探索。

Reading, writing, listening and speaking can all begin with a simple stone.

读、写、听、说都可以从一块简单的石头开始。

Grammar 1 Pronouns, Conjunctions, Prepositions and a Stone 语法 1 代词，连词和介词以及一块石头

Oh no! (Oh Yes! It's easy, relax! Pronouns, conjunctions and prepositions are FUN!)

不好了！（哦，是的！这很简单，放松！代词，连词和介词都很有趣！）

<p>Subject Pronouns</p> <p>I have a stone.</p> <p>You have a stone.</p> <p>He (or she or it) has a stone.</p> <p>We have a stone.</p> <p>You (plural) have a stone.</p> <p>They have a stone.</p> <p>Object Pronouns</p> <p>Give the stone to me.</p> <p>I will give the stone to you.</p> <p>Give the stone to him (her or it).</p> <p>Give the stone to us.</p> <p>Give the stone to you (plural).</p> <p>Give the stone to them.</p> <p>Conjunctions</p> <p>I have a stone and an apple.</p> <p>Would you like a stone or an apple?</p> <p>I have a stone because she gave it to me.</p> <p>And so on.</p> <p>Prepositions</p> <p>The stone is on the box.</p> <p>The stone is next to the box.</p> <p>The stone is under the box.</p> <p>The stone is in the box.</p>	<p>人称代词</p> <p>我有一块石头。</p> <p>你有一块石头。</p> <p>他（或她或它）有一块石头。</p> <p>我们有一块石头。</p> <p>您（复数）有一块石头。</p> <p>他们有一块石头。</p> <p>宾语代词</p> <p>把石头给我。</p> <p>我会把石头给你。</p> <p>把石头给他（她或她）。</p> <p>把石头给我们。</p> <p>把石头给你（复数）。</p> <p>把石头给他们。</p> <p>连词</p> <p>我有一块石头和一个苹果。</p> <p>您想要一块石头还是一个苹果？</p> <p>我有一块石头，因为她把它给了我。</p> <p>等等。</p> <p>介词</p> <p>石头在盒子上。</p> <p>石头在盒子旁边。</p> <p>石头在盒子下面。</p> <p>石头在盒子里。</p>
---	---

This book however looks at some issues more complicated than a simple stone.

Why? The world is getting more complicated every day, and to learn how to communicate well, survive, and thrive in foreign cultures it helps to have a broad base of information.

但是，本书着眼于一些比简单的石头更复杂的问题。

为什么？世界每天都在变得越来越复杂，要学习如何在外国文化中进行良好的沟通，生存和繁荣，就有助于拥有广泛的信息基础。

The Wealth Gap 贫富差距

Professor Philip Alston, United Nations Special Rapporteur on extreme poverty and human rights released a report December 15, 2017, highly critical of American inequality. In that report he stated: “My visit coincides with a dramatic change of direction in US policies relating to inequality and extreme poverty. The proposed tax reform package stakes out America’s bid to become the most unequal society in the world, and will greatly increase the already high levels of wealth and income inequality between the richest 1% and the poorest 50% of Americans.” He also quoted other studies that came to similar results:

联合国极端贫困与人权问题特别报告员菲利普·阿尔斯顿（Philip Alston）教授于 2017 年 12 月 15 日发表报告，高度批评美国的不平等。在那份报告中，他说：“我的访问恰逢美国有关不平等和赤贫政策的方向发生了巨大变化。拟议中的税收改革方案将美国打造成世界上最不平等的社会，并将大大增加美国 1%最富有者和 50%最贫穷者之间本已很高的财富水平和收入不平等

“The Stanford Center on Inequality and Poverty ranks the most well-off countries in terms of labor markets, poverty, safety net, wealth inequality, and economic mobility. The US comes in last of the top 10 most well-off countries, and 18th amongst the top 21.

“In the OECD the US ranks 35th out of 37 in terms of poverty and inequality.

According to the World Income Inequality Database, the US has the highest Gini rate (measuring inequality) of all Western Countries.

“The Stanford Center on Poverty and Inequality characterizes the US as “a clear and constant outlier in the child poverty league.” US child poverty rates are the highest amongst the six richest countries – Canada, the United Kingdom, Ireland, Sweden and Norway.”

<http://ohchr.org/EN/NewsEvents/Pages/DisplayNews.aspx?NewsID=22533&LangID=E>

斯坦福大学不平等与贫困中心在劳动力市场、贫困、安全网、财富不平等和经济流动性方面排名最富裕的国家。美国在十大最富裕国家中排名最后，在 21 强中排名第 18。

在经合组织（OECD）中，美国在 37 个国家中的贫困和不平等程度排在第 35 位。

根据世界收入不平等数据库，在所有西方国家中，美国的基尼率（衡量不平等）最高。

斯坦福大学贫困与不平等中心将美国描述为“儿童贫困联盟中一个明显且持续的异常群体”。美国儿童贫困率在加拿大、英国、爱尔兰、瑞典和挪威这六个最富有的国家中是最高的

<http://ohchr.org/EN/NewsEvents/Pages/DisplayNews.aspx?NewsID=22533&LangID=E>

An article by Stephen Lendman published in *Global Research* December 19, 2017 begins as follows:

Stephen Lendman 于 2017 年 12 月 19 日在《全球研究》上发表的一篇文章开头如下：

“America’s endless wars on humanity at home and abroad expose its imperial rage for unchallenged global dominance, no matter the human toll, exploiting its own people like others abroad.

“Vast destruction and millions of casualties attest to its brutality, revealing its contempt for human and civil rights, world peace and rule of law principles.

“Poverty, homelessness, hunger, unemployment, under-employment, and overall deprivation in America increase under either wing of its duopoly governance – while Wall Street, other corporate predators, and its privileged class never had things better.”

<https://www.globalresearch.ca/american-exceptionalisms-dark-side-poverty-and-despair-in-america/5623258>

“美国在国内外无休止的对人类的战争暴露了其帝国主义的愤怒，因为无论付出多少人的代价，它都像国外的其他人一样剥削自己的人民。

“巨大的破坏和数以百万计的伤亡证明了它的残暴，显示出它对人权和公民权利、世界和平与法治原则的蔑视。

“美国的贫困、无家可归、饥饿、失业、就业不足和整体贫困在其双寡头治理的任何一方都有所增加，而华尔街、其他公司掠夺者和其特权阶层的情况从未有过好转。”

<https://www.globalresearch.ca/american-exceptionalisms-dark-side-poverty-and-despip-in-america/5623258>

I believe EFL students are craving more truth, and in this book I do my best to provide - not a corporate picture of all things bright and beautiful in the West - but rather a more honest approach that raises real issues especially young people in the world do think about.

我相信 EFL 的学生们渴望更多的真理，在这本书中，我尽我所能提供的不是一幅西方所有美好事物的企业图景，而是一种更诚实的方法，它提出了真正的问题，尤其是世界上的年轻人所想的问题。

What is an “Educated Person?” 什么是“受过教育的人”？ ”

Recently I shared the manuscript of this book with a friend who in turn referred me to an article titled “The Educated Person” by Ernest L. Boyer. The following is a short quote:

最近，我与一个朋友分享了这本书的手稿，后者又转介我去看 Ernest L. Boyer 题为“受过教育的人”的文章。以下是一个简短的报价：

“But becoming well educated also means discovering the connectedness of things. Educators must help students see relationships across the disciplines and learn that education is a communal act, one that affirms not only individualism, but community. And for these goals to be accomplished, we need a new curriculum framework that is both comprehensive and coherent, one that can encompass existing subjects and integrate fragmented content while relating the curriculum to the realities of life... This curriculum must address the uniqueness of students’ histories and experiences, but it also must guide them to understand the many ways that humans are connected...”

Boyer, E. (1995) *The Educated Person - From the 1995 ASCD Yearbook* p.16-30

“但是受过良好教育还意味着发现事物之间的联系。教育工作者必须帮助学生了解各学科之间的关系，并了解教育是一种公共行为，不仅要确认个人主义，还要确认社区。为了实现这些目标，我们需要一个既全面又连贯的新课程框架，该框架可以涵盖现有主题并整合零散的内容，同时将课程与生活的现实联系起来。学生的历史和经验，但它也必须引导他们了解人类之间联系的多种方式...”

Boyer, E. (1995) 受过教育的人-摘自 1995 ASCD 年鉴第 16-30 页

Note: Ernest LeRoy Boyer (September 13, 1928 – December 8, 1995) was an American educator who most notably served as Chancellor of the State University of New York, United States Commissioner of Education, and President of the Carnegie Foundation for the Advancement of Teaching. Boyer was recipient of numerous awards, including over 140 honorary doctorates.

注意：欧内斯特·勒罗伊·博耶（Ernest LeRoy Boyer，1928 年 9 月 13 日至 1995 年 12 月 8 日）是一位美国教育家，最著名的是担任纽约州立大学的校长，美国教育专员，以及卡内基基金会的主席。博耶曾获得无数奖项，包括 140 多个名誉博士学位。

Boyer, E. (1995) 受过教育的人-摘自 1995 ASCD 年鉴第 16-30 页

I applaud his effort to teach people organize learning along consistent themes exploring timely, relevant and universal issues and experiences.

我赞扬他为教人们按照前后一致的主题组织学习的努力，以探讨及时，相关和普遍的问题和经验。

Education of youth should not be the sole domain of those living in "Ivory towers" who are disconnected from the very real concerns of most of the people on earth.

青年教育不应该是生活在“象牙塔”中的人们的唯一领域，这些人与地球上大多数人的真正关切分开。

Critical Need for Peace Studies Worldwide 世界各地对和平研究课程的迫切需要

I would add one critically important topic to professor Boyer’s list of eight commonalities: The need for peace, and studies on ways to actualize peace in our lives and between people, cultures and nations.

我将在博耶教授的八个共同点列表中添加一个至关重要的话题：和平的必要性，以及关于实现我们生活中以及人民，文化和民族之间和平的方式的研究。

(Please notice: I admire Professor Boyer enormously, but I critically examine his work too. And, then I realized: At least one very, very important topic is missing!)

（请注意：我非常钦佩博耶教授，但我也认真地审查了他的工作。然后，我意识到：至少缺少一个非常非常重要的主题！）

The number of refugees (“forcibly displaced persons”) primarily from armed conflicts rose above 70 million in 2019, more than at the end of WWII, more than at any time in history.

主要来自武装冲突的难民（“被迫流离失所者”）的人数在 2019 年超过 7,000 万，比第二次世界大战结束时有增加，比历史上任何时候都多。

<https://www.unhcr.org/figures-at-a-glance.html>



照片来源: 石龙（2015）阿富汗



照片来源: 石龙 (2015) 阿富汗

Thus, I strongly believe “peace studies” (including conflict resolution strategies) should be part of every school’s curriculum from Kindergarten to Year 12.

因此，我坚信从幼儿园到 12 年级，“和平研究”（包括解决冲突的策略）应成为每所学校课程的一部分。

This kind of curriculum must be taught intelligently, in my opinion, which means holistically and in the context of the real world. Like language instruction, too often the experiences of those who suffer the most is taught in reductionist, depersonalized fragments.

在我看来，这类课程的教学必须是明智的，这意味着整体性和现实世界的背景。与语言教学一样，那些遭受最大痛苦的人的经历往往是以还原论者的、非个性化的片段来传授的。

The “Status Quo” in the EFL World 英语世界的“现状”

Language can be an art as bright and beautiful as a mountain valley spring morning. Instead students are given dried chunks of colorless text to plow through.

Oh, there may be institutionalized boring pictures of some kind but in most cases they lack real life beyond childish experiences and corporate culture. Like ships without rudders the standard EFL textbooks wander through mazes of language skills aimlessly.

语言可以是一门艺术，就像山间山谷的春日早晨一样明媚。取而代之的是，学生们通常会收到一些干燥的无色文本。哦，也许有一些制度化的无聊图片，但在大多数情况下，除了幼稚的经历和企业文化，它们缺乏真实的生活。就像没有方向舵的船一样，标准的英语课本漫无目的地在语言技能的迷宫中徘徊。

Most intermediate EFL textbooks teach some useful basic skills like ordering food in restaurants, making reservations for airplanes and hotels, discerning different genre of books, music and movies and so on.

But not a single EFL textbook I've ever seen walks with students through a journey of any kind. Life can and should be an extraordinary and wonderful journey when accompanied by a friend, as compared to being lorded over by an imperial slave guard whose primary motivation appears to be ensuring that only obedient unquestioning passive robots learn English.

大多数中级英语教材都教授一些有用的基本技能，如在餐厅点餐、预订飞机和酒店、辨别不同类型的书籍、音乐和电影等。

但我从来没有看过一本英语课本和学生一起走过任何一段旅程。当有朋友陪伴的时候，生活可以而且应该是一段非凡而美妙的旅程，而不是被一个主要动机似乎是确保只有听话、毫无疑问的被动机器人才能学习英语的帝国奴隶卫队所支配。

One can only wonder what those publishing companies and writers are thinking.

人们只能好奇那些出版公司和作家在想什么。

How to describe most EFL books? Humorless? Bloodless? Mind numbing? Lacking consistent goals and devoid of meaningful themes?

如何描述大多数英语书？没有幽默感？没有血迹？精神麻木？缺乏一致的目标，缺乏有意义的主题？

Young children's EFL books should be simple. Children need to be protected from the evils of the world. But, high school juniors and seniors planning to go a western university really need to know a lot about the world.

幼儿的 EFL 书应该很简单。必须保护儿童免受世界罪恶的侵害。但是，打算入读西方大学的高中生和高年级的学生确实需要对世界有很多了解。

It's easy enough to understand the motivation of those writers and publishers. Most probably haven't traveled much, and instead spent a lot of time in universities studying other people's approaches to foreign language learning. Consequently, the vast majority of EFL textbooks are intellectually incestuous and practically clones of each other. They have legions of scientific studies to prove how wonderful they are but most of the writers and publishers never really learned a foreign language themselves and never traveled except with travel tour companies that whip them through five capital cities in 10 days. "What a wonderful trip," they exclaim after their great adventures. "I learned so much!"

了解这些作家和出版商的动机很容易。很可能旅行并不多，而是花了很多时间在大学里研究其他人的外语学习方法。因此，绝大多数 EFL 教科书在理论上都是乱伦的，实际上是彼此的克隆。他们拥有大量的科学研究来证明自己的魅力，但大多数作家和出版商从未真正真正学会过外语，也从未旅行过，除非有旅行社在 10 天内将他们带到了五个首都。在经历了巨大的冒险之后，他们惊呼道：“多么美妙的旅程。”“我学到了很多！”

Then they go back to their jobs copying other people's ideas of how English should be taught and learned. It's nauseating.

然后，他们回到工作岗位，效仿他人关于如何教和学英语的想法。令人恶心。

Of course, it's impossible to lobotomize all foreigners trying to learn English but it is certainly possible to murder off as much of the best parts of their brains as possible by boring them to death over prolonged exposure to learning EFL. Yes, language is a weapon of war: "Blind the enemy with our brilliance, and only allow obedient slaves into our sacred domain!"

当然，不可能对所有想学英语的外国人都做脑叶切除术，但肯定有可能因为长时间接触外语而使他们厌烦至死，从而扼杀他们大脑中最好的部分。是的，语言是战争的武器：“用我们的聪明才智蒙蔽敌人，只允许顺从的奴隶进入我们神圣的领地！”

Not knowing the vocabulary and concepts in this book will leave an adult foreign traveler in a western *educated* environment exposed as "ignorant."

In some cases, a lack of critically important information can put the traveler in danger. Learning some basic conflict resolution strategies can save a person's life. Yes, schools are sending students to the USA, Canada, UK, Australia and New Zealand "Like giving sheep to the wolves."

不了解这本书中的一些词汇和概念，会使一个在西方教育环境中的成年外国旅行者显得“无知。”

在某些情况下，缺乏至关重要的信息会使旅行者处于危险之中。学习一些基本的冲突解决策略可以挽救一个人的生命。是的，学校把学生送到美国、加拿大、英国、澳大利亚和新西兰“就像把羊给狼一样”

A few EFL textbooks are designed for writing skill development but I believe most were written by "technical writers," those who only write textbooks and instructional manuals. From what I've seen most EFL textbooks only teach very fundamental writing skills and rarely or never discuss more advanced writing styles and techniques. Most students don't like to read or write much and it's no surprise given that most textbooks fail to enlighten and excite the readers, and most teachers are even worse.

少数 EFL 教科书是为写作技能开发而设计的，但我相信大多数是由“技术作家”编写的，这些人只写教科书和指导手册。据我所知，大多数 EFL 教科书仅教授非常基本的写作技巧，很少或从未讨论过更高级的写作风格和技术。大多数学生不喜欢阅读或写作过多，鉴于大多数教科书无法启发和激发读者，而且大多数教师甚至更糟，这也就不足为奇了。

"Punish those lazy students !!" I heard that the "education" supervisor ordered the teachers below them. Can't really blame them. They are also products of education systems that only teach obedience. They have never learned a harmonious, human interaction. They have never learned the critical thinking skills necessary for good communication and a good life. Instead, they think they can bully people to learn. Oh! Horrible! No wonder so many students hate going to school! “惩罚那些懒惰的学生！”

“我听说“教育”的主管命令他们下面的老师。真的不能怪他们。它们也是仅教导顺服的教育系统的产品。他们从未学会过和谐的，人性化的互动。他们从没学会过良好的沟通和生活所必需的批判性思维技巧。相反，他们认为他们可以欺负人们来学习。哦！可怕！难怪这么多学生讨厌上学！”

When I first started working on this book I titled it: *A Radical Approach to English as a Foreign Language and Peace Studies*. Then it occurred to me that "Peace Studies" are not "radical." Just because the American Department of Defense has turned so much of the world into a war zone does not make teaching peace a strange or "radical" thing.

当我第一次开始写这本书时，我的标题是：《英语作为外语与和平研究的激进方法》。然后我想到“和平研究”不是“激进的”。仅仅因为美国国防部已经将世界上的大部分地区变成了战区，这并没有使和平教学变得奇怪或“激进”。

War is a trillion-dollar industry and in comparison, teaching peace studies gets less than 0.000001% of that budget.

战争是一万亿美元的行业，相比之下，教授和平研究的经费不到预算的 0.000001%。

I grew up with an appreciation of the “Renaissance Man” concept, that is – an educated person should know at least a little about everything, or they are not really educated. Most people think of doctors, lawyers and engineers as “educated people” but in fact very often their educations are sadly truncated (limited to their own professional domains) and consequently their educations are “questionable” at best in my opinion.

我在成长过程中对“文艺复兴时期的人”的概念非常欣赏，也就是说，一个受过良好教育的人应该对所有事情至少了解一点，否则他们就不会真正受过教育。大多数人认为医生，律师和工程师是“受过教育的人”，但实际上，他们的教育常常被不幸地截断（限于他们自己的专业领域），因此，我认为他们的教育充其量是“可疑的”。

“What do you think an artist is? An imbecile who only has eyes, if he is a painter, or ears if he is a musician, or a lyre in every chamber of his heart if he is a poet, or even, if he is a boxer, just his muscles?”

Far from it: at the same time he is also a political being, constantly aware of the heartbreaking, passionate, or delightful things that happen in the world, shaping himself completely in their image. How could it be possible to feel no interest in other people, and with a cool indifference to detach yourself from the very life which they bring to you so abundantly?”

By Pablo Picasso

“你认为艺术家是什么？一个只有眼睛的低能儿，如果他是画家的话？或者他是个音乐家的话就只有耳朵？如果他是一个诗人，他的每个房间里都有竖琴？甚至，如果他是一个拳击手，仅仅是他的肌肉？远非如此：同时，他也是一个政治人物，时刻意识到世界上发生的令人心碎、充满激情或令人愉快的事情。

一个艺术家必须完全按照正在展开的现实世界的形象塑造自己。怎么可能对别人不感兴趣；怎么可能有一种冷淡的冷漠——把自己从艺术家必须带给人们的丰富生活中分离出来？”

毕加索

Another difference between this and most textbooks is that I have written it using a more informal style than the vast majority of textbooks. Why? I use first and second person “subject pronouns” (“I” and “you”) in the text whereas most textbooks don’t do that. Most textbooks only write using the “third person” (he, she, it); They pontificate unseen from the God-like lofty heights of academia’s “ivory tower.” Why did I write it this way? I really like a more personal feeling in a textbook that teaches not only language but also the greater realities of the world today.

该书与大多数教科书之间的另一个区别是，与绝大多数教科书相比，我使用的是非正式的风格。为什么？我在文字中使用第一人称和第二人称“主语代词”（“ I”和“ you”），而大多数教科书都没有这样做。大多数教科书只使用“第三人称”（他，她，它）写作；他们崇尚学术界的“象牙塔”般的高高在上的神像。我为什么要这样写？我真的很喜欢一种教科书中的个人感觉，该教科书不仅讲语言，而且讲当今世界的现实。

I read a novel titled “Heart of Darkness” by Joseph Conrad, who describes a white man’s experiences in colonial Africa in 1889. The book is largely based upon his own real experiences in Africa at that time. Among other things he describes the cruel beating of an African slave for some minor infraction of the “white master’s” rules and his “mournful wails.” Conrad also introduced an imagined “International Society for the Suppression of Savage Customs.”

我读了约瑟夫·康拉德的小说《黑暗之心》，他描述了 1889 年一个白人在殖民地非洲的经历。这本书主要是根据他当时在非洲的真实经历写成的。除此之外，康拉德还描述了一名非洲奴隶因微违反“白人主人”的规定而遭受的残酷殴打以及他“悲恸的哀号”。康拉德还介绍了一个想象中的“镇压野蛮习俗的国际社会”

I believe most EFL textbooks are designed to suppress “savage customs” like creative thinking and self-expression in an environment where only the dull-minded and obedient can survive. If they’re not dull-minded before they begin learning EFL most are by the time they finish. Too often learning EFL is a savage custom indeed!

我相信大多数英语教材都是为了压制“野蛮习俗”，比如在只有头脑迟钝和听话的人才能生存的环境中进行创造性思维和自我表达。如果他们在开始学习英语之前不是头脑迟钝的话，大多数是在他们完成之前。经常学习英语确实是一种野蛮的习俗！

“Dumbing Down” America & the World 弱智化美国与世界

The term dumbing down describes the deliberate diminishment of the intellectual level of the content of schooling and education, of literature and cinema, and of news and culture. The idea of and the term dumbing down originated in 1933 as slang, used by motion picture screenplay writers, to mean: "revise so as to appeal to those of little education or intelligence.

“简化”一词是指故意降低学校教育、文学和电影、新闻和文化内容的智力水平。“简化”这个概念和术语起源于 1933 年，是电影编剧们使用的俚语，意思是：“修改以吸引那些没有受过教育或智力的人。

Why would anyone want to do that? The existing power structures in the U.S.A. do not want a well-informed, critical thinking population in the U.S.A.

为什么会有人想这么做？美国现有的权力结构不希望在美有一个消息灵通、批判性思维的群体。

If the American public were well-informed and thinking critically, they would demand huge changes in the dominant power structure in the U.S.A. What is that “dominant power structure?” To make a long story short, it’s “rulership by (publicly owned) corporations.”

如果美国公众消息灵通，思维严谨，他们就会要求美国主导权力结构发生巨大变化，那“主导权力结构”是什么？长话短说，这是“国营公司的统治”

This description however is too banal (commonplace, boring) and antiseptic (sterile, “cleansed of life,” “cold like a reptile,” “bloodless like a stone,” “without feelings,” “without love of life”).

然而，这种描述过于平庸（平淡无奇，无聊）和防腐（无菌，“净化了生命”，“像爬行动物一样冰冷”，“像石头一样不流血”，“没有感情”，“没有对生命的爱”，“没有对生命的尊重”）。

“Rulership by publicly owned corporations” has led to the deaths of millions of people since WWII. In some cases, those “deaths” were violent – killed by bombs, bullets and in many cases torture. In some cases, they were quieter deaths – deaths by disease and starvation that followed the wars corporate America profits from. In millions of other cases it means having an eye, arm or leg blown off, torn off, or just smashed, like in a collapsing building. Maybe you’re lucky, and survive, without that eye, arm or leg. But it takes months to even minimally recover. In some ways you never recover.

自二战以来，“公有公司统治”已经导致数百万人死亡。在某些情况下，这些“死亡”是暴力的——被炸弹、子弹和酷刑杀死。在某些情况下，它们是更安静的死亡——在美国企业从中获利的战争之后，死于疾病和饥饿。在其他数百万的案例中，这意味着眼睛、手臂或腿被炸掉、撕掉或只是被砸碎，就像在倒塌的建筑物中一样。也许你很幸运，没有那只眼睛，胳膊或腿，你还能活下来。但即使是最小程度的恢复也需要几个月的时间。在某些方面你永远不会康复。

These are the brutal realities that must be concealed from the voting public in the United States of America. Americans must be “dumbed down” (kept simple minded) to continue to permit the American Department of Defense to continue its wars on all the continents of the earth.

这些是必须向美利坚合众国的投票公众隐瞒的残酷现实。美国人必须“变得更愚蠢”（保持“头脑简单”），才能继续允许美国国防部在地球各大洲继续其战争。

To learn more about this (dumbing down) “make more stupid” process, study:

要了解更多关于这个（简化）“变得更愚蠢”的过程，请学习：

https://www.delcotimes.com/opinion/guest-column-why-the-dumbing-down-of-america-is-a/article_5275f11a-119e-11e9-b95f-fbc966e54b8b.html

<https://www.globalresearch.ca/the-dumbing-down-of-america-by-design/5395928>

<https://www.opensecrets.org> This internet site shows that individuals and big corporations can buy American politicians, legally.

这个网站显示，富人、“特殊利益集团”和大公司可以合法地购买美国政客。

How did it become legal to “donate” money to politicians (making bribery legal)?

在美国，向政客“捐款”（使贿赂合法化）如何成为合法行为？

<https://www.oyez.org/cases/2008/08-205>

You also might want to read a book titled: *The Dragons of Eden*, by Carl Sagan which is about “negative” (bloody) side of corporate rulership and evolution.

你可能还想读一本书，题为：伊甸园之龙，由卡尔萨根，这是关于“消极”（血腥）的一面，企业规则和演变

After reviewing some of the literature on “dumbing down America,” and corporate rule in the U.S.A. one might want to think outside the box (创造性思考) for a while and try to envision how this process has been used in history and is being used worldwide now.

Imperial powers in history used “dumbing down” when their civilizations were decaying. Why? To maintain their power. (A good example was the Ottoman Empire in the 1800s leading to its final collapse in the early 1900s).

在回顾了一些关于“让美国人民变得更愚蠢”和美国公司规则的文献之后，人们可能会想在一段时间内跳出框框来思考这个过程，并试图设想这个过程在历史上是如何使用的，现在正在全世界范围内使用。

历史上的皇权在其文明衰败的时候使用“哑巴”。为什么？以保持他们的力量。（一个很好的例子是 19 世纪的奥斯曼帝国导致了 19 世纪初的最终崩溃）。

Debate Topic - Cultural and linguistic imperialism 辩论-文化和语言帝国主义

Below is a normal debate topic in western secondary and tertiary educational institutions. This exercise is designed to sharpen students’ abilities to think critically, collect, weigh and evaluate evidence, and make personal decisions based on their own value systems. To “think critically” one must look at all sides of issues. Yes, I have opinions, but I carefully read about, and listen to all sides before I start a debate. Two things I greatly fear: 1] Too many people do not listen these days. Too many people do not “think critically.”

下面是西方中等和高等教育机构的一个正常辩论话题。这项练习旨在提高学生批判性思考、收集、权衡和评估证据的能力，以及根据自己的价值体系做出个人决定的能力。要“批判性地思考”，就必须看问题的方方面面。是的，我有意见，但我仔细阅读，在开始辩论前听取各方意见。有两件事我非常害怕：1]现在太多人不听。太多人不“批判性思考”

TOPIC: Is it possible most EFL textbooks and even TOEFL and IELTS tests are intentionally boring to screen out creative thinkers such that most of the foreigners entering American and/or British universities are less creative and more obedient?

话题：有没有可能大多数的英语课本，甚至是托福和雅思考试都是有意无聊地筛选出有创造力的思考者，以至于大多数进入美国和/或英国大学的外国人都不那么有创造力，更听话？例如，50%的词汇是古旧的，或者只在少数专业领域使用。因此，这对大多数学生来说是无用的。

Arguments against: British and American educational institution profit greatly from foreign students and would certainly not screen out any of those foreign students because of their creative abilities! To the contrary Western nations have benefited enormously from the creative work of foreigners that come to those western countries. In fact there’s a phrase for this: the “brain drain.” The “brain drain” refers to the best and brightest foreign students come to the US and UK for education and never return home!

反对理由：英国和美国的教育机构从外国学生身上获益匪浅，当然不会因为这些外国学生的创新能力而将他们排除在外！相反，西方国家从来到这些西方国家的外国人的创造性工作中获益匪浅。其实有一句话是这样说的：“人才流失”，“人才流失”是指最优秀、最聪明的外国留学生来到美国和英国接受教育，永不回国！

Examples of highly creative and intelligent foreigners who came to the USA and were very successful indeed can be found on the following internet sites:

在以下网站上可以找到一些非常有创造力和聪明才智的外国人的例子，他们来到美国并取得了巨大成功：

<http://www.businessinsider.com/came-to-america-with-nothing-and-made-a-fortune-2012-1#mel-martinez-former-us-senator-and-current-chairman-of-chase-bank-florida-7>

<https://www.globalcitizen.org/en/content/bet-you-didnt-know-these-game-changers-were-immigr>

And, many, many others.

Arguments for: British colonial rule once covered about 14.3 million square miles (more than 37 million square kilometers), about a quarter of Earth's total land area, including most of North America, as well as large parts of Africa and Asia, including China and India. Since the end of WWII, the U.S. has pursued a foreign policy (政策 [zhèng cè]) of absolute hegemony (霸权) in perpetuity (永久), justified by a belief in “Manifest Destiny.” (天命)

理由：英国殖民统治曾经覆盖了约 1430 万平方英里（超过 3700 万平方公里），约占地球陆地总面积的四分之一，包括北美大部分地区，以及包括中国和印度在内的非洲和亚洲大部分地区。第二次世界大战结束以来，美国一直奉行永久的绝对霸权外交政策（zhèng cè），其理由是相信“天命”

Hegemony (霸权): One nation has total power over all other nations 一个国家拥有对所有其他国家的全部权力

Perpetuity (永久): Forever 永远

Manifest Destiny (天命)

“The ideology that became known as “manifest destiny” (天命) included a belief in the inherent superiority of white European-Americans, as well as the conviction that whites were destined by God to conquer the territories of North America, from sea to shining sea.”

后来被称为“天命论”（manifest destiny）的意识形态包括对欧洲白人固有优越性的信仰，以及白人被上帝注定要征服北美领土的信念，从海洋到光辉的海洋

<https://www.khanacademy.org/humanities/ap-us-history/period-4/apush-age-of-jackson/a/manifest-destiny>

Modern American actualization of “Manifest Destiny” (天命 [tiān mìng]) is really “over the top” (反常的) (cruel, evil and stupid) in my opinion:

在我看来，现代美国人实现“天命论”真的是“过头了”（残忍、邪恶和愚蠢）：

“The term Manifest Destiny fell out of use after the U.S. Civil War (美国内战), in part due to racist (种族主义者) overtones of the concept, but it returned again in the 1890s to justify American intervention in the Cuban rebellion (古巴叛乱) against Spain. That intervention resulted in the Spanish-American War (美西战争), in 1898.

“在美国内战后，“天命”一词就不再使用了，部分原因是这一概念带有种族主义色彩，但在 19 世纪 90 年代，它再次出现，为美国干预针对西班牙的古巴叛乱辩护。那次干涉导致了 1898 年的美西战争。

Woodrow Wilson (伍德罗威尔逊), president from 1913-1921, became a leading practitioner of modern Manifest Destiny. Wanting to rid Mexico of its dictator president Victoriano Huerta in 1914, Wilson commented that he would "teach them to elect good men." His comment was fraught with the notion that only Americans could provide such governmental education, which was a hallmark of Manifest Destiny.

伍德罗·威尔逊（Woodrow Wilson，1913-1921 年任美国总统）成为现代天命论的主要实践者。1914 年，威尔逊想让墨西哥摆脱独裁者维多利亚·韦尔塔（Victoriano Huerta），他评论说，他将“教他们选好人”。他的评论充满了这样一种观念：只有美国人才能提供这样的政府教育，这是天命的标志。

“It would be hard to classify American involvement in World War II as an extension of Manifest Destiny. You could make a greater case for its policies during the Cold War.

很难把美国卷入第二次世界大战归类为天命的延伸。你可以为冷战期间的政策提出更大的理由。

“The policies of George W. Bush toward Iraq, however, fit modern Manifest Destiny almost exactly. Bush, who said in a 2000 debate against Al Gore that he had no interest in “nation building,” proceeded to do exactly that in Iraq.

然而，小布什对伊拉克的政策几乎完全符合现代的天命。布什在 2000 年一场针对戈尔的辩论中说，他对“国家建设”没有兴趣，他在伊拉克也正是这样做的。

“When Bush began the war in March 2003, his overt reason was to find "weapons of mass destruction." (大规模毁灭性武器) In reality, he was bent on deposing Iraqi dictator Saddam Hussein (推翻伊拉克独裁者萨达姆·侯赛因) and installing in his place a system of American democracy. The ensuing insurrection against American occupiers proved how difficult it would be for the United States to continue pushing its brand of Manifest Destiny.” 2003 年 3 月布什发动战争时，他公开的理由是要找到“大规模杀伤性武器”。实际上，他一心要推翻伊拉克独裁者萨达姆·侯赛因（Saddam Hussein）。随后发生的针对美国占领者的暴动证明，美国继续推行其天命品牌是多么困难。”

<https://www.thoughtco.com/american-manifest-destiny-3310344>

Furthermore, President Obama’s famous “Pivot to Asia” policy formulated by former Secretary of State Hillary Clinton has resulted in vastly increased weapons sales to all of China’s neighbors, and laid the ground work for President Trump’s current (2018) trade war with China.

此外，奥巴马总统臭名昭著的“重返亚洲”政策（由前国务卿希拉里制定）克林顿导致对中国所有邻国的武器销售大大增加，并为特朗普总统当前（2018 年）的对华贸易战奠定了基础。

Thus far this trade war has had a depressing effect on the global economy and the entire “Pivot towards Asia” is a significant threat to peace in Asia and the world. It exactly fits the most modern manifestation of American foreign policy makers’ belief in American “Manifest Destiny.”

迄今为止，这场贸易战对全球经济产生了令人沮丧的影响，整个“迈向亚洲的枢纽”对亚洲和世界的和平构成了重大威胁。这完全符合美国外交政策制定者对美国“Manifest Destiny”（上帝希望美国永远统治世界的信念）的最现代体现。

Thus, given the American foreign policy makers' pursuit of *hegemony in perpetuity based on "manifest destiny,"* it would not be surprising to find the USA broadly engaged in cultural imperialism, fabricating revisionist histories, presenting fragmented inflammatory news reporting and utilizing discriminatory educational policies *that are biased against creative foreign critical thinkers in favor of obedient, culturally sycophantic students.*

因此，鉴于美国外交政策制定者基于“清单命运”永久追求霸权，发现美国广泛从事文化帝国主义，编造修正主义历史，呈现零散的煽动性新闻报道以及利用歧视性教育政策就不足为奇了。他们偏向有创造力的外国批评家，偏爱听话的，文化上交往的学生。

In a real debate, each side would then have to opportunity to present counter-arguments to the opposing side's opening position statements. Then, some panel of judges would vote for which side in the debate presented the most convincing arguments.

在真正的辩论中，每一方将不得不有机会对对方的公开立场陈述提出反驳。然后，一些法官将投票支持辩论中哪一方提出最有说服力的论点。

Every single school I've worked at in South Korea and China promoted an "alt right" philosophy of unquestioned subservience to Caucasian cultural (and by inference racial) superiority. Thus, students are not taught critical thinking skills, and are sometimes (overtly or covertly) punished if they dare to question something as obviously immoral as "American hegemony" or "manifest destiny."

我在韩国和中国工作过的每一所学校都提倡一种“极右翼”的哲学，即毫无疑问地屈从于高加索文化（并由此推断为种族）的优越性。因此，学生们没有接受批判性思维技能的教育，如果他们敢于质疑像“美国霸权”或“明显的命运”这样明显不道德的东西，有时（公开或秘密地）会受到惩罚

There are tactful and cautious ways to make the case that greater social egalitarianism could be demonstrated by those super-powers that "have been accused" of being "a bit heavy handed" in regards to their foreign policies.

有礼貌和谨慎的沟通方式，表明更大的社会平均主义可以表现为那些超级大国“被指责”在其外交政策方面“有点强硬”。

Mass murder (15-20 million people), destroying entire nations (Afghanistan and Iraq for example), and enslaving entire continents (like Africa) is a lot more than "being a little heavy handed."

大规模谋杀（1500-2000 万人），摧毁整个国家（比如阿富汗和伊拉克），奴役整个大陆（比如非洲）远不止是“有点”高压。

It's interesting to note British intellectuals tend to appreciate great understatements like the one immediately above. They consider them to be elegant and persuasive arguments.

British "intelligence officers" call the espionage business "the great game." And to them it is a great game. From the safety of their comfortable lives they provoke, colonize, enslave, murder, torture and commit theft on continental levels. For the victims, and victim family survivors, it isn't a game – it's a life and death struggle for survival, dignity and self-determination.

有趣的是，英国知识分子倾向于欣赏像上面这样的轻描淡写。他们认为他们的论据优雅而有说服力。

英国“情报官员”称间谍业为“伟大的游戏”，对他们来说，这是一个伟大的游戏。从他们舒适生活的安全出发，他们在大陆一级挑起、殖民、奴役、谋杀、酷刑和偷窃。对受害者和受害者家属来说，这不是一场游戏，而是为了生存、尊严和自决而进行的生死斗争。

American intellectuals tend to be more sharply divided along liberal/conservative lines than their British counterparts. Conservatives have vastly more power than liberals in most educational environments in the USA for a variety of reasons. So, liberals have to be more careful in speech, while conservatives can be very “sharp” and direct. Conservatives of course support maintaining American hegemony in perpetuity 100%.

这里有意思的是，英国知识分子倾向于欣赏像上面这样的轻描淡写。他们认为他们的论据优雅而有说服力。然而，美国知识分子倾向于按照自由派/保守派的路线出现更为尖锐的分歧。在美国的大多数教育环境中，保守派比自由派拥有更大的权力，原因有很多。因此，自由党人在讲话时必须更加谨慎，而保守党人则可以非常“犀利”和直接。保守派当然 100%支持美国永远保持霸权。

Regardless of the outcome of a vote by an esteemed panel of experts in a school debate (such as above), the evidence supporting the existence of cultural and linguistic imperialism in the western education industry is strong.

不管在学校辩论（如上文所述）中一个受人尊敬的专家小组的投票结果如何，支持西方教育行业存在文化和语言帝国主义的证据是有力的。(See Appendix 3: A Critical Review of the IB (Eng)/ 国际预科 (IB) 课程的批判性评审)

Regardless as to the merits and demerits of these arguments, the possibility exists a certain measure of cultural neo-colonialism is *intentionally or not*, built into most western educational programs and EFL textbooks.

不管这些论点的优缺点如何，都有可能存在某种程度的文化新殖民主义，这是有意或无意的，被纳入大多数西方教育计划和英语教材中。

“The *de facto* censorship which leaves so many Americans functionally illiterate about the history of US foreign affairs may be all the more effective because it is not so much official, heavy-handed or conspiratorial, as it is woven artlessly into the fabric of education and media. No conspiracy is needed. The editors of *Reader’s digest* and *U.S. News and World Report* do not need to meet covertly with the representatives from NBC in an FBI safe-house to plan next month’s stories and programs; for the simple truth is that these individuals would not have reached the positions they occupy if they themselves had not all been guided through the same tunnel of camouflaged history and emerged with the same selective memory and conventional wisdom.”

“事实上的审查制度使许多美国人对美国外交史的知识一窍不通，这可能会更加有效，因为它与其说是官方的、严厉的或阴谋的，不如说是巧妙地编织在教育 and 媒体的结构中。不需要阴谋。《读者文摘》和《美国新闻与世界报道》的编辑们不必在联邦调查局的安全屋里秘密会见美国全国广播公司（NBC）的代表，来计划下个月报道和节目；因为简单的事实是，如果这些人自己不是都经过同样的引导，他们就不会达到他们所占据的位置伪装历史的隧道，以同样的选择性记忆和传统智慧出现。”

William Blum, *Killing Hope, U.S. Military and CIA Interventions since World War II*, p. 15

[Permission to quote granted by William Blum via email March 15, 2018]

威廉·布鲁姆，《杀死希望》，二战以来美国军方和中央情报局的干预，第 15 页【William Blum 于 2018 年 3 月 15 日通过电子邮件批准报价】

Likewise, there is some possibility that the terrorist group Boko Haram (which literally means “No Western Education”) in Nigeria and neighboring countries was created by EFL teachers who just tortured their students with English grammar (which as we all know doesn’t always follow rules like a natural science). This may sound absolutely ridiculous to some people; however provoking and radicalizing people is Standard Operating Procedure (SOP) at CIA.

“The Stay Behind network, designed to carry out resistance, assassination and provocation operations during the Cold War, would have been activated in case of a Soviet invasion of Western Europe, or if far left parties ever came to power in democratic elections. <https://sputniknews.com/military/201710101058101654-cia-palme-other-deaths-cold-war/>

<https://www.globalresearch.ca/invasion-midst-pandemic/5712192>

<https://www.mintpressnews.com/anti-war-voices-warn-of-cia-provocation-to-kill-guaido-blame-maduro/258178>

Cultural and linguistic imperialism includes providing “educational” curriculum and “educators” that idolize western hegemony and denigrates the accomplishments of all civilizations that are not Caucasian.

The American Department of Defense desperately needs “bad guys,” “terrorists” and socialist presidents like Fidel Castro and Maduro in Venezuela to justify ever increasing budgets. So, they do their best to provoke and radicalize otherwise perfectly reasonable people into doing most unreasonable things. When they succeed, they pass out “secret medals” to all concerned.

<https://www.rt.com/news/489193-venezuela-coup-plot-tapes>

Arts and Sciences 艺术与科学

Sciences and arts are **sublimely** beautiful as they both work to discover and disseminate truth in different ways at the lower levels, and identical ways at the higher levels.

(**Sublime** [崇高的]: Impressing the mind with a sense of grandeur (富丽堂皇) or power; inspiring (鼓舞人心) awe (威严), veneration (尊敬), etc. “Sublimely” is obviously the adverb form, e.g. modifying the verb “are” as in “are sublimely beautiful!”)

What is science? There are many definitions. Most are boring. My favorite (not boring definition) is: Science is the search for lawful relationships amongst events in nature.

什么是科学？有很多定义。大多数都很无聊。我最喜欢的（不是无聊的定义）是：科学是寻找自然界中事件之间的可靠关系。

For example, if you heat water above 100° Centigrade (212° Fahrenheit) it will boil and turn into a gas called steam. That’s a lawful (reliable) relationship. If you slap someone in the face or transparently discriminate against someone, they will probably be hurt and angry; that’s a lawful relationship.

例如，如果你把水加热到 100 摄氏度（212 华氏度）以上，水就会沸腾，变成一种叫做蒸汽的气体。这是一种（合法的）可靠的关系。如果你扇某人的耳光或是明目张胆地歧视某人，他们很可能会受到伤害和愤怒；这是一种（合法的）可靠的关系。

Math is sometimes called the “queen of sciences” because all sciences move forward with their ability to define relationships using equations. Why “queen?” In western chess, the queen has the power to move in more ways than any other piece. In many ways she is the most powerful piece. 数学有时被称为“科学女王”，因为所有的科学都有能力用方程式来定义关系。为什么是“皇后”？“在西洋象棋中，女王比其他棋子有更多的移动方式。在许多方面，她是最有影响力的。

For example, $A^2 + B^2 = C^2$ is the formula for calculating the hypotenuse of a right triangle from the length of the other two sides. That is an example of math used to describe a “lawful relationship.” 例如， $A^2 + B^2 = C^2$ 是从另两条边的长度计算直角三角形斜边的公式。这是一个用来描述“合法关系”的数学例子。

Science is a methodology using experimentation to determine the validity and reliability of theories. It’s also about the only way to most accurately calculate the probability of anything being true in a world increasingly built of beautiful illusions.

科学是一种用实验来确定理论有效性和可靠性的方法。这也是在一个越来越由 - 美丽和有利可图的幻想 - 构成的世界里，最 - 准确地计算出 - 某件事是真的 - 概率 - 的唯一方法

And arts? There are so many definitions of art as to boggle the mind. I might define art as a process of discovery and communication based on the simultaneous transformation of the artist and the art he or she creates.

还有艺术？艺术有太多的定义，以致于使人费解。我可以把艺术定义为一个发现和交流的过程，基于艺术家和他或她所创造的艺术的同时转化。

The artist discovers new inner resources with every piece of art her or she creates, and each piece of art reflects and communicates a truth that is new to the world. Those truths are sometimes uncomfortable to those who uphold the *status quo*, but it is new art that shapes the future of new and better worlds.

艺术家用自己创作的每一件艺术作品发现新的内在资源，每一件艺术作品都反映和传达着一个新的世界真理。那些坚持现状的人有时会对这些真理感到不安，但正是新艺术塑造了新的更美好世界的未来。

To that I’d add that art by necessity elicits some feeling, for without feeling, art is sterile and dead. Those feelings don’t always have to be pleasant. Some truths are not pleasant but desperately need to be communicated. (Like the nine million people that die of hunger every year. Unfortunately, no artists I know of dare to delve into the depths of that largely hidden world.)

除此之外，我还要补充一点，艺术必然会引起某种感觉，因为没有感觉，艺术就没有生命力，就死了。这些感觉并不总是令人愉快的。有些真理并不令人愉快，但迫切需要交流。（比如每年有九百万人死于饥饿。不幸的是，据我所知，没有一位艺术家敢深入到这片不为人知的世界的深处。）

Great art speaks to the entire mind. Our brain’s middle section (limbic system) is the processor of emotions. Enlightening art stimulates the entire brain, not just the logic and reasoning parts located in the top layer of our brain. We may not be able to explain why a piece of art “speaks” to us, but we can love and appreciate it just the same.

伟大的艺术是心灵的全部。我们大脑的中部（边缘系统）是情绪的处理器。启蒙艺术刺激整个大脑，而不仅仅是位于大脑顶层的逻辑和推理部分。我们也许无法解释为什么一件艺术品会对我们“说话”，但我们可以同样地去爱和欣赏它。

The highest forms of art are sciences, and the highest levels of sciences are arts. The dichotomist illusions of difference disappear in the more transcendent realms of both. From great arts and sciences come great truths, yet unfortunately both can be perverted to serve unhealthy aspirations. Sometimes a seeker of great truths must ask: “Who’s paying for this?” and “Who profits from this?” This is often necessary to begin to figure out if the art or science one is appreciating is real or just another illusion.

艺术的最高形式是科学，科学的最高水平是艺术。两种不同的二分法幻觉消失在两者更为超越的领域。伟大的艺术和科学带来伟大的真理，但不幸的是，两者都可能被扭曲，以满足不健康的愿望。有时候一个伟大真理的探索者必须问：

“谁付的钱？”和

“谁从中获利？”

这通常是必要的，以开始找出一个人正在欣赏的艺术或科学是真实的还是只是另一种幻觉。

Challenge Question! 挑战问题!

What ultimately is real (in this world of grand illusions)? How do you know?

在这个充满幻想的世界里，什么才是真正的？你怎么知道的？

In my opinion the health, happiness and cooperative interdependencies of all the earth’s natural systems and inhabitants (psychologists sometimes call this “tissue issues,” whereas evolutionary biologists might call this “ecology”).

In simple terms I’d call it health, of individuals and nature working together in harmony. Sounds a bit simplistic I know, but the earth now is suffering, as are too many of her inhabitants. Why? So, the super-rich capitalists can get a little richer!

在我看来，地球上所有自然系统和居民的健康、幸福和合作相互依赖（心理学家有时称之为“活组织问题”，而进化生物学家则称之为“生态学”）。

简单地说，我称之为健康，是个人与自然和谐相处的结果。我知道这听起来有点简单，但地球的生态和太多的居民正在受苦。

为什么？所以超级富有的资本家可以变得更加富有！

Sufficient to say hundreds of thousands of the best and the brightest (and wealthiest) young minds around the world have been and are currently being shaped into a nearly exclusively Euro-centric perspective of the universe, while the worlds of the people of color have been decimated by wars, poverty, and destruction of their cultural heritages. Ancient “classical languages” die all too often, and it seems to me some of the “best and brightest” could and should do something more to help prevent that from happening.

全世界数十万最优秀、最聪明（和最富有）的年轻人，已经并正在“昂贵的私立学校”中形成一种几乎完全以欧美为中心的宇宙观。同时，有色人种的世界已经并正在被战争、贫困和文化遗产的破坏所毁灭。古代“古典语言”经常消亡。一些“最优秀和最聪明的人”能够而且应该做更多的事情来帮助保护发展中国家的人民、自然、古典文化和语言。

Holism 整体论

In this book, I try to take a “holistic” approach to language learning as compared to most EFL textbooks which use a disproportionately large percentage of “reductionist” approaches.

与大多数使用“还原论”方法比例过大的 EFL 教科书相比，我在本书中尝试采用“整体”方法进行语言学习。

I’m much more interested in helping students develop: 我对帮助学生发展更感兴趣：

- a) greater inner awareness, awareness of other people and their needs, and the world,
- b) an appreciation of the universality of human experience and
- c) an awareness of the ever-present irony (and blatant hypocrisy) in so many human endeavors and experiences

- a) 更高的内在意识，对他人及其需求以及世界的认识，
- b) 赞赏人类经验的普遍性，并
- c) 在许多人类的努力和经验中认识到不断出现的讽刺（和公然的伪善）

...than I am in grinding them down into perfect little language robots. Perfect language robots have nothing interesting to say, even if their English is flawless!

...比我将它们磨碎为完美的小语言机器人更重要。完美的语言机器人很无聊，即使他们的英语完美无缺！

Yes, yes, knowledge of formats for different kinds of writing and speaking (“text types”) are essential, and yes, knowledge of grammar is critical for good writing, but they are not the most important things. Having something interesting to say is more important in my opinion, even if it is a little garbled.

是的，是的，对于不同类型的写作和口语（“文本类型”）的格式知识是必不可少的，是的，语法知识对于良好的写作至关重要，但并不是最重要的。在我看来，即使有点乱码，也要说些有趣的话更重要。

Being a good human is most important. Having a value system is most important. Knowing what is really going on in the world is most important.

成为一个好人是最重要的。拥有价值体系是最重要的。了解世界上到底发生了什么是重要的。

Being amoral, blind and ignorant of the realities of the world today is double suicide in my opinion. Knowledge may not always translate into power, but it’s better than being an ignorant fool that anyone can turn into a slave.

在我看来，不道德、盲目和不了解当今世界的现实是双重自杀。知识未必总能转化为力量，但总比无知的傻瓜强。无知的傻瓜很容易变成奴隶。

I attempt to teach ELF within the context of the whole range of “human value systems” ultimately geared towards helping make this increasingly violent world more peaceful, happier, healthier and more humorous for everyone.

我试图在一系列“人类价值体系”的背景下教授英语，最终目的是帮助这个日益暴力的世界对每个人来说更加和平、快乐、健康和幽默。

“Greatness in thinking, communication and life don’t come from a book or the rules of writing, it comes from knowing one’s self and sharing our experiences with others in a way that enhances all of our lives.”

“思考、交流和生活中的伟大不是来自于一本书或写作规则，而是来自于了解自己，并以一种提升我们一生的方式与他人分享我们的经验。”

Vocabulary: Understanding the USA 词汇：了解美国

The U.S.A. is highly dynamic in a number of ways and the language and culture can and do change quite quickly.

美国在很多方面都是高度活跃的，语言和文化能够而且确实会很快发生变化。

Fortunately, most people are normal just about everywhere. It’s a natural function. They wake up in the morning and go to school or work, and come home in the afternoon, relax, eat dinner and maybe enjoy some entertainment or do homework. At some point in their lives they want to get married and have children. The majority of people want their children to have better lives than they did, with more opportunities and greater freedom. These appear to be universal values.

幸运的是，大多数人在任何地方都很正常。这是自然的功能。他们早上醒来，上学或工作，下午回家，放松，吃晚饭，也许享受一些娱乐或做家庭作业。在他们生命中的某个时刻，他们想结婚生子。大多数人希望他们的孩子过上更好的生活，有更多的机会和更大的自由。这些似乎是普遍的价值观。

But! The mainstream media in the USA has become so powerful over the past 50 years that peoples attitudes can change from a normal distribution (balanced) to highly skewed rather quickly. At this time the USA is suffering from some extreme imbalances exacerbating problems from COVID-19.

但是！在过去的 50 年里，美国的主流媒体变得如此强大，以至于人们的态度可以很快从正态分布（均衡）转变为高度倾斜。此时，美国正遭受着一些极端的失衡，加剧了 COVID-19 的问题。

Global Capitalism and the Deep State 全球资本主义与深层政府的

深层政府的 (Deep State) = 影子政府 (Shadow government)

Capitalism – old fashioned unlimited greed and irresponsible abuse of power have a long history (see Chapter 3). The USA is still a very young county (only 244 years as of this writing). Since WWII however the “Deep State” within the USA has been growing in power at a logarithmic rate.

不受约束的资本主义——旧式的无限贪婪和不负责的滥用权力有着悠久的历史（见第 3 章）。美国仍然是一个非常年轻的国家（截至本文撰写时只有 244 年）。然而，自二战以来，美国国内的“深层政府的”一直以对数速度增长。

In the beginning the government of the USA was a novel construction, a hybrid combination of Greek democracy and Roman Republicanism.

美国政府一开始是一个新颖的结构，是希腊民主和罗马共和的混合体。

...(Benjamin) Franklin was walking out of Independence Hall after the Constitutional Convention in 1787, when someone shouted out, “Doctor, what have we got? A republic or a monarchy?”

To which Franklin supposedly responded, at once both witty and ominous: “A republic, if you can keep it.”

1787 年宪法会议结束后，本杰明·富兰克林走出独立大厅时，有人喊道：“医生，我们得到了什么？共和国还是君主制？”

富兰克林似乎立刻机智而不祥地回应道：“一个共和国，如果你能保持下去的话。”

<https://www.msn.com/en-us/news/factcheck/a-republic-if-you-can-keep-it-did-ben-franklin-really-say-impeachment-days-favorite-quote/ar-BBY8JhA>

Unfortunately, the republic is in a shambles now due to unlimited corruption brought about by the evolution of the military industrial complex coupled with unlimited “donations” to politicians and political parties. This corruption escalated quickly after a 2010 Supreme Court decision called *Citizens United Vs. FEC*. That decision permitted giving money to politicians. Subsequent court decisions made the problem of corruption in politics much worse permitting unlimited amounts of money from anonymous donors to politicians.

不幸的是，由于军工综合体的演变带来的无限腐败，加上对政治家和政党的无限“捐赠”，共和国现在陷入了混乱。

2010 年最高法院的一项判决（称为“公民联合会 Vs. 联邦选举委员会”）后，腐败迅速升级

那个决定使“给”政客钱合法化了。最高法院裁定，有些人所说的贿赂实际上是“言论自由”。哈！真是笑话！

但是，这是真的。贿赂是合法的。随后的法庭判决使得政治腐败问题更加严重，允许匿名捐赠者向政客提供无限数额的资金。

Many news media organizations and people write and talk a lot about President Trump and Michael Pompeo, but really, they are only the masks, the “faces” of a vastly larger entity called the “Deep State.” Trump and Pompeo are very much the same as the gargoyles on old cathedrals. They are faces and masks on a vastly larger superstructure and the decisions are made inside that superstructure. The decisions are made mostly by a large collection of unelected, highly secretive decision-making organizations. Some are governmental some are not.

许多新闻媒体组织和人们经常撰文和谈论特朗普总统和迈克尔·蓬佩奥，但实际上，他们只是一个巨大实体“深层政府的”的面具和“面孔”。特朗普和蓬佩奥与老教堂外屋顶上的石像非常相似。它们是一个巨大的上层建筑上的面孔和面具，而决策实际上是在上层建筑内部做出的。这些决策大多是由大量未经选举、高度保密的决策组织做出的。有些是政府的，有些不是。



nwssa.org

The “deep state” is a ‘cabal’ of unelected people and very powerful and rich organizations, that wields unimaginable power and manipulates American foreign and domestic policies from the shadows.

“深层政府的”是一个由未经选举的人和非常强大和富有的组织组成的“阴谋集团”，他们掌握着难以想象的权力，从阴影中操纵着美国的外交和国内政策。

A few years ago, most people doubted the existence of the Deep State. Now however it has at least partly emerged from the shadows.

几年前，大多数人怀疑深层政府的的存在。但现在它至少有一部分是从阴影中出来的。

“‘Thank God for Deep State,’ ex-CIA boss says. Still think it’s a conspiracy theory? November 1, 2019

“In just a few short months, the US political establishment has gone from denying the existence of the ‘Deep State’ and calling it a conspiracy theory, to praising it as the bulwark of the Republic against President Donald Trump.

“‘Thank God for the Deep State,’ declared former CIA director John E. McLaughlin at an event this week, describing the diplomats and intelligence officers testifying before the congressional impeachment inquiry as “people who are doing their duty or responding to a higher call...”

前中情局老板说：“感谢上帝，让我们有了深层政府的。2019年11月1日

“短短几个月，美国政界从否认‘深层政府的’的存在并称之为阴谋论，到称赞它是共和国对抗唐纳德·特朗普总统的堡垒。

前中情局局长麦克劳克林（John E. McLaughlin）本周在一次活动中宣称，“感谢上帝，感谢深层政府的”，他形容在国会弹劾调查前作证的外交官和情报官员是“正在履行职责或响应更高要求的人...”

<https://www.rt.com/usa/472398-deep-state-ex-cia-boss>

The principle branches within the “Deep State” include:

foreign and domestic lobby groups,
foundations,
institutes,
think tanks,
the five main branches of the US military,
government intelligence and
police organizations,
Private Military Companies (PMCs),
private intelligence and security companies and
Fortune 500 companies (each of which has its own intelligence departments)

“深层政府的”的主要分支包括：

国内外游说团体，
基础，
研究所，
智囊团，
美军的五个主要分支，
政府情报和
警察组织，
私营军事公司，
私人情报和安全公司
财富 500 强公司（每个公司都有自己的情报部门）

Each and every one of the aforementioned organizations has unbelievable money and power. 上述每一个组织都拥有难以置信的资金和权力。

Take for example some foreign lobby groups several of which have networks of hundreds of thousands of (naturalized) American citizens they control who can (legally) funnel millions of dollars to any particular Senator or presidential candidate. This is the “shadow world” of “state capture” of the American government by foreign governments.

以一些外国游说团体为例。一些外国游说团体拥有他们控制的数十万（归化）美国公民的网络。那些购买公民身份的外国人可以（合法地）向任何一位参议员或总统候选人注入数百万美元。这就是美国政府被外国政府“国家俘虏”的“影子世界”。

The American government Intelligence Community includes but is not limited to:

美国政府情报界包括但不限于：

1. Office of the Director of National Intelligence
2. Central Intelligence Agency
3. National Security Agency
4. Defense Intelligence Agency
5. Federal Bureau of Investigation
6. Department of State – Bureau of Intelligence and Research
7. Department of Homeland Security – Office of Intelligence and Analysis
8. Drug Enforcement Administration – Office of National Security Intelligence
9. Department of the Treasury – Office of Intelligence and Analysis
10. Department of Energy – Office of Intelligence and Counterintelligence
11. National Geospatial-Intelligence Agency
12. National Reconnaissance Office
13. Air Force Intelligence, Surveillance and Reconnaissance
14. Army Military Intelligence
15. Office of Naval Intelligence
16. Marine Corps Intelligence
17. Coast Guard Intelligence

- 1。国家情报局局长办公室
- 2。中央情报局
- 3。国家安全局
- 4。国防情报局
- 5个。联邦调查局
- 6。国务院情报研究局
- 7号。国土安全部-情报与分析办公室
- 8个。国家安全情报局缉毒局
- 9号。财政部-情报和分析办公室
- 10个。能源部-情报和反情报办公室
- 11号。空间情报局
- 12岁。国家侦察局
- 13岁。空军情报、监视和侦察
- 14岁。陆军军事情报

15 岁。海军情报处

16 岁。海军陆战队情报

17 岁。海岸警卫队情报

The apex of the Deep State is the National Security Council (NSC).

深层政府的顶点是国家安全委员会（NSC）。

Though the news is always filled with the name and photos of President Trump resolutely leading the USA through the ‘treacherous’ waters of international affairs, in fact the real decision makers are in the NSC.

尽管新闻总是充斥着特朗普总统坚决带领美国渡过国际事务“险恶”水域的名字和照片，但事实上，真正的决策者在国家安全委员会。

The NSC is composed of the president, vice president, secretary of state, secretary of defense, director of the Central Intelligence Agency and the chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff. They control the fate and rulership of most nations around the world, and how the corporate controlled media shapes domestic attitudes and trends.

国家安全委员会由总统、副总统、国务卿、国防部长、中央情报局局长和参谋长联席会议主席组成。它们控制着世界上大多数国家的命运和统治地位，以及企业控制的媒体如何塑造国内的态度和趋势。

They individually and/or collectively can start or stop a riot in Rome or Rio de Janeiro or almost anywhere else in the world with a snap of their fingers. They can crush most governments easily. China and Iran of course frustrate them enormously because they can't totally control them.

他们可以单独和/或集体地用他们的手指在罗马、里约热内卢或世界上几乎任何其他地方发动或停止暴乱。他们可以轻易地摧毁大多数政府。中国和伊朗当然让他们非常失望，因为他们不能完全控制他们。

Mini-Quiz 小测验

Can you name five of the organs within the American Deep State?

How many principle government Intelligence organizations are there in the USA?

What is the apex, umbrella organization for the Deep State?

你能说出美国深州的五个器官吗？

美国有多少主要的政府情报机构？

“深州”的最高组织是什么

Thinking questions 思考问题

How much power do you think President Trump and Secretary of State Michael Pompeo really have, given the large number of very powerful entities within the Deep State?

Can you guess which foreign lobby groups have the most power over American politicians?

你认为特朗普总统和国务卿蓬佩奥（Michael Pompeo）真正拥有多大的权力，因为在这个深州有大量非常强大的实体？

你能猜出哪个外国游说团体对美国政客最有影响力吗？

Research Challenge: Find two or three of the most powerful and often quoted foundations, institutes and think tanks in the USA.

研究挑战：找到两三个在美国最有影响力和经常被引用的基金会、研究所和智囊团。

Conclusions 结论

Naturally with so many powerful entities controlling the US government there are competing factions within the Deep State, each with its own agenda. Each of those factions have fostered deep domestic schisms within the US. Those domestic political and economic schisms in the USA are dangerous.

很自然，有这么多强大的实体控制着美国政府，在这个深州内部有相互竞争的派系，每个派系都有自己的议事日程。这些派系中的每一个都在美国国内形成了严重的国内分裂。美国国内的政治和经济分裂是危险的。

But one is the most dangerous of all, and that is the military industrial complex.

The Military-Industrial Complex 但其中一个是最危险的，那就是军工综合体。

During his last speech, President Eisenhower warned the American people and the world:

艾森豪威尔总统在上一次讲话中警告美国人民和全世界：

This conjunction of an immense military establishment and a large arms industry is new in the American experience. The total influence -- economic, political, even spiritual -- is felt in every city, every State house, every office of the Federal government. We recognize the imperative need for this development. Yet we must not fail to comprehend its grave implications. Our toil, resources and livelihood are all involved; so is the very structure of our society.

在美国的经验中，庞大的军事设施和庞大的武器工业的结合是新的。所有的影响——经济、政治、甚至精神上的影响——在每一个城市、每一个州议会、每一个联邦政府的办公室都能感受到。我们认识到这一发展的迫切需要。然而，我们决不能不理解它的严重影响。我们的劳动、资源和生计都涉及在内；我们社会的结构也涉及在内。

In the councils of government, we must guard against the acquisition of unwarranted influence, whether sought or unsought, by the military industrial complex. The potential for the disastrous rise of misplaced power exists and will persist.

We must never let the weight of this combination endanger our liberties or democratic processes. We should take nothing for granted. Only an alert and knowledgeable citizenry can compel the proper meshing of the huge industrial and military machinery of defense with our peaceful methods and goals, so that security and liberty may prosper together.

在政府委员会中，我们必须防止军工联合体获得不必要的影响，无论这种影响是寻求的还是不寻求的。错位权力灾难性上升的可能性存在并将持续下去。

我们决不能让这种结合的力量危及我们的自由或民主进程。我们不应该想当然。只有一个警觉和知识渊博的公民才能迫使庞大的工业和军事防御机制与我们的和平方法和目标适当地结合起来，以便安全和自由能够共同繁荣。

https://avalon.law.yale.edu/20th_century/eisenhower001.asp

As of 2020 the weight of that combination (the unwarranted influence of the military industrial complex and the disastrous rise of misplaced power) has brought humankind to the brink of self-annihilation. Both political parties in the USA, (the democratic party, DNC and the republican party RNC are totally “on board” with the (fundamentally racist) dictatorship the military industrial complex has created within the USA and around most of the world.

到 2020 年，这种结合的力量（军工联合体的无理影响和错位权力的灾难性上升）已经将人类带到了自我毁灭的边缘。美国的两个政党（民主党和共和党）都完全与军事工业综合体在美国和世界大部分地区建立的（基本上是种族主义的）独裁政权“同一条船”。

The Defence Planning Guidance (DPG) 国防规划指南（DPG）

A key component of this military industrial complex that all Americans, Chinese and everyone else in the world should be aware of is called the Defense Planning Guidance.

这个军工综合体的一个关键组成部分，是所有美国人、中国人和世界上所有人都应该意识到的，叫做国防规划指南。

The 1992 draft Defence Planning Guidance (DPG), crafted by then-Defense Department staffers I. Lewis Libby, Paul Wolfowitz, and Zalmay Khalilzad, is widely regarded as an early formulation of the neoconservatives’ post-Cold War agenda, laying out a series of economic and military objectives that were intended to ensure a U.S.-led unipolar global system...

1992 年的国防规划指南草案（DPG）由当时的国防部职员 I.刘易斯·利比、保罗·沃尔福威茨和扎尔梅·哈利勒扎德共同起草，被广泛认为是新保守主义者冷战后议程的早期制定，提出了一系列经济和军事目标，旨在确保美国领导的单极全球系统。。。

According to the draft DPG, the United States must also “show the leadership necessary to establish and protect a new order that holds the promise of convincing potential competitors that they need not aspire to a greater role or pursue a more aggressive posture to protect their legitimate interests.”

根据 DPG 草案，美国还必须“表现出建立和保护新秩序所必需的领导能力，这一新秩序有望说服潜在竞争对手，他们不必追求更大的作用或采取更积极的姿态来保护自己的合法权益。

https://militarist-monitor.org/profile/1992_draft_defense_planning_guidance

In other words, it does not even allow other nations a right to defend themselves, or grow economically if that economic growth might compete with the USA. The DPG represents the single most abhorrent mandate to abuse power in human history. It astonishes this writer that the entire world, including the International Court of Justice, and International Criminal Court have not challenged it.

换句话说，它甚至不允许其他国家捍卫自己或在经济增长可能与美国竞争的情况下实现经济增长的权利。DPG 代表了人类历史上滥用权力的最可憎的命令。令作者惊讶的是，包括国际法院和国际刑事法院在内的整个世界都没有对此提出质疑。

The DPG has been updated several times since then and most recently many parts of it are classified as TOP SECRET.

从那时起，DPG 已进行了几次更新，最近，它的许多部分都被归类为 TOP SECRET

Because China's economy is close to becoming larger than the American economy, the American Department of Defense is mandated to destroy China's economy by any means necessary. This would certainly include the use of nuclear, biological and chemical weapons.

由于中国经济接近于超过美国经济，美国国防部受命以任何必要手段摧毁中国经济。这当然包括使用核武器、生物武器和化学武器。

The so called "defense" planners in the National Security Council were all hand-picked by President Trump, on the advice of Secretary of State Michael Pompeo.

They are willing, ready, able and highly motivated to launch WWII if necessary, to destroy China's economy and obey the directives in the DPG.

国家安全委员会所谓的“国防”策划者都是特朗普总统根据国务卿蓬佩奥的建议亲手挑选的。他们愿意、愿意、有能力、有强烈的动力在必要时发动第三次世界大战，破坏中国经济，服从民进党的指示。

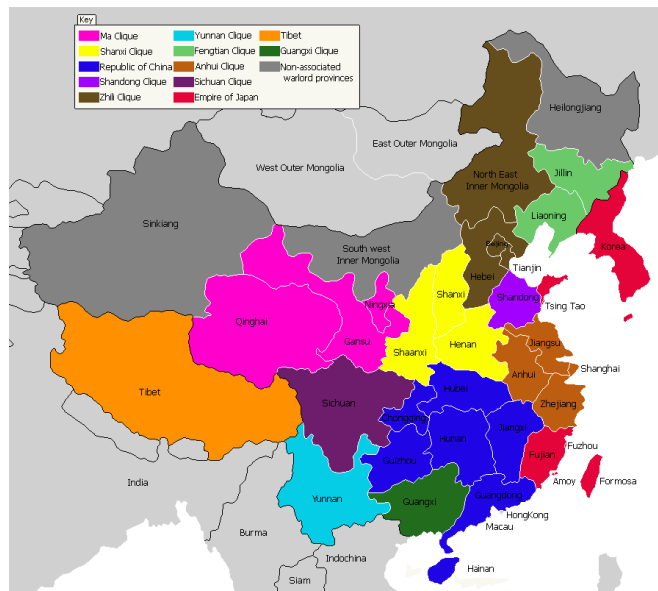
Starting a major war would probably help President Trump be reelected in the November 2020 election as Americans usually vote to reelect presidents during time of war.

What endgame does the American so-called Department of Defense have planned for China?

They want to chop China into several smaller warring nations, rather like the Warlord Era (1916-1928) following the collapse of the last imperial (Qing) dynasty.

发动一场大规模战争可能有助于特朗普总统在 2020 年 11 月的选举中连任，因为美国人通常在战争期间投票选举连任总统。美国所谓的国防部为中国计划了什么样的结局？

他们想把中国分裂成几个较小的交战国家，就像上一个帝国（清）王朝崩溃后的军阀时代（1916-1928）。



<https://alphahistory.com/chineserevolution/wp-content/uploads/2013/05/warlordmap.png>

They would definitely like to see Tibet, Xinjiang and Hong Kong broken off, Shanghai be the capital of a nation called South China, and the north wasting away in economic isolation.

他们肯定希望看到西藏、新疆和香港断绝关系，上海是中国南方地区的首都，北方则在经济孤立中消亡。

This is unquestionably their goal. They had a similar goal for Sudan, however it turned out (Christian/animist) South Sudan has the never-ending warfare. None-the-less it is true Sudan (the former northern half) is also desperately poor. A similar situation in China would be acceptable to the “Defense” planners in the USA. They only need to make sure no other nation is allowed to compete with the United States of America economically, politically or militarily. Exactly what kind of chaos they leave behind in China is irrelevant to them.

这无疑是我们的目标。他们对苏丹也有类似的目标。然而事实证明（基督教/万物有灵论者）南苏丹有着永无休止的战争。苏丹（前北半部）也极度贫困。美国的“国防”策划者也可以接受中国的类似情况，他们只需要确保不允许任何其他国家在经济、政治或军事上与美利坚合众国竞争。究竟他们在中国留下了什么样的混乱，对他们来说并不重要。

The question for Americans, Chinese and everyone else in the world, is: Are you willing to risk WWII and possible species extinction to help the USA attain the criminal goal of destroying China and maintaining hegemony in perpetuity?

对美国人、中国人和世界上所有人来说，问题是：你愿意冒着第三次世界大战和可能的物种灭绝的危险，帮助美国实现毁灭中国、永远保持霸权的犯罪目标吗？

Can the DPG be revoked? That’s difficult to say.

民进党可以撤销吗？这很难说。

- Perhaps the Supreme Court could render a decision stating that it is unconstitutional for any of a variety of reasons. Someone would have to start this process by suing the Defense Department in Federal Court, lose, then apply to the Appeals Court, and then lose again, just to get to the doorstep of the Supreme Court. That could take years. Unfortunately, it appears the Department of Defense is prepared to continue to bash China and create an atmosphere where war appears quite reasonable to the unthinking American public. This could start as soon as this summer, 2020.

也许最高法院可以作出一项决定，说明由于各种原因，这是违宪的。有人必须先向联邦法院起诉国防部，败诉，然后向上诉法院提出申请，然后再次败诉，这样才能走到最高法院门口。那可能需要很多年。不幸的是，美国国防部似乎准备继续抨击中国，并创造一种氛围，让不加思考的美国公众觉得战争是相当合理的。这可能最快在 2020 年夏天开始。

- Perhaps the Congress and Senate could vote to have the DPG repealed. That seems unlikely to happen, as the Mainstream Media (MSM) fully supports American international gangsterism. American politicians need MSM in order to be reelected. Not many of them (if any) would be willing to sacrifice their careers in order to prevent WWII and potentially global species extinction. The way of capitalism is absolute selfishness, and it is so deeply engrained in the Euro-American consciousness as to be very difficult to override.

也许国会和参议院可以投票废除民进党。这似乎不太可能发生，因为主流媒体（MSM）完全支持美国的国际黑帮主义。美国政界人士需要 MSM 才能连任。他们中没有多少人（如果有的话）愿意为了防止第三次世界大战和潜在的全球物种灭绝而牺牲自己的工作。资本主义的方式是绝对自私的，它深深地根植于欧美意识之中，以至于很难被推翻。

Certainly, Chinese students going to the USA for study should be aware major efforts are going to be made to seduce into aligning with the USA in a global war against their mother country. Converting them to (a militant form of) “Christianity” is almost always the first step, as “Christian” missionaries always were the “tip of the spear” of European colonial exploits in the Americas, Asia and Africa.

当然，去美国留学的中国学生应该意识到，将做出重大努力以诱使他们与美国保持一致。这种结盟是针对他们的祖国中国的全球战争。将他们转变为（基督教的）好战分子几乎总是第一步，因为“基督教”传教士一直是欧洲在美洲，亚洲和非洲的殖民行为的“矛头”。

Probably at least half of China’s billionaires are heavily invested in the USA. Most would probably like to see China become a “big happy democracy” like the USA (because they watch too many Disney movies, know nothing about the real socio-economic conditions in the USA and never heard of the DPG). They are probably quite upset now that the global kingpin of capitalism appears on the edge of imploding this summer and they’ve lost millions of dollars on the American (and Chinese) stock markets. Fortunately, or not, China becoming a “big happy democracy” would not slow down the DPG’s mandate to destroy China’s economy by even one second.

可能至少有一半的中国亿万富翁在美国进行了大量投资。大多数人可能希望看到中国像美国一样成为“快乐大民主国家”（因为他们看了太多迪斯尼电影，对美国的真实社会经济状况一无所知，而从未听说过 DPG）。既然今年夏天全球资本主义的主力军正处于崩溃边缘，并且他们已经在美国（和中国）股票市场上损失了数百万美元，那么他们可能会感到非常沮丧。幸运的是，无论中国是否成为“大幸福民主国家”，都不会减缓 DPG 摧毁中国经济的任务，甚至缩短一秒钟。

Why isn’t anyone protesting against the DPG? I have two theories: 1) the Stockholm Syndrome (some people fall in love with their captors) and 2) learned helplessness (most people in the world have been so helpless for so long they don’t believe change is possible).

为什么没有人抗议 DPG？我有两种理论：1) 斯德哥尔摩综合症（一些人爱上了绑架者）；2) 学会了无助（世界上大多数人长期无助，他们认为改变是不可能的）。

The DPG is the single most important issue in the world.

DPG 是世界上最重要的问题。

COVID-19 and American Bioweapons Research COVID-19 和美国生物武器研究

America the Beautiful's Germ Warfare Rash, by Sherwood Ross, June 22, 2007

美国美丽的细菌战计划，作者：Sherwood Ross，2007 年 6 月 22 日

From Washington State to Florida and from Massachusetts to California, the United States has broken out in a rash of federally funded biological warfare operations with as many as four hundred labs involved in research related to pathogens that could be used as bioweapons agents. According to the Sunshine Project, most states have a facility of some sort, ranging from an open-air testing location to aerosol test chambers to Biosafety Level 3 or Level 4 operations, the latter being one in which the pathogens being tampered with are deadly, easily transmissible, and have no known cure. Additionally, there are laboratories in a number of states whose activity is classified as secret. Beyond the NIH, the Department of Homeland Security (DHS) and the military are heavily engaged in such work, some of it conducted abroad, such as the Navy's labs in Egypt, Peru, Indonesia, and Germany.

从华盛顿州到佛罗里达州，从马萨诸塞州到加利福尼亚州，美国爆发了一系列联邦资助的生物战行动，多达 400 个实验室参与了与病原体相关的研究，这些病原体可以用作生物武器制剂。根据“阳光计划”，大多数州都有某种设施，从露天测试地点到气溶胶测试室，再到生物安全 3 级或 4 级操作，后者是被篡改的病原体致命、易传播、且无已知治愈方法的场所。此外，一些州的实验室的活动被列为机密。除了国家卫生研究院，国土安全部（DHS）和军方也在大量从事这类工作，其中一些是在国外进行的，例如在埃及、秘鲁、印度尼西亚和德国的海军实验室。

Biological warfare involves the use of living organisms for military purposes. Such weapons can be viral, bacterial, and fungal, among other forms, and can be spread over a large geographic terrain by wind, water, insect, animal, or human transmission.

生物战涉及将生物用于军事目的。这种武器可以是病毒、细菌和真菌等形式，并可以通过风、水、昆虫、动物或人类传播在一个大的地理地形上。

As part of its buildup, in January 2005 the Army authorized construction of a new facility at the already sprawling U.S. Army Medical Research Institute of Infectious Diseases at Fort Detrick, Maryland. According to a July 31, 2006, report in London's Guardian, Fort Detrick's National Biodefense Analysis and Countermeasures Center (NBACC), due to be completed in 2008, "will house heavily guarded and hermetically sealed chambers in which scientists simulate potential terrorist attacks." The scientists will dress in full-body spacesuits and use aerosol-test chambers to expose animals to deadly pathogens. To do so, the Guardian reported, the world's most lethal bacteria and viruses would have to be produced and stockpiled. Questions of international law violations and the hastening of a biological arms race persist.

作为建立工作的一部分，美国陆军于 2005 年 1 月批准在马里兰州 Fort Detrick 的本已庞大的美国陆军传染病医学研究所建设新设施。根据 2006 年 7 月 31 日在伦敦《卫报》上发表的报告，福特德特里克堡国家生物防御分析和对策中心（NBACC）将于 2008 年竣工，“将设有严密保护并密闭的密闭室，科学家们可以在其中模拟潜在的恐怖袭击。”科学家将穿着全身宇航服，并使用气溶胶测试室将动物暴露于致命的病原体。据《卫报》报道，要做到这一点，就必须生产和储存世界上最致命的细菌和病毒。违反国际法和促进生物军备竞赛的问题仍然存在。

<https://thehumanist.com/magazine/july-august-2007/features/america-the-beautiful-germ-warfare-rash>

The American legal authority who in 1989 drafted the law Congress enacted to comply with the 1972 Biological Weapons Convention says the U.S. today [October 11, 2015] is in flagrant violation of that Convention.

美国法律机构于 1989 年起草了为遵守 1972 年《生物武器公约》而制定的国会法案，该法案说，美国今天（2015 年 10 月 11 日）公然违反该公约。

"Since Sept. 11, 2001, we have spent somewhere in the area of \$100 billion" on offensive biological warfare, charges Professor Francis Boyle of the University of Illinois, Champaign.

伊利诺伊大学香槟分校的弗朗西斯·博伊尔教授指责说：“自 2001 年 9 月 11 日以来，我们在进攻性生物战上的支出已达 1000 亿美元左右。”

Boyle said an estimated 13,000 "death scientists" in 400 laboratories in the U.S. and abroad, are employed making new strains of offensive killer germs that will be resistant to vaccines.

博伊尔说，在美国和国外的 400 个实验室中，估计有 13,000 名“死亡科学家”被雇用来制造对疫苗具有抵抗力的新型进攻性杀手细菌。

For example, Dr. Yoshihiro Kawaoka's group at the University of Wisconsin has found a way to increase the toxicity of the flu virus by 200 times! Boyle says Kawaoka is "the same death scientist who resurrected the genocidal Spanish Flu virus for the Pentagon for offensive biowarfare purposes."

例如，威斯康星大学的 Yoshihiro Kawaoka 博士的研究小组发现了一种方法，可以将流感病毒的毒性提高 200 倍！博伊尔说，川冈是“同一位死亡科学家，他为五角大楼的进攻性生物战目的而将灭绝种族的西班牙流感病毒复活。”

<https://www.paulcraigroberts.org/2020/03/16/report-by-reporter-sherwood-ross-of-statements-made-by-francis-boyle-who-drafted-the-us-implementing-law-of-the-biological-weapons-convention>

American biological weapons “research” is a blatant violation of numerous international laws and treaties banning the manufacturing and storage of biological weapons.

美国的生物武器“研究”公然违反了许多禁止制造和储存生物武器的国际法律和条约。

That one or another would leak out was inevitable. It was 100% predictable.

一个或另一个泄漏出去是不可避免的。这是 100% 可预测的。

Questions for all readers 给所有读者的问题

What’s next? Another global pandemic of an even more deadly pathogen?

Will the American people and government wake up in time and order the destruction of all deadly pathogens(?) or,

How many American really believe that COVID-19 was created in China, when there were COVID-19 infections in the USA even before it appeared in China?

下一步是什么？另一种更致命的病原体的全球大流行？

美国人民和政府是否会及时起床并下令销毁所有致命的病原体（？）或...

有多少美国人真的相信 COVID-19 是在中国创造的，当时美国甚至在 COVID-19 出现在中国之前就已经有了它的感染？

U.S. mayor says he had coronavirus in November 2019

美国市长表示他于 2019 年 11 月患有冠状病毒

<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=GpB3LmOIP9w>

Is global extinction of humanity now a real possibility?

现在全球人类灭绝真的有可能吗？

The Alt-Right and ANTIFA 右翼和反翼

Most countries have traditional cultures. The USA however is a bit unusual because the dominant group, the Euro-Americans are not native to that land. Instead the USA is a “hodgepodge” (semi-random mix) of different cultures. Lacking a consistent and coherent traditional culture (as the result of nearly exterminating the Native Americans) the culture is very “plastic.” (Changes shape easily retaining the new shape until melted down again, which happens often.)

大多数国家都有传统文化。但是美国有点不寻常，因为占主导地位的欧洲裔美国人并不是该国的本地人。相反，美国是不同文化的“大杂烩”（半随机混合）。缺乏一致和连贯的传统文化（由于几乎灭绝了美洲原住民），这种文化非常“可塑”。（更改形状很容易保留新形状，直到再次融化为止，这种情况经常发生。

One can argue that the USA as a unified nation is based on white supremacy (the belief that Caucasians are inherently superior). 有人可以说，美国作为一个统一的国家是建立在白人至上的基础上的（白人认为白人具有天生的优越性）。

The Doll Test 娃娃测试

In the 1940s, psychologists Kenneth and Mamie Clark designed and conducted a series of experiments known colloquially as “the doll tests” to study the psychological effects of segregation on African-American children.

20 世纪 40 年代，心理学家肯尼斯和玛米·克拉克设计并实施了一系列俗称“玩偶测试”的实验，研究种族隔离对非洲裔美国儿童的心理影响。

Drs. Clark used four dolls, identical except for color, to test children’s racial perceptions. Their subjects, children between the ages of three to seven, were asked to identify both the race of the dolls and which color doll they prefer. A majority of the children preferred the white doll and assigned positive characteristics to it. The Clarks concluded that “prejudice, discrimination, and segregation” created a feeling of inferiority among African-American children and damaged their self-esteem.

克拉克博士用了四个除了颜色以外完全相同的洋娃娃来测试孩子们的种族观念。他们的研究对象是年龄在 3 到 7 岁之间的孩子，他们被要求识别娃娃的种族和他们喜欢的颜色。大多数孩子喜欢白色的洋娃娃，并赋予它积极的特征。克拉克夫妇的结论是，“偏见、歧视和种族隔离”在非裔美国儿童中造成了一种自卑感，并损害了他们的自尊。

<https://www.naacpldf.org/ldf-celebrates-60th-anniversary-brown-v-board-education/significance-doll-test>

In other words, even black girls preferred the white dolls. This proved the Clark’s assertion “that “prejudice, discrimination, and segregation” created a feeling of inferiority among African-American children and damaged their self-esteem.”

换句话说，即使是黑人女孩也喜欢白色的娃娃。这证明了克拉克的主张“偏见、歧视和种族隔离”在非裔美国儿童中造成了一种自卑感，并损害了他们的自尊

It wasn’t until 1954 that the U.S. Supreme Court ruled (in *Brown vs Board of Education*) that separate but equal schools were “inherently unequal.” The Doll Test was one piece of evidence used in the *Brown vs Board of Education* lawsuit. Although the court’s decision affirmed principles of equality and justice, it did not specify how its ruling would promote equality in education.

直到 1954 年，美国最高法院（在布朗诉教育局一案中）裁定分开但平等的学校“本来就是不平等的”。玩偶测试是 *Brown vs Board of Education* 诉讼中使用的证据之一。尽管法院的裁决确认了平等与正义的原则，但并未具体说明其裁决如何促进教育平等。

That decision led to “**desegregation bussing**” which meant Black children were sent on buses to formerly all-white schools and white children sent to schools in black and mixed-race neighborhoods. This infuriated the white supremacists however did somewhat level the quality of education. President Johnson (1961 to 1963) greatly expanded the busing program (though he also greatly expanded the Vietnam War too). The busing program peaked in the 1980s.

这一决定导致了“取消种族隔离巴士”，这意味着黑人儿童被送上以前所有白人学校的公共汽车，白人儿童被送到黑人和混血社区的学校。然而，这激怒了白人至上主义者，在一定程度上降低了教育质量。约翰逊总统（1961 年至 1963 年）极大地扩大了交通计划（尽管他也极大地扩大了越南战争）。公共汽车项目在 20 世纪 80 年代达到顶峰。

American culture has polarized enormously since the 1970s due to white supremacists’ hatred of the busing program and their hatred of the growing Black Power Movement in the late 1960s. Naturally African Americans continued to object to white absolute cultural dominance and disregard of the human rights of African Americans and other “people of color” (non-whites).

自 20 世纪 70 年代以来，由于白人至上主义者对公交计划的憎恨以及他们对 20 世纪 60 年代末日益壮大的黑人权力运动的憎恨，美国文化出现了巨大的两极分化。自然，非洲裔美国人继续反对白人在文化上的绝对主导地位，并无视非裔美国人和其他“人”的人权颜色”（非白色）。

As the Black Power Movement gained momentum in the 1970s, a more openly militant white power movement developed generally led by a group called the “skinheads,” in the 1980s which devolved into the even more openly militant neo-Nazi movement.

20 世纪 70 年代，随着黑人权力运动的兴起，一个更为公开的激进的白人权力运动在 20 世纪 80 年代由一个名为“光头党”的组织领导，后来演变成更加公开的激进的新纳粹运动。

The Alt-Right 右翼

The nucleus of the Alt-Right can be found in the white supremacist neo-Nazi movement.

极右翼的核心可以在白人至上主义的新纳粹运动中找到。

On one hand we have the “**alt-right**” (极端保守的) which consists mostly of extremely conservative Caucasian racists. (极端保守的白种人种族主义者)

They have been networking with churches world-wide since the 1970s.

一方面，我们有“极右翼”，其中大部分是极端保守的白人种族主义者。自 20 世纪 70 年代以来，他们一直与世界各地的教会建立联系。

One nuclei of this movement is the “World Church of the Creator.”

这一运动的一个核心是“创造者世界教会”

The World Church of the Creator teaches that Jews and non-whites are subhuman "mud people." Its insignia is a capital "W" topped with a red crown – to make it clear that the white race rules. And its battle cry is its creed: RAHOWA, racial holy war, which it sees as the inevitable confrontation in the group's quest to build "a whiter and brighter world."

造物主世界教会教导犹太人和非白人都是非人的“泥人”，它的徽章是一个大写的“W”，上面有一个红色的王冠，以表明白人种族的统治。它的战斗口号是它的信条：RAHOWA，种族圣战，在该组织寻求建立“更白，更明亮的世界”中，它被视为不可避免的对抗。

<https://www.washingtonpost.com/wp-srv/national/daily/july99/church6.htm>

<https://www.encyclopedia.com/politics/legal-and-political-magazines/world-church-creator>

From the beginning they have networked with a large number of other racist hate groups.

从一开始，他们就与许多其他白人种族主义仇恨团体建立了网络。

<https://www.sjsu.edu/faculty/Brent/190/hatelinks.html>

Though they officially broke away from the Christian religion, they continue to secretly network within churches and other white supremacist groups worldwide.

尽管他们正式脱离基督教信仰，但他们继续在世界各地的教堂和其他白人至上主义组织内部秘密地建立联系。

The Church of the Creator also hates socialism and communism.

造物主教会也痛恨社会主义和共产主义。

In 1973, Klassen formed the Church of the Creator (COTC) with the publication of a 511-page tome entitled Nature's Eternal Religion. The book was a call to "completely reject the Judeo-democratic-Marxist values of today and supplant them with new and basic values, of which race is the foundation." As his title indicates, Klassen believed that race had transcendent meaning.

1973年，克拉森成立了造物主教会（COTC），出版了一本511页的《自然永恒的宗教》一书。这本书是“完全拒绝今天的犹太民主马克思主义价值观，用新的基本价值观取代种族民主的基础”，正如他的头衔所表明，Klassen认为种族具有超然的意义。

<https://www.adl.org/node/11909/resource-pdf>

As one of the older and best networked hate groups in the USA, they strongly influence political trends.

Fundamentalist myopia drives US campaign against China, 2020/5/5 (Global Times newspaper)

原教旨主义近视驱使美国发起对华战争，2020/5/5

环球时报（在线）

US Secretary of State Mike Pompeo has been groundlessly attacking China. His point of view reflects many US politicians' hatred toward China and the Communist Party of China (CPC). The US is a country deeply influenced by Christianity. Behind such hatred, there is an extreme religious nationalism, or fundamentalism.

Take Pompeo as an example. He is a devout evangelical Christian. In the 1940s, some fundamentalists who were relatively moderate started to call themselves "evangelicals" and maintained the same theology. Evangelicalism has had a close connection with American politics - many US evangelical Christians, for example, voted for Donald Trump and believed that God has chosen Trump to be US president.

美国国务卿蓬佩奥一直在毫无根据地攻击中国。他的观点反映了许多美国政治家对中国和中国共产党的仇恨。美国是一个深受基督教影响的国家。在这种仇恨的背后，有一种极端的宗教民族主义或原教旨主义。

以蓬佩奥为例。他是一个虔诚的福音派基督徒。20 世纪 40 年代，一些相对温和的原教旨主义者开始自称为“福音派”，并保持着同样的神学。福音主义与美国政治有着密切的联系——例如，许多美国福音派基督徒投票支持唐纳德·特朗普，并相信上帝选择特朗普担任美国总统。

<https://www.globaltimes.cn/content/1187478.shtml>

It is widely believed there are also large numbers of American police and other law enforcement officers that belong to alt-right movements.

<https://www.revealnews.org/article/inside-hate-groups-on-facebook-police-officers-trade-racist-memes-conspiracy-theories-and-islamophobia>

人们普遍认为，也有大批美国警察和其他执法人员属于极右运动。

ANTIFA 反法西斯

On the other hand, we have “ANTIFA” which stands for “Anti-fascists,” forming a counter-balance to the Alt-right. 另一方面，我们有“反法西斯”的“反法西斯”，与极右翼形成了反平衡。

Fascism (/ˈfæʃɪzəm/) is a form of far-right, authoritarian ultra-nationalism characterized by dictatorial power, forcible suppression of opposition, as well as strong regimentation of society and of the economy. Fascism became very powerful in early 20th-century Europe with the Nazis, Mussolini in Italy and Francisco Franco in Spain. The followers of the American ANTIFA movement hate fascism and believe the American government led by the Alt-right has become fascist.

法西斯主义是一种极右翼的、独裁的极端民族主义，其特点是独裁权力、强行镇压反对派，以及社会和经济的严格控制。法西斯主义在 20 世纪初的欧洲变得非常强大，纳粹分子，墨索里尼在意大利，弗朗西斯科·佛朗哥在西班牙。美国反法西斯运动的追随者痛恨法西斯主义，认为极右翼领导的美国政府已经变成法西斯。

Unfortunately, the ANTIFA movement has been “penetrated” by quite a number of “anarchists” which reduces their credibility a lot.

不幸的是，许多无政府主义者“渗透”了安提法运动，这大大降低了他们的信誉。

Anarchism: Dictionaries define anarchism as “a belief in the abolition of all government and the organization of society on a voluntary, cooperative basis without recourse to force or compulsion.” In the American context however they often or usually start violent riots. They believe that the American government is so corrupted it must be totally destroyed.

无政府主义：字典通常将无政府主义定义为“在自愿、合作的基础上废除所有政府和社会组织，而不诉诸武力或强迫。”然而在美国，无政府主义经常或通常会引发暴力骚乱。他们认为美国政府腐败透顶，必须彻底摧毁。

The presence of this kind of anarchists reduces the credibility of ANTIFA a lot.

这种无政府主义者的存在大大降低了 ANTIFA 的可信度。

To make things more complicated since the May 21st 2020 murder of African American George Floyd by white police, another ideological split has become very loud and dangerous in the USA.

自从 2020 年 5 月 21 日美国黑人乔治·弗洛伊德被白人警察谋杀后，事情变得更加复杂，在美国，另一种意识形态上的分裂已经变得非常响亮和危险。

Black Lives Matter! Vs. All Lives Matter!

“所有生命都很重要！” 反对 “黑人生命重要！”

These two opposing concepts are representative of a culture war in the United States today. It is an amplification of the split between the Alt-Right (All Lives Matter!) and ANTIFA (Black Lives Matter). It is an extension of the Civil War fought 1860-1864. It is an extension of the European Crusades (1095–1291) and the Greco-Persian wars (545 BCE - 448 BCE).

这两个相反的概念代表了当今美国的文化战争。它放大了 Alt-Right（所有生命问题！）和 ANTIFA（黑色生命问题）之间的分歧。它是内战（1860-1864 年）的延续。它是欧洲十字军东征（1095 - 1291）和希腊波斯战争（545 BCE-448 BCE）的延伸。

If you are in the USA now you can get physically assaulted or even killed if you say the “wrong” thing in regards to these highly sensitive issues. The following vocabulary and explanations might help.

如果您现在在美国，如果您对这些高度敏感的问题说“错误”的话，可能会遭到人身攻击甚至被杀。以下词汇和解释可能会有所帮助。

Vocabulary:

Vs. = Versus = Against

BLM – Black Lives Matter = Black lives have importance. They believe the American system is fundamentally racist, always has been and must profoundly change now. They are loosely (but not formally) associated with the Democratic political party.

BLM – 黑人生活很重要=黑人生活很重要。他们认为，美国的制度从根本上来讲是种族主义的，过去一直是，现在也必须彻底改变。他们与民主党关系松散（但不正式）。

ALM – All Lives Matter – The alternative social organization that criticizes BLM for being racist and claiming that only black lives matter. They are loosely but not formally associated with the Republican political party.

ALM——所有生命都重要——这是一个另类的社会组织，它批评 BLM 是种族主义者，声称只有黑人的生命才重要。他们与共和党关系松散，但没有正式联系。

The “Black Lives Matter” movement became big in the USA in about 2013. The “All Lives Matter” counter-movement started soon after. Most ANTIFA people support “Black Lives Matter.” Most Alt-right support “All Lives Matter.”

“ Black Lives Matter” 运动在美国于 2013 年左右大行其道。“ All Lives Matter” 反动之后不久就开始了。大多数 ANTIFA 人士都支持“黑色生活”。大多数 Alt 右翼支持“所有生活都很重要”。

Duopoly – “A duopoly is a situation where two companies together own all, or nearly all, of the market for a given product or service. A duopoly can have the same impact on the market as a monopoly if the two players collude on prices or output.” 双寡头垄断- “双寡头是指两个公司共同拥有某一产品或服务的全部或几乎全部市场。如果两个参与者在价格或产量上相互勾结，双寡头垄断对市场的影响可能与垄断一样。” (<https://www.investopedia.com/terms/d/duopoly.asp>)

Though duopolies are technically illegal, they are permitted in the US. For example, Google and Apple have a near monopoly over the commercial APP industry. 尽管从技术上讲杜邦是非法的，但在美国是允许的。例如，谷歌和苹果在商业 APP 行业几乎垄断。

The Democratic and Republican political parties form a duopoly in regards to American foreign policy. They both agree that the United States needs to pursue global hegemony in perpetuity (have absolute rulership of the entire world forever). Both believe very large Department of Defense spending is essential.

民主党和共和党组成了美国外交政策的双头垄断者。他们俩都认为，美国需要永续追求全球霸权（永远拥有整个世界的绝对统治权）。双方都认为，美国国防部的巨额支出至关重要。

Most working class and poor minorities support Black Lives Matter, (like the Democrats) but a much higher percentage of educated and wealthy African Americans support All Lives Matter (like the Republicans). The Black Socialist newspaper www.blackagendareport.com calls the middle and rich classes of African Americans the “Black Mis-leadership Class,” believing that their subservience to the Alt-right agenda is a form of racial treason.

大多数工人阶级和贫穷的少数民族支持“黑人的生活很重要”（就像民主党人一样），但是受过教育和富有的非裔美国人中支持“所有生命都很重要”（就像共和党人一样）。黑人社会主义报纸www.blackagendareport.com 网站把非裔美国人的中产阶级和富人阶级称为“黑人错误领导阶层”，认为他们屈从于极右翼的议程是一种种族背叛。

These are very sensitive and explosive issues in the USA right now. If someone asks you: “Do you believe that Black Lives Matter?” you have a choice to make. If you say yes and the person you are talking to is an Alt-right “All Lives Matter” supporter, you just made an enemy.

在美国，这些都是非常敏感和爆炸性的问题。如果有人问你：“你相信黑人的生命重要吗？”“你可以做出选择。如果您说“是”，并且您正在与之交谈的人是 Alt-right 的“ All Lives Matter” 支持者，那么您就是敌人。

Both the alt-right and ANTIFA groups have some relatively moderate people, but also have some extremists that are sometimes violent and quite dangerous.

极右组织和反政府组织都有一些相对温和的人，但也有一些极端分子，他们有时很暴力，而且相当危险。

<http://time.com/4915161/charlottesville-alt-right-alt-christianity>

<https://www.npr.org/2017/08/13/543259499/a-reformed-white-nationalist-speaks-out-on-charlottesville>

Generally speaking, the alt-right can be described as “right-wingers” (右翼分子) or ultra-conservative, whereas ANTIFA members are usually described as “left-wingers” (左翼) or “leftists,” and ultra-liberal.

Many of the “left-wingers” are socialist. Many of the “right-wingers” very unreasonable fascists.

一般来说，极右翼分子可以被描述为“右翼分子”（right wingers）或极端保守主义者，而反政府成员通常被描述为“左翼分子”（left wingers）或“左派分子”（leftists）和极端自由主义者。许多“左翼分子”是社会主义者。一些“右翼分子”非常不讲理的法西斯分子。

It’s all a matter of percentages. Some in each group are reasonably OK most of the time, but some are extremely crazy in an unhealthy way and some in each group are truly ruthless and dangerous.

这都是百分比的问题。每一组中的一些人在大多数情况下都是正常的，但有些人以不健康的方式极度疯狂，而每一组中的一些人则是真正无情和危险的。

Are either or both good or bad? That’s for others to decide. I’m only an English teacher here in this book and I like my students to know what’s going on in the countries in which they wish to study. Foreign students in the USA should at least know what kinds of political currents shape the attitudes and actions of most Americans.

是好是坏？那要别人来决定。在这本书中，我只是一名英语老师，我喜欢我的学生知道他们想去的国家发生了什么。在美国的外国学生至少应该知道什么样的政治潮流影响了大多数美国人的态度和行为。

Frankly however, I’ll side with the moderate, “normal” people in the middle and generally avoid both Alt-right and ANTIFA groups. I can have a chat with members of either side, but always must be very diplomatic! It is very important to understand the concerns and special interests of both sides of the great divisions within the USA.

不过，坦率地说，我会站在中间的温和的“正常”人群一边，一般都会避开 Alt-right 和 Antifa 组。我可以和任何一方的成员聊天，但必须非常外交！了解美国国内分歧双方的关切和特殊利益是非常重要的。

I will listen to both sides. Listening is very important. But, I’m not a “joiner.” I don’t have much time for parties. Parties, churches and jails are where both sides, the Alt-right and ANTIFA get a lot of new members.

我会听两边的。倾听是非常重要的。但是，我不是“细木工”，我真的没有时间去酒馆和派对。Alt right 和 Antifa 在星期五和星期六的晚会上有很多新成员。他们也在教堂和监狱招募新成员。

The Alt-right believe that Caucasian people are being discriminated against by growing percentages of non-white people (“people of color” including African Americans, Asians, Hispanics) and that the Caucasian “genetic pool” is in danger. They feel they need to protect “Euro-American” culture. More than half of the Alt-right however especially hate Jewish and Islamic people because the Alt-right has a large percentage of “neo-Nazis.”

另类右翼人士认为，越来越多的非白人（包括非裔美国人、亚洲人、西班牙裔在内的有色人种）歧视白种人，白种人的“基因库”处于危险之中。他们觉得需要保护“欧美”文化。然而，半数以上的右翼人士憎恨犹太人，因为右翼人士中有很大部分是“新纳粹”

Unfortunately, the Alt-Right's racism and "misogyny" (厌女症 sexism) are usually the products of their personal insecurities, inferiority complexes, and other "ego issues." In virtually all cases their hatred makes their own problems worse. It's a tragic vicious cycle of hate.

不幸的是，他们的种族主义性别歧视通常是他们个人不安全感，自卑感和其他“自我问题”的产物。在几乎所有情况下，他们的仇恨使他们自己的问题更加严重。这是悲惨的仇恨恶性循环。

Likewise, Euro-Americans have been ruling the world for 500 years. Historically they could go to any country with blacks, Asians, and Latinos, kill as many men as possible, rape the women and children, and then steal all their natural resources. Who would willingly give up that kind of power? The Alt-right is easy to understand. They are not complicated.

同样，欧美人统治世界已有 500 年了。从历史上看，他们可以去任何一个有黑人，亚洲人和拉丁美洲人的国家，杀死尽可能多的男人，强奸妇女和男孩，然后偷走他们所有的自然资源。谁愿意放弃这种权力？Alt-右键很容易理解。它们并不复杂。

Fascism is a terrible thing, however ANTIFA is so deeply infiltrated by violent anarchists (渗透) that it's sometimes difficult to know if the person is sane or crazy.

法西斯主义是一件可怕的事情，但是，ANTIFA 受到暴力无政府主义者的深深渗透，以至于有时很难知道这个人是理智还是疯狂。

The conservative Alt-right has always been better at sending double-agents (双重间谍) into the left-wing's ("free-people") organizations than visa-versa in my opinion. There have been some exceptions. For example, writer Jeff Sharlet got inside "The Family," a very, very powerful right-wing group in the U.S. that has a disproportionate amount of political power.

在我看来，保守的极右翼总是更善于把双重间谍（自由人）派进左翼组织。也有一些例外，比如作家杰夫·沙雷特进入了美国一个非常强大的右翼组织“家庭”，这个组织拥有不成比例的政治权力。

The book titled: "*The Family*," written by Jeff Sharlet is available on Amazon.com and other major online book suppliers. In all fairness to Mr. Sharlet I don't think he's a "left-winger" but rather he comes across as a moderate in his book.

这本书的标题是《家庭》，作者是杰夫·沙雷特（Jeff Sharlet），可以在 Amazon.com 和其他主要的在线图书供应商上找到。公平地说，我不认为他是“左翼分子”，而是认为他在书中是个温和派。

Again, I avoid all forms of political extremism (政治极端主义) on both the liberal and conservative sides. I wake up in the morning, work, and if I'm lucky I do some sports in the evening. I do however read several newspapers every morning while I'm cooking and eating breakfast so I have some idea about what's going on the world. I also read pretty many history books and biographies so I can understand the roots of today's cultures. I also enjoy visiting historical locations, museums, great libraries and so on.

我避免任何形式的政治极端主义（自由派和保守派）。我早上醒来，工作，如果幸运的话，我晚上做一些运动。不过，我每天早上在做饭和吃早餐的时候都会看几份报纸，所以我对世界上发生的事情有了一些了解。我也读了很多历史书、传记和科幻小说，所以我可以了解当今文化的根源，并对未来可能的发展有一些想法。我也喜欢参观历史古迹、博物馆、伟大的图书馆等。

Simultaneously, I intensely dislike prejudice and slavery in all of its forms, and personally side with ANTIFA. I agree that the American government has become virtually totally fascist. And yet, I don't believe violence is the answer. Likewise, I don't join any group. I believe education is the answer.

同时，我强烈不喜欢各种形式的偏见和奴隶制，并亲自与 ANTIFA 站在一边。我同意美国政府实际上已经完全成为法西斯主义者。但是，我不认为暴力是答案。同样，我也没有加入任何小组。我相信教育是答案。

“What is the probability of world peace happening soon if the best and the brightest (and the wealthiest) around the world learn to despise and look down on their own indigenous cultural heritages and only learn about a version of “history” that erroneously begins with white people in Greece and Rome? Is worshipping the white race necessary for world peace(?) or is worshipping the white race and western hegemony more likely to bring increasing conflict and death in the world?”

“如果全世界最优秀和最聪明的人（和最富有的人）学会轻视和看不起他们自己的土著文化遗产，只知道错误地从希腊和罗马的白人开始的“历史”版本，世界和平很快发生的可能性有多大？崇拜白人对世界和平是必要的吗或者说，崇拜白人和西方霸权更可能给世界带来越来越多的冲突和死亡？”

There was a socialist candidate for president in the US named Bernie Sanders. However, in early April 2020 he quit his political campaign and told his followers to vote for the Democrat candidate Joe Biden. Joe Biden, like President Trump uses “China bashing” to make himself more popular.

美国有一位社会党总统候选人，名叫伯尼·桑德斯。然而，在 2020 年 4 月初，他退出了他的政治竞选活动，并告诉他的追随者投票给民主党候选人乔·拜登。乔·拜登，就像特朗普总统用“抨击中国”来让自己更受欢迎。

Joe Biden is 77 years old. President Trump is 73 years old. Many people believe both candidates are suffering from age related cognitive decline. This is a good thing for the American Department of Defense. They can create the conditions to start WWII, and then blame the president's Alzheimer's disease if anything too bad (for the USA) happens.

乔·拜登现年 77 岁。特朗普总统今年 73 岁。许多人认为两位候选人都患有与年龄相关的认知能力衰退。这对美国国防部来说是件好事。他们可以为发动第三次世界大战创造条件，然后如果发生任何对美国不利的东西，就把责任归咎于总统的老年痴呆症。

<https://www.politico.com/news/magazine/2020/03/07/2020-dementia-campaign-123106>

Populism - Populism appeals to ordinary people who feel that their concerns are ignored by the elite groups.

民粹主义-平民主义吸引普通人，他们觉得他们的关注被精英群体忽视了。

‘Does not tyranny spring from democracy?’ How Plato's 380 BC philosophy is truer than ever today

“暴政不是源于民主吗？“柏拉图公元前 380 年的哲学是如何比今天更真实

As in Athens, anti-elite demagogues in modern democracies are increasingly rising to power riding populist waves fueled not by logic but fear and nationalism.

与雅典一样，现代民主国家中的反精英煽动者越来越多地乘着民粹主义浪潮崛起，而民粹主义浪潮并非由逻辑推动，而是由恐惧和民族主义推动。

<https://scroll.in/article/943564/does-not-tyranny-spring-from-democracy-how-platos-380-bc-philosophy-is-truer-than-ever-today>

Questions 问题

Which do you think is truer and more important: “Black Lives Matter,” or “All Lives Matter?”

你认为哪个更真实、更重要：“黑人的生命很重要”，还是“所有的生命都重要”？”

If you had to join either the Alt-right, or ANTIFA, which would you join?

如果你必须加入右翼或反法西，你会加入哪一个？

If you were American voting in the 2020 November election, who would you vote for, (Republican/Alt-right) President Trump, or (Democrat, *possibly* equally fascist) Joe Biden, or abstain from voting?

如果你是在 2020 年 11 月选举中投票的美国人，你会投谁的票，（共和党/极右翼）特朗普总统，还是（民主党，同样法西斯主义者）乔·拜登，或者弃权？

What do you think about former socialist political candidate Bernie Sanders?

你觉得前社会党政治候选人伯尼·桑德斯怎么样？

Do you agree or disagree with Socrates and Plato that Democracy always degenerates into populism and then fascism?

你同意或不同意苏格拉底和柏拉图所说的民主总是退化为民粹主义，然后变成法西斯主义？

The WOKE political movement “觉醒”的政治运动”

First used in the 1940s WOKE is another very well-known and controversial political movement in the USA. It is of African American origin and refers to the need for heightened awareness of issues concerning gender and racial justice. In some ways WOKE is a branch of the Black Lives Matters movement. The term comes from the African-American vernacular English expression “stay woke.” According to the grammar rules of English, the phrase should be “stay awake.” But it is believed that rigid obedience to all things “white” (including English language grammar rules) is part of the problem, not the solution, so WOKE is the name of this political movement.

“觉醒”是美国另一个非常著名和有争议的政治运动，它起源于非洲裔美国人，指的是需要提高对有关社会、性别和种族公正问题的认识。从某种程度上讲，“觉醒”是黑人生命问题运动的一个分支。这个词来自非洲裔美国人的土话英语表达“保持清醒”。根据英语的语法规则，这个短语应该是“保持清醒”。但是人们认为，严格遵守所有事物“白人”（包括英语语法规则）是问题的一部分，而不是解决办法，因此 WOKE 就是这个名称政治运动。

In practical terms WOKE encourages movies and TV shows to be more racially diverse, and more open to gay and transgender individuals. Likewise WOKE encourages women in movies and TV shows to be very aggressive and dominating.

实际上，WOKE 鼓励电影和电视节目在种族上更加多样化，并向同性恋者和跨性别者开放。同样，WOKE 鼓励电影和电视节目中的女性变得非常积极进取并占据主导地位。

Naturally the Alt-Right hates WOKE. It is interesting that even Russia Today online newspaper is strongly anti-WOKE. The anti-WOKE movement loudly complains that white men are being demonized, marginalized and turned into passive traditionally feminine creatures.

自然而然，右翼的仇恨就醒了。有趣的是，即使是《今日俄罗斯》网络报也强烈反对“觉醒”。反觉醒运动大声抱怨白人男性被妖魔化、边缘化，变成被动的传统女性生物。

It is curious that traditionally about 20% of men were “male chauvinists.” However, this has apparently given many or most radical feminists the motivation to encourage all women to become female chauvinists.

奇怪的是，传统上大约有 20% 的男性是“男性沙文主义者”。但是，这显然使许多或大多数激进的女权主义者有动力鼓励所有妇女成为沙文主义者。

Consequently, balance and individuality have been lost in American gender roles. This is a pity.

因此，美国性别角色失去了平衡和个性。真可惜。

Generally speaking, WOKE is a legitimate movement with righteous goals. However, taken to extremes it will only further divide people instead of bringing us together.

一般来说，WOKE 是有正义目标的合法运动。但是，走到极端，只会使人进一步分裂，而不会把我们团结在一起。

Why not join? 为什么不加入？

People have asked me why I would not join ANTIFA, given that I agree with their basic belief that the American government has become very fascist.

人们问我为什么不加入 ANTIFA，因为我同意他们的基本信念，即美国政府已经变得非常法西斯主义。

The answer is simple. 答案很简单。

The current culture war was intentionally created by the Alt-right. The extremism of the Alt-right provokes many minorities and other liberals into extremism.

当前的文化战争是极右翼故意制造的。极右翼的极端主义激起了许多少数民族和其他自由主义者的极端主义。

The Alt-right needs many white supremacist followers in the USA so they can continue to enslave Africa, large parts of Asia and Latin America.

极右翼需要美国的许多白人至上主义追随者，这样他们才能继续奴役非洲、亚洲大部分地区和拉丁美洲。

The Alt-right wants a violent revolution which they are sure they will win. What better way to silence the liberals and minorities than killing them in a violent revolution?

右派右派希望进行一场猛烈的革命，他们确信自己会获胜。有没有一种使自由主义者和少数群体沉默的更好的方法，而不是在暴力革命中杀死他们？

While the alt-right is escalating violence in the USA, they use aggression against China to distract Americans from their own problems. Aggression against China serves several functions besides just eliminating economic and political competition. 在极右势力忙于升级美国的暴力事件的同时，他们还利用政治、经济和媒体对中国的侵略来分散美国人对自身问题的注意力。侵略中国除了消除经济和政治竞争外，还有其他一些作用。

Bomb & death threats made against Chinese Embassy in Washington – Beijing blames US government, July 22, 2020

2020年7月22日，中国驻华盛顿大使馆遭到炸弹和死亡威胁，北京指责美国政府

https://www.rt.com/news/495543-china-blames-us-government-threats/?utm_source=browser&utm_medium=push_notifications&utm_campaign=push_notifications

And,

2020年7月22日，美国要求中国关闭休斯敦领事馆，使冷战升级

US escalates cold war by demanding China close Houston consulate, July 22, 2020

<https://www.globaltimes.cn/content/1195304.shtml>

Fixing the broken American government 修复破碎的美国政府

I believe answers to the current crisis in the USA and world-wide can come from greatly improved education, much more honest news, and some structural changes in the US government and United Nations.

我认为，对美国和全球当前危机的答案可能来自教育，新闻的大幅改善，以及美国政府和联合国的一些结构性变化。

I don't want the government of the United States to be totally destroyed. I would however like it cleaned up.

我不希望美国政府被彻底摧毁。但我想把它清理干净。

Shred the DPG, apologize and start to build 撕碎 DPG，道歉，开始建设

Currently both political parties in the USA, the Democrats and Republicans, totally support the military industrial complex, and thus the Defense Planning Guidance (DPG) blueprint, and thus white hegemony in perpetuity. This means the enslavement of the entire earth forever by the United States. This is not acceptable to me or most people.

目前，美国的两个政党，民主党和共和党都完全支持军事工业联合体，因此也支持国防计划指导（DPG）蓝图，因此永久拥有白人霸权。这意味着美国将永远奴役整个地球。这是不可接受的。

American voters don't really understand the horror of the wars their tax dollars create, or the massive death by drones, bombs, guns, disease, starvation, torture and suicide. American mainstream news needs to "decouple" from the political parties and start to represent the people again. Public funding for "alternative news" needs to be made available. (See Chapter 1 section on Mainstream Media – MSM and Alternative News.) Americans need to travel more and see first-hand the French/American colonialism in Africa. Americans should visit Niger, the Democratic Republic of Congo, Somalia and other places suffering under the yoke of white supremacist domination.

美国选民并不真正了解他们的税金造成的战争恐怖，还是无人机，炸弹，枪支，疾病，饥饿，酷刑和自杀导致的大规模死亡。美国主流新闻需要与政党“脱钩”，并再次代表人民。需要为“替代新闻”提供公共资金。（请参阅“主流媒体 – MSM 和另类新闻”的第 1 章部分。）美国人需要旅行更多，例如看到非洲造成的第一手白人殖民主义。美国人应访问尼日尔，刚果民主共和国，索马里和其他受白人至上主义统治锁的地方。

The government of the USA would be wise to join with the Belt and Road Initiative (BRI) launched by President Xi Jin Ping rather than try to sabotage it in every nation. Cooperation produces win-win scenarios as compared to the endless cruelties inflicted upon the world now by the American pursuit of hegemony in perpetuity. (See Appendix 2: China's Diplomacy. It should be the model for America's 21st Century rehabilitation program.)

美国政府应该明智地加入习近平主席发起的“一带一路”倡议，而不是试图在每个国家中破坏它。与美国追求永久霸权而对世界造成的残酷残酷相比，合作产生了双赢的局面。（请参阅附录 2：中国的外交。它应该成为美国 21 世纪复兴计划的榜样。）

Retire American appointed dictators around the world 让中情局掌权的世界各地的傀儡独裁者退休

让美国众多宠爱的独裁者退休

All of American appointed dictators around the world should be retired. They can be given sanctuary on remote islands where they can do no more harm to anyone. Then half of the American Department of Defense (DoD) budget can be used help to build infrastructure in the developing world and the other half should be spent on education, health and infrastructure rebuilding in the USA.

全世界所有的美国傀儡独裁者都应该退休。他们可以在偏远的岛屿上得到庇护，在那里他们不能再伤害任何人。那么，美国国防部（DoD）预算的一半可以帮助发展中国家建设基础设施，另一半应该用于美国的教育、卫生和基础设施重建。

Totally overhaul and simplify the tax code 彻底改革和简化税法

Tax loopholes for the rich and corporations need to be closed. The wealthy need to pay much higher taxes. Individuals earning less than \$20,000 a year should pay no taxes. The USA should elect a real socialist president, and socialist senators and congressional representative.

富人和企业的税收漏洞需要被堵住。富人需要付更高的税。年收入低于 2 万美元的个人不应纳税。美国应该选出一位真正的社会主义总统、社会党参议员和国会代表。

Bernie Sanders' surrender unfortunately disappointed many people who really want significant change in American politics. (不幸的是，伯尼·桑德斯的投降让许多真正希望美国政治发生重大变化的人失望了。)

Police Training 警察培训

Police departments across the USA have been trained by Israeli "law enforcement" and military officers. This must end. They teach provocation, not peace. They intentionally work to create terrorists and radicalize otherwise innocent good people.

美国各地的警察部门都接受过以色列“执法”和军官的培训。这必须结束。他们教的是挑衅，而不是和平。他们故意制造恐怖分子，并激化无辜的好人。

US police departments under pressure to end training programmes with Israel

美国警察部门迫于压力终止与以色列的培训计划

Two decades of Israeli-US police cooperation includes training in racial profiling, counter terrorism and suppressing protests

以色列与美国警方 20 年的合作包括种族貌相、反恐和镇压抗议等方面的培训

By Sheren Khalel, 22 June 2020

Since the early 90s, hundreds of law enforcement officers, including police officers and agents from the FBI, CIA, and Immigration and Customs Enforcement (ICE), have either been sent to Israel through police exchanges, or attended summits within the US that were sponsored by Israeli lobby organizations.

自 90 年代初以来，数百名执法人员，包括来自 FBI，CIA 和移民与海关执法局（ICE）的警官和特工，通过警察往来被派往以色列，或参加了在美国举办的峰会 以色列游说组织。

<https://www.middleasteye.net/news/israel-us-police-training-end-knee-neck-protests>

Hundreds of thousands of American police officers have been trained by Israelis inside the USA. Those police officers that wish to remain with the police in the USA that have been trained using Israeli methodologies need to be deprogrammed and entirely retrained. Police in the USA should not have guns or other weapons. They need to be trained like social workers.

数十万美国警官在美国境内接受了以色列人的培训，那些希望留在美国警察局的警官，如果他们已经接受过以色列的培训，就需要取消培训计划，完全接受再培训。美国的警察不应该有枪或其他武器。他们需要被训练成社会工作者。

Gerrymandering - Require the White Supremacists on the Supreme Court to Resign 杰利蝮蛇 - 最高法院的白人至上主义者必须辞职或被指控犯有反人类罪

The overtly arch-conservative nature of the Supreme Court at this time is unconscionable. The Supreme Court for example refuses to fight election gerrymandering. Thus, segregation is enshrined as legal in American law. Those judges that voted to permit the continuation of segregation should be forced to retire as they are clearly mentally incompetent and intellectually deficient. A Constitutional Amendment is necessary to reformulate the assignment of Judges to the Supreme Court.

最高法院极端保守的本性是不合情理的。最高法院拒绝反对选举舞弊，从而操纵选举。因此，种族隔离在美国法律中是合法的。那些投票赞成继续实行种族隔离的法官应该被迫退休，因为他们显然精神上不称职，智力上也有缺陷。宪法修正案有必要重新制定最高法院法官的任命。

Political Campaign Finance Reform 竞选财务改革

Corruption of government is enshrined in political campaign finance laws the Supreme Court upheld. There is always *quid pro quo* when people and special interest groups “donate” money to politicians and political parties. The American government is the most corrupt government in the world and the majority of Americans have no idea how they are being betrayed by their elected representatives because of that corruption. 最高法院维持的政治竞选财务法中规定了政府的腐败行为。当人们和特殊利益集团“捐赠”钱给政客和政党时，总是存在交换条件。美国政府是世界上最腐败的政府，大多数美国人不知道由于这种腐败他们如何被其当选代表出卖。

Completely rewrite American history books 完全重写美国和许多（如果不是大多数）世界历史书籍

Most American history books passively or actively justify Euro-American perspectives on history. Much more balanced approaches to history must be taught at all levels of education world-wide.

大多数美国历史书被动或主动地为欧美历史观辩护。必须在世界各地的各级教育中教授更加平衡的历史方法。

Euro-American students should learn histories written by the victims of their ancestors (and in some cases neighbor’s) crimes or at least books written by people who do not cover up those crimes.

African history

Reading the World: An African Perspective on World History, by Kwasi Konadu, Diasporic Africa Press, 2010

The Fortunes of Africa – A 5000 -Year history of Wealth, Greed and Endeavour Volumes 1 and 2 by Martin Meredith, Perseus Books Group

Chinese History

An Outline History of China by Bai Shouyi Foreign Languages Press, Beijing

Latin America

The Broken Spears - The Aztec Account of the Conquest of Mexico by Miguel Leon Portilla, first published by the National Autonomous University of Mexico, 1959, 1962

Members of all hate groups need to be humanely sensitized to the errors of their ways 所有仇恨团体的成员都需要接受关于错误观点的人道主义教育。

This means closing all white private schools and disbanding all hate-driven militias. I do not approve of imprisoning haters per se, however persuading them to work at a racially integrated labor job is a very good therapeutic approach to helping cure them of their mental diseases. 这意味着关闭所有白人私立学校，解散所有仇恨驱动的民兵组织。我不赞成监禁仇恨者本身，但是说服他们从事种族融合的劳动是一种很好的治疗方法，可以帮助他们治愈他们的精神疾病。

The power of the President must be severely limited 总统的权力必须受到严格限制

Too many presidents have gotten away with murder. This needs to end. President Trump has proven it is very easy to totally neutralize the judiciary and stack the National Security Council with sycophants. American presidents should not enjoy “sovereign immunity.” 太多的总统批准了大规模谋杀，无休止的反人类罪行，掩盖了战争罪行而不造成任何后果。这需要结束。特朗普总统已经证明，完全压制司法机构，在国家安全委员会中堆积如山是非常容易的。美国总统不应享有“主权豁免”

Deconstruct the CIA and reveal all of its secrets 解构中情局并揭露其所有秘密

The Central Intelligence Agency has been an abomination since its founding and should be turned inside out, all secrets revealed and all former employees debriefed to discover the full extent of its Crimes against Humanity and War Crimes. Those who can be indicted for crimes against humanity and war crimes should be prosecuted. This includes all former directors and deputy directors. Given that the Dulles brothers, Allen and John Foster along with American and European industrialists helped finance the fascist governments in German and Japan from the 1930s onward, the International Criminal Court should sentence the United States government to 90 years of restitution. Consequently:

中央情报局自成立以来就是一个令人憎恶的机构，它应该被彻底揭穿，所有的秘密都要被揭露，所有的前雇员都要接受汇报，以发现其危害人类罪和战争罪的全部程度。那些可以被起诉危害人类罪和战争罪的人应该受到起诉。这包括所有前任主任和副主任。鉴于杜勒斯兄弟、艾伦和约翰·福斯特以及美国和欧洲的实业家从 20 世纪 30 年代起帮助资助德国和日本的法西斯政府，国际刑事法院应判处美国政府 90 年的赔偿金。因此：

American weapons manufacturers should cease producing weapons and restructure their corporations to rebuild the nations they have helped destroy 美国的武器制造商应该停止生产武器，重组他们的公司，重建他们帮助摧毁的国家

This most certainly includes Lockheed Martin, Boeing, Raytheon Technologies, Northrop Grumman, General Dynamics, L3Harris Technologies, Huntington Ingalls, Honeywell, Leidos, Textron, Booz Allen Hamilton, General Electric, Bechtel, CACI International, Science Applications International Corporation CSRA, Orbital ATK, General Atomics, and many others.

这当然包括洛克希德马丁公司、波音公司、雷神技术公司、诺斯罗普格鲁曼公司、通用动力公司、L3Harris Technologies 公司、Huntington Ingalls 公司、Honeywell 公司、Leidos 公司、德事隆公司、Booz Allen Hamilton 公司、通用电气公司、贝克特尔公司、CACI 国际公司、科学应用国际公司 CSRA、轨道 ATK 公司、通用原子公司，还有很多其他人。

Multi-party public oversight of all government and private intelligence and military organizations 对所有政府、私人情报和军事组织的多方公共监督

All government and private intelligence and military organizations need oversight from a variety of regulatory very public organizations. The era of “shadow government,” “deep state” and “secret cabals” must end. Governments must become transparent and accountable to the people of those nations and the world community. 所有的政府、私人情报和军事组织都需要来自各种监管非常公共的组织的监督。“影子政府”、“深州”和“秘密阴谋集团”的时代必须结束。各国政府必须变得透明，对这些国家的人民和国际社会负责。

Close all biological weapon research laboratories 关闭所有生物武器研究实验室

On one hand some legitimate research on pathogens is necessary. One of the many problems however is that the USA has encouraged massive research on biological weapons in many countries around the world, with DARPA and Fort Detrick being outstanding examples. At least five or six international regulatory organizations must be formed to investigate, regulate and monitor BSL-3 and BSL-4 research, safety standards and containment breeches, and forcibly stop bioweapons development. There is no oversight organization now. This must be enacted with the utmost haste. These international regulatory organizations must have enforcement powers to stop bioweapons development permanently. All non-naturally occurring pathogens must be safely destroyed worldwide. There must be a global on-line record of all pathogens and where they are - freely available to all (online 24/7) so when containment breeches occur people at least know what is making them sick and killing them and their children. The full extent of DARPA’s and Fort Detrick’s secret research should be put into the public domain and those responsible for illegal research should be prosecuted to the full extent of international law. No nation should be “above the law.”

Reveal full extent of all special weapons research including HAARP, other special energy weapons and “mind control” research 全面揭示所有特殊武器研究，包括 HAARP，其他特殊能源武器和“精神控制”研究

No nation should have the capability to cause earthquakes or trigger volcanic eruptions in other countries (HAARP), or cause mass death using electromagnetic or sonic weapons. Likewise, research on the interactions of some drugs and for example EM energy on specific areas of the human brain need to be revealed. These are all weapons of mass destruction and the USA is by far the world leader in this highly unethical research. International law needs to be updated to outlaw all potential weapons of mass destruction and mind-control research (chemical and special energy weapons). Again, several independent investigatory bodies need to be organized to investigate and regulate related research. Compensation should be paid to the survivors of the MK-ULTRA and related mind-control research.

Space should be demilitarized 空间应该非军事化

No weapons of any kind should be stationary or circling the earth at any layer of the atmosphere or beyond. The full extent of the weaponization of space should be revealed and detection methods for such weapons enhanced. 任何种类的武器都不应放置在大气层的任何一层或更远的地方。应当揭示空间武器化的全部程度，并加强对此类武器的探测方法。

All American foreign military bases should be closed and the UN Charter obeyed by all nations 所有美国对外军事基地都应该关闭，所有国家都应该遵守联合国宪章

The foreign policies of the United States of American since WWII have proven it to be the world's most corrupt policeman, operating in a manner consistent with international gangsterism. In accordance with the UN Charter Chapter 1 The principle of equal rights and self-determination of peoples under Article 1, paragraph 2, and Article 2 (4) - Prohibition of threat or use of force in international relations. Article 2 (4) of the Charter prohibits the threat or use of force and calls on all Members to respect the sovereignty, territorial integrity and political independence of other States.

自第二次世界大战以来，美利坚合众国的外交政策已证明它是世界上最腐败的警察，其运作方式与国际黑帮一致。根据《联合国宪章》第一章，第一条第二款和第二条第四款规定的人民平等权利和人民自决的原则-禁止在国际关系中使用威胁或使用武力。《宪章》第二条第四款禁止使用武力威胁或使用武力，并呼吁所有会员国尊重其他国家的主权，领土完整和政治独立。

Virtually all wars being fought now are proxy wars with support of one or more superpowers. The International Criminal Court must start to prosecute all violators of the UN Charter, and have the power to apprehend and incarcerate violators.

实际上，现在正在进行的所有战争都是在一个或多个超级大国的支持下进行的代理战争。国际刑事法院必须开始起诉所有违反《联合国宪章》的违规者，并有权逮捕和监禁违规者。

Abolish the UN Security Council 废除联合国安理会

The United Nations Security Council needs to be abolished. It always has been a tool of western hegemony (see Chapter 11). One nation one vote with a simple majority winning at the United Nations is the only fair system. 联合国安全理事会需要废除。它一直是西方霸权的工具（见第 11 章）。在联合国，一国一票，以简单多数获胜就足够了。

The International Criminal Court needs to have its funding vastly increased to simultaneously investigate, research and prosecute vastly more cases simultaneously. 国际刑事法院（ICC）需要大量增加资金，以同时调查，研究和起诉更多案件。

International gangsterism is rampant and led by the USA and its close allies France, the UK, Israel and Saudi Arabia. The ICC moves at glacial speed and is not even attempting to prosecute the vast majority of cases it should be investigating and prosecuting. Were city, state or national prosecutorial offices to operate at the speed of the ICC the entire world would be anarchy. The ICC has to become an efficient organization that operates in a timely fashion. Justice delayed is justice denied. 国际黑帮活动猖獗，由美国及其亲密盟友法国、英国、以色列和沙特阿拉伯领导。国际刑事法院进展缓慢，甚至不打算起诉它应该调查和起诉的绝大多数案件。如果城市、州或国家检察机关以国际刑事法院的速度运作，整个世界将陷入无政府状态。国际刑事法院必须成为一个及时运作的高效组织。拖延正义就是拒绝正义。

United Nations' Peacekeepers need to be greatly expanded and given very powerful non-lethal weapons 联合国维和人员需要大大扩充，并得到非常强大的非致命武器

The United Nations needs a formidable army armed with powerful non-lethal weapons such that aggressors can be quickly stopped and peace restored. 联合国需要一支强大的军队，配备强大的非致命武器，以便制止侵略者，恢复和平。

ICC and/or ICJ must draft laws mandating compliance with environmental protection guidelines 国际刑事法院和/或国际法院必须起草法律，强制遵守国际商定的环境保护准则

The International Criminal Court, possibly in conjunction with the International Court of Justice needs to draft laws mandating compliance with international environmental protection. More advanced nations should be required to offer free assistance to less advanced nations to help meet the guidelines and goals of those agreements. Advanced nations that opt out of those agreements should be fined sufficiently large amounts of money to ensure compliance with those agreements. Several independent assessment bodies will need to be formed to monitor compliance by all nations.

国际刑事法院可能与国际法院一起起草法律，规定遵守国际环境保护。应要求较发达国家向较不发达国家提供免费援助，以帮助实现这些协定的指导方针和目标。选择退出这些协定的发达国家应被处以足够数额的罚款，以确保这些协定得到遵守。需要成立一个评估机构来监测所有国家的遵守情况。

Student Challenges! 学生挑战赛

Do the above suggestions seem more productive than fighting about the relative merits of “Black Lives Matter” vs. “All Lives Matter?”

以上的建议是否比争论“黑人生命重要”和“所有生命都重要”的相对优点更有成效？”

Can students think of other ways to help ensure a fair and peaceful end to wars and other violent conflicts in the world?

学生们能想出其他方法来帮助确保公平和平地结束世界上的战争和其他暴力冲突吗？

Can students improve on the above suggestions? 学生们能对以上建议进行改进吗？

Writer's note: It is my opinion that all of the above recommendations must be implemented if the United States of America is to be saved as a nation. It is no longer possible to cover up the infinitely cruel and evil domestic and international crimes perpetuated by various branches of the US government from its founding. Sooner or later the government of the USA must “come clean,” admit to its crimes and begin to make amends to the victims, descendants of those victims and the earth itself.

作者注：我认为，如果美利坚合众国要被拯救为一个国家，上述所有建议都必须得到执行。再也无法掩盖美国政府各部门所犯下的无限残酷和邪恶的国内和国际罪行。迟早美国政府必须“坦白”，承认自己的罪行，并开始对受害者及其后代作出赔偿。

Chinese Language, Culture and the “Concept of Knowledge” 语文、文化与“知识观”

Below one can find some Chinese language words referring to different kinds of knowledge and ways to acquire them.

下面我们可以找到一些汉语词汇，它们涉及到不同的知识和获取它们的方法。

智慧 zhìhuì - wisdom

求知欲 qiúzhīyù - desire for knowledge

求知 qiúzhī - anxious to learn / keen for knowledge

饥渴 jīkě - hungry and thirsty / (fig.) to crave (knowledge, love etc)

自知之明 zìzhīzhīmíng - self knowledge

长知识 zhǎngzhīshi - to acquire knowledge

心得 xīndé - what one has learned (through experience, reading etc) / knowledge / insight / understanding / tips

见闻 jiànwén - what one has seen and heard / knowledge / one's experience

见识 jiànshi - to gain first-hand knowledge of something / to experience for oneself / knowledge / experience / insight

好学近乎知，力行近乎仁，知耻近乎勇 hào xué jìn hū zhī, lì xíng jìn hū rén, zhī chǐ jìn hū yǒng - to love learning is akin to knowledge, to study diligently is akin to benevolence, to know shame is akin to courage (Confucius)

博闻强记 bó wén qiáng jì - to have wide learning and a retentive memory / have encyclopedic knowledge

渊深 yuānshēn - profound (knowledge) / erudite

集思广益 jí'ēnguǎngyì - to pool knowledge and ideas to produce a better outcome

识度 shídù - knowledge and experience

行万里路，读万卷书 xíng wàn lǐ lù, dú wàn juàn shū - Knowledge comes from books and from experience of the world. (idiom) / Learn as much as you can and do all you can.

通人 tōngrén - learned person / person of wide knowledge and sound scholarship

薪火相传 xīnhuǒxiāngchuán - literally: the flame of a burning piece of firewood passes on to the rest (idiom) / fig. (of knowledge, skill etc.) to be passed on from teachers to students, one generation to another

薪传 xīnchuán - (of knowledge, skill etc.) to be passed on from teachers to students, one generation to another

法商 - fǎshāng – “legal quotient” (LQ), a measure of one’s awareness and knowledge of the law and one's standard of honorable conduct

中体西用 Zhōngtǐ Xīyòng - adopting Western knowledge for its practical uses while keeping Chinese values as the core

As contrasted to (the MSM addicted person):

浅尝辄止 qiǎnchángzhézhǐ - to dabble and stop (idiom); to dip into / to attempt half-heartedly / content with a smattering of knowledge

<https://www.mdbg.net/chinese/dictionary?page=worddict&wdrst=0&wdqb=knowledge>

A Simple Knowledge Hierarchy in English 英语中的简单知识层次

Knowledge (noun) and knowledgeable (adj.) in English can be roughly sorted into the following hierarchy:

英语的知识（名词）和知识渊博的（可调整）可以大致分为以下层次：

Wisdom – The highest level of knowledge. Wisdom is knowledge that is always true everywhere at all times. An example of this is: 授人以鱼不如授人以渔 - give a man a fish and you feed him for a day; teach a man to fish and you feed him for a lifetime / knowledge is the best charity

智慧——最高层次的知识。智慧是时时处处真实的知识。举个例子：给一个人一条鱼，你喂他一天；教他钓鱼，你喂他一辈子

Intelligent - Having a lot of knowledge, however sometimes refers to someone with only academic intelligence and in some cases lacking social intelligence, and/or “street smarts” 聪明-有很多知识，但有时指的是只有学术智慧，在某些情况下缺乏社会智慧的人，和/或“街头智慧”

Clever – the lowest level of intelligence. A good thief may be clever, but rarely intelligent or wise. 小聪明——智力的最低水平。一个好小偷可能擅长偷东西，但不是真正的聪明或智慧。

Preface Conclusions 前言结论

Strap on your seat belts because we're in for a ride through most of history and practically the entire world. It's terrifying and beautiful, and only we – those who dare and have the patience and strength to cross over the walls between languages and cultures - can really make a difference. It is this writer's strong belief that (at least relative) peace on earth is possible if we - the - people learn about peace, practice it and help others learn about it too. So, let's take off on this remarkable journey together. Take a deep breath and remember the phrase: “Peace to all who enter here.”

前言结论

请系好安全带，因为我们正准备穿越大部分历史，乃至整个世界。恐怖而美丽，只有我们-那些敢于并有耐心和力量跨越语言和文化之间的障碍的人，才能真正发挥作用。这位作家坚信，如果我们-人们了解和平，实践和平并帮助他人也了解和平，那么（至少相对）和平是可能的。因此，让我们一起踏上这一非凡的旅程。深吸一口气，记住以下短语：“与所有进入这里的人和平。”

Introduction 介绍

Brief Overview of Topics in This Book 回顾本书的不同主题

Chapter 1 – Reading 第一章阅读

This chapter addresses: 本章涉及:

- a. how to develop a reading habit and reviews some of the advantages of reading different kinds of materials.
 - b. how attention spans have declined in recent years as exemplified by the use of Tweeter
 - c. the differences between Mainstream Media (MSM) and “alternative news.”
- a、如何养成阅读习惯并复习阅读不同种类材料的一些优点。
- b、近年来注意力广度是如何下降的，以使用 Tweeter 为例
- c、主流媒体（MSM）与“另类新闻”的区别

Chapter 2 Writing 第 2 章写作

The chapter on writing is a bit “longish.” Consequently, teaching this class I went through the writing chapter slowly, throughout the course of the entire semester run parallel with the following chapters.

First half of the semester: 学期的前半部分:

Start and keep a weekly journal/diary

Write one or more article(s) suitable for publication,

A business proposal（商业计划书）&

Other chapters as chosen by teacher

- 开始并保持每周日记/日记
- 写一篇或多篇适合发表的文章，
- 商业计划书（商业计划书）&
- 老师选择的其他章节

Second half of the semester: 学期下半年:

Write a professional interview,

A speech &

Remaining chapters

- 撰写专业访谈，
- 一个演讲 &
- 其余章节

Subtheme: Peace and Conflict Studies - Multi-culturalism in the real world today 子主题：和平与冲突研究-当今现实世界中的多元文化

Chapter 3 Fourteen major Philosophies and Religions - Historical and contemporary strategies for creating a peaceful world 第 3 章，哲学和宗教-建立和平世界的历史和当代策略



I've never seen an EFL textbook that covered the major philosophies and religions of the world. Knowing this vocabulary and these concepts is especially important for non-western students that are planning on attending university in the U.S. or Europe. Anyone who doesn't have at least some basic knowledge of and vocabulary relating to world philosophies and religions will be thought of as shallow and superficial by educated people. *Individuals, cultures and civilizations are defined by their philosophies and religions - or lack thereof.* And yet, few high school EFL textbooks or teachers ever even mention these things. It's amazing!

我从未见过涵盖世界主要哲学和宗教的 EFL 教科书。对于计划在美国或欧洲上大学的非西方学生而言，了解此词汇表和这些概念尤其重要。

至少没有一些有关世界哲学和宗教的基本知识和词汇的任何人都会被有教养的人们认为是非常肤浅和无知的。

个人，文化和文明是由其哲学和宗教（或缺乏哲学和宗教）定义的。但是，很少有高中 EFL 教科书或老师甚至提到这些东西。太奇妙了！

Chapter 4 – Capitalism, Ego and Adam Smith 第 4 章-资本主义，自我和亚当斯密

A quick look at the evolution of the brain and psychology of capitalism, followed by a basic introduction to the economic principals underlying capitalism.

Does greed really make the world go around and are there any limits to this? Do the natural forces of competition mitigate against a small cabal of individuals turning everyone else into slaves?

快速浏览一下资本主义的大脑和心理学的演变，然后对资本主义背后的经济原理进行基本介绍。贪婪真的能使世界运转吗，对此有任何限制吗？竞争的自然力量是否会减轻一小撮人把其他人变成奴隶的阴谋？

Chapter 5 – Socialism and Communism 第 5 章社会主义与共产主义

I've taught English in countries with just about every political system imaginable, including democracies, fascist dictatorships, monarchies, constitutional monarchies, socialist and communist. It's my impression that most people don't know the fundamental principles of, or differences between socialism and communism. So, in this book I present very brief descriptions of both to help non-native English speakers in discussing world affairs that will inevitably at one time or another actually come up in educated environments.

Whereas in Asia most students don't talk much about politics, in the west educated people including university students and professors will and regularly do. Non-western students at least need the basic vocabulary and an understanding of the concepts inculcated in these socio-political-economic systems to be able to understand and talk about the issues involved.

我生活在几乎可以想象到的所有政治体制的国家，包括民主国家，法西斯独裁政体，君主制，君主立宪制，社会主义和共产主义。我的印象是，大多数人不了解社会主义和共产主义的基本原则或差异。因此，在本书中，我对这两者都进行了非常简短的描述。这是为了帮助说英语的非母语人士讨论在教育环境中不可避免地会发生的世界事务。在亚洲，大多数学生很少谈论政治，而在西方，受过教育的人们（包括大学生和教授）会并且经常这样做。非西方学生至少需要基本词汇和对这些社会政治经济体系中灌输的概念的理解，以便能够理解和谈论所涉及的问题。

Chapter 6 Five major types of conflict resolution strategies 第 6 章冲突解决策略的五种主要类型

The conflict resolution strategies presented in this book are critically important survival skills anywhere, especially in western countries. I've lived in East Asia for most of the last 25 years and know that most cultures here highly value avoiding conflict, whereas many western people are more likely to be very direct. Many or most westerners do not shy away from conflict – when the perceived “need” arises. Knowing strategies for resolving conflicts before they escalate can help enormously in smoothing the way for a peaceful happy life. Personally, I advocate teaching conflict resolution skills at all grade levels K – 12 worldwide, and am quite amazed I've never seen these discussed in an EFL textbook.

This curriculum comes mainly from a course I took at the University of California -Irvine.

本书介绍的解决冲突策略是至关重要的生存技能，在任何地方，尤其是在西方国家。在过去的 25 年中，我住在东亚的大部分地区，并且知道这里的大多数文化都非常重视避免冲突，而许多西方人更可能是非常直接的人。当人们意识到“需求”出现时，许多或大多数西方人都不会回避冲突。在冲突升级之前了解解决冲突的策略，可以极大地帮助人们和平共处幸福的生活。就个人而言，我主张在全球所有 K – 12 年级教授冲突解决技巧，而令我惊讶的是，我从未在 EFL 教科书中看到这些技巧。

该课程主要来自我在加利福尼亚大学欧文分校学习的课程。

Chapter 7 – Counseling anyone? 第 7 章-对任何人的心理咨询？

This chapter teaches the ABCs of psychological counseling skills so the EFL student can help other people solve their own problems in a safe way. Not all conflicts are between people, sometimes people have inner conflicts and psychological counseling skills can be a “life saver.” The psychological counselor questions used in this text are real ones I first learned in a counseling class in the university when I was an undergraduate. I have these same skills many times - working as a volunteer and professional counselor. When relationships start to deepen many or most people will share some problem with you. How does one deal with complex personal issues safely and in English? This Chapter will teach the student how to help other people find their own best solutions to problems.

本章讲授心理咨询技巧的基础知识，以便 EFL 学生可以安全地用英语帮助他人解决自己的问题。并非所有冲突都发生在人与人之间，有时一个人可能有内在冲突。心理咨询技巧可以挽救生命。当我是一名大学本科生时，我学习了这种心理咨询模型。我已经多次使用过这些相同的技能-担任志愿者，专业顾问和家庭治疗师。当关系开始加深时，许多人或大多数人会与您分享一些问题。一个人如何用英语安全地处理复杂的个人问题？本章将教学生如何帮助他人找到自己的最佳解决方案。

Chapter 8 - Armed Conflicts in the world today 第 8 章-当今世界的武装冲突

Newspapers, magazines, TV and online news sources are not being completely honest about many major conflicts in the world today. Some wars get some media coverage while others are completely ignored. War a trillion-dollar industry and a lot of serious reforms need to be implemented to help bring peace and understanding to the world. But that's not going to happen as long as we're all living in a fool's paradise. In academic environments, many people are acutely aware of the rising level of armed conflict in the world and most university students tend towards the liberal side of social philosophies and don't like war. With the refugee population rising above 70 million for the first time in history in 2019, people are wondering what's going on and why. I don't examine the causes or solutions here in this book, but I have some research projects for students to find out for themselves. I strongly believe students should know about what's really going on the world today without the "rosy colored sunglasses" most media, schools and textbooks reflexively lock upon their audiences' heads.

对于当今世界上的许多重大冲突，报纸，杂志，电视和在线新闻来源并不完全诚实。有些战争得到了一些媒体的报道，而另一些则被完全忽略了。战争一万亿美元的产业。需要进行许多认真的改革，以帮助实现世界的和平与谅解。但是，只要我们都生活在愚人的天堂里，那就不会发生。在学术环境中，许多人敏锐地意识到世界上武装冲突的加剧，而且大多数大学生倾向于社会哲学的自由主义立场，并且不喜欢战争。随着 2019 年难民人数有史以来首次超过 7000 万，人们想知道发生了什么以及为什么。在本章中，我不会研究原因或解决方案，但我有一些研究项目供学生自己找出。学习如何学习是最重要的一课。我坚信学生应该了解当今世界的实际情况。大多数主流媒体都将“玫瑰色太阳镜”戴在公众的眼睛上，我希望学生们利用自己的资源和好奇心将它们摘下一段时间。

Chapter 9 - Humanitarian Aid organizations - Neutrality and Impartiality in a Divided World 第 9 章-人道主义援助组织-分裂世界中的中立和公正

Most people in western countries do care about and will talk about world issues. Humanitarian aid in disaster and conflict crisis situations is extremely important for people trapped in those situations as is recovery and sustainable development after those disasters and conflicts. I'd like everyone to learn about humanitarian aid organization and the work they do. An educated person needs to know what's going on in the world or appear escapist and uninformed about real and serious issues. Humanitarian aid organizations aren't a panacea to the "problems" humanity faces, but collectively they help millions of people to recover their health and dignity in and following natural disasters and wars.

西方国家的大多数人确实关心并会谈论世界问题。灾难和冲突危机局势中的人道主义援助对于陷入困境的人们至关重要，灾难和冲突之后的恢复与可持续发展也是如此。我希望每个人都了解人道主义援助组织及其所做的工作。受过良好教育的人需要了解世界上正在发生的事情，或者逃避现实，对真实和严重的问题一无所知。人道主义援助组织并不是解决人类面临的“问题”的灵丹妙药，但它们可以共同帮助数百万人在自然灾害和战争中以及遭受自然灾害和战争后恢复健康和尊严。

Chapter 10 - History of and Contemporary Issues in diplomacy 第 10 章-外交史和当代问题

Foreign students studying in western universities are representatives of their countries. Consequently, it helps to know about diplomacy in history and how diplomats work today. Though diplomacy might appear to be dead in the 21st Century (slaughtered on the altar of American hegemony) it can only be hoped that diplomacy will again take center stage in world affairs in the near future.

在西方大学学习的外国学生是他们国家的代表。因此，它有助于了解历史上的外交以及当今外交官的工作方式。尽管外交似乎已经死于 21 世纪（在美国霸权的祭坛上被屠杀），但只能希望外交在不久的将来再次成为世界事务的中心。

Chapter 11 - Utopias in history and literature - It all starts with a dream 第 11 章-历史和文学中的乌托邦-一切都始于梦想

The last chapter is on utopias for several reasons. One reason is I like to end every semester on a positive note. Some brilliant people have built some very positive designs for much better worlds.

Regardless as to whether a student is studying architecture, business, chemistry, dentistry, engineering or zoology, each person can do more to make a more perfect world.

The world can't and won't improve if we don't have positive goals and a real vision of how beautiful the world can be.

It's true one person's utopia may be another person's dystopia and that's OK because people have different values, philosophies and lifestyles.

Considering some of the daunting challenges we confront early in this book, ending with utopias should balance the scales and help make sure our future efforts go into healthy positive directions.

上一章是关于乌托邦的，原因有几个。原因之一是我希望每个学期都以积极的态度结束。一些聪明的人为更好的世界建立了一些非常积极的设计。无论学生是在学习建筑，商业，化学，牙科，工程还是动物学，每个人都可以做更多的事情来创造一个更加完美的世界。

如果我们没有积极的目标和对世界的美丽的真实愿景，世界就不会也不会改善。的确，一个人的乌托邦可能是另一个人的反乌托邦，没关系，因为人们具有不同的价值观，理念和生活方式。

考虑到我们在本书开头所面临的一些艰巨挑战，以乌托邦结束应该平衡规模并帮助确保我们未来的努力朝着健康的积极方向发展。

Commonalities in Writing and Speaking 交流中的共同点：写作和口语

Many English teachers make a big distinction between writing and speaking, and at times they are very different. However, both have formal and informal styles and both connect sender and receiver albeit via different mechanisms.

许多英语老师在写作和口语之间有很大的区别，有时两者是非常不同的。但是，两者都有正式和非正式的风格。两者都通过不同的机制连接发送方和接收方。

A well written speech or debate argument follows more or less the same rules as good writing, in that they're organized with an introduction that includes the main topic, supporting subtopics with details and examples, and finally a conclusion that summarizes or in some other way reconnects to the beginning.

一篇写得好的演讲或辩论论点或多或少遵循着和一篇好文章相同的规则，它们是由一个包括主要主题的导言、用细节和例子支持的副标题组成的，最后是一个总结性的结论或以其他方式重新连接到开头。

On the other hand, some writing and speaking styles such as “stream of consciousness” can ramble a bit here and there and is in some ways much like a normal conversation.

另一方面，一些写作和说话的风格，如“意识流”，可以在这里和那里漫无目的，在某些方面很像一个正常的对话。

No one can memorize all possible answers to all possible speaking or writing questions, and knowing how to make spontaneous conversation and writing is critical to being prepared for major foreign language exams and real life in a foreign country.

I hope my creative approach in writing this book helps students think outside the box and develop their own creative solutions to challenges in life. Most books, textbooks and even novels these days follow preset formats. I despise them.

True, some loose organizational structure helps the reader figure out what’s going on and remember what they read (and hear) but following a formula? Please don’t bore me to death!

没有人能够记住所有可能的口语或写作问题的所有可能答案，并且知道如何进行自发的对话和写作对于准备在外国进行大型外语考试和现实生活至关重要。

我希望我写这本书的创造性方法能够帮助学生跳出思维框框，为生活中的挑战开发自己的创造性解决方案。如今，大多数书籍，教科书甚至小说都遵循预设格式。我鄙视他们。但是某种松散的组织结构可以帮助读者弄清楚正在发生的事情，并记住他们阅读（和听到）的内容。遵循公式？请不要让我厌烦死！

In regards to listening and speaking skills, they must be incorporated into all foreign language lesson plans. Sitting through lectures on a foreign language in one’s native tongue generally doesn’t help students much in my opinion. Throughout this book, I try to offer suggestions for small group discussions, debates, presentations and so on. Speaking and listening are two sides of the same coin and both need a lot practice for high level skill to be attained.

关于听力和口语技巧，必须将它们纳入所有外语教学计划中。参加以学生的母语进行的外语讲座不会帮助学生学习外语技能！在整本书中，我都会为小组讨论，辩论，演讲等提供建议。口语和听力是同一枚硬币的两个方面，并且都需要大量练习才能获得高水平的技能。

Commonalities in Listening and Reading 听与读的共性

In the chapter on psychological counseling I present an active listening model. It’s very useful because most of us don’t listen much. We are masters at not listening, not seeing, not feeling and not thinking. Partly this is just basic self-defense. The world is crowded with people selling things and it’s darned annoying! Most of it is useless trash anyways.

在心理咨询一章中，我提出了一个积极倾听的模式。这很有用，因为我们大多数人都不会怎么听。我们善于不倾听，不观察，不感觉，不思考。这在一定程度上只是基本的自卫。世界上到处都是卖东西的人，真烦人！不管怎样，大部分都是无用的垃圾。

Both listening and reading require the active mind of a critical thinker. Watching TV for example most people go into a semi-hypnotic daze, identify with the protagonist (main hero or heroes) and tend not to think too critically about what’s going on. This is a bad habit to develop.

听和读都需要批判性思考者的积极思维。比如看电视，大多数人都会进入半催眠状态，认同主角（主要的英雄或英雄），对发生的事情往往不会有太多的批判性思考。这是要养成的坏习惯。

Being a passive empty-headed consumer is a great way to get turned into a slave very quickly! And the American mass media will turn us all into slaves if we don't critically analyze everything that goes through our brain.

成为被动的，无意识的消费者是一种非常快地成为奴隶的好方法！如果我们不批判地分析通过大脑的所有事物，那么美国大众媒体将把我们所有人变成奴隶。

An active listener and critically thinking reader questions every datum that is presented and fits it into the larger framework of the entire message. We must measure information density, relevancy, validity and reliability. We need to make it a habit to be conscious of internal consistency or the lack of it. In the case of listening to a person, we need to be aware of the consistency of their speaking with their body language. In sum, listening and reading should be active activities, not simply passive reception.

积极的倾听者和认真思考的读者会质疑所显示的每个数据，并将其放入整个消息的较大框架中。我们必须测量信息密度，相关性，有效性和可靠性。我们需要养成一种习惯，要意识到内部的一致性或缺乏一致性。在聆听一个人的情况下，我们需要意识到他们的讲话与肢体语言的一致性。总之，听和读应该是积极的活动，而不仅仅是被动的接收。

A Good Foreign Language Teacher 一位优秀的外语老师

A good teacher will do a lot of checking with individual students to make sure they're following the class.

Too often I've seen teachers teaching less than half the class while the other half sits there dazed and confused because they don't get the gist of the topics being discussed.

That's extremely frustrating for students that have widely varying levels of English language skill. When I was working as a teacher, I was told 100 times: "Just ignore the students that don't pay attention!" Sorry, I can't do that.

一位优秀的外语老师会与个别学生进行大量检查，以确保他们了解课堂上的情况。

我经常见过 EFL 课程，只有一半的学生了解正在发生的事情。

另一半坐在那里茫然而困惑。

这是因为另一半没有得到正在讨论的主题的要旨。

对于英语水平差异很大的学生来说，这实在令人沮丧。

当我当老师的时候，我被告知 100 次：“只要忽略那些不专心的学生！”抱歉，我不能这样做。

I've spent my entire life from very early childhood learning many foreign languages. Nothing is that difficult(!), if the teacher is at least a little patient and understanding.

我从孩提时代就开始学习多种外语。如果老师至少有一点耐心和理解，没有什么困难！

I added some short quizzes at the end of many sections of this book to check on student learning of vocabulary and concepts. This kind of quantifiable objective measure of student comprehension is useful for the student. It also helps to reinforce the primary messages within each topic. I also include some very short grammar reviews and quizzes relating to some of the key vocabulary in many of the major topic areas. English words can change a lot depending on how they're being used in a sentence.

Also, in this book there are many links to additional readings on the internet for the curious and ambitious students.

我在本书许多章节的末尾添加了一些简短的测验，以检查学生对词汇和概念的学习情况。这种对学生理解能力的量化客观测量对学生很有用。它还有助于加强每个主题中的主要消息。我还提供了一些非常简短的语法复习和测验，它们涉及许多主要主题领域中的一些关键词汇。英文单词的变化可能很大，具体取决于在句子中的用法。

另外，在本书中，有许多链接指向好奇和有抱负的学生在互联网上进行的其他阅读。

Mini-quiz 迷你测验

1. The writer of this book thinks that doctors are the most highly educated people in the world.
 - a. True
 - b. False
 - c. Only on Tuesdays
2. The term “dumbing down” originated in 1933 as slang, used by motion picture screenplay writers, to mean: “revise so as to appeal to those with very high education and intelligence.”
 - a. True
 - b. False
3. From the section on holism, one might conclude that the opposite of holism is _____.
 - a. gestalt
 - b. fracking
 - c. reductionism
 - d. endometriosis
4. The writer asserts that Imperial powers in history used “dumbing down” when their civilizations were decaying. Why?
 - a. So the kings could collect more money in taxes
 - b. So the people would work harder
 - c. To keep the people happy
 - d. To sow confusion and awe among the peasants
5. The writer asserts that arts and sciences are
 - a. radically different at their higher levels
 - b. just the same at their higher levels
6. Anyone who doesn’t have at least some basic knowledge of and vocabulary relating to world philosophies and religions will be thought of as _____ by educated people.
 - a. daring and aloof
 - b. sophisticated and elegant
 - c. admirable and high-level
 - d. superficial and ignorant
7. Individuals, cultures and civilizations are defined by their _____ - or lack thereof.
 - a. philosophies and religions
 - b. pink dancing elephants
 - c. arrogance and aloofness

- d. good looks
8. The writer asserts western people are usually _____ likely to engage in confrontation and conflict than most East Asian people.
- similarly
 - less
 - more
 - never
9. The primary themes of the textbook are _____.
- capitalism and socialism
 - religions and philosophies
 - reading and socialism
 - EFL and peace studies
10. Adam Smith mainly wrote about _____.
- anarchy
 - communism
 - socialism
 - capitalism
11. Which president warned the American people and the world about the dangers of the military industrial complex?
- Kennedy
 - Roosevelt
 - Truman
 - Eisenhower
12. The DPG is primarily dangerous because it:
- means more money for the American military
 - gives permission for enlisted men to get married
 - permits the president to totally control the military so he could launch a nuclear strike against anyone if he wanted.
 - commands the defense department to deter or destroy any nation that competes with the USA economically, politically or militarily.
13. What are two ways the author suggest the DPG could possibly be revoked?
- a vote by the Supreme Court declaring it unconstitutional and votes by the Congress and Senate declaring it illegal
 - an order by the President and another vote by the Joint Chiefs of Staff

- c. a special referendum voted upon by the American public and another by the Electoral College
- d. an act of God combined with pressure from foreign political lobby groups

14. In English, cleverness is always true over time and across different cultures

- a. True
- b. False
- c. True, but only on Tuesdays

15. The Introduction to this book is a _____ of the topics in the book.

- a. summary
- b. redaction
- c. contradiction
- d. confabulation

FIVE POINT BONUS QUESTION!

EFL stands for _____.

- a. Elegant Foreign Language
- b. Elementary Fangless Linguistics
- c. Elementary Foreign Language
- d. English as a Foreign Language

Chapter 1 – Reading 第一章-阅读

By the age of one year old or so, most infants know a few words. By the age of four or five most children have a vocabulary of around 2,000 words and have started to learn to read. Some children learn to like to read and others don't. But, it's never too late to learn the joy of reading. Reading can simultaneously give a person pleasure and power.

到一岁左右，大多数婴儿会说几句话。到四，五岁时，大多数孩子的词汇量约为 2,000 个单词，并且已经开始学习阅读。一些孩子学会了阅读，而另一些则不喜欢。但是，学习阅读的乐趣永远不会太晚。阅读可以同时给人带来乐趣和力量。

Curiosity and Playfulness 好奇心和嬉戏

Kid: "Mom, where's my tail?"

孩子：“妈妈，我的尾巴在哪里？”

Mom: "Just shut up!" Why do you ask such stupid questions?

妈妈：“闭嘴！”你为什么问这样愚蠢的问题？

She's wrong. That's really a very intelligent question! Simultaneously she's killing her child's curiosity. That's really tragic. Her kid will grow up a lot stupider without that curiosity!

（她错了。这真是个很聪明的问题！同时她也扼杀了孩子的好奇心。真是悲剧。如果没有好奇心，她的孩子长大后会更变得更傻。）

Or: 或

Mom: "That's a good question. Let me think. Mmm. We humans have a tail bone at the bottom of our back bone. It's called the coccyx bone. That's all that's left of our glorious tail. Our ancestors must have had tails some four million years ago when they came down from the trees. Dogs, cats, cows, and alligators have tails. Monkeys have tails, but gorillas, chimpanzees, and orangutans don't. Mmm. Let me think. Maybe it's because monkeys spend more time in the trees and gorillas, chimpanzees, and orangutans spend more time walking on the ground. So, maybe our ancestors didn't need tails after they came down from the trees. It's a matter of adaption to the environment. Tails are very useful swinging around in trees, and for an animal with four legs, but not so useful when walking on the ground with two feet.

妈妈：“这个问题问得好。让我想想。我们人类的脊骨底部有一根尾骨。它叫“尾骨”。我们光荣的尾巴只剩下这些了。我们的祖先在四百万年前从树上下来的时候一定有尾巴。狗、猫、牛和鳄鱼都有尾巴。猴子有尾巴，但大猩猩、黑猩猩和猩猩没有。让我想想。也许是因为猴子在树上呆的时间更长。

大猩猩、黑猩猩和猩猩花更多的时间在地上行走。所以，也许我们的祖先从树上下来后不需要尾巴。这是一个适应环境的问题。

尾巴对于迅速地从一棵树枝移动到另一棵树枝和一个有四条腿的动物非常有用。但是也许尾巴在用两只脚在地上行走时没那么有用。

It's not easy being a parent. Average young children ask somewhere between 50 to 400 questions a day. Children usually ask the most questions around age 4. Their brains are amazing! Most are highly curious about everything. They are little high-speed learning machines.

做父母不容易。一般小孩子每天问 50 到 400 个问题。孩子们通常在 4 岁左右问最多的问题。他们的大脑真是太神奇了！大多数人对一切都很好奇。它们是小型的高速学习机器。

Almost all kids are naturally curious, but too many parents suppress that curiosity. They kill their children's curiosity by not even trying to answer questions. Parents determine if their children will be wise, or stupid.

几乎所有的孩子都天生好奇，但是太多的父母抑制了这种好奇心。他们甚至连问题都不想回答，从而扼杀了孩子们的好奇心。父母决定他们的孩子是聪明还是愚蠢。

Parents should encourage their children to ask questions. How? By being curious themselves and asking questions that make children figure out how and why things happen. We learn most of what we know from "observational learning" (imitating) those around us and (in some cases) subsequent reinforcement.

See research by Albert Bandura. A good review article on observational learning:

<https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC3139552>

父母应该鼓励孩子提问。怎样？通过对自己的好奇和提出问题，让孩子们知道事情是怎么发生的，为什么会发生。我们从“观察学习”（模仿）和（在某些情况下）随后的强化中学到了我们所知道的大部分知识。

So, parents that are curious and playful make children that are curious and playful.

所以，好奇和顽皮的父母会让孩子好奇和顽皮。

These two qualities, wanting to know how and why things happen (curiosity), and the intrinsic drive to play with things and ideas make some people into great learners and geniuses.

这两个品质，想知道事情是怎么发生的，为什么会发生（好奇心），以及与事物和想法打交道的内在动力，使一些人成为伟大的学习者和天才。

Killing curiosity and playfulness makes really boring children that might be very obedient but will never accomplish much in life. Even if parents don't know answers to the questions the children ask, they can search for answers. But too many parents are 1) too narrow minded to consider the usefulness of children asking questions, 2) just don't care, or 3) are too tired or lazy to make the effort.

消除好奇心和好玩性会使孩子变得非常无聊，他们可能非常听话，但却永远不会梦想成大梦或实现伟大目标。即使父母不知道孩子提出的问题的答案，他们也可以搜索答案。但是太多的父母会：1）思维太狭 to，无法考虑孩子提问的实用性；2）不在乎，或者 3）太累或懒惰，无法回答孩子提出的问题。

Consequently, we now have a generation of children that don't like to ask so many questions or read books.

因此，我们现在有一代的孩子不喜欢问这么多问题或读书。

A person must be at least a little curious to want to read a book. One must be playful enough to be willing to let go of our life here and now and play with the realities someone else wrote in a book. Playing with other people's realities means listening to them, or reading them, and trying to understand them; always wondering how much of what they are hearing or reading is true, or even possible, and so on.

一个人至少必须有点好奇才能读书。一个人必须足够好玩，才能乐于在此刻放弃我们的生活，并与别人写在一本书中的现实打交道。与他人的现实玩耍意味着聆听或阅读它们，并试图理解它们。总是想知道他们在听或读的内容中有多少是真实的，甚至是可能的，等等。

Youth who learned curiosity and initiative keep learning for the rest of their lives. Youth that only learn obedience usually "follow the crowd" and sink into the abyss of "popular contemporary culture." Popular contemporary cultures usually capitalize on the "lowest common denominators" of human endeavor. (Base desires.)

学会了好奇心和主动性的年轻人将在余生中不断学习。只会学习服从的年轻人通常会“跟随人群”，陷入“流行的当代文化”的深渊。当代流行文化通常利用人类努力的“最低共同标准”。（基本愿望）。



<https://dog644.files.wordpress.com>

Sex, drugs and violence are examples of the "lowest common denominators" in human behavior.

Movie and song makers get rich from them.

性，毒品和暴力是

人类行为中的“最低公分母”。

电影和歌曲制作者从中发财。

Compare "soaking up" hours of the above picture with reading Oliver Twist by Charles Dickens.

将以上图片的“吸收时间”与阅读 Charles Dickens 的 Oliver Twist 进行比较。

When someone reads Oliver Twist one becomes a 19th Century orphan in England, not for two hours but for a couple of weeks. You don't see his image with your eyes, but create an image in your mind. Reading the book, you can think his thoughts and feel his feelings vastly more precisely than in a movie. Why? The reader is inside the mind of the characters looking out, not on the outside looking in. Watching a movie is like looking at a lake. Reading a book is like swimming in it.

当有人读到《雾都孤儿》时，一个人在英国变成了 19 世纪的孤儿，不是两个小时，而是几个星期。你用眼睛看不到他的形象，但在你的脑海中创造一个形象。读这本书，你可以比看电影更准确地思考他的想法和感受他的感受。为什么？读者是——从人物的内心向外看——而不是从外部向内看。看电影就像看湖。读书就像在湖里游泳。

Even 3-D moves are really only 2-D. The third dimension in a movie is an illusion.

Those with curiosity, initiative and like to read can keep learning at a tremendous rate throughout their lives.

即使是三维的动作也仅仅是二维的。电影中的三维是一种幻觉。那些有好奇心、主动性和喜欢阅读的人可以在一生中以惊人的速度学习。

The average reading speed of most adults is around 200 to 250 words per minute. Fast readers can read 800 – 1,000 words per minute with fairly high retention of information.

[Reading speed, comprehension and memory are largely influenced by the density and complexity of information in the text. For example, most novels have lower information content and less complexity than a textbook on neuroendocrinology.]

大多数成年人的平均阅读速度约为每分钟 200 至 250 字。快速阅读者每分钟可以阅读 800-1000 个单词，信息保留率相当高。[阅读速度、理解和记忆在很大程度上受到文本信息的密度和复杂性的影响。例如，与神经内分泌学教科书相比，大多数小说的信息含量较低，复杂性也较低。]

(This makes novels good for practicing reading. They are fun, and easy to read fast.)

这使得小说很适合练习阅读。他们很有趣，很容易理解。

According to the National Center for Voice and Speech, the average conversation rate for English speakers in the United States is about 150 wpm.

根据“国家语音中心”的数据，在美国讲英语的人的平均对话速度约为每分钟 150 个单词。

In sum, children who learn to enjoy reading and become fast readers can learn much more quickly than those who don't, **if** they access to a wide range of books they might like.

Having access to a wide variety of books is essential to encourage young readers. As people go through stages in life naturally their preferences for different kinds of books changes.

总而言之，如果孩子们能读到他们可能喜欢的各种各样的书，那么他们学会享受阅读并成为快速阅读者的速度会比那些不喜欢阅读的孩子快得多。能够接触到各种各样的书籍是鼓励年轻读者的必要条件。随着人们经历人生的各个阶段，他们对不同种类书籍的偏好自然会有所变化。

Reading, Intelligence and Empathy 阅读、智力和移情

There are many studies suggesting a strong relationship between reading skill, intelligence and empathy. 有许多科学研究表明阅读技巧、智力和移情之间有着密切的关系。

Intellectual ability and cortical development in children and adolescents.

儿童和青少年的智力和皮质发育。

By 作者 Shaw, Greenstein D, Lerch J, Clasen L, Lenroot R, Gogtay N, Evans A, Rapoport J, Giedd J.

Children who are adept at any one of the three academic 'R's (reading, writing and arithmetic) tend to be good at the others, and grow into adults who are similarly skilled at diverse intellectually demanding activities.

擅长三个学术“ R”（阅读，写作和算术）中的任何一个的孩子，往往会善于其他学术技能，并成长为同样具备各种智力要求高的活动的成年人。

Nature. 2006 Mar 30;440(7084):676-9.

<https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/16572172>

Numerous scientific studies have found correlations between reading and empathy. Empathy is closely related to Emotional Intelligence (EQ)

大量科学研究发现阅读与同情之间存在相关性。移情与情商（EQ）密切相关

Cognitive and emotional empathy in typical and impaired readers and its relationship to reading competence.

典型和残障读者的认知和情感移情及其与阅读能力的关系。

By 作者 Gabay Y, Shamay-Tsoory S, Goldfarb L

Studies indicate a strong relationship between empathy and language skills, but the relationship between reading and empathy remains elusive, although a shared neural substrate (the temporoparietal junction; TPJ) has been implicated in both reading and empathy.

研究表明，移情和语言技能之间有着密切的关系，但是阅读和移情之间的关系仍然难以捉摸，尽管阅读和移情都牵涉到一个共同的神经基质（颞顶交界处；TPJ）。

Taken together, these results indicate a strong association between reading-related skills and empathic abilities and may point to involvement of the TPJ in both empathy and reading.

综上所述，这些结果表明阅读相关技能和移情能力之间有很强的关联性，并可能表明 TPJ 参与移情和阅读。

J Clin Exp Neuropsychol. 2016 Dec;38(10):1131-43. doi: 10.1080/13803395.2016.1199663. Epub 2016 Jun 29.

<https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/27355259>

That's interesting. It may explain why President Trump has no empathy for the nine million people that starve to death every year, and the hard-working people of China and other socialist countries. In fact, he seems totally lacking in empathy. And, he really does not like to read. Many believe he cannot read well. This kind of observation lends support to the conclusions of the above research study by Gabay *et al.*

真有趣。这或许可以解释为什么特朗普总统对每年饿死的 900 万人，以及中国和其他社会主义国家的勤劳人民毫无同情心。事实上，他似乎完全缺乏同情心。而且，他真的不喜欢读书。许多人认为他不识字。这种观察结果支持了 Gabay 等人的上述研究结论。

The unique contribution of working memory, inhibition, cognitive flexibility, and intelligence to reading comprehension and reading speed.

工作记忆、抑制、认知灵活性和智力对阅读理解和阅读速度的独特贡献。

By Johann V, Könen T, Karbach J

There are several studies showing that executive functions such as working memory, inhibition, and cognitive flexibility are related to reading abilities.

已有研究表明，工作记忆、抑制、认知灵活性等执行心理功能与阅读能力有关。

Working memory, inhibition and fluid intelligence were related to reading speed, indicating that a higher working memory capacity, better inhibitory abilities and higher fluid intelligence were associated with higher reading speed. Moreover, cognitive flexibility and fluid intelligence were related to reading comprehension, suggesting that higher cognitive flexibility and fluid intelligence were associated with better reading comprehension. Thus, our results point to differential contributions of executive functions to reading comprehension and reading speed.

工作记忆、抑制和流体智力与阅读速度有关，说明较高的工作记忆容量、较好的抑制能力和流体智力与较高的阅读速度有关。此外，认知灵活性和流动智力与阅读理解有关，说明较高的认知灵活性和流动智力与较好的阅读理解有关。因此，我们的结果指出执行功能对阅读理解和阅读速度的不同贡献。

Child Neuropsychol. 2020 Apr;26 (3):324-344. doi:
10.1080/09297049.2019.1649381. Epub 2019 Aug 5.

<https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/31380706>

20th and 21st Century Cacophony 20 世纪和 21 世纪的混沌噪声

We modern humans are being buried alive in noise and images selling everything imaginable.

我们现代人被活埋在噪音和图像中，出售一切可以想象的东西。

Try to imagine being a kid living in the countryside on a farm. You have time to watch the clouds, listen to the winds in the trees, and fantasize about anything and everything. You have time to think. What a luxury!

试着想象一下，作为一个生活在农村农场的孩子。你有时间看云彩，听树上的风，幻想一切。你有时间思考。多奢侈啊！

Most people living in big cities have not time to think. It's run, run, run. This is why books are written using formulas these days. Writers don't have time to think of anything creative to write. What's worse is most writers are raised on popular media, so very few of their "life experiences" are real.

大多数生活在大城市的人没有时间思考。快跑，快跑，快跑。这就是为什么现在的书是用公式写的。作家没有时间去想任何有创意的东西来写。更糟糕的是，大多数作家都是在大众媒体上长大的，所以他们很少有真实的生活经历。

"On any given day, American teenagers (13- to 18-year-olds) average about nine hours of entertainment media use, excluding time spent at school or for homework. Tweens (8- to 12-year-olds) use an average of about six hours' worth of entertainment media daily," the report reads.

“在任何一天，美国青少年（13 至 18 岁）平均使用娱乐媒体约 9 小时，不包括在学校或家庭作业上花费的时间。报告写道：“青少年（8 至 12 岁）每天平均使用价值约 6 小时的娱乐媒体。”。

<https://www.wvea.org/content/teens-spend-astounding-nine-hours-day-front-screens-researchers>

Most of their life experiences are not their own. Their life experiences come from other people's experiences they saw in videos and games. Most of the writers of those movies and games have simplistic political opinions based on very narrow experiences and information. Their knowledge is from other movies and games. Consequently, the USA is a weaponized country terrorizing most of the world and the citizens think it's a game. The nine million people that starve to death every year in the real world are nothing more than an unpleasant part of a movie or the unreal victims in a game.

他们的大多数生活经历都不是他们自己的。他们的生活经历来自他们在视频和游戏中看到的其他人的经历。这些电影和游戏的大多数作者都基于非常狭窄的经验和信息而持有简单的政治见解。他们从其他电影和游戏中获得的知识。因此，美国是一个恐怖的武器国家，恐怖袭击了世界大部分地区，而公民则认为这是一场游戏。在现实世界中，每年有 900 万人饿死，无非是电影中令人不快的部分或游戏中虚幻的受害者。

The electronic mass media is making people crazier every year and more and more distanced from the real world. Its true many parts of the world are very beautiful. But, most of Africa and Latin America are still Euro-American colonies, as are parts of Asia.

电子大众媒体每年都使人们变得更加疯狂，并且越来越远离现实世界。它的真实世界很多地方都非常美丽。但是，非洲和拉丁美洲的大部分地区以及亚洲的部分地区仍然是欧美殖民地。

What are most movies teaching children? Turn on most movies and one will see car chases and people shooting each other. What incredible idiocy! What an abysmal waste of human potential! Life on earth began 3.7 billion years ago, civilization is about 8,000 to 12,000 years old, and we evolved for watching car chases and people shooting each other?

大多数电影教孩子们什么？打开大多数电影，你会看到汽车追逐和人们互相射击。多么愚蠢！真是对人类潜能的极大浪费！地球上的生命开始于 37 亿年前，文明大约有 8000 到 12000 年的历史，我们是为了看汽车追逐和人们互相射击而进化的？

Who is Making the Monsters? 谁在制造怪物?

Maybe the movie is about a diabolical bad guy planning to kill thousands and millions of people! But, what about the fact that it's the US government that created most of the diabolical bad guys out there?

也许这部电影是关于一个邪恶的坏人计划杀死成千上万的人！但是，事实上是美国政府制造了大部分的恶魔坏人呢。

I visited a Madrassa in Pakistan in 1993 where the Taliban began. I noticed that they had no books about math, history, geography, biology or anything else. Only old very strange copies of Korans. I asked the military officer with me, "why?" He said the Saudis were paying for it and they insisted the Taliban only learn those versions of the Koran and nothing else.

1993 年，我访问了巴基斯坦的一个宗教学校，那里是塔利班的发源地。我注意到他们没有关于数学、历史、地理、生物学或其他方面的书。只有很奇怪的古兰经老版本。我问随行的军官：“为什么？”他说，沙特为此付出了代价，他们坚持塔利班只学习那些版本的《古兰经》，其他什么都不学。

The Saudis have had a very close relationship with the US Department of Defense since the 1930s. Who was behind the 9/11 bombings? The Saudis, not the Afghans; not the Iraqis. Fifteen of the 19 bombers were from Saudi Arabia. 自 20 世纪 30 年代以来，沙特与美国国防部的关系一直非常密切，谁是 9/11 爆炸案的幕后主使？沙特，不是阿富汗人，不是伊拉克人。19 架轰炸机中有 15 架来自沙特阿拉伯。

What is so unusual about the Saudis?

First one needs to understand that sects are forbidden in Islam, yet the Saudis adopted an extremely rigid ultra-conservative fundamentalist sect to guide them. Wahhabism is a fundamentalist branch of Islam. It started out as a sect of Sunni Islam in the remote interior of the Arabian Peninsula and is practiced by those who follow the teachings of Muhammad ibn Abd al-Wahhab (1703-1792).

In the 20th century Wahhabis adopted the term *Salafi* to identify themselves (and disguise the origin of their forbidden sect). The Salafism (Wahhabism) doctrine can be summed up as taking a fundamentalist approach to Islam, emulating (what *they think* were the behaviors of) the Prophet Muhammad and his earliest followers - rather than living by the virtues in the Qur'an. From the beginning, they supported violent means to further their cause, even against the Muslim community. (Adapted from <https://rationalwiki.org/wiki/Wahhabism>)

The Wahhabis follow a "divided highway" theory of Islam. One is either perfect, or one is a *kaffir* – an unbeliever. And the way they say "Kaffir" is loaded with hate. That in itself is most unIslamic. It's sick. Miss one prayer? "You are no longer Muslim! You are a hypocrite! A kaffir! To hell with you!" (I have heard those exact words from Wahhabis.) Thus, many or most Muslims do not consider Wahhabis to be Muslim. It's my personal impression that at best they are annoying, and at worst extremely dangerous psychopathic killers.

I had a friend once, a friendly Palestinian Muslim with longish ginger colored hair and a bushy beard. He had a great sense of humor and gentle disposition. He sometimes led the prayer at the small university masjid near the university. Then he went to Saudi Arabia to study Islam for six months. When he came back, he was poisonously arrogant, had completely lost his sense of humor and nobody wanted to be near him. I wondered if behavioral conditioning alone could do that so quickly, or if they had used some drug to destroy the parts of his brain that mediate love, kindness, humor and so on.

This isn't to say or suggest that all Saudis are bad people. It's a huge family and some no doubt are very nice people. Remember the Saud tribe is only one tribe of many in the Arabian Peninsula. It was the USA however that cemented the power of the Saud family over Saudi Arabia back in the early 20th Century. One never knows when a large tribe of extreme fanatics can come in useful! Please be aware the word compassion is used 326 times in the Quran, and the word "Islam" is derived from the word for peace. Yet, as noted elsewhere in this book, there is nothing good in this world that cannot be twisted into something evil by those with evil intentions.

Saudi Warplanes Continue Bombing Yemen on Eid Al-Fitr, Killing 3 Civilians,

沙特战机在开斋节继续轰炸也门，造成 3 名平民死亡 25 May 2020

<https://www.islamtimes.org/en/news/864675/saudi-warplanes-continue-bombing-yemen-on-eid-al-fitr-killing-3-civilians>

Mohammed bin Salman Is Making Muslims Boycott Mecca, 穆罕默德·本·萨勒曼让穆斯林抵制麦加 July 2, 2019

<https://foreignpolicy.com/2019/07/02/mohammed-bin-salman-is-making-muslims-boycott-mecca-hajj-islam-pilgrimage-saudi-arabia>

Saudi Arabia Is Misusing Mecca - In the aftermath of the Jamal Khashoggi murder, the kingdom has exploited the podium of the Grand Mosque in Mecca by using its imams to praise, sanctify and defend the rulers and their actions 沙特阿拉伯滥用麦加——在贾马尔·卡舒吉谋杀案发生后，沙特王国利用麦加大清真寺的讲台，利用其伊玛目赞扬、圣洁和捍卫统治者及其行为

<https://www.nytimes.com/2018/11/12/opinion/saudi-arabia-mbs-grandmosque-mecca-politics.html>

On May 20, 2017, U.S. President Trump and Saudi Arabia's Salman bin Abdulaziz Al Saud signed a series of letters of intent for the Kingdom of Saudi Arabia to purchase arms from the United States totaling US\$110 billion immediately, and \$350 billion over 10 years. (Multiple sources) 2017 年 5 月 20 日，美国总统特朗普和沙特阿拉伯的萨尔曼·本·阿卜杜勒阿齐兹·阿尔·沙特签署了一系列意向书，要求沙特阿拉伯王国立即从美国购买武器，总额达 1100 亿美元，并在 10 年内购买 3500 亿美元。（多个来源）

Two 9/11 bombers were from the UAE. So, 17 of the 19 were Arabs. Never-the-less, the USA attacked Afghanistan in revenge for the 9/11 bombing. Afghans are not Arabs. None of the bombers were Afghans. And now after a 19-year war in Afghanistan the Taliban control more than half the country. Why is that? Is it possible the USA is doing one thing after another to make the situation there worse? Why would the American Department of Defense do this? They profit from war, and need wars to keep the budget of the military industrial complex as high as possible. More than half the American government budget is spent on "defense."

沙特自上世纪 30 年代以来就与美国国防部有着非常密切的关系，9·11 爆炸案的幕后黑手是谁？沙特，不是阿富汗人，不是伊拉克人。19 架轰炸机中有 15 架来自沙特阿拉伯。两人来自阿联酋。因此，19 架 9/11 轰炸机中有 17 架是阿拉伯人。

更重要的是，美国袭击阿富汗是为了报复 9/11 爆炸事件。阿富汗人不是阿拉伯人。爆炸者都不是阿富汗人。现在，在阿富汗经历了 19 年的战争之后，塔利班控制了个国家的一半以上。为什么？

美国有没有可能一件接一件地把那里的情况搞得更糟？美国国防部为什么要这么做？他们从战争中获利，需要战争来保持军工联合体的预算尽可能高。美国政府一半以上的预算用于“国防。”

So, yes, it's the USA making the monsters out there. But, not too many books or movies illuminate this inconvenient fact.

所以，是的，是美国制造的怪物。但是，没有太多的书或电影能说明这个不方便的事实。

There are some very good and educational movies, but not many. (A short list is in Appendix 4 – Books and movies I've enjoyed and learned from.) But, the percentage of good movies is very low.

有一些电影很棒，教育程度很高。（附录 4 中有一个简短的列表——我喜欢并从中学到的书籍和电影）但是，好电影的比例非常低。

There's only one thing better than reading in my opinion, and that's traveling. Unfortunately, the US Department of Defense is making it an increasingly dangerous world everywhere. No wonder Americans prefer to just stay at home and watch movies and play games. They can't deal with the realities their own government is creating around the world. It's not compatible with their self-images. And, it's getting too dangerous, because of the US Department of Defense, mainly the CIA.

在我看来，只有一件事比读书更好，那就是旅行。不幸的是，美国国防部正在使世界各地变得越来越危险。难怪美国人喜欢呆在家里看电影和玩游戏。他们无法应对他们自己的政府在全球各地造成的现实。这与他们的自我形象不符。而且，它变得太危险了，因为美国国防部，主要是中央情报局。

So, all the movies with car chases and people shooting each other? That's the American military industrial complex programming children and everyone else to accept violence and death as a way of life.

所以，所有的电影都有追车和互相射击的情节？这就是美国军工综合体计划儿童和其他人接受暴力和死亡作为一种生活方式。

It's a whole lot better for everyone to read the books "Oliver Twist," or "Tom Sawyer," "Huckleberry Finn," and/or thousands of other books than watch TV or play games killing zombies, or driving in car races.

与阅读电视上的战争节目或玩杀死僵尸的游戏相比，每个人都能阅读出色的书本要好得多。

Certainly, its true children need to be protected from the great evils of the world, but are those movies protecting children, or teaching them the worst possible things?

当然，它真正的孩子需要受到保护，免受世界上的巨大邪恶，但那些电影是在保护孩子，还是在教他们最坏的事情？

US Blocks Vote on UN's Bid for Global Ceasefire Amid COVID-19, Telesur, 13 May 2020 美国在 COVID-19 期间就联合国竞标全球停火而拒绝投票（电信，2020 年 5 月 13 日）

The US veto trashes the UN's efforts to convince armed factions in more than a dozen countries to call for temporary truces as the world battles the pandemic.

美国的否决权破坏了联合国说服十多个国家的武装派系在世界与大流行作斗争时呼吁暂时休战的努力。

International diplomats were stunned and frustrated Friday after the United States again blocked a United Nations resolution to call for a global ceasefire during the COVID-19 pandemic, only because the Trump administration objected to an indirect reference to the World Health Organization (WHO).

在美国再次阻止联合国呼吁在 COVID-19 大流行期间达成全球停火的决议后，国际外交官们感到震惊和沮丧，仅仅是因为特朗普政府反对间接提及世界卫生组织（WHO）。

The Security Council has been wrangling for more than six weeks over the resolution, which was intended to demonstrate global support for the call for a ceasefire by the U.N. Secretary-General Antonio Guterres.

安全理事会在该决议上进行了六个多星期的辩论，该决议旨在表明全球支持联合国秘书长安东尼奥·古特雷斯提出的停火呼吁。

However, the main source for the delay was the U.S. refusal to endorse a resolution that urged support for the WHO's operations during the COVID-19 pandemic.

但是，造成延误的主要原因是美国拒绝批准一项决议，该决议敦促在 COVID-19 大流行期间支持 WHO 的行动。

The U.S. objected to any mention of the WHO in the resolution. President Donald Trump has claimed WHO withheld information from world governments about the new coronavirus, while saying – without any supporting evidence – that the global health agency was privy to information about the virus originating in a lab in China.

美国反对在决议中提及世界卫生组织。唐纳德·特朗普总统声称世界卫生组织从世界各国政府那里隐瞒了有关新冠病毒的信息，同时说-没有任何支持证据-全球卫生机构不知道有关源自中国实验室的这种病毒的信息。

Now, the U.S. position to the U.N. Security Council delays all the work carried out by this organization that had managed to convince the armed factions in more than a dozen countries to call for temporary truces as the world battles the pandemic. It had also been negotiating with the U.S. in order to reach a compromise on this matter.

现在，美国在联合国安理会的立场推迟了该组织所做的所有工作，该组织已经成功说服了十几个国家的武装派系在世界与大流行作斗争时呼吁暂时休战。它也一直在与美国进行谈判，以在此问题上达成妥协。

"The U.S. objected to any mention of the WHO in the resolution."

“美国反对在决议中提及世卫组织。”

<https://blackagenda.com/us-blocks-vote-uns-bid-global-ceasefire-amid-covid-19>

If any of those wars were fought within the USA, the politicians might assent to put them on hold to fight COVID-19. But, as long as the wars are in “other people’s countries,” the USA won’t slow down its war machine for even one minute.

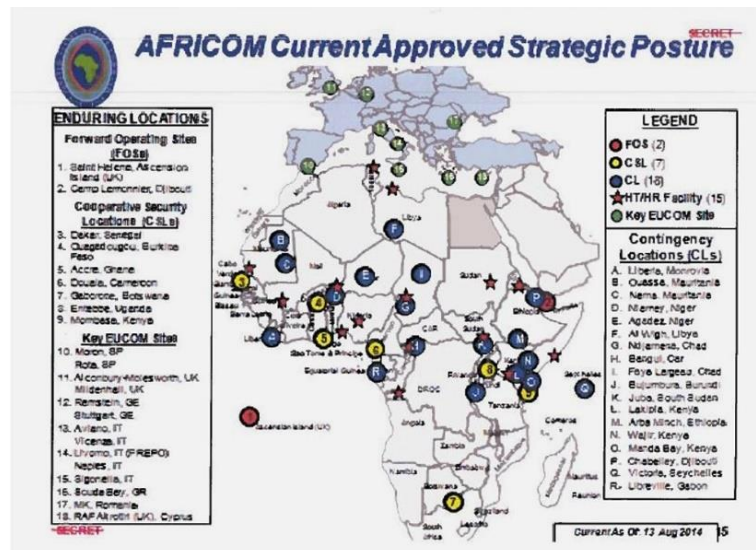
如果在美国境内发生过任何战争，则政客可能会同意将其搁置以对抗 COVID-19。但是，只要战争发生在“其他国家”，美国一分钟都不会减慢其战争机器的速度。

The corporation owned Mainstream Media (MSM) “protects” everyone in the west from the vast ocean of “uncomfortable” truths in the world voters in the west really need to know. The voting public in the USA and Europe need to know these truths to make informed decisions when they vote for political representatives.

主流企业媒体（MSM）向欧美选民隐瞒了许多令人不安的“真相”。美国和欧洲的选民在投票选举政治代表时，需要了解这些事实，才能做出明智的决定。主流企业媒体正在背叛西方和世界人民的信任。

And thus, we get a divided world – the world of the wealthy capitalist nations, and the worlds in Africa, Asia, and Latin America where most people do not have a fair chance in life, because America’s dictators (in their countries) steal everything.

因此，我们得到了一个分裂的世界——富裕资本主义国家的世界，以及非洲、亚洲和拉丁美洲的世界。在非洲、亚洲的一些地区和拉丁美洲，大多数人生活中没有公平的机会，因为独裁者（由美国任命）和他们的亲信偷走了一切。



<https://theintercept.com/2018/12/01/u-s-military-says-it-has-a-light-footprint-in-africa-these-documents-show-a-vast-network-of-bases>

The United States Africa Command (AFRICOM) rules Africa. The colonial headquarters are in Kelley Barracks, Stuttgart, Germany.

This loud chaotic distracting noise from the mainstream corporate media in the west is not an accident. The “Deep State” knows the public needs to be distracted such that they don’t know what’s really going on, and don’t demand changes.

西方主流企业媒体发出的这种喧嚣混乱、分散注意力的声音并非偶然。“深层政府的”知道公众需要分心，以至于他们不知道到底发生了什么，也不要求改变。

American Capitalist Pillaging of Africa 美国资本主义掠夺非洲

US Ramps Up War in Somalia, Killing More Civilians

美国在索马里加紧战争，杀害更多平民

While much of the world tries to fight a global pandemic that has already killed thousands, the U.S. military has been secretly stepping up its war in Somalia, killing civilians in the process.

尽管世界上许多地方都在努力抗击已经杀死数千人的全球性流行病，但美军一直在秘密加紧在索马里的战争，在此过程中杀死了平民。

Soon after President Donald Trump took office in 2017, U.S. Africa Command (AFRICOM) began ramping up its air war. Since then, it’s only increased its tempo. In the first few months of 2020, the U.S. has already conducted at least 39 airstrikes in Somalia. To put that in perspective, AFRICOM carried out 63 air strikes during the entirety of 2019.

唐纳德·特朗普总统于 2017 年就职后不久，美国非洲司令部（AFRICOM）开始加强其空战。从那以后，它只是增加了节奏。在 2020 年的前几个月中，美国已经在索马里进行了至少 39 次空袭。从这个角度来看，AFRICOM 在整个 2019 年进行了 63 次空袭。

The U.S. says these airstrikes are to assist the government of Somalia in its war against the non-state armed group al-Shabaab and “increase the security of the Somali people as these terrorists indiscriminately attack and extort innocent civilians.” Yet the increase in strike activity has not fulfilled its purpose on the ground...

美国说，这些空袭是为了协助索马里政府对抗非国家武装团体青年党，并“增加索马里人民的安全，因为这些恐怖分子肆意攻击和勒索无辜平民。”然而，罢工活动的增加并未实现其实际目标。

In the meantime, the U.S. continues to kill a growing number of civilians with these airstrikes, without acknowledgement or accountability. A year ago, Amnesty International — where I work — reported the deaths of 14 civilians in just five air strikes that it was able to investigate. The U.S., at that point, had acknowledged 131 lethal air strikes in Somalia since early 2017, but claimed that all of those killed were “terrorists.” AFRICOM says it investigates claims of civilian casualties, but it does not contact witnesses, family or community members to determine who the victims were.

同时，美国继续通过空袭杀死越来越多的平民，而没有得到承认或追究责任。 一年前，大赦国际（我工作的地方）报告说，在能够进行调查的五次空袭中，有 14 名平民丧生。 自 2017 年初以来，美国当时已承认在索马里进行了 131 次致命空袭，但声称所有遇难者都是“恐怖分子”。AFRICOM 表示，它正在调查平民伤亡的指控，但并未与目击者，家人或社区成员联系以确定受害者是谁。

<https://www.justsecurity.org/69705/us-ramps-up-war-in-somalia-killing-more-civilians>

It is an immeasurable tragedy that the USA and Europe have no more interest in diplomacy. Trump installing the former Director of the CIA as the Secretary of State was by itself an act of infamy. The State Department is supposed to be the diplomatic branch of the US government. But, it, like everything else from the USA these days, has been weaponized.

美国和欧洲不再对外感兴趣，这是一个无法估量的悲剧。特朗普任命中央情报局前局长为国务卿本身就是一种侮辱。国务院应该是美国政府的外交部门。但是，和美国的其他东西一样，它已经被武器化了。

Some places are worse than others. 有些地方比其他地方更糟。

The Killing and Raping Game in Kenya and the Despots Who Run It

肯尼亚的杀戮和强暴游戏，及管理它的暴君 by Kenneth Good, March 12, 2020

In Kenya, as in many other African countries, power is highly centralised in the presidency, facilitating the execution of violence. During the two-stage 2017 presidential elections, in August and the re-run on 26 October, severe assault was directed at women and girls. Rape by state security agents occurred.

在肯尼亚，和许多其他非洲国家一样，总统的权力高度集中，有利于实施暴力。在 8 月和 10 月 26 日的两阶段 2017 年总统选举中，针对妇女和女孩的严重攻击。发生了国家安全人员强奸案。

In a report of 14 December that year, ‘They Were Men in Uniform’, HRW identified the police as perpetrators. In investigations carried out between September and November 2017, HRW reported widespread violence directed at the vulnerable both for their gender and their ethnicity: to ‘punish the individual and their communities for the way they voted’ and their suspected allegiances. They documented cases of vaginal and anal rape, gang rape, mass rape, and rape with an object. ‘About half’ of their reported cases were gang rapes. Sexual violence was intended to have, a wide and ‘devastating impact’: many experienced injuries and other consequences leaving some unable to work, care for themselves and for families, or handle schooling. ‘Profound mental trauma’ was common. With their history of human rights abuses, contacting the police was not a viable option for most victims...

人权观察在同年 12 月 14 日的一份报告中指出，“他们是穿制服的男子”，警察是肇事者。在 2017 年 9 月至 11 月间进行的调查中，人权观察报告说，针对弱势群体的暴力行为普遍存在，包括针对其性别和种族的暴力：“惩罚个人及其社区的投票方式”和涉嫌效忠。他们记录了阴道和肛门强奸、轮奸、集体强奸和带物强奸的案例。他们报告的案件中有一半是轮奸。性暴力的目的是产生广泛和“毁灭性的影响”：许多人遭受了伤害和其他后果，使一些人无法工作、照顾自己和家庭，或无法接受教育。“严重的精神创伤”很常见。由于他们有侵犯人权的历史，联系警察对大多数受害者来说不是一个可行的选择。。。

<https://www.counterpunch.org/2020/03/12/the-killing-and-raping-game-in-kenya-and-the-despots-who-run-it>

And American taxpayers support AFRICOM which supports the dictators. It's a cozy profitable deal for the USA, and hell for the innocent people of Africa.

美国纳税人也支持 AFRICOM，后者支持独裁者。对于美国来说，这是一笔可观的获利交易，对于非洲无辜人民而言，这是一个地狱。

My African friends have told me some places are worse than others. I've heard good reports from Tunisian and Moroccan friends. I very much enjoyed my recent visit to Ethiopia. There are so many good people there. Nigeria appears to be developing a middle class. That's a good thing. I suspect most of Africa is very lovely. It's just tragic the USA plays such a destructive role.

我的非洲朋友告诉我，有些地方比其他地方更好。我听过突尼斯和摩洛哥朋友的好评。我最近对埃塞俄比亚的访问非常愉快。那里有很多好人。尼日利亚似乎正在发展中产阶级。这是好事。我怀疑非洲大部分地区都很可爱。不幸的是，美国到处都扮演着如此破坏性的角色。

In most places around the world, the rich get richer and the poor suffer hopelessness from birth to (early) death. This is the legacy of global capitalism directed by the USA.

在世界上大多数地方，富人越来越富有，穷人从出生到（早逝）都感到绝望。这是美国领导的全球资本主义的遗产。

Even most of the “alternative news” list above does not give fair attention to the neediest places on earth (like the Democratic Republic of Congo, DRC). No western media does, because westerners are not even permitted into the places that most desperately need the light of world media to get some positive changes started.

甚至“替代新闻”也没有给予那些需求最大的国家（如刚果民主共和国和尼日尔）以公平的关注。没有西方媒体阐明那些地方的致命真相。

“Black Agenda Report” (<https://blackagendareport.com>) however is one of a kind.

On African Liberation Day, the Black Alliance for Peace Demands U.S. Shut Down AFRICOM

在非洲解放日，“和平黑人联盟”要求美国关闭 AFRICOM

The US Military Command in Africa allows Washington and its European allies to dominate the continent and its resources.

"The campaign calls on Africans throughout the diaspora to mark Soweto Day on June 16."

美国在非洲的军事指挥部允许华盛顿及其欧洲盟国控制非洲大陆及其资源。“这项运动呼吁散居各地的非洲人庆祝 6 月 16 日的索韦托纪念日。”

On the 57th anniversary of African Liberation Day (ALD), the Black Alliance for Peace (BAP) calls on international civil society and progressive states to “Rise Up to Shut Down AFRICOM.”

在非洲解放日（ALD）成立 57 周年之际，黑人和平联盟（BAP）呼吁国际民间社会和进步国家“崛起，关闭非洲空军司令部”。

“Today, U.S. bases, as well as military-to-military relations between 53 out of the 54 African countries and the United States, characterize the aggressive strategy of the U.S. to preserve the interests of the Pan-European, white supremacist colonial/capitalist project on the African continent,” says Netfa Freeman, organizer with Pan-African Community Action (PACA) and member of BAP’s Coordinating Committee. “The U.S. and the North Atlantic Treaty Organization (NATO) represent an existential threat to African independence because these forces are committed to the use of violence to maintain control over the land, resources and labor of African people.”

“今天，美国的基地以及 54 个非洲国家中的 53 个与美国之间的军事关系，体现了美国为维护泛欧洲白人至上主义殖民主义者/资本家的利益而采取的积极战略。非洲大陆项目”，泛非社区行动组织（PACA）的组织者和 BAP 协调委员会成员 Netfa Freeman 说。“美国和北大西洋公约组织（NATO）对非洲独立构成了生存威胁，因为这些部队致力于使用暴力来维持对非洲人民的土地，资源和劳动力的控制。”

African development, national sovereignty and self-determination is impossible as long as the U.S. and its European allies are allowed to prop up neocolonial states run by the comprador bourgeoisie who use their countries’ militaries to stay in power to serve U.S. and European colonialism.

只要允许美国及其欧洲盟国支持买办资产阶级经营的新殖民地国家，而买办资产阶级利用本国的军队继续掌权，为美国和欧洲的殖民主义服务，非洲的发展、国家主权和自决就不可能实现。

<https://blackagenda.com/african-liberation-day-black-alliance-peace-demands-us-shut-down-africom>

Reading Quiz Questions 阅读测验问题

1. Children usually ask the most questions around age ____
 - a. 3
 - b. 4
 - c. 6
 - d. 10

2. The question: "Where's my tail?" is a _____.
 - a. stupid question
 - b. very intelligent question
 - c. waste of mom's time
 - d. demonstrates mental illness in the child

 3. The average conversation rate for English speakers in the United States is about _____ words per minute.
 - a. 100
 - b. 150
 - c. 200
 - d. 250

 4. Reading has (a) _____ correlation with intelligence and empathy.
 - a. Positive
 - b. Negative
 - c. No
 - d. weak

 5. Average American teenagers spend _____ hours per day immersed in (non-school related) media.
 - a. 7
 - b. 9
 - c. 11
 - d. 14

 6. Life on earth became approximately _____ years ago.
 - a. 2.5
 - b. 3
 - c. 3.7
 - d. 9

 7. The Taliban started in _____.
 - a. Afghanistan
 - b. Pakistan
 - c. Saudi Arabia
 - d. Namibia

 8. According to the writer who is creating all the violent monsters?
 - a. Saudi Arabia
 - b. Afghans
 - c. Pakistanis
 - d. USA

 9. The "diplomatic" branch of the US government is called the _____.
 - a. Defense department
-

- b. Internal Revenue Service
- c. Immigration and Nationalization Service (INS)
- d. The State Department

10. According to the writer why do most of the people in Africa, Asia and Latin America stay poor?

- a. They are too lazy to work
- b. They have inadequate education
- c. American appointed dictators steal the wealth of their nations
- d. They are not really so poor

Nurturing the Reading Habit, Books and Freedom 培养阅读习惯、书籍和自由

Reading for enjoyment is a great thing. It gets the reading habit started. The interests of the reader can only be stimulated when they are free to pick and choose their own reading materials. (When they get older they can grapple with the more complicated issues of the world. But young people need to enjoy what they read to get the fire of desire to read started.)

享受阅读是一件很棒的事。它开始养成阅读习惯。只有在自由选择自己的阅读材料时，才能激发读者的利益。（当他们变老时，他们可以应对世界上更复杂的问题。

但是年轻人需要享受他们所阅读的内容，以开始阅读的欲望之火。）

Here is where so many educators take a serious wrong turn. In an attempt to cultivate the “right” mindsets in students, educational programs and teachers usually give students “approved” reading lists and books. This is likely to kill any intrinsic love of reading in most students. Most (but not all) of those books are two dimensional (boring).

这是许多教育工作者采取严重错误态度的地方。为了培养学生的“正确”心态，教育计划和教师通常会给学生“批准”的阅读清单和书籍。这可能会杀死大多数学生对阅读的内在热爱。这些书中的大多数（但不是全部）都是二维的（无聊的）。

I learned to love reading because I was able to indulge my own curiosity. Nobody could predict what I wanted to read next. If someone had told me what to read, I would have hated it. And so, we get a generation of young people that hate reading – a generation of (future) President Trumps!

我学会了热爱阅读，因为我能够放纵自己的好奇心。没有人能预测我接下来要读的内容。如果有人告诉我阅读什么，我会讨厌的。因此，我们得到了一代不愿读书的年轻人-一代（未来的）特朗普总统！

This “militarization of everything,” is a really bad idea.

这种“一切军事化”，真是个好主意。

Likewise, demanding that readers micro-analyze what they read can have blowback, that is have the unintentional effect of causing the reader to dislike reading.

同样，要求读者对所读内容进行微观分析也会产生反作用，即无意中造成读者不喜欢阅读的后果。

Sometimes deconstructing books is a very good idea; however, it should not be the norm.

有时解构书籍是一个很好的主意，但是，它不应该是一个规范。

So often parents and educators overthink things. They try to control the students too much. And so the students respond by becoming wilder and not cooperating.

家长和教育工作者经常会想得太多。他们试图过多地控制每个学生的思想。所以学生们的反应是变得更疯狂，不合作。

Just reading good book (or article) stimulates critical thinking in a curious person. They pose moral and existential dilemmas. They draw the readers into the worlds and minds of the characters in the stories they read. There are natural processes at work. No science or military structure can push the river, or try to make the flower grow faster by pulling on its leaves!

仅仅读一本好书（或一篇文章）就能激发一个好奇的人的批判性思维。它们造成了道德和生存的困境。他们把读者吸引到他们所读故事中人物的世界和思想中。工作中有自然过程。任何科学或军事结构都不能推动河流，也不能试图通过拉动花朵的叶子使其生长得更快！

Reading books, a person can live a thousand lives before they are 10 years old. Reading books one can bask in the sunshine of the wisdom of the ages – learn the differences between right and wrong, and help develop the intellectual capacity and moral courage needed to even think about, and try to make the world a better place.

读书，一个人可以在 10 岁以前活上千年。读书可以让人沐浴在一万年智慧的阳光下——学习对与错的区别，帮助培养思考所需的智力和道德勇气，努力让世界变得更美好。

Student Challenge: Compare and Contrast 学生挑战：比较和对比

Compare and contrast books, movies, games and friends. List positive and negative qualities of each.

比较和对比书籍、电影、游戏和朋友。列出每个人的优点和缺点。

Books	Movies	Games	Friends

Jokes! 开玩笑！

Q: What's the difference between a book and a teacher? 问题: 书和老师有什么区别?

A: You can shut up a book! (You cannot shut up a teacher.)

回答: 你可以闭上一本书! (你不能让老师闭嘴。)

合上 Hé shàng Shut up – like closing the book

闭嘴 bìzǔǐ! Shut up - telling someone to be quiet.

Q: What are some differences between a books and friends?

A: You can put two or three books in a suitcase. Also, if you lose a book, you can find an identical one easily. And, books don't get angry at you whatever you do. On the other hand, you will appear very strange if you talk to your book in a restaurant!

问：书籍和朋友之间有什么区别？

答：您可以在手提箱里放两三本书。另外，如果您丢失一本书，则可以轻松找到相同的书。而且，无论您做什么，书都不会生您的气。另一方面，如果您在餐厅跟书聊天，您会显得很奇怪！

Here's some really simple jokes (good for kids or anyone)

这是一些非常简单的笑话（对孩子或任何人都利）

What do you call a deer with no eyes? 您怎么称呼没有眼睛的鹿？

A no-eyed deer! (Sounds like "No idea!") 一只没有眼睛的鹿！（听起来像“不知道！”）

What do you call a dead deer with no eyes? 什么叫无眼死鹿？

Still no idea. 仍然不知道。

"Still" in English means both "not moving" and "up until now."

What do you call a pig with three eyes? 你怎么称呼三只眼睛的猪？

Piiig! ("Eye" sounds the same as the letter "I")

噢！（“眼睛”听起来与字母“i”相同）

Research "jokes" on the internet. There are a million of them. Find a few you think are funny. Practice telling them, and then try them on your friends. Jokes are a great way to have fun and learn a foreign language at the same time.

在互联网上研究“笑话”。有一百万。找到一些您认为有趣的事情。练习告诉他们，然后对您的朋友尝试一下。开玩笑是一种乐趣，同时可以学习一门外语。

There are also jokes on every subject. You can find "Trump jokes," "money jokes" and just about anything you can think of. Have fun with this!

每个科目上都有笑话。您可以找到“特朗普笑话”，“金钱笑话”以及几乎所有您能想到的东西。玩得开心！

The Twitter Era – A Huge Step Backwards 推特时代——一个巨大的倒退

Humanity led by the USA has transitioned from the "information age" to the "Twitter age." What a huge step backwards.

以美国为首的人类已经从“信息时代”过渡到“推特时代”，这是一个巨大的倒退。

It's like we're back in the stone ages now.

Caveman Conversation 1 穴居人对话一

Me biggest monkey. Me Trump. Trump good. USA good. China virus. Hate virus. Hate China.

我最大猴. 我特朗普. 特朗普好. 美国好. 中国病毒. 讨厌病毒. 讨厌中国

Me man. You woman. Come here. We ****.

我男人. 你女人. 过来! 我们****.

It's like reptiles have taken over the world. It's pretty amazing really.

就像爬行动物占领了世界。真是太神奇了。

(I can't help wondering if both President Trump and Secretary of State Pompeo are on drugs, like steroids and amphetamines.)

(我不禁想到特朗普总统和蓬佩奥国务卿都必须服用类固醇和安非他命等药物。)

In the year 2020 we are living in a Twitter driven world. In 2017 Twitter increased the permitted word count of a "Tweet" from 140 words to 280 words.

在 2020 年，我们生活在一个由高音扬声器驱动的世界中。2017 年，Twitter 将“推文”的允许字数从 140 个单词增加到 280 个单词。

And yet, in 2018 techcrunch.com reported: 然而，

2018 年 techcrunch.com 报告：

Meanwhile, most tweets continue to be very short, Twitter says. The most common length of a tweet back when Twitter only allowed 140 characters was 34 characters. Now that the limit is 280 characters, the most common length of a tweet is 33 characters.

同时，大多数推文仍然很短。Twitter 仅允许 140 个字符时，发回推的最常见长度是 34 个字符。现在限制为 280 个字符，一条推文的最常见长度为 33 个字符。

<https://techcrunch.com/2018/10/30/twitters-doubling-of-character-count-from-140-to-280-had-little-impact-on-length-of-tweets>

The tweets are getting shorter. There can be many reasons.

这些推文越来越短。可能有很多原因。

This writer's opinion is that movies are conditioning people into having shorter and shorter attention spans and require less focus and critical thinking to enjoy, than books.

作家的观点是，与书本相比，电影正在使人们的注意力跨度越来越短，并且需要更少的专注力和批判性思维来欣赏。

Movies tend to teach some questionable lessons too. When actors get older they almost always have to start playing the roles of the antagonist (bad guy). Why? Movies are more image based than books, and young attractive stars make more money than older wiser characters.

电影也往往会给人一些有问题的教训。当演员老了（50 岁以上），他们几乎总是要开始扮演对手（坏人）的角色。为什么？电影比书更注重形象，年轻漂亮的明星比年长聪明的角色赚更多的钱。

Caveman conversation 2 穴居人对话二

A: Young good. Old bad.

B: Old Trump

A: Trump rich. Rich good. Trump good.

A: 年轻好. 老坏.

B: 特朗普老

A: 特朗普富. 富好. 特朗普好.

This kind of populism is reflected in the selection of politicians too. People like simple political leaders. President Trump is simple. Very basic. Everyone knows he lies. They don't care. He's simple, and he's rich. Politicians now are more "image based." It's all about marketing images.

这种民粹主义也反映在政治家的选择上。人们喜欢简单的政治领袖。特朗普总统很简单。很基本。人人都知道他撒谎。他们不在乎。他很单纯，而且很有钱。政客们现在更倾向于“以形象为基础”，这完全是为了营销形象。

Movies tend to be more two dimensional than books and thus in populism-driven democracies one ends up with two dimensional "comic-book style" politicians. They are usually masters at appealing to the baser instincts (lowest common denominators) in the people they lead. This in turn also results dangerously megalomaniacal domestic and international policies.

电影往往是二维的。好的书有更多的深度，也有更多的 3D 立体感。因此，在民粹主义驱动的民主国家中，我们得到了二维的“漫画风格”政治家。他们通常是吸引基本本能的大师。这导致危险的大妄想的国内和国际政策。

Given that the USA has been the world leader since WWII, and has a huge nuclear arsenal, this can be a "bit" worrisome.

鉴于美国自第二次世界大战以来一直是世界领导者，并且拥有庞大的核武库，这可能有点“令人担忧”。

“Wasteful’ US and China-chasing India: What 5 biggest military powers are spending more than a TRILLION DOLLARS on

“浪费’美国和追逐中国的印度：五个最大的军事大国在这方面的支出超过了万亿美元

3 May, 2020

Global defense spending saw its largest annual increase in a decade in 2019, proving that the trend for bloated military budgets is here to stay – but expenditure doesn't always correlate simply with power, analysts told RT.

分析师告诉 RT，2019 年全球国防开支出现了 10 年来最大的年度增长，这证明了膨胀的军事预算趋势将继续存在，但支出并不总是与权力简单相关。

With military budgets peaking at a colossal \$1.9 trillion last year (a 3.6 percent increase on 2018), it is clear that governments are still deeply in love with throwing massive amounts of money into the production and acquisition of the latest and fanciest new weapons of war. We have now reached the “highest level of spending since the 2008 global financial crisis,” according to the Stockholm International Peace Research Institute’s (SIPRI) latest annual report.

随着去年军事预算最高达到 1.9 万亿美元（比 2018 年增长 3.6%），很明显，各国政府仍然深深地爱上了投入大量资金来生产和获取最新和最奇特的新型战争武器。根据斯德哥尔摩国际和平研究所（SIPRI）最新的年度报告，我们现在已经达到了“2008 年全球金融危机以来的最高支出水平”。

So, who are the biggest players, and more importantly, do their budgets really reflect their military capabilities and power? 那么，谁是最大的参与者，更重要的是，他们的预算确实反映了他们的军事能力吗？

‘Wasteful’ United States “浪费”美国

The US spent a gargantuan sum of \$732 billion on its military in 2019, accounting for 38 percent of the global spend. Putting that in context, the budgets of the next four countries (China, India, Russia and Saudi Arabia) combined were still almost \$300 billion less than Washington’s expenditure. Always eager to prove it has the deepest pockets when it comes to the military, the US has remained the top spender for several decades – but has it paid off?

The US is an example of a country which has spent a massive amount while experiencing a relative decline in power and capabilities, Suslov said...

美国在 2019 年的军费上花费了 7320 亿美元，占全球支出的 38%。在此背景下，接下来四个国家（中国，印度，俄罗斯和沙特阿拉伯）的预算总和仍比华盛顿的支出少近 3000 亿美元。一直渴望证明自己拥有最雄厚的军事实力，几十年来，美国一直是最大的支出国，但是它有没有回报？

萨斯洛夫说，美国是一个国家花费了巨资却经历了相对权力和能力相对下降的例子。

<https://www.rt.com/news/487280-global-military-spending-2019>

There’s an old saying: “Boys never grow up. They just get more expensive and more dangerous toys.” That certainly true for American presidents. Maybe it’s because most of them don’t read much these days. President Trump is famous for not liking reading. This quality helped sell him to the American public, because most Americans don’t like reading much either.

有句老话：男孩永远不会长大。他们只会得到更昂贵，更危险的玩具。”对于美国总统来说，确实如此。也许是因为这些天大多数人读书不多。特朗普总统以不喜欢读书而闻名。这种品质有助于将他卖给美国大众，因为大多数美国人也不喜欢阅读很多东西。

Also see: <https://theconversation.com/the-math-behind-trumps-tweets-100314>

Questions – Food for Thought 问题—值得深思

Which is better, Tweeter or WeChat? Why?

高音扬声器还是微信哪个更好？为什么？

Based on the word counts on Twitter, are American communications getting more detailed, or less?

根据 Twitter 上的字数统计，是美国通讯变得更加详细还是更少？

Who is driving the international arms race, and why?

谁在推动国际军备竞赛，为什么？

What are some things that makes getting objective information on the internet difficult?

<https://www.eff.org/issues/shadow-regulation>

哪些因素使在互联网上获取客观信息变得困难？

Where do you read news, and why? Do you ever read news in English? Why or why not?

您在哪里阅读新闻，为什么？您是否曾经用英语阅读新闻？为什么或者为什么不？

Incidentally I live in China and regularly use WeChat. I occasionally make “posts,” which can include writing, photos and videos. I haven’t noticed if there is any word limit. Why is there a word limit on Twitter?

顺便说一句，我住在中国，经常使用微信。我偶尔会发一些“帖子”，包括写作、照片和视频。我没注意到有没有字数限制。为什么 Twitter 上有字数限制？

Mainstream Media (MSM) and “Alternative News” 主流媒体（MSM）与“替代新闻”

Maybe another reason so many people don’t like to read much is they know the American mainstream media isn’t telling the truth most of the time. So why bother reading the news?

许多人不喜欢阅读很多东西的另一个原因可能是他们知道美国主流媒体大多数时候都没有讲真话。那么，为什么还要花时间阅读新闻呢？

If one has to have some idea of what’s really going on, and one knows they are being lied to, its easier to just watch those lies on TV, rather than make an effort to read those lies in a newspaper.

如果您对实际情况有所了解，并且知道主流媒体的谎言，那么在电视上观看这些谎言会比在报纸上阅读这些谎言更容易。

Mainstream Media (MSM) usually refers to corporate controlled media. When it comes to news, MSM news includes CNN, major TV network news like CBS, NBC, ABC, Fox, and newspapers like USA Today, New York Times, Washington Post, USA Today, and so on.

主流媒体（MSM）通常指集团的受控媒体。在新闻方面，MSM 新闻包括 CNN，CBS，NBC，ABC，Fox 等主要电视网络新闻，以及《今日美国》，《纽约时报》，《华盛顿邮报》，《今日美国》等报纸。

集团 jítuán - group / bloc / corporation / conglomerate (Corporations sell shares that are traded on the stock exchange)

Sometimes one or another of them will come up with a great story that tells the truth, or at least part of the truth. It may not give the complete context, but some truth.

有时他们中的一个或另一个会想出一个伟大的故事，讲一个真相，或至少一部分真相。它可能无法提供完整的上下文，但可以提供一些事实。

Major TV news and newspapers from China, Russia and South America often offer quite different perspectives on the news from American MSM. Likewise, from the USA, Europe, and South America one can find small independent online newspapers that are excellent and vastly more honest than MSM.

来自中国，俄罗斯和南美的主要电视新闻和报纸经常对来自美国 MSM 的新闻提出不同的看法。同样，在美国，欧洲和南美，可以找到小型独立的在线报纸，它们比 MSM 优秀而且诚实得多。

This group of more honest news providers can loosely be referred to as the “alternative news.” Alternative news is much more interesting than MSM.

这组比较诚实的新闻提供者可以粗略地称为“替代新闻”。替代新闻比 MSM 有趣得多。

The following is a list of “alternative news” sources I like:

以下是我喜欢的“替代新闻”来源列表：

- <https://www.counterpunch.org>
- <https://www.blackagendareport.com>
- <http://www.globalresearch.ca>
- <https://www.globalsecurity.org>
- <https://www.hrw.org>
- <https://stephenlendman.org/>
- <https://thegrayzone.com/>
- <http://covertactionmagazine.com/>
- <https://rightsanddissent.org/news/category/dissent-newswire/>
- <http://cepr.net/>
- <https://www.telesureenglish.net>
- <https://www.commondreams.org/>
- <https://deepstateblog.org>
- <https://truthout.org>
- <https://afgj.org/>
- <https://www.revealnews.org/>
- <http://www.palestinechronicle.com/>

- <https://www.fort-russ.com/>
- <https://fair.org/>
- <https://reprieve.org.uk/>
- <https://www.foreignpolicyjournal.com>
- <https://www.liberationnews.org>
- <https://www.splcenter.org>
- <https://www.theguardian.com>
- <https://wikileaks.org>
- <http://www.informationclearinghouse.info/>

Good online International news can be found at:

好的中文、俄文和中东在线新闻可以在以下网址找到:

- <http://www.globaltimes.cn/>
- <https://www.chinadaily.com.cn/index.html>
- <https://www.rt.com/>

“Alternative” news sources have legitimate viewpoints that unfortunately most Americans and western Europeans never see, hear or think about. Why? The Fortune 500 companies (biggest 500 corporations) in the USA have the money and technological influence to dominate the media. But that influence does not diminish the objective truths the alternative media illuminates.

“另类”新闻来源有着合法的观点，不幸的是，大多数美国人和西欧人从来没有看到、听到或思考过。为什么？美国《财富》500强企业（最大的500强企业）在资金和技术上都有统治媒体的影响力。但这种影响并没有削弱另类媒体所揭示的客观事实。

Demonizing China 妖魔化中国

Pompeo's anti-China bluff strategy reveals all-or-nothing mentality to fool US voters: Global Times Editorial

蓬佩奥的反华虚张声势策略暴露了愚弄美国选民的全部心态：环球时报社论

Source: Global Times Published: 2020/5/4

During an interview on Sunday, US Secretary of State Mike Pompeo said there was "enormous evidence" the novel coronavirus (COVID-19) originated in a laboratory in Wuhan, China. "Remember, China has a history of infecting the world, and they have a history of running substandard laboratories," Pompeo explained. Once again, the US diplomat and former CIA director has stunned the world with groundless accusations.

在周日的一次采访中，美国国务卿迈克·庞培（Mike Pompeo）说，“确凿证据”是新型冠状病毒（COVID-19）起源于中国武汉的实验室。庞培解释说：“记住，中国有感染世界的历史，也有运行不合格实验室的历史。”美国外交官和前中情局局长再次以毫无根据的指责震惊世界。

Since Pompeo said his claims are supported by "enormous evidence," then he should present this so-called evidence to the world, and especially to the American public who he continually tries to fool. The truth is that Pompeo does not have any evidence, and during Sunday's interview, he was bluffing.

由于庞培说他的主张得到“巨大证据”的支持，因此他应该向全世界，尤其是向美国公众展示这种所谓的证据。庞培试图愚弄美国公众。事实是庞培没有任何证据，在周日的采访中，他在虚张声势。

The Trump administration continues to engage in unprecedented propaganda warfare while trying to impede global efforts in fighting the COVID-19 pandemic. The most urgent tasks for international communities are to prevent the virus from spreading and to save lives while restarting the world economy. Ironically, Washington has put forth the weakest efforts in accomplishing the aforementioned tasks. As the US presidential election campaigns are underway, the Trump administration has implemented a strategy designed to divert attention from the incompetence it has displayed in fighting the pandemic. It is clear that their goal is to blame China for the pandemic by pinpointing the country as the source of COVID-19.

特朗普政府继续进行史无前例的宣传战，同时试图阻止全球为打击 COVID-19 大流行所做的努力。国际社会最紧迫的任务是在重新启动世界经济的同时，防止病毒传播并挽救生命。具有讽刺意味的是，华盛顿为完成上述任务付出了最薄弱的努力。随着美国总统大选活动的进行，特朗普政府实施了一项旨在将注意力从对抗大流行的无能中转移注意力的战略。显然，他们的目标是通过指出该国是 COVID-19 的来源而将这次大流行归咎于中国。

The origin of the virus is of serious scientific concern. So far, not one world-renowned scientist has accused the Wuhan Institute of Virology of leaking the virus. US intelligence agencies, acting on orders from US President Donald Trump, have been involved with the investigation. Pompeo has recently declared that he has "enormous evidence" about a so-called "lab leak." As a result, what was originally a scientific question, has been transformed into a vicious attack fueled by politics, intelligence, and diplomacy. Such filthy behavior defies the essence of science to mislead the general public.

该病毒的来源受到严重的科学关注。到目前为止，还没有一位世界著名的科学家指责武汉病毒研究所泄漏了这种病毒。根据美国总统唐纳德·特朗普的命令，美国情报机构已参与调查。庞培最近宣布他拥有所谓的“实验室泄漏”的“大量证据”。结果，原本是科学问题的问题已转变为政治，情报和外交所发动的恶性攻击。这种肮脏的行为违背了科学的本质，误导了公众。

If Washington has solid evidence, then it should let research institutes and scientists examine and verify it. Another option would be to have intelligence agencies release a detailed report on the origin of the virus, which would help the White House keep its fabrications moving forward. Washington has chosen not to pursue either of those options and instead is utilizing a politician like Pompeo to bluff US society with so-called "enormous evidence."

如果华盛顿有确凿的证据，那么它应该让研究机构和科学家对其进行检查和验证。另一种选择是让情报机构发布有关病毒起源的详细报告，这将有助于白宫保持其制造前进的步伐。华盛顿选择不采取任何一种选择，而是利用庞培等政客用所谓的“巨大证据”虚张声势美国社会。

By sacrificing his credibility as a politician, Pompeo is doing whatever he can to secure a victory for Trump and the Republicans in November...

通过牺牲自己作为政客的信誉，庞培正在竭尽全力确保特朗普和共和党人在 11 月取得胜利。

<https://www.globaltimes.cn/content/1187359.shtml>

Ivy League Universities and Deception 阅读练习：常春藤盟校与欺骗

Two years ago (2017), a book titled *Spy Schools: How the CIA, FBI and Foreign Intelligence Secretly Exploit America's Universities* (Henry Holt and Company) was published.

One reviewer summarized parts as follows:

两年前（2017 年），出版了一本名为《间谍学校：中央情报局，联邦调查局和外国情报如何秘密利用美国的大学（亨利·霍尔特和亨利）的书》。

一位审阅者总结了以下部分：

Perhaps the most prestigious institution Golden examines is Harvard University, probing its cozy relationship with the CIA...

也许戈尔登先生研究的最负盛名的机构是哈佛大学，探讨了它与中央情报局之间的舒适关系。

The university, which has had varying degrees of closeness and coldness with the CIA over the years, currently allows the agency to send officers to the midcareer program at the Kennedy School of Government while continuing to act undercover, with the school's knowledge. When the officers apply -- often with **fudged credentials** that are part of their CIA cover -- the university doesn't know they're CIA agents, but once they're in, Golden writes, Harvard allows them to tell the university that they're undercover. Their fellow students, however -- often high-profile or soon-to-be-high-profile actors in the world of international diplomacy -- are kept in the dark.

这所大学多年来与中央情报局保持着不同程度的亲密和冷漠，目前允许该机构派遣人员参加肯尼迪政府学院的中期职业计划，同时继续在学校知识范围内采取秘密行动。当军官申请时-通常带有模糊的证书，这是 CIA 封面的一部分-大学不知道他们是 CIA 特工，但是 Golden 写道，一旦他们进入，哈佛大学就允许他们告诉大学，卧底。但是，他们的同学们-在国际外交界经常是知名度很高或即将成为知名度很高的演员-一直处于黑暗之中。

<https://www.insidehighered.com/news/2017/10/03/%E2%80%98spy-schools-how-cia-fbi-and-foreign-intelligence-secretly-exploit-america%E2%80%99s>

Soulcatcher: How the CIA Recruits Assets

灵魂追捕者：中央情报局如何招募资产

Please join the Intelligence Project for a lunch seminar with James C. Lawler who will share a series of vignettes on how intelligence officers recruit human assets; i.e. spies. The seminar will take place in the One Brattle 350 Conference Room.

James C. Lawler was a member of CIA's Senior Intelligence Service (SIS-3) from 1998 until his retirement in 2005...

请加入“情报项目”，与詹姆斯·C·劳勒一起参加午餐研讨会，他将分享一系列有关情报人员如何招募人力资产的短片；即间谍。该研讨会将在 One Brattle 350 会议室举行。

詹姆斯·C·劳勒（James C. Lawler）从 1998 年开始担任 CIA 高级情报服务（SIS-3）的成员，直到 2005 年退休...

<https://www.hks.harvard.edu/events/soulcatcher-how-cia-recruits-assets>

“Over the last couple of years, the Central Intelligence Agency has put out a lot of PR indicating that the agency is interested in recruiting more diverse operatives than ever before. Many have claimed they’re interested in moving away from recruiting Ivy Leaguers in order to create a more diverse and all-inclusive agency. But has the CIA recruited fewer Ivy Leaguers in recent years? Or have they realized that Ivy League schools are some of the most diverse universities in the nation? The fact is, the Ivy League and the CIA remain intimately tied.

“What’s interesting is that the new Director of the Central Intelligence Agency is General George Petraeus, a man who received his PhD from Princeton University. Porter Goss, who served as Director of the CIA from 2004-2005, was a Yale graduate. George Tenet, who served in the same position from 1997-2004, holds a master’s degree from Columbia University. The list goes on and includes President George H.W. Bush, a Yale graduate....”

“在过去的两年中，中央情报局已经发布了很多公关资料，表明该机构有兴趣比以往任何时候都招募更多的特工。许多人声称，他们有兴趣放弃招募常春藤联盟，以创建一个更加多元化和包罗万象的代理机构。但是，中央情报局近年来招募的常春藤盟友减少了吗？还是他们意识到常春藤盟校是美国最多样化的大学之一？事实是，常春藤盟军与中央情报局保持着密切的联系。

“有趣的是，中央情报局的新局长是乔治·彼得雷乌斯将军，他是普林斯顿大学的博士学位。波特·戈斯（Porter Goss）于 2004 年至 2005 年担任中央情报局局长，毕业于耶鲁大学。乔治·特奈特（George Tenet）从 1997 年至 2004 年担任同一职位，并拥有哥伦比亚大学的硕士学位。名单还在继续，其中包括乔治·H·W·总统布什，耶鲁大学毕业生....”

<https://www.ivycoach.com/the-ivy-coach-blog/ivy-league/ivy-league-and-the-cia>

Former CIA Director and current Secretary of State Michael Pompeo received his J.D. (Law Degree) from Harvard Law School, where he was an editor of the Harvard Law Review.

<https://www.whitehouse.gov/people/mike-pompeo>

前中情局局长、现任国务卿蓬佩奥（Michael Pompeo）在哈佛法学院（Harvard Law School）获得法学博士学位，他曾任《哈佛法律评论》（Harvard Law Review）的编辑。

<https://www.whitehouse.gov/people/mike-pompeo>

What’s wrong with the CIA? CIA 有什么问题？

From 1945 to 2003 the United States attempted to overthrow more than 40 foreign governments, and to crush more than 30 populist-nationalist movements fighting against intolerable regimes. In the process the US bombed some 24 countries, caused the end of life for several million people, and condemned many millions more to a life of agony and despair.” (Blum, William, *Killing Hope, U.S. Military and CIA Interventions since World War II*, 2004, Common Courage Press

从 1945 年到 2003 年，美国试图推翻 40 多个外国政府，并镇压 30 多个与不可容忍的政权作斗争的民粹主义运动。在此过程中，美国轰炸了约 24 个国家，使数百万人丧生，并谴责了数百万人的痛苦和绝望。”（百隆，威廉，《杀戮希望》，《自第二次世界大战以来美国军队和中央情报局的干预》，2004 年，普通勇气出版社

It was (incidentally) the CIA that produced the fake evidence of Iraq’s “weapons of mass destruction” that led to the Iraq war. At least two million people were killed in, and as the result of the Iraq War.

正是中情局提供了导致伊拉克战争的伊拉克“大规模杀伤性武器”的假证据。伊拉克战争造成至少 200 万人死亡。

Also see:

<https://theintercept.com/2018/11/19/civilian-casualties-us-war-on-terror>

Ivy League Questions 常春藤联盟的问题

1. In the above article published on www.insidehighered.com, it uses the phrase: “using fudged credentials.”

What do you think the phrase “fudged credentials” means?

- a. Chocolate flavored
- b. Real identities
- c. Fake identities

2. Also, in the www.insidehighered.com article it uses the phrase: “kept in the dark.” What do you think that means?
 - a. Not told/kept secret
 - b. Turns the lights off
 - c. Refuses to change lightbulbs
3. In the article published on www.ivycoach.com it states that “the Ivy League and the CIA remain intimately tied.” What do you think “intimately tied” means?
 - a. They kiss each other a lot.
 - b. They are very, very close.
 - c. They are married.
4. It appears the Ivy League universities:
 - a. permit CIA officers to covertly influence other students,
 - b. teach CIA classes and
 - c. recruit for the CIA on-campus
 - d. a, b, & c
5. According to writer William Blum, from 1945 to 2003 the United States attempted to overthrow more than _____ foreign governments
 - a. 20 b. 30 c. 40 d. 50

Word Focus: Egalitarianism 词汇焦点：平等主义 (名词)

Egalitarian (adjective 形容词)

Colors fade, temples crumble, empires fall, but wise words endure." By Edward Thorndike

“色彩褪去，庙宇崩塌，帝国衰落，但智慧的话语永存。”爱德华·桑代克著

Egalitarianism Definition 定义

A belief in human equality especially with respect to social, political, and economic affairs.

对人类平等的信仰，尤指对社会、政治和经济事务的信仰。

A social philosophy advocating the removal of inequalities among people

提倡消除人与人之间不平等的社会哲学

<https://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/egalitarianism>

Roots of the word “Egalitarian” (adj.) “平等主义”一词的词根（形容词）

From French “égalitaire,” 1881; from Old French “egalite,” equality, from Latin “aequalitatem.” The noun form, “egalitarianism,” is from 1920. 源于 1881 年的法语“égalitaire”；源于古法语“equalite”，源于拉丁语“aequalitatem”。名词形式“equalitarianism”源于 1920 年。

Pronunciation egalitarian 平均主义发音: ɪˌɡælɪˈteɪəriən/

Examples of use 使用示例

Throughout all of history wise people have worked to create a more socially egalitarian society world.

在所有的历史中，聪明的人都致力于创造一个更加社会平等的社会世界

For the oppressed people of the world, the idea of a socially egalitarian society is a beautiful dream. For the rich aristocracy, who are contemptuous of the workers, the idea of a socially egalitarian society is not pleasant.

对于世界上被压迫的人民而言，建立社会平等社会的想法是一个美丽的梦想。对于那些鄙视工人的富裕贵族来说，建立社会平等社会的想法并不令人愉快。

Egalitarianism in the news 新闻中的平均主义

A Group Show at MACAAL, Marrakech, Imagines a More Egalitarian Future

马拉喀什 MACAAL 的群展想象出更加平等的未来

'Have You Seen a Horizon Lately?' feels like a hauntingly apposite question for these dark times,

“您最近看过地平线吗?” 在这些黑暗时期感觉像是一个棘手的问题, By Kito Nedo, 19 May 2020

'Have You Seen a Horizon Lately?' opened at Museum of African Contemporary Art Al Maaden (MACAAL) in the last week of February, just before the first case of COVID-19 was announced in Morocco. Curated by Marie-Ann Yemsi, it features the work of 12 international artists who engage with the oneiric and subconscious to address questions of culture and politics in a world increasingly accustomed to the state of emergency.

月的最后一周，在摩洛哥宣布第一例 COVID-19 之前，“最近是否看到地平线？”在非洲当代艺术博物馆 Al Maaden (MACAAL) 开幕。它由玛丽·安·耶姆西 (Marie-Ann Yemsi) 策展，以 12 位国际艺术家的作品为特色，这些艺术家与讽刺和潜意识交往，以解决这个日益习惯于紧急状态的世界中的文化和政治问题。

With many longstanding issues – such as environmental destruction and climate change, racism and social injustice – brought into even sharper relief by the pandemic, the curatorial point of departure cited by Yemsi in her catalogue essay retains its relevance. 'The battle for the transformation of ecosystems seems inseparable from a collective project of social reform, as the only way out of a crisis of civilization,' she writes...

由于流行病使环境破坏和气候变化，种族主义和社会不公正等许多长期问题得到了进一步缓解，因此，叶姆西在其目录论文中提到的策展出发点仍然具有现实意义。她写道：“生态系统转型之战似乎与集体社会改革计划密不可分，这是摆脱文明危机的唯一途径。”

<https://frieze.com/article/group-show-macaal-marrakech-imagines-more-egalitarian-future>

Challenge! 挑战!

Make sentences using the words: egalitarian (adj.) and egalitarianism (noun). Can you make one sentence using both words?

用“egalitarian”（形容词）和“egalitarianism”（名词）这两个词来造句。您可以同时使用两个词来造一个句子吗？

Debate! 辩论!

What is the probability that the long-term effects of the COVID-19 pandemic will result in a more socially egalitarian global society?

COVID-19 大流行病的长期影响将导致一个更加社会平等的全球社会，这种可能性有多大？

Chapter 2 Writing and Speaking English 第二章英语写作与口语

Most of this chapter is about writing with the emphasis on how to organize ideas in a way that will be clearly understood. All the same guidelines apply to speaking.

这一章的大部分内容都是关于写作的，重点是如何以一种可以清楚理解的方式组织思想。所有的指导原则都适用于演讲。

Why Do People Write? 人们为什么写作?

Please write some answers here: 请在这里写一些答案:

People usually write to attain some goal (an essay for class, or a letter requesting admittance to a university) or solve a problem (letter, speech, or news article).

人们通常写作以达到某个目标（课堂论文或要求入学的信件）或解决问题（信件，演讲或新闻文章）。

I write primarily for the purpose of advocacy, to bring attention to areas that need change. I like to give a voice to the voiceless, and ensure that some measure of justice shines brightly around the world.

我主要是为了倡导写作，以引起对需要改变的领域的关注。我喜欢为无声音的人表达声音，并确保某种程度的正义在世界各地闪耀。

Sometimes people write just to express and/or share feelings, like in a journal, or in the form of poetry, and/or song lyrics. Sometimes people write to remember, sometimes to teach, and so on. There are an infinite number of reasons for writing.

有时人们只是为了表达和/或分享情感而写作，例如在日记本中，以诗歌和/或歌曲歌词的形式。有时人们写来记住，有时去教，等等。有无数的写作理由。

Shakespeare wrote: "The problem my dear Horatio is not in the stars, but in ourselves."

莎士比亚写道：“亲爱的霍雷肖，问题不在于星星，而在于我们自己。”

Writing can help us take our destiny into our own hands. With writing we can attain our goals and dreams and, solve most of our problems ourselves.

写作可以帮助我们掌握自己的命运。有了写作，我们可以实现我们的目标和梦想，并解决我们自己的大部分问题。

This is original writing that comes from inside. It can never be copied. The reader will always know the difference.

这是来自内心的原创作品。它永远不会被复制。读者将永远知道两者的区别。

Good writing - powerful writing is artistic expression and it **has soul, feeling, and meaning from a specific individual or group and directed towards a specific audience**. There is no science of good writing. No computer can do it.

好的写作-强有力的写作是艺术表现，它有灵魂，感觉和意义，从一个特定的个人或群体，并针对特定的观众。好的写作没有科学可言。没有电脑能做到。

Start and Keep a Journal 开始并保留日记

A journal can provide a lot of information about yourself that will enlighten you over time. It's like an emotional/intellectual mirror. A day, week, month, year, five years, 10 years later when you read something you wrote you may understand it differently. Writing is a bit like a painting or a photograph. It is interpreted differently by different people and over time.

日记可以提供很多关于你自己的信息，这些信息会随着时间的推移而启发你。就像一面情感/智力的镜子。一天、一周、一个月、一年、五年、十年后，当你读到你写的东西时，你可能会有不同的理解。写作有点像绘画或照片。随着时间的推移，不同的人对它的解释也不同。

Keeping a journal also helps smooth out the process of taking ideas from inside your head and getting them on paper (or on a computer). Writing down what you can remember from your dreams is also a fascination exercise and very useful to learn about yourself. Those dreams are also great sources for very creative writing.

写日记也有助于理顺从大脑内部获取想法并将其写在纸上（或电脑上）的过程。写下你能从梦中记起的东西也是一种魅力练习，对了解自己非常有用。这些梦想也是非常有创意的写作的伟大源泉。

Too many of us live unexamined lives. Diaries and journals help us leap the gap (跳缺口) between being a hopeless dreamer and a great writer.

我们中有太多人过着未经检查的生活。日记帮助我们跨越了无望的梦想家和伟大作家之间的鸿沟。

Life is about discovery and recording that process is a tool for enlightenment. Start simply. Just record events. Then add feelings, hopes and dreams. Your diary can become your best friend.

生活就是探索。记录这个过程是开悟的工具。简单地开始。只需记录事件。然后加入感情、希望和梦想。你的日记可以成为你最好的朋友。

Writing Essays, Articles and Speeches 写作散文、文章和演讲

If you have a goal or a problem, probably you're not the only one. You might want or need to do research. But, before you research you should write down your own ideas and maybe an outline. Why? You don't want own ideas to get lost in sea of other people's ideas. You might be surprised. Some of your ideas may be better! Don't lose them.

如果你有一个目标或问题，也许你不是唯一的一个。你可能想要或者需要做研究。但是，在你研究之前，你应该写下你自己的想法，也许还有一个提纲。为什么？你不希望自己的想法迷失在别人的想法的海洋里。你可能会惊讶。你的一些想法可能更好！不要失去他们。

Then you should do some research to find out what other people have written to attain that goal or solve that problem. After that, your job begins. Maybe you learned some things and need to revise your original ideas. Maybe not!

然后，您应该进行一些研究，找出其他人为实现该目标或解决该问题所写的内容。之后，您的工作开始了。也许您学到了一些东西，并且需要修改您的原始想法。也许不会！

If you want to use other people's ideas, that's fine, but give them credit. Those will be your references. There's nothing wrong with using other people's ideas if they help you solve your problem or attain your goal. But, be sure to write down the sources where you got those ideas.

如果您想使用其他人的想法，那很好，但请给他们荣誉。这些将是您的参考。如果其他人的想法可以帮助您解决问题或实现目标，那么使用他们的想法就没有错。但是，请务必写下获得这些想法的来源。

If you don't write down the sources of your outside information, that is plagiarism. Plagiarism cheats the people you took ideas from. Plagiarism is cheating yourself. Plagiarism also cheats the readers. Writing can be like a pyramid, and most of the building blocks can be from other sources (outside yourself). That's fine, as long as you give those other sources credit, and the overall design, structure and solutions are your own.

如果你不写下你外部信息的来源，那就是剽窃。剽窃欺骗了你从别人那里获取想法的人。剽窃就是欺骗自己。抄袭也欺骗了读者。写作可以像金字塔一样，而且大多数构建块可以来自其他来源（你自己以外）。这很好，只要你给那些其他来源的信用，而且，整体设计，结构和解决方案都是你自己的。

There's an old joke: Plagiarism is when you steal from one source, research is when you steal from many sources. Ha, ha, ha. That's almost true. It's only legitimate research if you give credit in your paper to the other people's ideas. Then, it can be brilliant research!

有一个古老的笑话：剽窃是指你从一个来源剽窃，研究是指你从许多来源剽窃。哈，哈，哈。几乎是真的。如果你在论文中把别人的想法归功于别人，这才是合法的研究。那么，它可以是一个辉煌的研究！

You can't copy their words except as quotes. Quotes need "quotation marks," and a reference.

如果您需要复制其他作者的确切字词，可以，但是您必须使用“引号”。据布鲁教授说，“只有白痴才能模仿别人的著作！”“但是，”他补充说，“如果您使用引号和引文也可以！”

But you can copy other people's style of writing. Essays, speeches and scientific writing all use different styles of writing. Over time you will develop your own unique style of writing.

但是您可以复制他人的写作风格。论文，演讲，科学著作等都使用不同的风格。这是学习成为多才多艺的作家的过程的一部分。随着时间的推移，您将发展自己的独特风格。

This is part of the process of learning to be a versatile writer.

这是学习成为多才多艺的作家的过程的一部分。

Writing can be simple self-expression, and/or it can be the lever you need to make your dreams come true.

写作可以是简单的自我表达，并且/或者可以成为实现梦想所需的杠杆。

Writing and Memory 写作与记忆

When writing started to become popular in ancient Greece some people objected strongly to it. “When people start writing they’ll lose their memories!” pundits sternly warned. There may be some truth in that. People used to memorize whole books; people in ancient times had amazing memories. Now-a-days the mass media has shortened our attention span so much we find it difficult to concentrate for more than a few moments on anything.

当文字开始在古希腊流行时，一些人强烈反对它。“人们开始写作时，他们会失去记忆！”权威人士严厉警告。可能有些道理。人们过去常常背诵整本书；远古时代的人们有着惊人的回忆。如今，大众媒体缩短了我们的关注范围，以至于我们发现很难集中精力进行任何事情。

Newspaper and magazine stories are getting shorter and shorter. Depth and detail in writing are increasingly lost in the competitive marketplace of ideas. The very short populist sentences on Tweeter have replaced more meaningful communications. It seems everything today is short and dramatic, even if 90% of it is lies.

报纸和杂志的故事越来越短。在竞争激烈的创意市场中，写作的深度和细节越来越丢失。高音扬声器上极短的民粹主义句子取代了更有意义的交流。即使 90% 都是谎言，今天的一切似乎都是短暂而戏剧性的。

A More Detailed History of Writing 写作史的概要

Writing is very ancient indeed! 写作确实很古老！

So many books and articles about history and literature claim the Greeks invented everything.

太多关于历史和文学的书籍和文章声称希腊人发明了一切。

Immanuel Kant (1724–1804) and Toxic Sophistry 伊曼纽尔·康德和有毒的诡辩

Words and writing can be used for so many great and terrible things.

Immanuel Kant was a renaissance philosopher who is still worshipped today by many western philosophers. He expounds on abstract concepts of mind and ethics, but under all that sophistry is a tiny mind and no morality. This could partly be due to the fact that he never traveled and obviously had very limited experience upon which to expound his “great” philosophies.

文字和文字可以用于很多伟大而可怕的事情。

伊曼纽尔·康德（Immanuel Kant）是一位文艺复兴时期的哲学家，今天仍然被许多西方哲学家所崇拜。他阐述了思想和道德的抽象概念，但在所有诡辩之下，思想都是狭 tiny 的，没有道德。这可能部分是由于他从未旅行过，并且显然缺乏丰富的经验来阐述他的“伟大”哲学。

Decolonizing the Department: Peter K. J. Park and the Profession of Philosophy, by Lean Kalmanson, Drake University

从大学系中剔除“殖民化”：彼得·J·帕克（Peter K. J. Park）和哲学专业，德雷克大学的莉亚·卡尔曼森

Park elaborates that these statements include Kant’s conviction that no African person has ever made any artistic or scientific achievements, and that black skin color is proof of stupidity.

帕克强调说，这些言论包括康德的信念，即非洲人从未取得过任何艺术或科学成就，黑色肤色证明了自己的愚蠢。

In Park's words, "Kant taught that the Hindu race did not develop philosophy because they did not have that capacity. In his anthropology lectures, Kant explicitly attributes this lack not to the form of government or customs of the Asians, but to their descent (*Abstammung*).

用帕克的话说：“康德教导印度教种族没有发展哲学，因为他们没有这种能力。康德在人类学讲座中明确指出，这种缺乏不仅仅归因于亚洲人的政府形式或风俗习惯，还归因于他们的血统（*Abstammung*）...”

Kant taught his students that it was the other way around. It is race that determines the form of government and the customs." In other words, for Kant, it is no accident of history that philosophy only exists in Europe. Rather, white Europeans are the only people to have developed philosophy, while all non-white people lack philosophy, because of their inherent characteristics as members of different races. Park's final remark in the fourth chapter holds that Kant was a central figure responsible for shaping the "modern scientific discourse of race" and for "the exclusion of Africa and Asia from the history of philosophy and for rising Eurocentrism in the discipline."

康德教导他的学生相反。种族决定了政府和习俗的形式。”换句话说，对康德来说，哲学只存在于欧洲并非偶然。相反，白人欧洲人是唯一拥有发展哲学的人，而所有非白人都缺乏哲学，因为他们作为不同种族成员的内在特征。帕克在第四章中的最后一句话认为，康德是负责塑造“现代种族科学话语”和“将非洲和亚洲排除在哲学史之外，并在该学科中崛起的欧洲中心主义”的核心人物。

Journal of World Philosophies 2 (Winter 2017): 48–81 (Downloaded from www.academia.edu May 29, 2020)

世界哲学杂志 2（2017 年冬季）：48-81（从www.academia.edu 下载，2020 年 5 月 29 日）

Also see: 另请参阅：

How science has been abused through the ages to promote racism, November 20, 2015 滥用科学通过历史促进种族主义，2015 年 11 月 20 日

<https://theconversation.com/how-science-has-been-abused-through-the-ages-to-promote-racism-50629>

Similarly, I have found many articles and Internet sites claim Italians invented diplomacy. In contrast to these ethnocentric fake histories, writing, literature, law and diplomacy are vastly older than western civilization.

同样，我发现许多文章，并且互联网站点声称意大利人发明了外交手段。与这些以民族为中心的错误历史形成对照，写作，文学，法律和外交远比西方文明古老。

Early Bronze Age 3rd Millennium BC 早青铜时代公元前 3 千年

The earliest written literature dates from about 2600 BC (classical Sumerian). The earliest literary author known by name is Enheduanna, dating to ca. the 24th century BC. That's 4,400 + years ago!

最早的书面文献可追溯到公元前 2600 年（苏美尔人）。已知最早的文学作家是恩赫杜安娜，大约在公元前 24 世纪。那是 4400 多年前的事了！

2600 BCE Sumerian texts from Abu Salabikh, including the Instructions of Shuruppak and the Kesh temple hymn

公元前 2600 年，阿布·萨拉比赫（Abu Salabikh）的苏美尔文字，包括舒鲁帕克的训令和“格什”圣诗赞美诗

2400 BCE Egyptian Pyramid Texts, including the Cannibal Hymn

公元前 2400 年埃及金字塔文字，包括食人圣诗

<http://www.sofiatopia.org/maat/cannibal.htm>

2400 BCE Sumerian Code of Urukagina 公元前 2400 年乌鲁卡吉纳苏美尔法典

2250-2000 BCE Sumerian Earliest stories in the Epic of Gilgamesh 公元前 2250-2000 年吉尔伽美什史诗中的苏美尔人早期故事

Newer versions can be downloaded from 可以从以下位置下载较新的版本：

<https://uruk-warka.dk/Gilgamish/The%20Epic%20of%20Gilgamesh.pdf>

2100 BCE Sumerian Debate between Bird and Fish 公元前 2100 年苏美尔人关于鸟与鱼的辩论

2000 BCE Egyptian Coffin Texts 公元前 2000 年埃及棺材文本

And so on. There are many more. 等等。还有更多。

Middle Bronze Age: 2000 - 1600 BCE 青铜时代中期：公元前 2000-1600 年

2000-1900 BCE Egyptian Tale of the Shipwrecked Sailor 公元前 2000-1900 年沉船水手的埃及故事

1950 BCE Akkadian Laws of Eshnunna 公元前 1950 年的埃什纳纳阿卡德法律

1900 BCE Akkadian Epic of Gilgamesh 公元前 1900 年 Akkadian 吉尔伽美什史诗

1859-1840 BCE Egyptian The Eloquent Peasant 公元前 1859 年至 1840 年埃及雄辩农民

And many, many more exciting stories, legends, laws, etc! 还有许多其他令人兴奋的故事，传说，法律等！

The Code of Hammurabi 汉谟拉比法典

One of my favorite documents of ancient law is the Code of Hammurabi. 我最喜欢的古代法律文件之一是《汉谟拉比法典》

“The Code of Hammurabi is a splendidly preserved Babylonian code of law from ancient Mesopotamia written in about 1754 BC. The sixth Babylonian king, Hammurabi, created the code. There are punishments designed for different classes of people (slaves and free people) and the laws often used reciprocal punishments like “an eye for an eye, a tooth for a tooth.”

汉谟拉比法典是保存完好的古代美索不达米亚巴比伦法典，可追溯到公元前1754年左右。它是世界上最古老、最长的著作之一。巴比伦第六任国王汉谟拉比制定了该法典，部分副本存在于2.25米（7.5英尺）的石碑上，由282条法律组成，其中包括按比例惩罚，调整“以眼还眼，以牙还牙”的惩罚，根据社会地位的不同，以不同的方式适用，即奴隶对自由男女的惩罚

It's really a collection of laws, but King Hammurabi starts with a marvelous introduction to himself and his motivation for writing those laws. Though King Hammurabi could not read or write, he was certainly super-powerful! Here is a short part of his introduction to himself:

这确实是一个法律的集合，但汉谟拉比国王从一个奇妙的自我介绍和他写这些法律的动机开始。尽管汉谟拉比国王不会读也不会写，但他确实是超级强大的！以下是他自我介绍的一小部分：

“When Anu the Sublime, King of the Anunaki, and Bel, the lord of Heaven and earth, who decreed the fate of the land, assigned to Marduk, the over ruling son of Ea, God of righteousness, dominion over earthly man, and made him great among the Igigi, they called Babylon by his illustrious name, made it great on earth, and founded an everlasting kingdom in it, whose foundations are laid so solidly as those of heaven and earth; then Anu and Bel called by name me, Hammurabi, the exalted prince, who feared God, to bring about the rule of righteousness in the land, to destroy the wicked and the evil-doers; so that the strong should not harm the weak; so that I should rule like Shamash, and enlighten the land, to further the well-being of mankind...

“When Marduk sent me to rule over men, to give the protection of right to the land, I did right and righteousness, and brought about the well-being of the oppressed.”

“当阿努纳基国王崇高的阿奴和决定这片土地命运的天地之主贝尔，被指派给以亚的统治之子，公义之神马尔杜克，统治地球人，使他在伊吉人中成为伟人时，他们以他显赫的名字称巴比伦，使它在地球上成为伟人，又在其中建立了一个永远的国，根基坚固如天地的根基。那时，阿奴和贝尔给我起名叫汉谟拉比，就是敬畏神的尊贵王子，要在地上施行公义的律例，除灭恶人和作恶的，免得强者害弱者；所以我要像沙玛什一样统治，启迪大地，促进人类的福祉...

马杜克差遣我治理人，保护那地的权柄，我就行公义，使受欺压的人得福

<http://www.general-intelligence.com/library/hr.pdf>

This is very good. He saw himself as appointed by the gods to protect the weak from the strong and bring justice to the land. It's quite beautiful in fact.

这是非常好的。他认为自己是众神任命的，目的是保护弱者免受强者侵害，并为大地带来正义。其实很漂亮。

Ancient Chinese and Greek Writing and Literature 中国古代文学与希腊文学

Some of the oldest Chinese classical writing date back to the Iron Age:

一些最古老的中国古典文学可以追溯到铁器时代:

1000 BCE -600 BCE Chinese Classic of Poetry (Shījīng), Classic of Documents (Shūjīng) (authentic portions), Classic of Changes (I Ching).

公元前 1000 年至公元前 600 年中国诗歌经典（诗经），文献经典（正宗部分），易经（易经）。

Greek classic literature didn't really get going until about the 8th Century BC; it included the Greek Trojan War cycle, including the Iliad and the Odyssey

希腊古典文学直到公元前 8 世纪才真正开始；它包括希腊特洛伊战争周期，包括伊利亚特和奥德赛

So, history teachers that make it appear as if the Greeks invented everything are wrong. So, it's wrong for history teachers to think that the Greeks invented everything.

“Ancient Writing” Summary 《古代写作》小结

Simply put, most ancient writings were religious, legal texts and the legends of great heroes which makes sense as those were and are the foundations of a culture and society. They helped keep the peace by upholding justice.

简单地说，大多数古代著作都是宗教、法律文本和伟大英雄的传说，这些都是有意义的，是文化和社会的基础。他们通过维护正义来维护和平。

(President Trump and Michael Pompeo probably don't know it, but they are trying to erase at least 4,600 years of civilization by bringing back “the law of the jungle.”)

（特朗普总统和迈克尔·蓬佩奥可能不知道，但他们试图通过带回“丛林法则”来抹去至少 4600 年的文明。）

The greatest setbacks in the history of writing were undoubtedly at the hands of the Romans. For example, Julius Caesar burned the entire Library of Alexandria in Egypt in 48 BCE. It was the greatest library in ancient history! This happened supposedly by accident if one can believe what Plutarch wrote in his classic book: “Life of Caesar.”

There are several reasons I doubt Plutarch's histories. Plutarch was a fan of Caesar, and thus might indulge in some historical revisionism. Second, I'm not a fan of world conquerors in general. Third, I also read Suetonius' “The Twelve Caesars,” and though in many ways Caesar was a just leader, he made some serious mistakes like accepting a lifetime dictatorship, and his golden throne was really too much.

我怀疑普鲁塔克的历史有几个原因。普鲁塔克是凯撒的粉丝，因此可能会沉迷于一些历史修正主义。第二，我不喜欢世界征服者。第三，我也读过苏埃托尼乌斯的《十二个凯撒》，尽管凯撒在很多方面是一个公正的领袖，但他犯了一些严重的错误，比如接受了终身独裁，他的金王位显示了自我膨胀。

And then there was Emperor Constantine who sent his armies out to destroy as much of the learning of the ancient world as they possibly could.

<https://www.rassias.gr/9011.html>

写作史上最大的挫折无疑是在罗马人手中。例如，凯撒大帝在公元前 48 年烧毁了埃及亚历山大图书馆。它是古代历史上最伟大的图书馆！如果人们能够相信普鲁塔克在他的经典著作《凯撒的一生》中所写的话，那么这可能是偶然的。然后，康斯坦丁皇帝派遣他的军队尽可能地摧毁对古代世界的了解。

见：<https://www.rassias.gr/9011.html>

Contemporary Writing 当代写作

In contrast to the writings of the ancients, most writing today is very trivial.

与古人的作品相比，今天的大多数作品都是非常琐碎的。

Common Attitudes Towards Writing 对写作的共同态度

“It’s so difficult!” I can’t do it! I hate writing! “太难了！”“我做不到！我讨厌写作！”

Oh yeah? Ha! It’s surprise time.

Writing is a lot easier than you think if you keep a few simple formats (structures/designs) in mind.

如果你能记住一些简单的格式（结构/设计），那么写作比你想象的要容易得多。

First of course you need an idea, but we all have ideas, mostly we lack the confidence to try to write about our ideas. So, toughen up! Do some push-ups or something!

首先你当然需要一个主意，但我们都有主意。大多数情况下，我们缺乏写自己想法的信心。所以，坚强起来！做俯卧撑什么的！

Second, the structure you use is equally important to your ideas.

其次，你使用的结构对你的想法同样重要。

You may have great ideas, but if you can’t communicate them well, people will not understand you.

您可能有很好的主意，但是如果您无法很好地传达它们，人们将不会理解您。

Good writing is simple. Good writing is powerful. Good writing can and has many times changed the world.

好的写作很简单。好的写作是有力的。好的写作可以而且已经多次改变了世界。

Would you like to be super-powerful?

您想成为超级强者吗？

Believe it or not, the secrets to becoming super-powerful are all here in this nice short story about writing. “I believe I can fly...!”

信不信由你，成为超级强人的秘密就在这个关于写作的简短故事中。“我相信我能飞...！”

Beginner Formats - 初学者格式

Chronological Narrative 时间叙事

I woke up. I ate breakfast. I watched TV. I went outside...

我醒了。我吃了早餐。我看电视了。我去外面了

Chronological Narrative with Sequence Words: 在时间叙事中使用顺序词

First, I woke up. Then I ate breakfast. After that I watched TV.

首先，我醒了。然后我吃了早餐。之后，我看了电视。

Putting it Together and Adding Detail 放在一起并添加细节

After waking up, I ate a delicious breakfast of oatmeal and watched a documentary on TV. 醒来后，我吃了美味的燕麦片早餐，并看了电视上的纪录片。

Simple Description 简单描述

It's a painting of the countryside. There is a lot of grass and an old wooden fence. There are clouds in the sky. There is a girl.

这是一幅乡村画。有很多草和一个古老的木栅栏。天上有云。有一个女孩。

Simple Description with Some Details (adjectives) and Interpretation

简单描述，带有一些细节（形容词）和解释

It's a lovely oil painting of the countryside. There is a lot of long green grass and an old dried out wooden fence. There's a girl there wearing a simple country dress. She looks lonely.

这是一幅可爱的乡村油画。有很多长长的绿草和一个干 and 的旧木栅栏。那里有个女孩穿着朴素的乡村服饰。她看起来很寂寞。

Level 1 - Intermediate Basic Writing Format 一级-最基本的写作格式

A simple, clear structure helps you communicate well. The following is not the most exciting style of writing, but it is often the best format because it's clear, simple, easy to write and understand.

TITLE or HEADLINE

Name

Paragraph 1. Introduction = Main Idea = Thesis Statement 第 1 段：引言=主要思想=论文陈述

Paragraph 2. Subtopic 1 第 2 款，子话题 1

Details → Examples 细节/示例

Paragraph 3. Subtopic 2 第 3 款，子话题 2

Details → Examples 细节/示例

Paragraph 4. Subtopic 3 第 4 款，子话题 3

Details → Examples 细节/示例

Paragraph 5. Conclusion (Main idea again; string together subtopics in one or two sentences.) 第 5 段
。结论（又是主旨；用一两句话把话题串起来。）

Good writing is mainly about 1) having something useful to say, and 2) how you format/structure/organize your ideas to communicate them in the most effective way possible – for your target audience.

好的写作主要是关于 1) 说些有用的话, 以及 2) 如何格式化/组织/组织您的想法, 以便以尽可能有效的方式传达给目标受众。

The Introduction

The Introduction is a bird's eye view of your story, something to prepare the reader/audience to your topic. In an essay or speech, it's usually a summary, showing the relevance of your story, and where you will go with it. It's a front door. Its style should reflect the inside of the building. Clean simple and modern, or maybe gothic: elaborate, ornate, and possibly spooky!

导言是对你的故事的鸟瞰, 是让读者/观众对你的主题有所准备的东西。在一篇文章或演讲中, 它通常是一个总结, 显示你的故事的相关性, 以及你将要去哪里。是前门。它的风格应该反映建筑物的内部。简洁、现代, 或者哥特式: 精致、华丽, 甚至有点吓人!

The Hook 钩子

For some kinds of commercial writing, especially feature news writing and maybe a speech, you'll use a "hook" or attention-grabbing first sentence to entrance the reader and keep them reading.

对于某些类型的商业写作, 特别是专题新闻写作和演讲, 你会用一个“钩子”或引人注意的第一句话来吸引读者并让他们继续阅读。

Main topics and subtopics 主要主题和子话题

These are natural divisions of a story. They are the bones. Details and examples fill in the story. They give it substance, like muscle and skin, a heart and mind, clothing, even makeup or a gleam in the eyes!

这些是故事的自然划分。他们是骨头。详细信息和示例填充了故事。它们赋予它实质性的物质, 例如肌肉和皮肤, 心脏和思想, 衣服, 甚至是化妆品或眼睛中的微光!

Conclusions 结论

The conclusion wraps everything up, puts all you've written together in one, two or a few short simple sentences. It makes everything clear and easy to understand. The conclusions are a tight, attractive package of your work. At the end of the conclusions (in some kinds of writing) you can ask a question about the future, suggest further work, or changes that need to be made in some system or the world.

结论将您撰写的所有内容汇总为一个, 两个或几个简短的简单句子。它使所有内容清晰易懂。结论是您工作中紧凑而诱人的一揽子计划。在结论的结尾(用某种形式的写作), 您可以提出有关未来的问题, 建议进一步的工作, 或建议(或要求)在某些系统或世界中需要进行的更改。

Student Writing Challenge

Topics for class discussion/writing 课堂练习主题

Write a simple essay using the above Basic Writing Format. Below are some possible topics. 使用上述基本写作格式写一篇简单的文章。以下是一些可能的主题。

Pros and cons of: 优点和缺点:

1. Having a pet
2. Having a boy or girl friend
3. Going to a foreign university
4. Getting a tattoo
5. Skipping classes
6. Playing games during class
7. The Alt-right
8. ANTIFA (Anti-fascist political movement)
9. Anarchists
10. Black Lives Matter (BLM political movement in the USA)
11. All Lives Matter (Political movement in the USA)
12. WOKE political movement

1. 养宠物
2. 有男朋友或女友
3. 去外国大学
4. 纹身
5. 跳过课程
6. 上课时玩游戏
7. 右翼
8. 反法西斯”（反法西斯）
9. 无政府主义者
10. 黑人的生命很重要
11. 所有生命都很重要
12. 觉醒的政治运动

More advanced topics

1. Advantages and disadvantages of Francafrique in Africa from the perspectives of the French and indigenous people

2. The USA has played the role of the world's policeman since WWII. At this time people are seriously questioning if the USA has been doing a good job; What alternative world power structures might be better?

1.从法国和土著人民的角度看非洲法语国家的利弊

2.自第二次世界大战以来，美国一直扮演着世界警察的角色。目前，人们在认真地地质疑美国是否做得很好，以及什么样的替代世界力量结构可能更好？

Practice Question 练习题

Can you reproduce the above Intermediate basic format from memory?

The six major parts of a simple clear format are: Title, main idea, subtopics followed by details examples and a conclusion.

FOR A LONGER ESSAY, ARTICLE, SPEECH, FORMAL LETTER

对于更长的文章，文章，语音，正式信件

The above simple format can be easily expanded by adding more subtopics, and increasing the detail or number of details and examples.

You can easily write a 10,000-word essay, letter or article using this structure. It's amazing!

...but not too exciting.

More exciting style formats can be used especially for writing speeches, stories (e.g. screenplay for a movie), music and/or great literature.

通过添加更多子主题，并增加详细信息或详细信息和示例的数量，可以轻松扩展上述简单格式。

使用这种结构，您可以轻松编写 10,000 字的文章，信件或文章！太奇妙了！

...但不太令人兴奋。

可以使用更令人兴奋的样式格式，特别是用于撰写演讲，故事（例如电影的剧本），音乐和/或文学作品。

Level 2 - Building to a Crescendo 二级-建筑达到高潮

A good story is like a piece of music. The meaningful information (action, suspense, excitement) builds and builds and builds, and then near the end - it reaches a "**crescendo**."

一个好故事就像一首音乐。有意义的信息（动作，悬念，兴奋）建立，建立和建立，然后接近尾声-它达到一个“高潮！”

At the very end you come full circle, connect to the beginning in some creative way and everything is well and fine again or even better.

在故事的最后，你走了一个完整的圈子，以一种创造性的方式回到了开始，一切都又好，甚至更好。

Even in essays, articles, and letters the most amazing facts can be saved till near the end. People will remember it. (Extensive research on memory suggests with complex messages people only remember things at or near the end.)

即使在论文，文章和信件中，最惊人的事实也可以保存到最后一刻。人们会记住它。（对内存的广泛研究表明，对于复杂的信息，人们只会记住结尾处或结尾处的事物。）

Question 问题

What are some characteristics of a good story?

A good story has meaningful information that builds up through most of the story, reaches a crescendo (or “climax”) not far from the end, and at the end connects back to the beginning.

一个好的故事具有贯穿整个故事的有意义的信息，并在离结尾不远处达到渐强（或“高潮”），并在结尾处回到起点。

Level 3 – Higher Level Writing 三级-高级写作

Higher level writing usually includes 1) having a meaningful story to tell, 2) illuminating and providing a 3 or 4-dimensional approach to self-discovery and/or personal transformation and/or universal human experiences and 3) stimulates the emotions of the audience in such a way as to elicit the maximum psychological effect from your writing.

高水平的写作通常包括：1) 讲一个有意义的故事，2) 阐明并提供 3 维或 4 维的自我发现和/或个人转变和/或人类普遍经验的方法，以及 3) 激发观众的情感 以使您的写作获得最大的心理效果。

Adding context, layers of meaning and emotional control to your stories

[层含义 = Levels of meaning = depth (深度)]

1. Have an interesting, colorful and meaningful story to tell or write
2. Adding background context (背景资料) like character’s personalities, time (contemporary 当代的? Historical 历史的? Futuristic 未来?), background environment (describe a city, neighborhood, home, living room, restaurant...背景环境), and texture (the feeling that place gives you) to the environments in which the story takes place.
3. Introduce the challenge or conflict (挑战或冲突) in an interesting way. Use suspense (悬念 [xuán niàn]) to build tension (建立张力). Finally resolve the conflict (解决冲突) in a satisfying way.
4. Illuminating (照亮) Insights (洞察 [dòng chá]), personal transformation (个人的转变), universal human experiences (人类的普遍经验) and ethical values (伦理价值观) within the events of the story.
5. Exercising control of the emotions of the readers from the beginning to create the maximum psychological effect.

A great painting, photo, piece of music and story, has many layers. The longer you look at or think about it the more you see and understand. It’s 4-D – it has depth and many layers of meaning that unfold over time and anywhere in the world. It contains universal meaning and value. A piece of art grows with the person experiencing that art. It matures the person experiencing that art. Each piece of great art is a form of enlightenment. It draws people into a greater understanding of themselves and the world, and their evolving relationship with the world.

一幅伟大的绘画，照片，音乐和故事，有很多层次。您看或思考的时间越长，您看到和理解的内容就越多。它是 4-D 元素-具有深度和多层含义，可随时间推移以及在世界上任何地方展现。它包含普遍的意义和价值。一件艺术品会随着经历该艺术品的人而增长。它使经历那种艺术的人变得成熟。每一件伟大的艺术都是一种启示。它使人们对自己和世界以及与世界的不断发展的关系有了更深入的了解。

- The transformative power of love (Parental, siblings, romantic love, Platonic love, etc.)
爱的变革力量（父母，兄弟姐妹，浪漫之爱，柏拉图式的爱等）
- The cruelty and horror of war
战争的残酷和恐怖
- The beauty and healing power of nature
大自然的美丽与治愈力

Great writing usually contains personal transformation and universal meaning

“We are the victims (受害者), representatives (代表) and promoters(发起人) of collective (集体的) spirits (精神) whose years are counted in the centuries (活过许多世纪), players on the stage of the world theater.” (世界的剧场的舞台)

Adapted from Carl Jung – a famous psychologist 改编自著名心理学家荣格（Carl Jung）

That's 4-D writing because it's true over time and everywhere. It contains wisdom.

那是四维写作，因为随着时间的推移，到处都是。它包含智慧。

Writing a Vacation Story 写一个度假故事

By years 11 and 12 in high school most students have written at least a few “vacation stories” before. I know I've read thousands of them. They're usually quite boring even if the students go to fun and exotic places.

到高中 11 年级和 12 年级，大多数学生之前至少写过一些“假期故事”。我知道我读过数千个度假故事。即使学生去有趣又充满异国情调的地方，它们通常都很无聊。

Too often I got stories like this: 我经常收到这样的故事:

“First I went to XXX and then after that went to XXX and met XXX. Then I XXX...”

“首先我去了 XXX，然后又去了 XXX 并认识了 XXX。然后我 XXX...”

Very few students describe:

Why they went to a specific location on vacation,

The process of getting to where they went (environments through which they passed (roads, airports, villages, towns, cities, houses),

The personalities of the people with whom they interacted, their physical appearance, facial expressions, emotions

The backgrounds, the locations, atmosphere, feelings, or

The traditions they celebrated (New Year's or other celebrations/holidays)

I can usually see the outlines of the story, but they are usually 2-D, **without** depth; instead just cold dry bones **without** flesh or skin, or the rosy glow of vibrant life and health. In sum, no feeling, no depth, no layers of meaning, no insights.

我通常可以看到故事的轮廓，但通常是二维的，没有深度。取而代之的是冷干的骨头，没有肉或皮肤，或者充满活力的生命和健康的玫瑰色光泽。总之，没有感觉，没有深度，没有层次，没有见识。

Some of the better students made **observations that summarize events** or found an underlying principle at work: "My parents are pretty funny!" or "My friend is really crazy!"

一些更好的学生进行了观察，以总结事件或发现工作的基本原则：“我的父母很有趣！”或“我的朋友真的很疯狂！”

Very few students wrote about: 很少有学生写到：

Patterns in human behavior (行为模式),

The irony (以反讽) or humor (幽默) in the vicissitudes (悲欢离合) of life and

Find themes and principles (原则), and great truths (大真理) in the events of life,

The universality of human experience (人类经验的普遍性) and

The process of personal transformation (个人转变的过程).

In fact, we are all constantly learning and changing. There is the possibility of personal transformation in every process of life we experience - if we see it and learn from it.

实际上，我们所有人都在不断学习和变化。在我们经历的生活的每个过程中，都有可能发生个人转变-如果我们看到并从中学习。

Here's a short paragraph from one student's vacation story. It's great!

这是一个学生的度假故事中的一小段。这很棒！

"I visited my friend again and she was not that happy either. She fell in love with her ex-boyfriend again, and broke up again, and fell in love with him again, and broke up again. After repeating this a thousand times they broke up again. I've very sure they'll be together again by Friday. Oh! I wish XiaoHua would get rid of that ugly, fat, poor old man. Women are always blind when they are falling in love."

“我再次拜访了我的朋友，她也并不是那么开心。她再次爱上了她的前男友，再次分手，再次爱上了他，再次分手。重复一千遍后，他们又分手了。我非常确定他们会在星期五再聚在一起。哦！我希望小华摆脱那个丑陋，肥胖，可怜的老人。女人坠入爱河时总是盲目。”

Humor is expressed, then a lesson (= principle) and a great truth is learned: Women are always blind when falling in love. (In all fairness, it appears anyone can be blinded by love, not just women.)

表达幽默，然后吸取教训（=原理），并学到一个伟大的真理：女人坠入爱河时总是盲目。（公平地说，似乎任何人都可能被爱蒙蔽，而不仅仅是女性。）

Every instant of life is an opportunity for discovery, our lives connect with an infinite number of other chains of causation.

生命的每一个瞬间都是发现的机会，我们的生活与无数其他因果关系链相连。

Most elementary school students write their holiday visit to their hometown story something like this:

大多数小学生在假期里都会写这样的故事：

“During my vacation, we went to my hometown and met with my grandpa, then we went to my uncle’s house and had dinner. The next day we went shopping in the mall, then I met my old friends and played basketball.”

“假期里，我们去了老家，和爷爷见面，然后去叔叔家吃饭。第二天我们去购物中心购物，然后我遇到了我的老朋友，打了篮球。”

That’s pretty good for elementary school English. The writer used sequence words like “during,” “then,” “the next day.” But...

对于小学英语来说，这相当不错。作者使用了诸如“在.....中”，“然后”，“第二天”之类的序列词。但...

Meeting old Grandpa is the same as going to the mall. But is grandpa the same as the mall?

遇见老爷爷就像去购物中心一样。但是爷爷和购物中心一样吗？

“When my grandpa looked at us, we could all feel the love in his eyes and how it holds us all together.”

“当我的祖父看着我们时，我们都能在他的眼中感受到爱，以及爱如何将我们凝聚在一起。”

That’s a very short simple sentence but it tells a much deeper story.

这是一个很短的简单句子，但它讲述了一个更深刻的故事。

How to fill in the missing pieces in the above 2-D story? It’s simple really. Walk through the story more slowly in your memory – through every step (sentence). Then fill in the missing sights, sounds, smells, tastes, and most importantly, feelings.

如何填写上述二维故事中缺少的部分？真的很简单。在您的记忆中，通过每个步骤（句子），您可以更缓慢地浏览故事。然后填写缺失的景象，声音，气味，味道，最重要的是感觉。

First, I’d ask: How did you get to your hometown? Did you magically appear there?

首先，我想问：您是怎么到家乡的？您有没有魔术般出现在那儿？

Or maybe go to the airport and fly there? 或者去机场飞回你的家乡？

If yes, how did you get to the airport? 如果是的话，您是怎么到机场的？

Roller skate? Ride a tiger? What was it like? 溜冰鞋？骑老虎？那是什么感觉？

“The driver started so slowly after every red light I seriously wondered if he’d died.”

“The driver was so fast I was trying to remember if my life insurance was paid.”

“The driver was so entertaining the hour drive to the airport seemed like 15 minutes.”

“每次红灯后，司机都开得那么慢，我真想知道他是不是死了。”

“司机开得太快了，我想知道我的人寿保险是不是付了。”

“司机真有趣！开车一小时到机场似乎要 15 分钟。”

What was the weather like that day? 那天的天气如何？

“The cold rain poured down like icy nails from the black threatening sky.”

“冷雨像冰冷的钉子一样从黑色威胁的天空倾泻而下。”

How many airplanes have you been in before? Is it still exciting when the plane takes off and you see the city shrink behind you?

你以前坐过几架飞机？当飞机起飞时，你看到城市在你身后缩小，你还兴奋吗？

Second, what kind of hometown is it? A framing village or industrial town? A medium or big city? Ancient or old, beautiful or not? *What's special about it?* Do you like it? What feelings and special memories do you associate with it? Are there any smells, like the leaves in fall, flowers in spring, or chemicals from the leather factory?

第二，是什么样的家乡？是框架村还是工业镇？大中城市？古老还是古老，美丽与否？有什么特别之处？你喜欢它吗？您对它有什么感觉和特别的回忆？是否有任何气味，例如秋天的树叶，春天的花朵或皮革厂的化学药品？

Third: Are you or were you ever close with your grandpa? 第三：你和你爷爷关系好吗？

What are your earliest memories of your grandpa?

Was there ever any special time you spent with your grandpa?

您对爷爷的最早回忆是什么？

您有没有和爷爷一起度过特别的时光吗？

Adding a few sentences about one's history with grandpa will really improve the above story. Describing his personality will help too.

加上几句关于祖父的历史的句子，确实可以改善上述故事。描述他的个性也将有所帮助。

During my vacation, we went my hometown and met with my grandpa.

I remember when I was six years old my father and I went fishing with grandpa. He told us a lot of funny stories. Even though we didn't catch any fish it was a very special and wonderful time.

He's a lot older now but he's still got a sense of humor and asked me questions about my school life and love life! I told him I don't have a love life, and he said I should love sports and books!

After grandpa's house we went to my uncle's house and had dinner. The next day we went shopping in the mall, then I met my old friends and played basketball....

在我的假期中，我们去了家乡，和我的祖父见了面。
我记得我六岁的时候，我父亲和我一起去爷爷钓鱼。他给我们讲了很多有趣的故事。即使我们没有钓到任何鱼，这也是一个非常特殊而美好的时光。
他现在年纪大了，但仍然有幽默感，问我有关我的学校生活和爱情生活的问题！我告诉他我没有爱情生活，他说我应该爱运动和读书！
在爷爷家过后，我们去了我叔叔家，吃了晚饭。第二天，我们去商场购物，然后我遇到了我的老朋友，打了篮球.....。

Fourth, and then there is uncle! What's uncle like? His personality? Has he been successful in life? Does he have a family? Is he kind hearted or cold? What does he look like, a giraffe or a lion? Does he talk a lot?

第四，然后有叔叔！叔叔是什么样的 他的个性？他一生成功吗？他有家人吗？他是善良还是冷漠？他长什么样？电影明星？也许是长颈鹿还是狮子？他说话很多吗？

Fifth: What was for dinner? Who cooked it? How did it taste? How many people ate with you? What did you talk about? Do you talk much at family gatherings? Each family member has a unique personality. You can show that personality with a quote or two from dinner.

第五：晚餐吃什么？谁煮的？味道如何？有多少人和你一起吃饭？你在说什么 你在家庭聚会上说话很多吗？每个家庭成员都有独特的个性。您可以在晚餐时用一两个报价来显示该个性。

Sixth: Where did you sleep that night? 第六：你那天晚上在哪里睡觉？

What did you think about when you drifted off to sleep?

当您开始睡觉时，您会怎么想？

Finally, after this vacation you got home again.

终于，这个假期过后，您又回到了家。

What did it feel like returning to your home after this long adventure?

What special things did you miss about your home during this vacation?

Are you simply happy to be home, or do you have mixed feelings because you miss your hometown, relatives and old friends?

- 经过漫长的冒险后回到家感觉如何？
- 在这个假期中，您对家有什么特别的念念？
- 您只是想回家很开心，还是因为想念自己的家乡，亲戚和老朋友而感到百感交集？

A story about your holiday visit to your hometown can contain many important lessons and capture the essence of your family and life in general. A good story is better than a photo or a video because it captures relationships, feelings, thoughts, smells and tastes that can never be put in a video.

有关您到家乡度假的故事可以包含许多重要的课程，并可以概括您的家庭和生活的精髓。好的故事比照片或视频要好，因为它可以捕捉视频中永远无法体现的关系，感觉，思想，气味和品味。

Manipulating Emotion 操纵情绪

Great writing is meaningful, and transmits that meaning within a framework of emotional entertainment to create the maximum psychological effect.

出色的写作是有意义的，并且可以在情感娱乐的框架内传达这种含义，从而创造出最大的心理效果。

The following formula is taught in a class called “Communications 101” in most universities:

大多数大学在称为“通信 101”的班级中教授以下公式：

Emotion = Adrenalin + Context

情绪=肾上腺素+上下文

You build up emotion using (for example) humor which raises blood adrenalin and makes the audience excited. Then you suddenly change the context to fear, or horror, like WWII is about to happen. After that you make the fear stronger, and stronger.

When all seems lost - darkness and doom is everywhere - the audience is feeling death eating at his or her soul - slipping into nothingness - suffocating hopelessness - then, the writer reveals a tiny light in the distance, an open door, your solution. Vote for me! Or: Buy this insurance plan.

您使用（例如）幽默来增强情绪，幽默会增加肾上腺素的血液并使观众兴奋。然后，您突然将上下文更改为恐惧，就像第二次世界大战即将发生一样。之后，您会使恐惧越来越强烈。

当一切似乎都消失了-黑暗和厄运无处不在-观众感到死亡正在吞噬他或她的灵魂-陷入虚无-令人窒息的绝望-然后，作家在远处露出了一丝微光，敞开的门，是您的解决方案。投票给我！或者：购买此保险计划！

This is a simple and easy trick and was old during the Roman Empire. But it still works today because people don't change much and our blood chemistries and emotions are usually similar. It's useful and powerful and can be used for good or bad purposes.

这是一个简单易行的把戏，在罗马帝国时期就已存在。但它今天仍然有效，因为人们的变化不大，而且我们的血液化学和情绪通常相似。它既有用又强大，可以用于良好或不良目的。

Masterful writing is meaningful, has information that is timely and relevant to the reader, and has entertainment value like a roller coaster, exciting from the beginning till the end; a wild ride that takes the audience with it.

精湛的写作是有意义的，具有与读者相关的及时信息，并具有娱乐价值，如过山车，从头到尾都令人兴奋；吸引观众的狂野旅程。

Politicians do this all the time, so do marketing experts. It works. At the beginning of your story, the life of the reader is boring and meaningless. As they read your story or listen to your speech or presentation they are transformed. They gain a sense of purpose in life, a new identity and see life with fresh eyes. Great writing is a high art. It is a process that **transforms** the writer and the readers.

政客一直在这样做，营销专家也是如此。有用。在您的故事开始时，读者的生活无聊且毫无意义。当他们阅读您的故事或听您的演讲或演示时，他们就会改变。他们获得生活的目的感，新的身份并以崭新的眼光看待生活。出色的写作是一种高艺术。这是一个改变作者和读者的过程。

What topics can a high school student possibly write about that can use this kind of “extreme” format? Lots of things!

Escaping the tiny hellish world of addiction (games, alcohol, drugs, bad love...)

Surviving bullying - the shocking ride through hell

Overcoming extreme stupidity - learning to love reading

Surviving my parents' divorce and finding happiness again

Getting the teacher that hates me to love me!

- 逃避小小的地狱般的世界（游戏，酒精，毒品，不良恋爱.....）
- 幸存的欺凌-令人震惊的穿越地狱
- 克服极端愚蠢-学习爱读书
- 幸免于父母离婚并再次找到幸福
- 将讨厌我的老师转变为爱我的老师！

Parallel Track Story 平行轨道故事

There are really a nearly infinite number of writing structures you can use. Another one I've used is what I call the Parallel Tracks Structure.

实际上，您可以使用几乎无限数量的书写结构。我用过几次的故事结构，我称之为“平行轨道结构”

You take a personal issue and write about it weaving back and forth between it and a global example of the same thing. For example, bullying in school and bullying in international affairs. Yes, some big powerful countries bully other weaker countries, just the same as school bullies pick on some weaker student.

您要处理一个个人问题，并撰写有关它与同一事物的全球示例之间来回编织的文章。例如，在学校中欺负和在国际事务中欺负。是的，一些大国欺负其他较弱的国家，就像学校欺凌者欺负一些较弱的学生一样。

Thoughts of The Times

Bullies, Big and Little

By Gregory Brundage

Bullies big and little make life miserable. They are often the most charming people when they are not busy punching your lights out. Hitler was a charming guy — millions of otherwise very nice Germans blindly followed him into World War II. Fifty million people died.

When I was a lad, I went to four elementary schools in three countries. Because I was different and a boy, bullies always picked on me. "What's your name?" "I don't like your name..." etc. Then they would try to push or punch me. They were almost always bigger than me and always came crowds. I learned how to fight and that I really don't like bullies. I also learned that if you just ignore a bully today, you'll end up have two jumping on you tomorrow. So, I learned, better to take 'em head on, even if you know you're gonna lose, than let 'em multiply like rabbits and really smear you later on.

I first learned about Super bullies when I was 12, living in Spain under the dictator Francisco Franco. Ironically, that was the first school year I never had to fight. The Super bully taught everyone that being a bully isn't nice.

Bullying is a worldwide problem. Many people think that bullies learn their behavior from

their fathers. This is not always the case. Hitler's mom bullied Adolf and his father.

A lot of people think that bullies are always boys. That is not always the case either. Though young bully boys are more likely to engage in direct physical aggression, bully girls are more likely to use indirect strategies, like spreading rumors and enforcing social isolation on their victims. But, when bully boys get older, they are likely to become more subtle, like bully girls. Surprisingly, there is little evidence to support the widely held belief that bullies victimize others because they feel bad about themselves. Bullies often feel terrific about themselves, especially right after crushing some innocent victim. Thus, coddling bullies generally doesn't work as a treatment.

Too frequently, teachers are either unwilling to get involved or just do not know how to help. Complaining to the principal makes the teacher look as if s/he cannot handle the class. Of course, teachers can just bully the bullies but that usually doesn't help either. Thus, teach-

ers themselves often become victims of the bullies as they helplessly sit on the sidelines. This sort of thing led to the recent resignation of the Dutch government.

Seething with impotent rage, the humbled teacher (peacekeeper) placidly goes about his business in the bruised and damaged classroom, while the bully gloats in sadistic satisfaction.

Meanwhile, the victims experience a shocking ride through hell. They don't eat or sleep right, if at all. They feel alone because they are alone. Bullies turn what should be the joy of learning into a nightmare of hopeless isolation and despair. No wonder their grades deteriorate and they often drop out. Getting out is salvation — an end to the nightmare imposed by the bully.

In schools where the Principals do not actively support teachers, bullies are likely to flourish. This scenario begs the question: What is a principal to do? Punishing bullies generally doesn't help. It usually just adds another link to the chain of abuse. Sending him home usually pleases the bully even more. Ultimately, it is the

parents that have to somehow communicate to their bully boy or girl that cruelty is not the answer to problems. Principals must have 1) zero tolerance for bullies and 2) a rigid policy of informing parents regarding bully behavior on the part of their children. Ignoring bully behavior is reinforcing bully behavior.

This sort of reasoning led to the recent creation of the International War Crimes Tribunal. Bullies must be held accountable. An interview with Osama bin Laden's English teacher that aired on BBC a few months ago revealed that he was a quiet polite student. Imagine if he was an openly belligerent student that liked to torture girls. He would have nuked New York, instead of just crashing into a couple of buildings.

During the Great Depression in the United States, boys towns sprung up around the U.S. to take care of homeless and delinquent boys. Their motto was: "There's no such thing as a bad boy." This may be true. However, it is also true that passive teachers, principals and parents foster environments where little Hitler's grow strong.

The writer is an English teacher in Chonju, North Cholla Province.

Another common story structure uses a "flashback" structure. You start near the end of the story, when things are at their worst. Then, you wonder how you got in this situation. After that you tell the story from the beginning. At the end, hopefully, you reach a happy conclusion.

另一种常见的故事结构使用“倒叙”结构。你的故事在接近尾声的时候开始-当事情最糟的时候。然后，你想知道你是怎么陷入这种境地的。然后你从头讲故事。最后，希望你能得出一个满意的结论。

How to refine this kind of art? 如何完善这种艺术?

First, read more. Fun books are best, something you like. Sometimes you have to search around to find the right books that will keep you entertained. This is most important. Nine out of 10 books are boring, out-of-date or have wrong information. But, one out of 10 books is more than you can read in a lifetime. There are a lot of great books out there that will speak right to your heart, if you look long enough.

首先，请阅读更多。有趣的书是最好的，喜欢的东西。有时，您必须四处寻找合适的书籍，以使您保持愉悦。这是最重要的。10本书中有9本书很无聊，过时或信息错误。但是，十分之一的书远远超过您一生中可以阅读的书。如果您看起来足够长，那么有很多很棒的书会说出您的心声。

Teaching Sequence 教学顺序

I start the semester by asking students to write a vacation story during the first class, then edit them.

我在学期开始时要求学生在第一堂课中写一个假期故事，然后进行编辑。

I'll scan all their stories so I have a baseline measure of their motivation and ability.

我将扫描他们的所有故事，以便对他们的动机和能力进行基线评估。

Describing Personality 描述人格

At the start of one class I solicit two lists of adjectives to describe a person's personality from the students. One list is good qualities, the other has negative qualities. I make sure we have English definitions and double and triple check Chinese translations sometimes settling for two or three different translations. I require students to take notes on the adjective they don't know. Sometime I might have a surprise quiz on adjectives describing a person's personality. Ha, ha. Am I a surprising teacher? Sometimes. But for quizzes I warn them first.

在一堂课开始时，我会做一个课堂项目。

我得到学生们的帮助，我列出了两个形容词列表，以描述一个好老师和一个坏老师的性格。

我确定我们有英文定义以及中文的双重和三重检查-有时我们会同意两种或三种不同的翻译。我要求学生记下他们不认识的形容词。有时我可能会给他们一个关于形容一个人性格的形容词的测验！哈哈。我是一位令人惊讶的老师吗？有时。但是，对于测验和测试，我会先警告它们。我认为做笔记对于外语学习至关重要。

I might start another class asking students to describe their partner's personality, and/or physical appearance. After that I ask them write a paragraph describing a friend that includes at least something positive. (High School students can be quite funny sometimes.)

我可能会再上一堂课，要求学生描述伴侣的性格和/或外表。之后，我要求他们写一个描述朋友的段落（至少包括一个肯定的属性）。

Compare and Contrast 比较和对比

I might ask them to compare and contrast their own personality with their friend's personality.

我可能会要求他们将自己的性格与朋友的性格进行比较和对比。

For lower-level students I might give them a format to get started.

My friend _____ and I are the same in some ways, but very different on other ways. For example, if _____, he is likely to _____. I wouldn't do that. However, when _____ happens, I will _____, but he won't! I really believe most people would _____ if _____. But not my friend _____!

我的朋友_____和我在某些方面相同，但在其他方面却非常不同。例如，如果_____，他可能会_____。我不会那样做。但是，当发生_____时，我会_____，但他不会！

This way the student writers are looking for universal human experience while defining their own uniqueness and comparing it with a friend.

这样，学生作家就可以在寻找普遍的人类体验的同时，定义自己的独特性并与朋友进行比较。

Similar kinds of small or large group exercises can be done describing hometowns, or events, and so on. Some students work best with a regular partner. Sometimes they work better in small groups. Partly it depends on their English levels; partly on their confidence and motivation, and partly on the mood of any particular class on any particular day.

可以进行类似的小型或大型团体练习来描述家乡或事件等。一些学生与定期伴侣的学习效果最好。有时他们在小组中表现更好。部分取决于他们的英语水平；部分是因为他们的自信和动力，部分是因为在特定日期的任何特定班级的情绪。

Review Questions 检视问题

1. What is one definition of emotion? Emotion = Adrenalin + Context

什么是情感的定义？情绪=肾上腺素+环境

2. Where does mastery (精通 [jīng tōng]) in writing comes from?

- 1) Having something meaningful to say

有意义的话要说

- 2) Adding richly textured background context like character development and the environments in which the story takes place

添加丰富的背景背景，如人物发展和故事发生的环境

- 3) Illuminating (照亮) universal human experiences (人类的普遍经验) and ethical values (伦理价值观)

- 4) knowing how to sequence the emotions of the readers to create the maximum psychological effect.

了解如何对读者的情感进行排序，以产生最大的心理效果。

What are two ways to help you learn mastery in writing?

有两种方法可以帮助你掌握写作技巧？

- 1) Read more to learn how other writers do the above

阅读更多。当你阅读时，你会学到其他作家如何使用上述技巧。

- 2) Practice writing more

多练习写作

Great writing → Transforms the writer and the reader

伟大的写作→改变了作者和读者

A parallel track story goes back and forth between personal and global issues.

一个平行的故事在个人和全球问题之间来回穿梭。

The Writing Process 写作过程

Does life imitate art, or does art imitate life?

生活是模仿艺术，还是艺术模仿生活？

Think! Reflect and think again 想想看！反省再思考

Start by thinking about your own ideas. Write them down. Try to make an outline how to explain them. Then, do some research on all related matters.

从思考你自己对某一主题的想法开始。写下来。试着做一个提纲来解释它们。然后，对所有相关问题进行研究。

Research Articles 研究文章

In the “old days” I used to go to the library, search index cards for key words, then walk around the library picking up books. Then I’d scan the books in the library, photocopy the important things, check their references, then find those references in the card catalogue, walk around the library again picking up those books, scan them and photocopy the important sections again. Then, I’d go home, and organize all the research I collected. I used a door suspended over cement blocks for a desk. So, it was a big desk. I’d organize the photocopies in different ways. I thought about the different patterns that emerge from the research. I’d wrap my ideas around them, and think about a good introduction and conclusion. Then I’d reorganize my research articles if necessary. Only then would I start to write a research paper.

在过去的日子里，我经常去图书馆，在索引卡上搜索关键词，然后到图书馆走来走去，捡拾书籍。然后，我会非常快速地阅读书籍中重要的部分，将重要的内容复印并检查它们的参考文献。然后，我将在卡片目录中查找这些参考文献，再次在图书馆走来走去，拿起那些书，快速阅读并再次复印重要部分。然后，我要回家整理我收集的所有研究成果。我的书桌是一扇用水泥块举起的门。所以，那是一张大桌子。我以不同的方式组织了复印的文章。我考虑了研究中出现的不同模式。我会把我的想法包起来，然后考虑一个好的介绍和结论。然后，如有必要，我将重新整理我的研究文章。只有这样，我才开始写研究论文。

What I do now is read hundreds of articles and put the most relevant into a computer folder. I’ll electronically highlight the important sections. Then I’ll formulate my own theories, if I didn’t have one before I started. With my own ideas foremost in mind, and the research articles to support my idea, I organize the article in my mind. It’s easier now.

我现在要做的是阅读数百篇文章，并将最相关的内容放入计算机文件夹中。我将以电子方式突出显示重要部分。通常，在研究之前我有自己的理论。我的研究几乎总是证实并完善我的理论。考虑到我自己的想法以及支持我的想法的研究文章，我在脑海中整理了这篇文章。在开始将其输入到文字处理器之前，我通常会先将一半的文章写在脑海中。

Writing the research articles 撰写研究论文

You definitely can use other people's ideas like building blocks to sharpen and refine what you're thinking about, as long as you write down explicit citations and include them in your paper. You will probably want to show the similarities and differences between your ideas and other people's ideas in your writing.

只要写下明确的引文并将其包括在论文中，您肯定可以使用其他人的想法（例如构建基块）来完善和完善您的想法。您可能需要在写作中展示自己的想法与其他人的想法之间的异同。

It's perfectly OK to agree and/or disagree with other researcher's ideas and conclusions, in fact *that's what students and professional researchers are supposed to do!*

同意和/或不同意其他研究人员的想法和结论是完全可以的，事实上，这是学生和专业研究人员应该做的！

Nothing is sacrosanct in research and writing (except stealing ideas without writing down the source of those ideas).

在研究和写作中，没有什么是神圣不可侵犯的（除了在不写下思想来源的情况下窃取思想）。

Life and good writing are evolutionary and revolutionary processes. We stand on the shoulders of our teachers.

生活和良好的写作是进化和革命的过程。我们站在老师的肩膀上。

For most research review articles you will want to use the basic simple format described earlier in this chapter. Fortunately, it's really easy to remember and follow.

对于大多数研究评论文章，您将希望使用本章前面介绍的基本简单格式。幸运的是，它很容易记住和遵循。

Layers of depth 深度层

Good writing is clear and easily understood. But, it also true that it usually has layers. The longer somebody thinks about it the better they understand it. It's similar to a good photo. The longer you look, the more layers (meanings) you become aware of.

良好的写作清晰易懂。但是，它通常也具有层次也是正确的。人们思考的时间越长，他们对它的理解就越好。就像一张好照片。您看得越久，您就会意识到越多的层次（含义）。

Trying to rush through researching and writing a review article in a big hurry is a really bad idea. It takes time and a lot of thinking, and then thinking again.

急着匆忙研究和撰写评论文章是一个非常糟糕的主意。这需要时间和很多思考。然后，您将需要稍后以全新的视角重新考虑。除非您在开始之前有一个非常好的主意，否则几个小时内就只能写出非常基础的 2D 文章。

The stages of life are defined by reorganization of values and needs. Values and needs change dramatically from being a baby, to toddler, to child, to teenager, to young adult, to middle age and to elderly. Even a story, article, speech, letter, and essay can go through developmental stages. Very few things in life work out perfectly the first time around. It takes a series of successive approximations to come close to making something really good. 人生的阶段是由价值观和需求的重组来定义的。价值观和需求发生了巨大的变化，从婴儿，到幼儿，到儿童，到青少年，到年轻人，到中年和老年人。甚至一篇故事、文章、演讲、信件和散文也可以经历发展阶段。生活中很少有事情能在第一次就完美解决。需要一系列连续的近似才能使事情变得真正好。

Research review articles are sometimes a bit complex. 研究评论文章有时会有点复杂。

Luckily most things a student has to write (essay, dialogue, letter, maybe an advertisement, or speech) can be written fairly quickly. Sure, some reorganization will probably be necessary, and editing of course. But most simple letters and reports can be done in one session if you follow a simple format. Simple formats are best for most things. They're clear and easy to understand, the most important things in good writing.

幸运的是，学生必须写的大多数东西（文章，对话，信件，广告或演讲）都可以很快地写出来。当然，可能需要进行一些重组，并且当然进行编辑。但是，如果遵循一种简单的格式，大多数简单的信函和报告都可以在一个会话中完成。简单格式最适合大多数情况。它们清晰易懂，是写得好最重要的事情。

However, if you want to write a truly great essay, letter, speech or article *it will take several days at least* - not the whole days but different sessions to write something meaningful, well organized clear and to the point. *Why? Great writing is layered and it takes time at each stage to transcend to the next. It takes some thinking and playing with (reorganizing) ideas.*

但是，如果您想写出真正出色的文章，信函，演讲或文章，则至少需要几天的时间-并非整天，而是不同的短时间，才能写出清晰有序的有意义的文章。为什么？出色的写作是分层的，在每个阶段都需要时间才能超越。这需要一些思考，并需要（重新组织）构想。

Reorganizing 重组

About 90% of the time I have to reorganize what I write; sometimes a little and often a lot.

Why? Thoughts rarely come out in perfect order and writing is a process of discovery.

大约 90% 的时间我必须重新整理自己写的东西；有时一点，经常很多。为什么？思想很少能以完美的顺序出现，写作是发现的过程。

I started this short essay with one thought in mind: the importance of reorganizing. The first sentences I wrote ended up in the third and fourth paragraphs.

在开始这篇简短的文章时，我想到了一个想法：重组的重要性。我后来写的第一句话移至第三和第四段。

Ideas need to be organized in a way to be easily understood and create maximum impact, punch and power. There needs to be an unfolding process starting with "the big picture" and later moving on to the details needed to communicate that big picture.

需要以易于理解的方式组织思想，并创造最大的影响力，冲击力和力量。需要有一个从“大局”开始的展开过程，然后继续进行沟通大局所需的细节。

Everything must be logical and reasonable, flowing like clear water from beginning to end. For exciting stories some waterfalls and colors, smells, tastes and feelings are entertaining and instructive.

一切都必须是逻辑合理的，从头到尾像清水一样流动。对于令人兴奋的故事，一些瀑布和颜色，气味，品味和感觉很有趣且具有启发性。

Everything is a process and putting A before B, and B before C helps to make the reader comfortable and clearly understand what the heck you're writing about.

一切都是一个过程，将 A 置于 B 之前，将 B 置于 C 之前有助于使读者感到舒适并清楚地了解您所写的内容。

Sometimes you can be daring, like starting with C, then flashback to A and B. For some kinds of writing that's OK. For others, it's not.

有时您可能会胆大妄为，例如以 C 开头，然后闪回 A 和 B。对于某些类型的写作来说，这没关系。对于其他人则不是。

In any case, I almost always have to make adjustments in the order of things that I write to make the story flow well. This paragraph should go before that one. This sentence belongs in that paragraph, not this one, and so on.

无论如何，我几乎总是必须按照我写的顺序进行调整，以使故事顺利进行。本段应在该段之前。该句子属于第 5 款，而不是第 2 款，依此类推。

Using (for example MS Word) Headings 使用（例如 MS Word）标题

In longer articles and books, it helps enormously to use the electronic headings on word processing software. If the student doesn't know how to use them, type: "how to use headings in a document" into a browser. (I've used MacBook Pro TextEdit and didn't like it much. I really think MS Word is best.)

在较长的文章和书籍中，在文字处理软件中使用电子标题有很大帮助。如果学生不知道如何使用它们，请在浏览器中键入：“how to use headings in a document”。（我用过 MacBook Pro 文本编辑，不太喜欢。我真的认为 Word 女士是最好的。）

Electronic word processor headings help to cluster ideas and give the writer a nice overview of where everything is.

电子文字处理标题有助于集中思想，让作者对一切都在哪里有一个很好的概述。

If the writer is using MS Word, click on "View" and then click on "Navigation Pane." Then the writer can get a really great organizational view of the sections that have been created. Headings are also nice because once all the sections of a paper have been given headings, it's so easy to create a Table of Contents (TOC). TOC's help the reader get a real fast overview of your paper or book.

如果编写器正在使用 MS-Word，请单击“视图”，然后单击“导航窗格”。这样，编写器就可以获得已创建节的非常好的组织视图。标题也很好，因为一旦一篇论文的所有部分都有了标题，就很容易创建目录（TOC）。TOC 帮助读者快速浏览你的论文或书籍。

Renaissance Painters and Copying 文艺复兴时期的画家与临摹

In regards to copying of course teachers all say: Don't do that!

Renaissance master painters first trained their students in how to mix paints to get the exact shades of colors and textures. Then, the students were usually assigned to copy the works of other great masters so they could learn the basic techniques of good painting. Only after years of practice copying would the students learn to develop their own unique styles.

Students should not copy the words of other writers, but should try to imitate their styles. That is fun!

关于抄袭课程，老师们都说：不要那样做！

文艺复兴时期的绘画大师们首先训练学生如何混合颜料以获得颜色和纹理的精确色调。然后，学生们通常被指派抄袭其他大师的作品，这样他们就可以学习好绘画的基本技巧。只有经过多年的临摹练习，学生才能学会发展自己独特的风格。

学生不应抄袭其他作家的作品，而应尽量模仿他们的风格。真有趣！

Final Editing 编辑

Finally, when you think you're finished, you are not finished. Ha! Why not? Editing is the hardest job. It's like polishing a mirror, or diamond, or car. You've got to go over it again and again and again, read, reread, and read again, five, ten, twenty and maybe fifty times improving this and deleting that. Extra sentences and paragraphs may pop into your mind. Some things you've written are probably not necessary. Delete them.

最后，当你认为你完成了，你还没有完成。哈！为什么不？编辑是最难的工作。就像抛光镜子，钻石，汽车。你必须一遍又一遍地读，读，再读，再读，五，十，二十，甚至五十倍地改进这个和删除那个。额外的句子和段落可能会突然出现在你的脑海中。你写的一些东西可能是不必要的。删除它们。

Editing is the final real art of good writing. Reorganizing is essential in building the first good structure you need to edit later on. Write → reorganize → write → edit (and sometimes reorganize again!)

编辑是写作的最后一门真正的艺术。重新组织对于构建您以后需要编辑的第一个好结构至关重要。写—重新组织—写—编辑（有时还会重新组织！）

Writing is a reflection of life 写作是生活的反映

It's the same as life. We will often have to reorganize our priorities to attain our real-life goals and solve our real-life problems.

这和生活一样。我们常常不得不重新安排我们的优先事项，以实现我们的现实目标和解决我们的现实问题。

It's endless, a life mission, a quest from birth to death.

无尽的人生任务，从出生到死亡的追求。

In our lives there will be many reorganizations of our daily schedules, our food and activity habits, everything. Our lives are the canvass upon which we write, paint or compose our destinies.

在我们的生活中，我们的日程安排，我们的饮食和活动习惯以及所有一切都会有很多重组。我们的生活是我们写，画或构筑命运的画布。

Once you've finished that masterpiece you are writing let it rest for a while. Maybe a day, week or month if you have the time. Ideas will keep coming to you: add this, delete that, slightly change something else. Research it again. Think again. Reflect. Play with ideas. Talk to friends about it.

完成杰作后，您可以休息一会儿。如果有时间，则可能是一天，一周或一个月。想法会不断出现：添加，删除，稍作更改。再次研究。再想一想。反映。玩创意。和朋友谈谈。

No writing is perfect; like life itself it's a series of successive approximations on the road to perfection. After you edit something 50 times, it's probably going to be pretty good. Ha, ha. If you go back a few years later and read it again, you may think: "Wow! That's perfect!" Or, you may think: "How childish! I can write it so much better now!"

没有写作是完美的。就像生活本身一样，它是通往完美之路的一系列连续逼近。编辑了 50 次后，效果可能会很好。哈哈。如果几年后回头再读一遍，您可能会想：“哇！那很完美！”或者，您可能会想：“多么幼稚！我现在可以写得更好了！”

You can change the world. It starts with a simple idea, a realization that turns into a dream, and a sentence. From that sentence a paragraph will flow, then a story. Changes will need to be made along the way, that's for sure, and a lot of editing will need to be done before its finished, but that process is how great dreams become reality and the world perhaps one day, rediscover its original beauty, innocence and harmony. The writer, the readers and the world can be transformed.

您可以改变世界。它以一个简单的想法，一个变成梦想的实现和一句话开始。从那句话开始，一段将流逝，然后是一个故事。当然，将需要进行一些更改，并且在完成之前还需要进行大量编辑，但是这一过程是伟大的梦想变成现实的过程，世界也许有一天重新发现它的原始美感，天真和谐。作者，读者和世界都可以改变。

Text Type 1 - Writing a Journal/Diary 文本类型 1-写日记

Sample Journal (Diary) Entry 样本日记（日记）分录

March 23rd, 2018 2018 年 3 月 23 日

Today in class my English teacher said: "Everybody's crazy, just different kinds of crazy."

That's funny and I've been wondering if it's true. It's also a little bit scary. Isn't there some basic truth that true for everyone? Looking at all the conflicts and divisions in the world maybe it is true. I don't know. (Search for universal experience.)

今天在课堂上我的英语老师说：“每个人都疯了，只是各种各样的疯。”

这很有趣，我一直在想这是不是真的。也有点吓人。不是每个人都有一些基本的真理吗？看看世界上所有的冲突和分歧，也许这是真的。我不知道。（寻找普遍的经验。）

Ginger my best friend told me she's got a new boyfriend who is in college! Omg! He'll break her heart I know. Or maybe she'll just forget about him quickly because she does that a lot too. (Insight into a friend's personality). A lot of people are like that these days. (Universal experiences.)

我最好的朋友姜告诉我，她有一个正在上大学的新男朋友！我的天啊！我知道他会伤她的心。也许她会很快忘记他，因为她也经常这样做。（了解朋友的性格）。这些天很多人都这样。（普遍的经验。）

I got a lot of homework in math class! Oh noooo! That's going to be difficult but maybe I can get Alice to help me. What can I learn about myself from this? (Introspective insight.)

我在数学课上有很多作业！哦，不！这将很困难，但也许我可以请爱丽丝来帮助我。我可以从中学到什么？（内省的洞察力。）

Ginger plays around a lot with people but never takes it seriously. Alice however is sincere and helps others. I think I'd rather be like Alice because her friends will last over time. I think Ginger's friends are "easy come, easy go." (Universal experiences - Patterns of behavior, planning, values)

生姜与人打交道很多，但从不认真对待。但是，爱丽丝很真诚，可以帮助他人。我想我会像爱丽丝一样，因为她的朋友会随着时间的流逝而持久。我认为 Ginger 的朋友“轻松来就去”。（普遍经验-行为，计划，价值观的模式）

Student Journals/Diary 学生日记

- Write the date at the top 在顶部写上日期
 - Briefly describe one, or two experiences/events from that same day with some details. 简要描述同一天的一个或两个体验/事件，并附上一些详细信息。
 - Then *something like* one or more of the following containing INSIGHTS 然后类似于以下一个或多个包含见解的内容
- A. From this experience, **I learned that (most?) people _____**. = (Learning Universal Values 普世价值)
- B. From this experience, **I learned that I _____**. = (Learning greater self-awareness 自我意识.)
- C. From this experience, **I learned that I have a social responsibility (社会责任) to _____**. = (Learning Social Consciousness 社会意识 = Awareness of the needs of others and my responsibility to contribute 贡献 to the welfare (福利) of others.)
- D. From this experience **I learned a principle 原理**, specifically that _____.

Obviously, students don't have to follow the above sentences, but one, or two, or all three of the following help make a story more interesting and meaningful.

显然，学生不必遵循上面的句子，但是下面的一个或两个或所有三个帮助可以使一个故事变得更加有趣和有意义。

1. Learning Universal Values 普世价值),

2. Insights into greater self-awareness 自我意识),
3. sense of social responsibility (社会责任), social consciousness,

Those three things demonstrate some real meaning in writing. That's what I like to see.

This journal entry can be short (250-1,000 words), but you can also add details and examples to each of the above observations.

这三件事在写作中表现出一些真正的意义。这就是我想要看到的。

该日记条目可以很短（250-1,000 字），但是您也可以在上述每个观察结果中添加详细信息和示例。

Practice Questions - On Keeping a Journal 练习题-关于记日记

1. You don't need to write the date on your journal entry.

True/False.

2. Journal entries for this class are structured.

True/False

Text Type 2 - Hard News Articles 文本类型 2-硬新闻文章

“Hard news” is event-based news. It's a very straightforward way of describing a news event and follows simple formulas. Hard news stories should always be timely and relevant.

“硬新闻”是基于事件的新闻。这是描述新闻事件并遵循简单公式的非常简单的方法。硬新闻故事应该总是及时和相关的。

“Hard news” is contrasted with “feature news.” Feature news stories can be about almost anything, and the writer can format “feature news” in many different ways.

To help learning about writing hard news articles please download and review the following: 为了帮助您学习撰写硬新闻文章，请下载并查看以下内容：

<http://schools.peelschools.org/sec/lornepark/SiteCollectionDocuments/EQAO/OSSLT%20StED-Writing%20A%20News%20Report.pdf> and

<https://www-tc.pbs.org/now/classroom/acrobat/lesson05.pdf>

Writing a KO Article 写一篇惊人的文章

Article – 文章 wénzhāng

KO = Knockout = Hit someone so hard they fall over unconscious & rare beauty 击倒；淘汰赛；绝代佳人

In all cases planning is necessary to write a “hard news” article. Who am I writing for? What is my message? How do I start and finish(?) are questions the writer must ask before starting.

在所有情况下，都必须进行计划以撰写“硬新闻”文章。我为谁写作？我的留言是什么？我如何开始和完成（？）是作者在开始之前必须提出的问题。

Keep it simple (KIS). Short simple sentences are much better than long complicated ones. Cut every unnecessary word and sentence.

Remember where you're going with the story, with every word. Don't just ramble off into strange directions that don't relate to the main theme. A good story doesn't waste words.

保持简单（KIS）。简单的短句比复杂的长句好得多。删掉所有不必要的单词和句子。

记住你要讲的故事，每一个字。不要只是漫无目的地走入与主题无关的陌生方向。一个好故事不会白费口舌。一个好故事不会浪费言语。

The paragraph is the basic unit of writing. Keep them short. Start a new paragraph with each new topic, setting or idea. Short paragraphs are easier to read and understand.

该段是写作的基本单位。保持简短。从每个新主题，设置或想法开始一个新段落。简短的段落更易于阅读和理解。

If it's a news article it should be... 如果是新闻报道，应该是...

Timely 及时 - Something relating in some way to something happening now. It could be a history story that closely resembles something happening now. The writer has to show the connection. A history story belongs in a history book not a newspaper or magazine, unless the writer shows it is meaningful today, now.

及时-与现在发生的事情有某种联系。这可能是一个与现在正在发生的事情非常相似的历史故事。作者必须显示连接。历史故事属于一本历史书籍，而不是一本报纸或杂志中的历史书籍，除非作者现在表明它是有意义的。

Relevant 相关的 - Have some meaning and usefulness in the context of the current world. (Opposite: Irrelevant)

相关相关的-在当前世界的背景下具有一定的意义和实用性。（相反：不相关）

Balanced 平衡的 - If the story includes something that is controversial, it's considered essential to show both sides, even if the writer really believes just one side. To only show one side of an issue isn't news reporting, it's propaganda. If you only very briefly mention the opposing point of view (the one you don't agree with) that's called "paying lip service" to something. It's usually enough.

平衡——如果故事中包含一些有争议的内容，即使作者真正相信只有一个方面，也必须表现出两面性。只展示问题的一面不是新闻报道，而是宣传。如果你只是简单地提到相反的观点（你不同意的观点），那通常就足够了。（“Pay lip service to”是指仅简短地承认作者不同意的事件的一方。）

News articles are usually either 1) hard news, or 2) feature news stories. 新闻文章通常是 1) 硬新闻，或 2) 专题新闻故事。

And there are 3) News editorials. News editorials are usually a feature story version of a hard news topic. Editorials interpret the news, examining the backgrounds and drawing conclusions rather than just reporting events. 并且有 3) 新闻社论。新社论通常是硬新闻主题的专题报道版本。社论可以解释新闻，检查背景并得出结论，而不仅仅是报道事件。

Hard news 硬新闻

Hard news stories are fact based and get right to the point – no artistic embellishments. Simple, straight and clean.

硬新闻故事是基于事实的，并切入要点-没有艺术修饰。简单，直线，干净。

[In practice however most Mainstream Media (MSM) hard news is composed of distorted interpretations of “facts” that are not facts, but rather supposition. For example, “According to intelligence sources, Iran already has a well-developed nuclear program.” That is a supposition that most people will accept as a fact, even if there is no real proof or evidence whatsoever. Most readers don’t read critically or think about what they read. So, the American Military Industrial Complex gets away with mass murder and torture on a daily basis.]

[但是实际上，大多数主流媒体（MSM）硬新闻都是由对事实的歪曲解释构成的，这些事实不是事实，而是经过战略设计的虚假信息。例如，“根据情报来源，伊朗已经制定了完善的核计划。”即使没有真正的证据，大多数人也会接受这一假设。大多数读者不会批判地阅读或思考阅读的内容。因此，美国“军事工业联合体”每天在世界范围内进行大规模的谋杀和酷刑。]

Hard news story structure 新闻故事结构

Headline: Short & provocative to get reader’s attention

标题：简短而挑衅-引起读者注意

Byline - Author’s (your) name

副标题-作者（您的）名字

Date 日期

First paragraph provides most basic information: Who, When Where, What, Why

第一段提供了最基本的信息：谁，何时何地，什么，为什么

Those are called the 5 “w” question words. Using three of the five “W” question words in the paragraph is often OK.

这些被称为 5 个“w”疑问词。通常可以在第一段中使用五个“W”疑问词中的三个。)

Always written in the 3rd person (He, she, it, and they; never use “I” “you” or “we”)

（始终以第三人称书写（他、她、it 和他们；从不使用“I”“you”或“we”）

Student Challenge! 学生挑战赛！

Make some headlines using the following information. I randomized the words to make this challenge a little more interesting. (You don’t have to use all the words.)

使用以下信息成为头条新闻。我随机使用了一些单词，使这一挑战变得更加有趣。（您不必使用所有单词。）

Aliens earth come kill 外星人-地球-来-杀死_____

Iraq seen War Angels 伊拉克-看到-战争-天使 _____

Discover cancer cure scientists 发现-癌症治疗-科学家 _____

Dinosaur live eating salads France seen 恐龙-生活-吃-沙拉-法国-看过 _____

After your dazzling headline... 在你耀眼的头条之后...

And your byline (name) 和你的名字 (称为“ byline”)

And the date 和日期

Yes, your stunning first paragraph, which in hard news story is straight and simple: Who, when, where what/why, but not necessarily in that order.

是的，您令人惊叹的第一段，在硬新闻中很简单，很简单：谁，何时，何地/为什么，但不一定按此顺序。

Example 1 a: Tom met with Jerry yesterday near the doghouse to discuss ways they can work together and stop all the ridiculous fighting

Example 1 b: Yesterday evening Tom met with Jerry near the doghouse to discuss ways they work together and stop all the ridiculous fighting

示例 1 a: 汤姆 (Tom) 昨天在狗窝附近与杰里 (Jerry) 会面，讨论他们如何合作并停止所有可笑的战斗

•例 1 b: 昨天晚上，汤姆在狗屋附近与杰里会面，讨论他们如何合作并制止所有可笑的战斗

Example 2 a: Yesterday President Xi of China met with American President Trump in Beijing to discuss bilateral ties and ways to prevent WWII.

Example 2 b: President Xi of China met with President Trump in the Whitehouse yesterday to discuss ways to improve trade, reduce hostilities, and stop fighting like Tom and Jerry.

例 2 a: 昨天，中国国家主席习近平在北京会见了美国总统特朗普，讨论了双边关系和防止第三次世界大战的方式。

例 2 b: 中国国家主席习近平昨天在白宫与特朗普总统会面，讨论改善贸易，减少敌对行动以及停止像汤姆和杰里这样的战斗的方法。

Your turn... write four, first paragraphs using the following information:

hungry, earth, come, aliens, kill, this morning, first time

饥饿，地球，来吧，外星人，杀戮，今早，第一次

End Iraq War, Yesterday, after angels were seen, Iraqi government, new peace deal was signed

结束伊拉克战争，昨天，签署了新的和平协议，阿富汗，政府，在天使出现之后

Discover, plant-based cancer cure, scientists in Zimbabwe, last month, Science magazine 上个月，科学杂志，津巴布韦科学家，发现，植物性癌症治疗

Dinosaur, live, eating salads, France, yesterday

昨天宣布，恐龙，活的，吃沙拉，法国，震惊了科学家

The 2nd paragraph may have some 第二段

- Background information (背景材料; 背景资料), or
- Quote(s) 报价 FORMAT

“I’m going to fly till the ends of the earth and back again,” said Emilia as she headed out on her first solo trip around the world.

艾米莉亚 (Emilia) 在第一次环游世界时说: “我要飞到地极, 再飞回来。”

LEAD PARAGRAPH: Yesterday in the South China Sea the Shi Lang – China’s 300-meter aircraft carrier almost rammed the American USS Vinson when the American ship blocked passage to the controversial artificial island built last year.

导语: 昨天在南中国海, 中国 300 米长的“施琅”号航空母舰差点撞上美国“文森”号航母, 当时美国军舰封锁了通往去年建造的有争议的人工岛的通道。

SECOND PARAGRAPH (BACKGROUND): The USS Vinson was stationed in the South China Sea in February this year amid little fanfare as part of the Contain China Policy originated in 2012 with President Obama’s Pivot to Asia Strategy.

第二段 (背景): 今年 2 月, 美国海军文森号 (USS Vinson) 在南中国海驻扎, 当时几乎没有大张旗鼓, 这是奥巴马总统以亚洲战略为核心的 2012 年遏制中国政策的一部分。

(or) SECOND PARAGRAPH (QUOTE): “That’ll teach those communists to build some island,” President Trump was quoted as saying at a White House press conference minutes after the incident occurred.

(或) 第二段 (引述): “这将教会那些共产主义者建造一些岛屿,” 特朗普总统在事发几分钟后的白宫记者招待会上说。

THIRD PARAGRAPH (REACTIONS, BACKGROUND OR QUOTES): Democrats were horrified at the rapid escalation of tensions in the South China Sea and the possibility of WWIII starting because of President Trump’s need to make splashy headlines. “Trump is a crazy maniac” said Senate Democratic Leader Chuck Schumer.

第三段 (反应、背景或引述): 民主党人对南中国海紧张局势的迅速升级和第三次世界大战爆发的可能性感到震惊, 因为特朗普总统需要登上引人注目的头条。参议院民主党领袖舒默说: “特朗普是个疯狂的疯子。”

And so on. 等等。

The final paragraph may be summative, and/or give some hints as to future implications of the news story.

最后一段可能是总结性的, 并且/或者对新闻故事的未来含义给出一些暗示。

Summary (总结) and possibly predictions (预言) for the future

People around the world are holding their breath at this time worried that a full-scale military confrontation between the U.S. and China could come at any time. The Dow Jones is down 1,400 points and no end to the current confrontation is in sight.

全世界的人们此时都屏住呼吸, 担心美中之间随时可能发生全面的军事对抗。道琼斯指数下跌 1400 点, 目前的对抗没有尽头。

Yellow Journalism = sensationalism 黄色新闻与煽情

The Spanish-American War is often referred to as the first 'media war.' During the 1890s, journalism that sensationalized and sometimes manufactured dramatic events (reported fake news) was a powerful force that helped propel the United States into war with Spain.

美西战争通常被称为第一次“媒体战争”。在 19 世纪 90 年代，耸人听闻、有时制造戏剧性事件（报道假新闻）的新闻业是一股强大的力量，帮助赢得了公众对美国发动对西班牙战争的支持。

Led by newspaper owners William Randolph Hearst and Joseph Pulitzer, journalism of the 1890s used melodrama, romance, and hyperbole to sell millions of newspapers--a style that became known as "yellow journalism."

19 世纪 90 年代的新闻业由报业老板威廉·伦道夫·赫斯特（William Randolph Hearst）和约瑟夫·普利策（Joseph Pulitzer）领导，利用情节剧、浪漫主义和夸张手法销售了数百万份报纸，这种风格后来被称为“黄色新闻”

The term "yellow journalism" came from a popular New York World comic called "Hogan's Alley," which featured a yellow-dressed character named the "the yellow kid."

“黄色新闻”一词来自流行的“纽约世界”漫画，名为“霍根的胡同”，该漫画的特征是穿着黄色衣服的角色被称为“黄色小孩”。

Feature News Stories 专题新闻

Headline 标题

Again, we want to start with a short powerful attention-grabbing headline:

同样，我们要从简短而引人入胜的标题开始：

Flying cat terrorizes Michael Jackson

Be the woman he cheats with

Not the woman he cheats on!

Collie Wins World Dog Show

Peace in Our Time?

Balanced Diet for Sizzling Life

Eat Chocolate - Live Longer!

飞猫恐吓迈克尔·杰克逊

做与他作弊的女人

不是他欺骗的女人！

牧羊犬赢得世界狗展

我们时代的和平？

均衡饮食，带劲生活

吃巧克力-更长寿！

The opening paragraph of a feature story can be much more creative 创造力的 than a hard news story!

特写故事的“开头段落”（第一段）比硬新闻故事更有创意！

For example, you can start with a question or observation.

例如，您可以从问题或观察开始。

Have you ever noticed that after eating a truckload of potato chips you're feeling as big as a whale?

Little did Charlie know that murdering his neighbor's cat would change his life forever.

Life with a bully is a shocking ride through hell.

你有没有注意到吃了一卡车薯片后，你觉得自己像鲸鱼一样大？

查理不知道谋杀邻居的猫会永远改变他的生活。

与恶霸在一起的生活是一次令人震惊的地狱之旅。

Or you can start with a quote: 或者，您可以以报价开头：

“Neither a borrower nor a lender be, for loan oft loses both itself and friend,” Shakespeare wrote, and wow, did I find out he was right.

“无论是借款人还是贷方，都不会，因为借贷往往会失去自己和朋友。”莎士比亚写道，哇，我发现他是对的。

Paragraph 2 of a Feature Story 专题故事第 2 段

You can even ask a rhetorical question (反问).

Paragraph 2: Only a few years ago I was a rich, famous sexy movie star, and now I'm living in a box under the Brooklyn Bridge. (Rhetorical Question) “How did it happen?” I ask myself every day, and the answer is the same.

第二段：几年前我还是一个富有的，著名的性感电影明星，现在我住在布鲁克林桥下的一个盒子里。（反问句：）“是怎么发生的？”我每天都问自己，答案都一样。

After that you can simply tell your story. 之后，您可以简单地讲述您的故事。

It all started on a sunny day in May eleven years ago when I lent some money to that idiot brother-in-law of mine named Dick. He seemed like a nice enough guy, always smiling and happy. But little did I know he's a notorious drug dealer with the street name of Cold Killer, or that he'd get me thrown in prison for 10 years...

这一切都始于十一年前五月的一个阳光明媚的日子，当时我借给了我那个叫迪克的白痴姐夫一些钱。他看起来是个很好的人，总是微笑着，很开心。但我不知道他是个臭名昭著的毒贩。他的街名是“冷血杀手”。我从没想到他会把我关进监狱 10 年...

The writer is just telling a story here. Simple. ABCDE...

作者只是在这里讲故事。简单。ABCDE...

Concluding a Feature Story 结尾部分

In the last paragraph the writer might want to connect the whole story back to the beginning.

在最后一段中，作者可能想把整个故事与开头联系起来。

EXAMPLE: So next time someone asks to borrow money from me, I'm going to remember Shakespeare's words, and suggest he get a job and save money the old-fashioned way, the way I do. I learned my lesson, but did all the other Dicks out there learn anything? My advice is, first, don't be a Dick, and second, don't get suckered by a dick brother-in-law!

因此，下次有人向我借钱时，我会记住莎士比亚的话，建议他找份工作，像我一样，用老式的方法省钱。我吸取了教训，但其他人都学到了什么吗？我的建议是，第一，不要做个鸡巴，第二，不要被鸡巴姐夫吸吮！

Feature story writers really have a lot of freedom. To quote the classic "Strunk and White's" book: "Elements of Style" (page 15)

专题故事作家确实有很多自由。引用经典的“斯特拉克·怀特的书”：“风格元素”（第 15 页）

"In some cases the best design is no design as with a love letter which is simply an outpouring, or with a casual essay, which is a ramble."

“在某些情况下，最好的设计是没有设计，就像情书简直是倾盆大雨，或是随随便便的散文一样。”

In my class however, I like a story with some meaning or feeling that makes me wiser, or at least happy for a while.

然而，在我的课堂上，我喜欢一个有意义或感觉的故事，它能让我变得更聪明，至少能让我快乐一段时间。

Feature stories usually have more feelings, detail and description like color, personal histories & location than hard news stories.

特写故事通常比硬新闻故事有更多的情感、细节和描述，如色彩、个人历史和地点。

Feature stories are usually about an event like a dog show or person like a famous martial artist, new style of fashion or other trend, learning experience like advice or Aesop's Fables, giving the reader a chance to more fully experience a life different from their own.

专题故事通常是关于狗展或著名武术家这样的人的事件，时尚的新潮或其他趋势，建议或伊索寓言等学习经验，使读者有机会更充分地体验与自己不同的生活。

Feature story writing is fun and creative, but also takes a lot of work and attention to detail. It has to teach some lesson in life, or at least make the reader feel good. Feature stories are a lot like a painting or great photo. There has to be depth, layers, texture, and feeling.

专题故事的写作既有趣又有创意，但也需要大量的工作和对细节的关注。它必须在生活中教一些教训，或者至少使读者感觉良好。专题故事很像一幅画或精美的照片。必须有深度，层次，纹理和感觉。

Hard news stories are easier to write than feature stories. A computer can write a good hard news story. It's just the facts. Feature story writing is more of an art.

硬新闻故事比专题故事更容易写。一台计算机可以写一个好的“硬新闻”故事。只是事实而已 专题故事写作更多是一门艺术。

Writing an article with an interview 用采访写文章

Interviews can be written using hard or feature news styles. The process is the same.

采访可以采用硬新闻或特色新闻形式进行。过程是相同的。

1. Write the interview questions.
2. Take notes during the interview and record it.
3. Write an introduction to the speaker and event.
4. Type out questions and answers.
5. Add background details to your interview, like the interviewee's facial expressions ("he laughed," "she smiled," "he said with a frown"), and body language. (...he said while repeatedly stabbing the air with his index finger.)
6. You might also want to add background to some of the issues discussed.
7. Add a concluding paragraph which might include thanks to the interviewee.

1.写面试问题。

2.在面试过程中做笔记并记录下来。

3.写一篇演讲人和活动的介绍。

4.输入问题和答案。

5.在面试中加入背景细节，比如被面试者的面部表情（“他笑了”、“她笑了”、“他皱着眉头说”）和肢体语言。（.....他一边说，一边用食指不断地刺伤空气。）

6.您可能还需要为讨论的一些问题添加背景知识。

7.增加一个结尾段落，其中可能包括感谢被采访者。

There are a lot of conventional phrases used with quotes:

有很多传统短语和引语一起使用。

"Bla, bla, bla," he responded when asked about his affair.

"Bla, bla, bla," she replied.

"Bla, bla, bla," he emphasized.

当被问及 YYY 时，他回答说：“XXX。”

“XXX，”她回答。

“XXX，”他强调说。

Mr. Jones made it clear he wasn't going in that direction when he said "Bla, bla, bla."

琼斯先生说“XXX”时明确表示他没有朝那个方向走

Writers can also paraphrase what interviewees say, and just use one word, and/or short phrase quotations:

作者也可以解释受访者所说的话，只需使用一个词和/或短句引用：

Bernie Sanders said Tuesday that it would be “irresponsible” for his loyalists not to support Joe Biden, warning that progressives who “sit on their hands” in the months ahead would simply enable President Donald Trump’s reelection.

伯尼·桑德斯星期二说，不支持乔·拜登的忠诚者是“不负责任的”，他警告说，在未来几个月里“坐视不理”的进步人士只会使唐纳德·特朗普总统连任。

<https://apnews.com/a1bfb62e37fe34e09ff123a58a1329fa?context=10000>

Writing an “Embedded” Interview Article 撰写“嵌入式”面试文章

There are a few different formats a writer can use for interviews.

作者可以使用几种不同的采访格式。

An “embedded interview” means it is written in story form.

“嵌入式访谈”是指以故事的形式进行的访谈。

There are also “transcript interviews.” Those are very simple, but writers rarely use “transcript interviews.” Why? They are usually a little boring.

也有“笔录访谈”。这些非常简单，但是作家很少使用“笔录访谈”。为什么？他们通常有点无聊。

Q: XXX?

A: “XXX”

Q: XXX?

A: “XXX”

Most magazines and newspapers will not publish “transcript interviews,” only “embedded interviews.”

Below briefly explains how to write an “embedded interview:

大多数杂志和报纸不会发布“笔录采访”，而只会发布“嵌入式采访”。下面简要说明了如何编写“嵌入式采访”：

TITLE: Hitler Breaks His Silence!

Byline: Joe Smith

Date: 1/1/1208

标题：希特勒打破沉默！

旁白：乔·史密斯

日期：1/1/1208

(INTRODUCTORY PARAGRAPH) (导言段)

On Friday March 10th, Adolf Hitler came to Golden Road School to interview with our reporter Joe Smith and answer questions regarding his brutal evil murder of six million Jewish people.

3月10日星期五，阿道夫·希特勒来到金路学校接受本报记者乔·史密斯的采访，并回答了有关他残暴邪恶地杀害600万犹太人的问题。

(Paragraph 2 Question and QUOTE) (第2段-问题和报价)

Asked why he felt the need to kill Jewish people, Hitler said “Well, they’re rich and I needed the money. Also, because they’re different and not well understood by most people, it’s easy to make them look evil. Hating them makes the rest of feel very close, all warm and chummy!”

当被问及为什么他觉得有必要杀害犹太人时，希特勒说：“好吧，他们很富有，我需要钱。另外，由于它们是不同的，并且大多数人了解，因此很容易使它们看起来邪恶。讨厌它们会使其余的人感到非常亲切，温暖而快乐！”

(Paragraph 3 - BACKGROUND) (第3段-背景)

This was not the first time in history Jewish people have been targeted for genocide. In 586 BC Nebuchadnezzar – a Babylonian King destroyed the Jewish city of Jerusalem, killing or enslaving everyone. In fact, throughout history the Jewish people have again and again been targeted and murdered. For example Queen Isabel of Spain during the Spanish Inquisition targeted Jewish and Muslim people. As for Hitler he did many other very evil things too.

这不是历史上第一次将犹太人定为种族灭绝目标。公元前586年，尼布甲尼撒-巴比伦国王摧毁了耶路撒冷的犹太城市，杀死或奴役了所有人。实际上，在整个历史中，犹太人民一再遭到袭击和谋杀。例如，西班牙宗教裁判所期间西班牙女王伊莎贝尔(Isabel)针对犹太人和穆斯林人民。至于希特勒，他也做了许多其他非常邪恶的事情。

More interview questions and quotes 更多面试问题和报价

On the subject of attacking Russia, **Hitler said** “Oh, that might have been a mistake...”

When asked about his love affair with Eva Braun **Hitler** didn’t hide his feelings, breaking down into tears and mumbling “Oh, she was really hot.”

关于进攻俄罗斯，希特勒说：“哦，那可能是个错误.....”

当被问及与伊娃·布劳恩(Eva Braun)的恋情时，希特勒没有掩饰自己的感情，泪流满面，喃喃地说：“哦，她真的很热。”

Does he have any regrets? 他有什么遗憾吗?

“Yes,” Hitler responded. I do wish I’d taken more time to smell the flowers while I was alive. Now I’m dead and everybody except for a few crazy evil people really hates me. It’s too late to smell the flowers,” he concluded wistfully.

“是的。”希特勒回答。我确实希望我能花更多的时间在我还活着的时候闻些花香。现在我已经死了，除了少数疯狂的邪恶人物以外，所有人都真的讨厌我。闻花朵为时已晚，”他悲哀地说。

FORMAT ONLY 仅格式

Headline: 标题: _____

Para 1 (INTRODUCTORY PARAGRAPH) 第 1 段 (导言段)

On XXX, 2017, YYY interviewed with our reporter ZZZ and answered his questions regarding AAA.

2017 年 XXX 日, YYY 接受了我们的记者 ZZZ 的采访, 并回答了有关 AAA 的问题。

Para 2 (QUOTE) 第 2 段 (引用受访者的话)

Asked why YYY, XXX said "XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX."

问为什么 YYY, XXX 说"AAAAAAAAAAAAA"。

Para 3 (BACKGROUND) 第 3 段 (背景)

XXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXXX

Para 4 (More interview questions and quotes) 第 4 段 (更多面试问题和报价)

On the subject of YYY XXXXX said "ZZZZZZZZZZZZZZZZ" 在 YYY 的主题上说 "ZZZZZZZZZZZZZZZZZZZZZZZZ"

Para 5 (More interview questions and quotes) 第 5 段 (更多面试题和报价)

When asked about YYYYYYYYYY 当被问及 YYYYYYYYYY

XXXXX responded ZZZZ "YYYYYYYYYYYYY"

(ZZZ can be emotionally, calmly, happily... some adverb)

XXXXX 回复了 ZZZZ "YYYYYYYYYYYYY"

(ZZZ 可以在情感上, 从容地, 快乐地.....一些副词)

Para 6 (More interview questions and quotes) 第 6 段 (更多面试题和报价)

"Interviewer question?" "问题?"

"YYYYYYYY," XXXX responded, "YYYYYYYYYYYYY." XXXX 回答 "YYYYYYY", "YYYYYYY".

Sometimes you might want to include just a few quotes and summarize other things.

有时您可能只想引用几句话, 并总结其他内容。

Example 例子

Asked if former Soviet nations have sports or martial arts associations specifically for former Soviet nations, Yuriy answered "Not officially, though many of us know each other and meet from time to time for one reason or another." In regards to his own martial art background and training I found out he started in Taekwondo at the Kyrgyz State Academy of Physical Education and Sport, however later transitioned into the Kung Fu/Wushu program. After this we discussed the brilliant future ahead for the Central Asian region, especially those nations located along the Silk Road, and Chinese President Xi Jinping's plans for enhanced cooperation and infrastructure development, e.g. the Silk Road Development Plan and Asia Infrastructure Investment Bank.

当被问及前苏联国家是否有专门针对前苏联国家的体育或武术协会时, 尤里回答说“不是正式的, 尽管我们很多人彼此认识, 有时也会因为某种原因见面, “关于他自己的武术背景和训练, 我发现他是从吉尔吉斯国家体育学院跆拳道开始的, 但后来过渡到功夫/武术项目。

之后，我们讨论了中亚地区，特别是丝绸之路沿线国家的美好未来，以及中国国家主席习近平关于加强合作和基础设施建设的计划，如丝绸之路发展计划和亚洲基础设施投资银行。

Other sample interview formats: 其他面试格式示例:

After years of controversy, Mikey Mouse has broken his silence in an exclusive interview at Golden Rule School with our own reporter Jack Jones.

“First of all, I’d like to thank you for coming to talk with us today Mikey. Can you tell us a little about yourself?”

“Well, I’m just a mouse created by Walt Disney back in 1928. I was pretty successful though, and have a girlfriend named Mini.”

“Gee, that’s wonderful Mikey. How’s your relationship going?”

“Not too good actually. She’s getting older now and spends all her time watching TV and eating chocolate, so she’s a bit overweight.”

Gee, I’m sorry to hear that Mikey. How’s your professional career going?

“I’m doing pretty well. I have lots of work at different Disney Lands keeping the kids happy, so the money’s OK.”

Having starred in more than 60 movies and being 89 years old Mikey Mouse is apparently still doing great.

“Thanks Mikey!”

“Well, thank you Mr. Reporter!”

经过多年的争议后，Mikey Mouse 在 Golden Rule School 与我们自己的记者 Jack Jones 进行的独家采访中打破了沉默。

“首先，我要感谢您今天与 Mikey 聊天。您能告诉我们一些您的情况吗？”

“好吧，我只是沃尔特·迪斯尼（Walt Disney）于 1928 年发明的鼠标。虽然我非常成功，但有个女友叫 Mini。”

“吉，这真是奇妙的 Mikey。你的关系怎么样？”

“实际上不太好。她现在正在变老，花了所有时间看电视和吃巧克力，所以她有点超重。”

很抱歉听到 Mikey。您的职业生涯如何？

“我过得很好。我在迪斯尼乐园的许多地方工作，让孩子们开心，所以钱还可以。”

出演过 60 多部电影，享年 89 岁的 Mikey Mouse 显然仍然做得很好。

“谢谢 Mikey！”

“好，谢谢记者先生！”

What is the format for the above? 上面的格式是什么？

Introduction - Question - Quote - Comment - Question - Quote - Comment - Question - Quote - Wrap-up summary - Thanks

简介 - 问题 报价 - 评论 问题 - 报价 评论 - 问题 报价 - 总结 谢谢

What is the format for an “embedded interview?” “嵌入式采访”的格式是什么？

1. Introduction

2. Question as part of a sentence: Example: “Asked why (or what, or when, or where, or how) s/he...” followed by a quote.

3. A little background on that issue.

4. Question as part of a sentence followed by quote: “In regards to, XXX said “XXX.”

5. Maybe some background on that issue: Historically this has been a thorny issue...

6. Sometimes you want to quote the interviewee, sometimes you want to summarize what s/he said.

7. Ask some question about the future, his/her plans: “What major projects are you thinking about developing in the future?”

8. Conclusion - Summarize major points: Through his/her hard work and devotion to scientific research, Mr./Ms. XXX has raised the public’s awareness on the critically important issue of... and his/her ongoing research will stay in the spotlight of international attention for decades and maybe centuries to come.

1.简介

2.作为句子一部分的问题：示例：“问他/他.....的原因（或什么，何时，何地，或在何处或如何）.....”，后接引号。

3.关于这个问题的一些背景。

4.作为句子一部分的问题，后面加引号：“关于，XXX说“XXX”。

5.也许在那个问题上有一些背景：从历史上看这是一个棘手的问题.....

6.有时您想引述受访者，有时则想总结他/她所说的话。

7.问一些关于未来的问题，他/她的计划：“您考虑在未来发展哪些重大项目？”

8.结论-总结要点：先生/女士通过他/她的辛勤工作和对科学研究的热忱。XXX已经提高了公众对.....这一至关重要的问题的认识，他/她正在进行的研究将继续受到国际关注，这将持续数十年甚至几个世纪。

Reporting/Journalism Vocabulary 报告/新闻词汇

Protest (noun or verb) – Individual or group publicly objecting to something.

抗议（名词或动词）–公开反对某事的个人或团体。

Publication (noun) Publish (verb) Usually newspaper, magazine, book, newsletter or some other printed information

出版（名词）出版（动词）通常是报纸，杂志，书籍，时事通讯或其他印刷信息

Relevant (Adj.) Meaningful and important now

相关（调整）现在有意义且重要

A reasonably balanced article must at least mention both sides of an issue, but can subtly promote one view point over another. Why? Sometimes one side of an issue is more ethical than the other, at least in the writer’s opinion.

合理平衡的文章至少必须提到问题的两个方面，但可以巧妙地将一个观点推向另一个观点。为什么？有时候，至少从作者的角度来看，一个问题的一方比另一方更具道德性。

Perspective viewpoint 透视图=视点

Bias 偏见 (noun) biased (adjective) prejudice

Propaganda is what the “other side” says about something. What I say is the truth, what those “bad people” say is propaganda! 宣传是“另一面”所说的话。我说的是事实，那些“坏人”说的是宣传！

Ethics (noun) Ethical (adjective) are a code of conduct involving knowing what is good and bad, right and wrong, and are essential to building credibility 是一种行为准则，涉及到了解什么是好是弊，对与错，这对于树立信誉至关重要 ()

Violate (verb) violation (违反 noun) to break a rule or social convention. Sometimes it means to harm. 违反规则或社会惯例。有时，这意味着伤害。

Theme (主题 noun) the underlying and important message in a communication 沟通中的基本和重要信息

Format (noun or verb) The structure using in writing, for meetings and other formal activities
格式（名词或动词）用于写作，会议和其他正式活动的结构

Background information 背景资料 context to news stories

Quotation (语录 noun) To write or repeat exactly what a book, article, or someone else says
写或重复书，文章或其他人所说的内容

Controversial (adjective) Controversy (noun) An issue that people have very different points of view on
有争议的（形容词）人们对此有不同的看法

Fanfare (noun) Something that gets a lot of public attention 夸张（名词）引起公众广泛关注的事物

Yellow journalism Something that exploits, distorts or otherwise exaggerates the news to attract attention and get more readers. Yellow journalism is considered very unprofessional and unethical.
黄色新闻利用，歪曲或以其他方式夸大新闻的东西，以引起注意并吸引更多读者。黄色新闻被认为是非常不专业和不道德的。

Sensationalism (noun) Sensationalize (verb) Making something seem a lot more exciting than it is or should be; similar to yellow journalism

耸人听闻的（形容词）使某件事看起来比它本应或应该激动得多 类似于黄色新闻

Paparazzi (noun) Photographers that like to follow stars around and are usually very annoying and sometimes dangerous 狗仔队（名词）摄影师喜欢跟随周围的星星，通常很烦人，有时很危险

Bully (verb 欺负 and noun 恶棍) A person group or nation that abuses power over another person, group or nation. 滥用权力的人团体或国家。

Shock (noun 震撼, 冲击, 打击 or verb) **Shocking** (adj.) hit, attack or surprise in a bad way

Borrow (借用（动词） verb) Take and use (something belonging to someone else) with the intention of returning it. 取回和使用（属于他人的东西）以期将其退还。

Lend (verb – the act of lending) To give something to another person on the condition that the borrower will return it later 借出（动词-借出的行为）在借贷者稍后归还某物的条件下把某物给另一个人

Rhetorical Question A spoken or written question used when person doesn't expect an answer

修辞性问题-当人们不希望回答时使用的口头或书面问题

Outpouring (verb) The outflow of something; it could be water, emotion or protest

外流（动词）某物的流出；外流 可能是水，情感或抗议

Casual (adjective) relaxed, natural; the opposite of formal 休闲（形容词）轻松自然 与形式相反

Dimension (noun) The measure of one or more directions, or different ways of experiencing and describing things, events or people

维度（名词）对一个或多个方向或体验和描述事物，地点，事件，思想或人物的不同方式的度量

Interview (noun or verb) An event where one person asks another person questions for some purpose.

面试（名词或动词）一个人出于某种目的问另一个人问题的事件。

Interviewee (noun) The person who answers questions in an interview

受访者（名词）受访者回答问题的人

Practice Questions: Writing an Article 练习题：撰写文章

1. Write the headline and lead paragraph of an article based on the following information:

Protesting (抗议)

Washington DC

Thousands of zombies (the walking dead 僵尸)

Yesterday

Demanding better food

Headline: _____

Byline: _____

2. What can the writer put in the paragraph after the lead paragraph?

- a. Predictions about the future
- b. Opinions of the publisher
- c. Quotes and/or background
- d. The writer's own opinions

3. Name two famous Chinese and two famous American publications

4. What does the word “relevant” mean?

- a. When cost outweighs demand
- b. Meaningful and important now
- c. The opposite of antiquated
- d. Hopeful

5. What part of speech is relevant?

- a. Noun
- b. Verb
- c. Adjective
- d. Adverb

6. A reasonably balanced article _____

- a. Must show both sides of an issue exactly equally
- b. Must at least mention both sides of an issue, but can subtly promote one view point over another
- c. a and b above
- d. Neither a nor b

7. Perspective means _____.

- a. The same as aristocracy
- b. Different kinds of people
- c. Viewpoint
- d. Magnifying issues rather than keeping them balanced

8. Bias

- a. Means the same as prejudice
- b. Means turning sideways
- c. Implies fairness
- d. Is required in all news stories

9. Propaganda

- a. Is the good news in a news publication or broadcast
- b. Is usually true
- c. Is usually biased
- d. Is what the “other side” says about something

10. Ethics

- a. Are annoying for journalists
- b. Are essential to build credibility
- c. Promote nationalism
- d. Make flowers fall from the sky

11. Violate

- a. Means to break something
- b. Means helping another person or group
- c. Is usually done by most responsible news organizations
- d. Usually happens on holidays and during special events

12. Theme

- a. A part of the substructure, like a subtopic
- b. Should never be mentioned in the conclusion
- c. The underlying and important message in a communication
- d. The use of emotions in arts including writing, music and dance

13. Format

- a. Freestyle, a liberal interpretation of relevant topics
- b. Purpose for doing something
- c. A legal necessity for all writers
- d. Structure

14. Background information

- a. Gives important context to news stories
- b. Useless information that is edited out of most stories.
- c. The secret story most people never hear
- d. The real point of the story

15. Quote

- a. What someone thinks but never says
- b. Exactly what someone says
- c. What is implied
- d. Always comes just before the last paragraph

16. Controversial

- a. An issue that people have very different points of view about
- b. Something that everyone agrees with
- c. Time tested formulas for writing articles
- d. A story topic that shouldn't be written about

17. Fanfare

- a. Something fans have to pay for
- b. A fast way to get a story
- c. Something that gets a lot of public attention
- d. A waste of time and money for advertising agencies

18. Yellow journalism

- a. Something that exploits, distorts or otherwise exaggerates the news to attract attention and get more readers
- b. News that has sex in it
- c. A failure to report important news when it's really needed by the public
- d. Jaundiced writing

19. Sensationalism

- a. The way a news article should be written, as compared to boring.
- b. An article that uses a lot of sensory information about sights, sounds, feelings, smells and tastes.
- c. Making something seem a lot more exciting than it is or should be, the same as yellow journalism
- d. Making something seem less exciting than it really is for political purposes. The opposite of yellow journalism

20. Paparazzi

- a. Photographers that like to follow stars around and are usually very annoying
- b. Reporters that go to wars and other dangerous places
- c. The people who own newspapers and magazines
- d. A part of speech similar to adverbs except only used with prepositional clauses

21. A bully is a person or nation that _____.

- a. Abuses his, her, or its power to hurt someone who is less powerful.
- b. A trader of information, usually across national borders
- c. A part of the printing process used at magazines and newspapers
- d. The stage of writing after editing before sending the article to the editor

22. Shocking

- a. The result of not enough attention paid to an important issue
- b. The use of “soft power”
- c. A kind of photograph that uses pastel colors instead of vivid bright colors
- d. Very surprising in a bad way

23. Rhetorical Question

- a. A question with no answer
- b. A question to which a person doesn't expect an answer
- c. A question that has never been answered
- d. A question that has confused scientists for centuries

24. What is outpouring?

- a. The outflow of something; it could be water, emotion or protest
- b. When somebody or something is out of something else, like a politician out of ideas
- c. The blockage of ideas, or words
- d. What happens in baseball when someone from the opposite team holding the ball touches the person who just hit the ball

25. Casual

- a. Very formal
- b. The opposite of formal
- c. The capital city of Uganda
- d. Similar to a canal, except the water flows in the opposite direction nature intended

26. Dimension

- a. The measure of one or more directions, or different ways of experiencing and describing things, events or people
- b. A color between purple and violet
- c. The form of currency used by traders in the international marketplace
- d. Dirty money

27. Interview

- a. The place where sports events are held
- b. A good place from which to take photos
- c. The place in between cause and effect
- d. An event where one person asks another person questions for some purpose.

28. Interviewee

- a. The person in an interview that asks the questions
- b. The person in an interview that records the interview
- c. The person that takes photos during an interview
- d. The person who answers questions in an interview

29. Is the following written in a hard or feature news style?

Yesterday the Golden Eagles basketball team beat the Haidian Tigers Basketball team in Haidian with a score of 102 to 2. It was a great victory for the new Golden Eagles Basketball team that only started competing in city-wide intramural sports games last year.

- a. Hard news
- b. Feature news
- c. Both
- d. Neither

30. In an interview, the Golden Eagles star center player Amber Smith said: “It was a tough game. Those Haidian players really are good. Fortunately, thanks to our new coach Pierre we had the skills to win decisively...”

Here the reporter _____ Amber Smith.

- a. hyperventilated
- b. asphyxiated
- c. defibrillated
- d. quoted

Bonus Questions 奖励问题

1. Is the following written with a hard or feature news style?

It was a glorious day for the Purple Dragons Basketball team. The sun was shining, spirits were high and the ferocious Dragons came out as master of the game by smashing the Dongchao Basketball team with a score of 102 to 2. The Green Dragon’s basketball team is a newbie on the intermural scene here in Beijing, but brought home the bacon with this spectacular win...

对于紫龙篮球队来说，这是光荣的一天。阳光灿烂，情绪高昂，凶猛的巨龙以 102：2 的比分击败了东超篮球队，成为了比赛的高手。这场壮观的胜利把培根带回家了。(To “bring home the bacon” means to bring home something that was earned.) (“将培根带回家”意味着将所赚取的东西带回家。)

Check one of the following:

- a. Hard news ____
- b. Feature news ____

2. What fundamental principle (基本原理) of news writing is violated (被侵犯) in the following Feature/Opinion article?

Ugly Duckling Uniforms 丑小鸭制服

School uniforms are stupid, we all hate them and they’re ugly. We feel like we are prisoners or soldiers, not teenage high school students. When I think about my uniform I want to vomit (呕吐). They make me sick and all my friends sick. Everybody hates them. They’re so stupid. What’s wrong with the principle? I don’t even want to look in a mirror with a school uniform on...

校服很愚蠢，我们都讨厌它们，而且丑陋。我们觉得自己是囚犯或士兵，而不是初中生。当我想到我的制服时，我想呕吐。他们让我恶心，让我所有的朋友恶心。每个人都讨厌他们。他们是如此愚蠢。这个原理怎么了？我甚至不想看镜子，穿着校服的.....

- a. **Relevance**
- b. **Timeliness**
- c. **Public interest**
- d. **Balance**

Text Type 3 - Writing a Speech 文字类型 3-撰写演讲

Speeches are King. To write a great speech you need lofty (崇高的) high minded (高尚的) phrases (短语), and hopeful (充满希望的) powerful images (强大的图像) conveyed with words (传达的话). A good speech lifts the audience up high to glorious new levels (新的水平).

I like humor in a speech, but most great speeches in history didn't contain humor - none - zero.

我喜欢演讲中的幽默，但历史上大多数伟大的演讲都没有幽默-没有-零。

They were very serious because they announced some profound events, ideals, needs, grievances and/or hopes and dreams, so humor wasn't appropriate to the times and events they were writing and speaking about.

他们之所以认真，是因为他们宣布了一些重大事件，理想，需要，委屈和/或希望和梦想，因此幽默不适合他们所写和谈论的时代和事件。

A high school graduation speech on the other hand celebrates a profound event, identifies some shared ideals, common experiences and hopes and dreams for the future. It most certainly can contain humor.

另一方面，高中毕业典礼则庆祝了一场重大事件，确定了一些共同的理想，共同的经验以及对未来的希望和梦想。它肯定可以包含幽默。

Most speeches are formal and so need a formal greeting. They should be inspirational, lofty, touching, and most important, sincere. They may or may not contain humor depending on the event. A good speech usually includes hopeful powerful images and adding some personal experience can build some psychological identification with the audience. A conclusion that summarizes your main points and hopes for the future is usually a good idea.

大多数演讲是正式的，因此需要正式的问候。他们应该是鼓舞人心，崇高，感人，最重要的是真诚。根据事件的不同，它们可能包含幽默也可能不包含幽默。良好的演讲通常包括充满希望的有力形象，并增加一些个人经验可以建立与听众的心理认同。一个总结您的主要观点和对未来的希望的结论通常是一个好主意。

The internal structure of a speech can follow the same guidelines as an essay, or it can be based around a story. In either case a structured beginning and ending are required. Summative introductions and conclusions help listeners understand and remember the content of the speech. Ending a speech with a dramatic prediction or hope of the future is also powerful, memorable and inspirational.

演讲的内部结构可以遵循与论文相同的指导原则，也可以围绕故事进行。无论哪种情况，都需要结构化的开始和结束。总结性介绍和结论可帮助听众理解和记住演讲内容。以戏剧性的预测或对未来的希望结束演讲也是有力，令人难忘和鼓舞人心的。

Yes MY friends, tonight at midnight that giant flaming meteor is going to shatter our atmosphere and crash into the earth; and yes, we'll either be burned alive in a firestorm or sucked out into space and frozen like ice cubes, but WE'RE GOING TO ENJOY THESE LAST FEW HOURS TOGETHER!

是的，我的朋友们，今晚午夜，巨大的火焰状流星将粉碎我们的大气层并坠入地球；是的，我们要么在大火中被烧死，要么被吸进太空并像冰块一样冻结，所以我们要一起享受这最后几个小时！

Quiz on Writing a speech 撰写演讲测验

1. When introducing a speech, the greeting should USUALLY be _____.
 - a. Casual
 - b. Abstract
 - c. Formal
 - d. Touching

2. A good speech is _____.
 - a. Inspirational
 - b. sincere
 - c. funny and/or touching
 - d. a, b & c

3. Good elements to add to a speech include _____.
 - a. philosophical meanderings
 - b. depression
 - c. hopeful powerful images
 - d. bile

4. Adding some _____ can help a lot to build _____ with the audience.
 - a. personal experience/identification
 - b. pretentiousness / antagonism
 - c. silliness / regression
 - d. arrogance / rejection

5. A short but complete _____ summarizing your major points and _____ is usually good at the end.
- demarcation/conjecture
 - flatulence/apostrophe
 - subtopic/details
 - conclusion/hope for the future

Read Some Famous Speeches 阅读一些著名的演讲

My favorite speeches include:

American slave Frederick Douglass, delivered a Speech July 5, 1852, most eloquently asking: **“What is the Slave to do on the 4th of July?”** Its truths echo across the centuries most clearly and unambiguously.

美国奴隶弗雷德里克·道格拉斯（Frederick Douglass）在 1852 年 7 月 5 日发表演讲，最雄辩地问：“奴隶在 7 月 4 日做什么？”它的真相在几个世纪中最为清晰明确地回响。

https://en.wikisource.org/wiki/What_to_the_Slave_is_the_Fourth_of_July%3F

葛底斯堡演说，亚伯拉罕·林肯，1863 年 11 月 19 日 The Gettysburg Address, by Abraham Lincoln
November 19, 1863

<http://www.abrahamlincolnonline.org/lincoln/speeches/gettysburg.htm>

"I Have a Dream," Speech by Dr. Martin Luther King, Address Delivered at the March on Washington for Jobs and Freedom, August 28, 1963

马丁路德金博士（Martin Luther King）的演讲“我有一个梦想”，1963 年 8 月 28 日在华盛顿 3 月发表的关于求职与自由的演讲

<https://kinginstitute.stanford.edu/king-papers/documents/i-have-dream-address-delivered-march-washington-jobs-and-freedom>

"I Will Fight No More Forever," Surrender Speech by Chief Joseph of the Nez Perce
Delivered October 5, 1877 at Bears Paw

内兹珀斯人首席约瑟夫投降演说：“我将永远战斗下去”1877 年 10 月 5 日在 Bears Paw 交付

<http://www2.gsu.edu/~eslmlm/chiefjoseph.html>

There are many others. 还有很多。

Michael Jordon's Retirement Speech

有些学生喜欢阅读迈克尔·乔丹（Michael Jordan）的退休演讲

<http://www.nba.com/jordan/transcript.html>

Franklin D. Roosevelt - The only thing we have to fear is fear itself – (March 4th 1933) 我们唯一要担心的就是恐惧本身– (1933年3月4日) –富兰克林·罗斯福 (Franklin D. Roosevelt)

Freedom or Death, Emmeline Pankhurst, November 13th, 1913 –

自由或死亡, 艾米琳·潘库斯特 (Emmeline Pankhurst), 1913年11月13日

<https://www.biographyonline.net/speeches/freedom-death.html>

Speech Writing Project 演讲写作项目

1. An unimaginably huge meteor came out of nowhere and is about to hit the earth probably killing everyone on earth. Your job is to write a speech to be read to the entire world and somehow keep everyone hopeful and calm in what is probably the last hour of their lives.

一颗巨大的流星即将撞击地球，可能会杀死地球上的所有人。您的工作是写演讲给全世界听，以某种方式使每个人在生命的最后时刻充满希望和平静。

2. Two of your best friends just got married and you're going to make a speech at the wedding reception dinner.

您有两个最好的朋友刚结婚，您将在结婚宴会上致辞。

3. Your school's basketball team is about to compete against the best team in the league. You've got to prepare a speech to inspire and motivate your team to win!

您学校的篮球队即将与联盟中最好的球队竞争。您必须准备演讲才能激发团队胜利！

4. You just won the Nobel Prize. You now have to write a "Thank You" speech for the judges on the Nobel Prize committee and all the people that supported and believed in you when you were doing your research.

您刚刚获得了诺贝尔奖。您现在必须为诺贝尔奖委员会的法官以及所有在您进行研究时支持并相信您的人们写“谢谢”演讲。

5. Some very hungry crazy aliens have taken over the earth and the people of the earth have elected you to write a speech for the aliens explaining why they should not start killing and eating people.

一些饥肠辘辘的疯狂外星人占领了地球，地球上的人们选你为外星人写一篇演讲稿，解释为什么他们不应该开始杀人和吃人。

Text Type 4 - Business Proposal 文字类型 4-商业计划书

There are many different kinds of business proposals: 有许多不同的商业计划书:

Basic Types of Business Proposals 商业计划书的基本类型

New Company Start-Up 新公司成立

When people start a new company, they usually need more money so they write a proposal to help them get more money.

当人们创办一家新公司时，他们通常需要更多的钱，所以他们会写一份提案来帮助他们获得更多的钱。

Joint Venture Project 合资项目

When one company wants another company to work with them on a project, they will write a proposal for a joint venture, which means they'll work together. Usually this happens when one company is too small to do a big project by itself.

当一家公司希望另一家公司与他们合作一个项目时，他们会为一个合资企业写一份建议书，这意味着他们会合作。通常情况下，当一家公司太小，无法独立完成一个大项目时，就会发生这种情况。

Merger 合并

Sometimes two companies want to join together to become one bigger company, so usually one of them will write a proposal for a merger and present it to the other. That proposal will describe all the advantages of a merger.

有时两个公司想联合起来成为一个更大的公司，所以通常他们中的一个会写一份合并的建议，然后提交给另一个。这项提议将说明合并的所有好处。

Acquisition 收购

Acquisition Proposals are usually written when one company wants to “eat” another company. Usually one of those companies is having financial problems, and the other is willing to buy it. Often in acquisitions, the bigger stronger company just takes apart the smaller company which ceases to exist, unless they have a contract that ensures the survival of the smaller company that's getting “eaten.”

当一家公司想“吃掉”另一家公司时，通常会写下收购提案。通常这些公司中有一家是有财务问题的。另一个愿意买。通常在收购中，实力越强的大公司会从规模较小的公司带走一些人，然后杀死规模较小的公司。有时小公司会要求签订一份保证小公司生存的合同。

Big projects often require financial projections and other information in a separate document called a “feasibility study.” These are easy to research on the internet. Below are some basic Proposal models that include very basic concepts regarding capital requirements (start-up costs), overhead (month to month costs), and predicted revenue.

大型项目通常需要在一份叫做“可行性研究”的单独文件中提供财务预测和其他信息。这些都很容易在互联网上进行研究。下面是一些基本的提案模型，其中包括关于资本要求（启动成本）、管理费用（月到月成本）和预测收入的非常基本的概念。

Proposal Templates 投标模板

建议模板

Microsoft Office has templates for many different kinds of proposals: Microsoft Office 为许多不同类型的业务计划书提供了模板:

Business Plan Proposal 商业计划书提案

Project Proposal 项目建议书

Services Proposal 服务建议

Etc.

Below is a simple Business Plan proposal format adapted from one of Microsoft's templates.

下面是一个简单的商业计划书格式，改编自微软的一个模板。

Your Name

Founder 创办人

New Business Name 新的商业名称

Proposed location of new business 新业务的建议地点

Proposal Summary 商业计划书摘要

Business Description 业务描述

Vision 概览/愿景

Target Audience 目标听众

Goal 目标

Revenue 收入

1st Year Costs (第一年的费用) (2nd year, 5th year)

1st Year Revenue (第一年的费用) (2nd year, 5th year)

Estimated Growth / First Year (预计增长/第一年)

Future Development (未来发展)

EXAMPLE:

Sample New Business 1 新业务示例 1

Pet Vacation Wonderland 新业务 1: 宠物度假仙境

Mr. John Smith

Founder

Pet Vacation Wonderland

Beijing, China

约翰·史密斯先生

创始人

宠物度假仙境

中国北京

Proposal Summary 提案摘要

Pet Vacation Wonderland will take care of family pets while they're away on vacation or on other extended leave away from home.

宠物度假仙境将在您休假或其他长时间不在家的时候照顾家庭宠物。

Business Description 业务描述

Pet Vacation Wonderland offers the customer's pet a happy home when they're away for a short or long time. At any time during the customers traveling they can video conference with their pet to give or receive comfort and happiness. All kinds of pets can be accommodated, including dogs, cats, birds, fish, ferrets, hamsters, turtles, snakes, monkeys, and so on. Video conferencing with the customers' pet will incur no additional charge. Pet Vacation Wonderland employs animal specialists who will really understand and care for the total health and happiness of the customer's pets while they're away.

宠物假期仙境为客户的宠物短暂或长时间的旅途提供了一个幸福的家。在客户旅行期间的任何时间，他们都可以与宠物进行视频会议，以给予或接受舒适感和幸福感。可以容纳各种宠物，包括狗，猫，鸟，鱼，雪貂，仓鼠，乌龟，蛇，猴子等。与客户的宠物进行视频会议不会产生任何额外费用。Pet Vacation Wonderland (宠物美丽世界) 聘请了动物专家，他们会真正地了解和关心客户宠物在旅途中的整体健康和幸福。

Vision 愿景

Pet Vacation Wonderland will allow pet owners the confidence and security they need to travel without worrying about their pet.

宠物度假仙境将使宠物主人旅行所需的信心和安全感，而不必担心宠物。

Target Audience 目标观众

Users of this service will be mostly pet owners, though in some cases pet shop owners may wish to use our services to care for their animals that might need a little extra grooming, and or health care.

该服务的用户主要是宠物主人，尽管在某些情况下，宠物店主人可能希望使用我们的服务来照顾可能需要额外修饰和/或保健的动物。

Goal 目标

Simplifying pet care for owners who will be away will offer the customer emotional security and freedom to take vacations and go on extended travel without the stress or anxiety involved with leaving a pet with strangers.

简化将要出差的主人的宠物照管工作，将为客户提供情感上的安全感，使他们可以放假和自由出游，而在与心爱的宠物交往陌生人时不会感到压力或焦虑。

Revenue Model 收益模式

Fees are charged at a rate of \$30.00 to \$50.00 per 24-hour period depending on the kind of pet involved. Additional costs may be incurred in the care for pets like tigers and kangaroos.

Discount rates will be offered for stays longer than one week, one month, three months, six months and one year.

收费标准为每 24 小时\$ 30.00 至\$ 50.00，具体取决于所涉宠物的种类。照顾老虎和袋鼠等宠物可能会产生额外费用。

入住超过一周，一个月，三个月，六个月和一年的客人将享受折扣价。

1st Year Costs

Interior construction and design - capital investment 室内建设与设计-资本投资	\$
Pet Vacation Wonderland Staff (9) 宠物度假仙境员工（9） - Two managers, two groomers, five caretakers 两名经理，两名美容师，五个看护人	\$
Property Security Deposit and one-year lease 财产保证金和一年租约	\$
Marketing 营销学	\$
Utilities 实用工具	\$
Furniture, cages, etc. 家具，笼子等	\$
Insurance for employees 员工健康保险	\$
Insurance for pets 宠物保险	\$
Total: 总:	\$

1st Year Revenue, Costs and Net profit 第一年收入，成本和净利润

Gross Income 总收入	\$
- Costs (Startup capital + overhead) - 成本（启动资金+间接费用）	\$
Net Profit 净利	\$

Estimated Growth first year 第一年的估计增长

2,000 customers 名客户

The average customer keeps a pet with PetVacation Wonderland for one week.

普通顾客在“宠物度假仙境”中养宠物一周

Average transaction fee: \$ _____. 平均交易费用: \$ _____。

Future Development 未来发展

To incorporate a mobile app so pet owners can remotely visit their pets while they're away.

结合使用移动应用程序，以便宠物主人可以在宠物不在时远程访问他们的宠物。

For further details and partnership information, please contact:

有关更多详细信息和合作伙伴信息，请联系：

John Smith

Founder@ PetVacationWonderland.com

999-999-9999

约翰·史密斯

创始人@ PetVacationWonderland.com

999-999-9999

Sample New Business 2 新业务示例 2

Autonomous Landmine Shredding Sweeper factory

新业务 2：自治的地雷粉碎扫地机工厂

Mr. John Smith 约翰·史密斯先生

Founder 创办人

Establish and Build Autonomous Landmine Shredding Sweeper

自治地雷吃清扫车

Beijing, China

Proposal Summary 提案摘要

According to Care.org, there are 110 million anti-personnel mines in the ground and another 250 million stockpiled in at least 108 countries around the world. Between 5 and 10 million more mines are produced each year, benefiting the producers \$50 to \$180 million annually.

The following Autonomous Landmine Shredding Sweeper (ALSS) can be manufactured with permission and assistance from Swiss NGO, Digger Foundation. The Digger Foundation is a not-for-profit organisation recognised as a public utility in Switzerland.

根据 Care.org 的调查，地面上有 1.1 亿枚杀伤人员地雷，全球至少 108 个国家有 2.5 亿枚杀伤人员地雷。每年再生产 5 至 1000 万枚地雷，使生产者每年受益 50 至 1.8 亿美元。

在瑞士非政府组织 **Digger Foundation** 的许可和协助下，可以制造以下自动地雷切屑清扫机（ALSS）。**Digger** 基金会是一家非营利性组织，在瑞士被公认为公用事业。

<https://foundation.digger.ch/foundation/mine-clearance/>

The ALSS looks like a tank but it has a high speed rotating metal smashing tungsten steel shredder in front that in most cases destroys the landmines before they explode, and can withstand explosions of up to 5 kg. of Semtex explosive without damage. They can be remotely controlled by humans up to 500 meters distance. See: ALSS

看起来像坦克，但其前方有高速旋转的金属粉碎钨钢粉碎机，在大多数情况下，地雷在爆炸前将其摧毁，并能承受高达 5 千克的爆炸。**Semtex** 爆炸物没有损坏。它们可以由人类控制，最大距离为 500 米。看到：<https://spectrum.ieee.org/autotom/robotics/military-robots/unstoppable-robot-eats-landmines-for-breakfast>

Gansu has one of the lowest per capita GDP income rates in China. The 2017 GDP per capita income of residents in Gansu province ranked 31 out of 31 provinces with annual income of only CNY 29,326. 00

甘肃省是中国人均 GDP 收入最低的国家之一。2017 年甘肃省居民人均 GDP 收入在 31 个省中排名第 31 位，年收入仅为 29,326 元人民币。

This proposal is designed for job creation, specifically ALSS manufacturing. In 2014 there was an order from the national government to close many of their steel factories. Thus, there are many empty factory buildings and unemployed people.

A factory producing an Autonomous Landmine Shredding Sweeper does not produce emissions likely to contribute to air pollution as this can simply be an assembly plant using parts manufactured elsewhere on subcontract.

This factory will contribute to human safety in conflict zones where landmines are used, will be a 100% export industry benefitting the national economy, and help produce skilled manufacturing jobs in Gansu.

该提议是为创造就业机会而设计的，特别是 ALSS 制造。2014 年，中央政府下令关闭许多钢铁厂。因此，有许多空旷的厂房和失业人员。生产自主地雷清扫机的工厂不会产生可能造成空气污染的排放物，因为这可以简单地是一个组装工厂，使用分包商在其他地方制造的零件。该工厂将为使用地雷的冲突地区的人们安全做出贡献，将成为使国民经济受益的 100% 出口行业，并有助于在甘肃创造熟练的制造业就业机会。

Business Description 业务描述

Build a factory for assembly of ALSS from parts manufactured by subcontract in other parts of China. This will be a not-for-profit private company with all profits/revenue invested in expansion of manufacturing facilities and research into other landmine clearing technologies. 在中国其他地区建立分包生产的零件组装 ALSS 的工厂。这是一家非营利性私人公司，其所有利润/收入都将用于扩大生产设施和研究其他排雷技术。

Vision 愿景

1. Making the world a safer place for people living in or near conflict zones.
2. Provide sustainable employment income for Gansu Province residents

- 1.使世界成为生活在冲突地区或冲突地区附近的人民更安全的地方。
- 2.为甘肃省居民提供可持续的就业收入

Target Audience 目标受众

National governments, NGOs & militaries that want to clear landmines.

希望清除地雷的国家政府、非政府组织和军队。

Goal 目标

Prevent landmine deaths: 防止地雷造成的死亡:

An estimated 15,000 to 20,000 people are killed or maimed by landmines every year, according to the International Campaign to Ban Landmines.

据国际禁止地雷运动估计，每年有 15 000 至 20 000 人被地雷炸死或致残。

In Cambodia children account for up to 50 per cent of landmines casualties, according to the Cambodian Red Cross. In Somalia more than 55 per cent of landmines victims are children, according to the 2003 Landmine Impact Survey.

根据柬埔寨红十字会的数椐，在柬埔寨，儿童占地雷伤亡人数的 50%。根据 2003 年地雷影响调查，在索马里，55%以上的地雷受害者是儿童。

Children are often attracted by the intriguing and colorful appearance of landmines and explosive remnants of war.

儿童常常被地雷和战争遗留爆炸物的迷人和多彩的外观所吸引。

Children are far more likely to die from land mine injuries than adults. An estimated 85 percent of child victims of landmines die before reaching the hospital.

儿童死于地雷伤害的可能性远远高于成人。估计 85%的地雷受害儿童在到达医院前死亡。

https://www.unicef.org/french/protection/files/Landmines_Factsheet_04_LTR_HD.pdf

Revenue Model 收益模型

Cost of parts + assembly per ALSS manufactured in Gansu has been calculated at USD150,000 per unit. They can be sold for USD175,000 per unit with transportation costs paid by the buyer. So far potential buyers in 34 countries have been identified by our marketing team. Proposed ALSS assembly plant will be able to manufacture 25-35 units per week depending on parts supply.

甘肃制造的每台 ALSS 的零件+装配成本按每台 150000 美元计算。每件售价为 17500 美元，运输费用由买方支付。到目前为止，我们的营销团队已经确定了 34 个国家的潜在买家。拟议的 ALSS 装配厂将能够根据零件供应情况每周制造 25-35 台。

1st Year Costs 第一年费用

Infrastructure 基础设施	\$5,000,000
ALSS engineering & construction staff, management, etc. ALSS 工程建设人员、管理人员等。	\$500,000
Property Lease 物业租赁	Land donated by government
Marketing 营销	\$ 35,000

1st Year Revenue 第一年收入

Gross Income 总收入	\$
- Costs -费用	\$
Net Profit 净利	\$

Estimated Growth 2nd year 预计第二年增长

Increase sales above first year of 300 units sold 首年销量+ 300 台

Estimated Growth 3rd year 第三年预计增长

Increase sales above second year of 500 units sold 第二年销量+ 500 件

Estimated Growth 5th year 第 5 年预计增长

Increase sales above fourth year of 500 units sold 第四年销量+ 500 件

Future Development 未来发展

Factory/plant expansions and duplication in addition to factory/plants needed for newly designed landmine sweeping technologies by R&D department.

除了研发部门新设计的扫雷技术所需的工厂之外，工厂/工厂也将进行扩建和复制。

For further details and partnership information, please contact:

有关更多详细信息和合作伙伴信息，请联系：

John Smith

Founder@ PetVacationWonderland.com

999-999-9999

Ideas for student New Business Proposals 学生新业务建议的想法

- Drone zappers (detect and zap drones launched by hostile belligerents in conflict zones with precision guided lasers)
雷达探测和激光杀死无人机
- Manufacture of newest lie detection technologies
谎言检测技术

- Manufacture of newest premature baby incubators
早产儿保育箱
- “Family therapy” company designed to help families stay together and healthy
家庭疗法”公司旨在帮助家庭团结和健康
- Computer game company to create games designed to help students develop empathy and social consciousness
电脑游戏公司开发旨在帮助学生发展同理心和社会意识的游戏
- Computer game company to create games designed to help students learn to create mnemonic memory strategies for better memory of all kinds of academic information.
电脑游戏公司创建旨在帮助学生学习创建记忆策略的游戏，以更好地记忆各种学术信息
- Computer game company to create games designed to help students develop greater creativity for arts and sciences.
电脑游戏公司，开发旨在帮助学生发展艺术和科学创造力的游戏。

A Different Proposal Format 提案格式不同

New Business 3 (Joint-Venture) 新业务 3（联合创业）

Joint Venture Project Proposal for micro-loans to foster small business development and employment in long-term refugee camps in the DR Congo

MISSION 任务

Micro-loan projects for long-term refugees in camps in DR Congo - Joint ventures between affluent private school students in non-English speaking countries, their EFL teachers, NGOs working in DR Congo (e.g. <http://www.gfar.net/experts/youssoufou-congo>) and local entrepreneurs in DR Congo Refugee camps.

刚果民主共和国难民营中长期难民的小额贷款项目-非英语国家的富裕私立学校学生，其英语教师，在刚果民主共和国工作的非政府组织之间的合资企业（例如<http://www.gfar.net> 专家/youssoufou-刚果）和刚果民主共和国难民营的当地企业家。

BACKGROUND 背景

Mohammad Yunus aimed to help the poor by supporting the spark of personal initiative and enterprise by which they could lift themselves out of poverty forever. It was an idea born on a day in 1976 when he loaned \$27 from his own pocket to forty-two people living in a tiny village. These micro-entrepreneurs only needed enough credit to purchase the raw materials for their trade. Yunus’s small loan helped them break the cycle of poverty for good. His solution to world poverty, founded on the belief that credit is a fundamental human right, is brilliantly simple: lend poor people money on terms that are suitable to them, teach them a few sound financial principles, and they will help themselves.

穆罕默德尤努斯的目标是帮助穷人，通过支持个人主动性和进取精神的火花，使他们能够永远摆脱贫困。这是 1976 年的一天，他从自己的口袋里贷了 27 美元给住在一个小村庄里的 42 个人。

这些微型企业家只需要足够的信贷来购买贸易所需的原材料。尤努斯的小额贷款帮助他们永远打破了贫困的循环。他基于信贷是一项基本人权的信念，解决世界贫困问题的办法非常简单：以适合穷人的条件借钱给他们，教他们一些健全的金融原则，他们就会自救。

Yunus' theories work. Grameen Bank has provided loans totaling six billion dollars to seven million families in rural Bangladesh. Today, more than 250 institutions in nearly 100 countries operate micro-credit programs based on the Grameen methodology, placing Grameen at the forefront of a burgeoning world movement toward eradicating poverty through micro-lending.

尤努斯的理论起作用了。格莱珉银行向孟加拉国农村 700 万户家庭提供了总计 60 亿美元的贷款。如今，近 100 个国家的 250 多家机构根据格莱美方法实施小额信贷计划，使格莱美走在通过小额贷款消除贫困的新兴世界运动的前列。

<http://www.bankertothepoor.com>

Download his book for free: 免费下载他的书:

<https://archive.org/details/BankerToThePoor>

PDF: <https://ia800204.us.archive.org/22/items/BankerToThePoor/yunus.pdf>

Also see: 另请参阅:

<https://opportunity.org.uk/what-we-do/where-we-work/the-dr-congo>

<http://www.visionfund.org/2450/dr-congo/africa/where>

<https://www.microfinancegateway.org/country/democratic-republic-congo>

<https://www.enca.com/africa/microfinance-banks-helps-poor-drc>

NEEDS 需求

DR Congo (March 23, 2018) - The situation in the Democratic Republic of the Congo (DRC) is one of the world's most complex, challenging and forgotten crises. With 4.5 million people internally displaced and more than 740,000 Congolese refugees across Africa, the humanitarian situation deteriorated sharply in 2017...

刚果民主共和国（2018年3月23日）-刚果民主共和国（DRC）的局势是世界上最复杂，最具挑战性和被遗忘的危机之一。非洲境内有450万人国内流离失所，超过74万刚果难民，2017年人道主义局势急剧恶化.....

<https://reliefweb.int/report/uganda/democratic-republic-congo-regional-refugee-response-plan-january-december-2018>

<https://reliefweb.int/sites/reliefweb.int/files/resources/UNHCR%20DRC%20FACTSHEET%20AS%20OF%2031%20SEPTEMBER%202017.pdf>

COSTS

Capital investments for small businesses developments

- Water purification
- Latrine digging and maintenance
- Small farm creation
- Child care center creation
- Private School creation

Overhead costs (Month to month)

USD\$00.00 (Small donations from students, \$10 - \$15 per month.)

小型企业发展的资本投资

- 净水
 - 厕所的挖掘和维护
 - 创建小农场
 - 幼儿中心的建立
 - 创建私立学校
- 间接费用（每月）
-\$ 00.00 美元（学生的小额捐款，每月\$ 10-\$ 15。）

REVENUE PROJECTIONS 收入预测

No revenue for this project besides that which is earned by participants for their families and communities in the DR Congo.

除了参与者在刚果民主共和国的家庭和社区所获得的收入以外，该项目没有任何收入。

TIMETABLE 时间表

When do you start to put this project into action?

How long will each step take?

When is the business launch date?

你什么时候开始实施这个项目？

每一步需要多长时间？

什么时候开始营业？

Business Plan Writing and Presentation 商业计划书的撰写和陈述

Each pair of students can collaborate on one or two proposals together.

每一对学生可以一起合作做一两个商业计划。

1. Brainstorm what kinds of business(es) they might like to start.
2. Students can work together on one proposal or each write their own.

- 1.集思广益，确定他们希望开始什么样的业务。
- 2.学生可以一起写一份提案，也可以各自写自己的提案。

At the end of this writing period students will do a presentation on their business plan, explaining all the above segments of their Business Plan.

在写作结束时，学生将做一个关于他们的商业计划的报告，解释他们商业计划的所有上述部分。

Text Type 5 – Instructions 文字类型 5-说明

Compared to the text types previously discussed in this chapter writing instructions appears very easy. And, in most respects it is easy, except sometimes it's not.

与本章之前讨论的文本类型相比，编写说明显得非常容易。而且，在大多数方面都很容易，只是有时不是。

Maybe a chapter on writing should start with writing instructions because it is so straightforward. It is the ABCDEFG... of writing. The problem is, it isn't creative or particularly fun. It can be mildly challenging though. It helps to have a reasonably good visual memory.

也许关于写作的一章应该从写指令开始，因为它非常简单。这是写作的基础。问题是，它没有创意，也没有特别的乐趣。不过，这可能有点挑战性。它有助于有一个相当好的视觉记忆。

Though writing instructions on how to write instructions seems a bit tautological, there are exercises that can help people write instructions better. 尽管写指令-“如何写指令”看起来很奇怪，但有些练习可以帮助人们更好地写指令。

Visualizing the whole process in slow motion helps. Then do it again describing carefully every step. One, two three and the job is done! So easy! Yes? Maybe.

以慢动作可视化整个过程会有所帮助。然后再次仔细描述每个步骤。一，二，三，工作就完成了！太简单！是？也许。

I usually start by asking students if they know how to brush their teeth. Then, I get the class to help think of ALL the steps actually required to brush one's teeth. There are more steps involved than most people might think of. It's so easy! Right?

我通常首先问学生是否知道如何刷牙。然后，我让全班同学考虑刷牙的实际所需的所有步骤。涉及的步骤比大多数人想象的要多。它是如此容易！对？

1. Go in the bathroom 上厕所
2. Turn on the light 打开灯
3. Go to the sink 进入水槽
4. Pick up the toothbrush 拿起牙刷
5. Turn on water 打开水
6. Rinse the toothbrush under the water 在水下冲洗牙刷
7. Turn off the water 关掉水
8. Pick up the tube of tooth paste 拿起牙膏管
9. Take the top off the toothpaste 取下牙膏的顶部

10. Put the top of the toothpaste down 将牙膏的顶部放下
11. Squeeze some of the toothpaste on the bristles of the toothbrush 将一些牙膏挤在牙刷的刷毛上
12. Put the toothpaste down 放下牙膏
13. Open your mouth 张开你的嘴
14. Gently brush all the surfaces of the all of your teeth in small circular movements for five minutes. 以较小的圆周运动轻轻刷洗所有牙齿的所有表面五分钟。
15. Be sure to gently brush along all your gum-lines 确保轻轻刷遍所有牙龈线
16. When you have finished open your mouth and spit the toothpaste/saliva mix into the sink. 完成后张开嘴，将牙膏/唾液混合物吐入水槽。
17. You may close your mouth 你可以闭上你的嘴
18. Turn on the water 打开水
19. Rinse your toothbrush 冲洗牙刷
20. Put the toothbrush down 放下牙刷
21. Put some water in a cup 在杯子里倒一些水
22. Turn off the water 关水
23. Open your mouth 张开嘴
24. Pour some water in your mouth 倒水
25. Swish the water around your mouth 漱口水
26. Spit the water into the sink 将水吐入水槽
27. Close your mouth 闭上你的嘴
28. Repeat the rinse process 重复冲洗过程
29. Put the cup down 放下杯子

What did we forget? 我们忘记了什么？

How about put the top back on the toothbrush? 把顶部放回牙刷上怎么样？

There are practical ways help students learn to give simple instructions. One is through role play. One student does the process and the other carefully observes and records each action.

有一些实用的方法可以帮助学生学习给出简单的说明。一种是通过角色扮演。一名学生负责该过程，另一名学生仔细观察并记录每个动作。

Another way to help students learn to write instructions is via visualization; visualizing the entire process from beginning to end and writing down every step.

帮助学生写指令的另一种方法是通过可视化。从头到尾可视化整个过程，并写下每个步骤。

Giving Instructions Exercises 提供指导练习

1. Please give directions (instructions) to the nearest pharmacy
2. Give instructions on how to win a person's heart
3. Give instructions on how to study for a test
4. Give instructions on how to win a favorite computer game
5. Give instructions on how to win a basketball game
6. Give instructions on how to take some medicine
7. Give instructions on how to raise a healthy child

8. Give instructions on how to become strong
 9. Give instructions on how to make friends
 10. Give instructions on how to make an iMovie
 11. Etc.
1. 请向最近的药房提供指导（说明）
 2. 指导如何赢得一个人的心
 3. 给出有关如何学习考试的说明
 4. 给出有关如何赢得喜爱的电脑游戏的说明
 5. 指导如何赢得篮球比赛
 6. 给出有关如何服药的说明
 7. 指导如何养育健康的孩子
 8. 给出如何变强的指导
 9. 指导如何交朋友
 10. 给出有关如何制作 Movie 的说明

Text Type 6 - Experimental Science Article Writing 文字类型 6-实验科学文章 写作

This is really a subject matter that deserves an entire semester of a full-time class.

这确实是一个主题，值得全日制课程的整个学期。

Below is only a very brief outline. 下面只是一个非常简短的概述。

Introduction 介绍

In the Introduction section you introduce the entire subject matter, briefly describe related research, how your research is different and your hypothesis.

在引言部分，你将介绍整个主题，简要描述相关的研究，你的研究是如何不同的和你的假设。

Methods 方法

In the Methods section you describe every step exactly as to how your experiment will be conducted, including what kind of sample, and the kind of statistical analysis you will use. This precise description must allow other researchers to duplicate your research. This is the only way to find out 1) if your research is to be trusted, and 2) isolate out any other variables that might influence your results.

在“方法”部分中，您将确切描述实验的每个步骤，包括将要使用的样本类型和统计分析类型。这种精确的描述必须允许其他研究人员重复您的研究。这是找出 1) 您的研究是否值得信赖的唯一方法，以及 2) 找出可能影响您结果的其他变量。

For example, your results may confirm your hypothesis, but not for the reason you think. That confirmation could be an artifact of your methods. It could be the theory you are testing is much more complicated than you think, and there are more variables than you considered. Thus, describing your methods to test your hypothesis is extremely important.

例如，您的结果可能会证实您的假设，但并非出于您思考的原因。该确认可能是您的方法的产物。您正在测试的理论可能比您想像的要复杂得多，并且变量比您想像的要多。因此，非常仔细地描述方法部分中的每个细节（以检验假设）非常重要。

Results 结果

In the Results section you show the results of your statistical analysis, and if significant differences, correlations, or whatever you predicted with your hypothesis actually was found.

在“结果”部分，您将显示统计分析的结果，例如显著差异、相关性或您预测的任何结果（基于您的理论，并与您的假设进行了总结）。

Discussion 讨论

In the Discussion section you discuss the implications of your results and how they compare to the results found in other research if there was any on that subject matter.

在讨论部分，您将讨论您的研究结果的含义，以及它们与其他研究中发现的结果（如果有关于该主题的结果）的比较。

References 参考资料

All research mentioned in your experimental science article should be cited in-text with the author's name(s) presented first. This is usually followed by the date of publication. At the end there should be a Reference section. Each journal has its own citation and referencing system. Some use standardized systems such as the following.

你的实验科学文章中提到的所有研究都应该在文章中注明作者姓名和发表日期。在你的研究文章的末尾应该有一个**参考资料**部分，提供完整的参考。每个科学期刊都有自己的参考格式。一些使用通用的标准化参考系统，如以下。

- APA style (American Psychological Association) is used by Education, Psychology and some other science journals
 - APA 风格（美国心理学协会）被教育、心理学和（一些其他科学期刊）使用
<http://www.apastyle.org>
- MLA style (Modern Language Association) is used by the Humanities
 - 一些人文出版物使用 MLA 样式（现代语言协会）
<https://www.mla.org/MLA-Style>
- Chicago/Turabian style is often used by Business, History, and Fine Arts students and writers
 - 商科，历史和美术专业的学生和作家经常使用芝加哥/土伦风格
<http://www.chicagomanualofstyle.org/turabian/citation-guide.html>

To help you write bibliographies: 为了帮助您编写书目：

<http://www.easybib.com>

<http://www.bibme.org>

<https://www.noodletools.com>

<http://www.citationmachine.net>

<http://pitt.libguides.com/citationhelp>

Also see instructions for some other journals: 另请参阅其他一些期刊的说明:

http://s3-service-broker-live-19ea8b98-4d41-4cb4-be4c-d68f4963b7dd.s3.amazonaws.com/uploads/ckeditor/attachments/7807/2a_Manuscript_formatting.pdf

Harvard has its own unique referencing system and there are many sites to explain how to write the references correctly. One good guide is:

哈佛大学拥有自己独特的参考系统，并且有很多站点可以解释如何正确编写参考。一个好的指南是:

<https://www.imperial.ac.uk/media/imperial-college/administration-and-support-services/library/public/harvard.pdf>

There are also online citation and reference generators that can help do it for you. 还有在线引用和参考生成器可以帮助您做到这一点。

Text Type 7 – Poetry 文字类型 7-诗歌

Poetry speaks to the heart. It's immediate. Great poets don't care much for conventional thinking, the rules of grammar or the "sensitivities" of the elite. They are on a holy/unholy quest for truth and nothing will stand in their way.

诗歌令人发自内心。立即。伟大的诗人并不太在乎传统思维，语法规则或精英的“敏感性”。他们是对真理的神圣/不神圣的追求，没有任何东西会阻碍他们前进。

The greatest living poet that I know of now is Nat Turner. Like a guide in the forest, a forest of own ignorance, he lights up the truth, and shows us the way. "I see," "I see" exclaims the reader. Why didn't I see this before?

我现在所知道的最伟大的诗人是纳特·特纳。他像森林里的向导，在我们失明的森林里，照亮真理，指引我们前进的道路。“我明白了！”“我明白了！”读者惊呼道。为什么我以前没看到这个？

Poets often or usually use: 诗人经常或通常使用:

“Literary Allusion” A brief indirect reference to a person, place, thing or idea.

对一个人、一个地方、一事物或一个想法的简短间接的提及。

Below is his latest gift to us.

下面是他给我们的最新礼物。

<p style="text-align: center;">Poem and Literal Translation 诗歌与直译</p>	<p style="text-align: center;">Literary Devices and/or 文学手段 和/或 Interpretation 解释</p>
<p>War House hot spot: Infected West Wing by Raymond Nat Turner, Black Agenda Report poet-in-residence, 20 May 2020 战争之家热点：被雷蒙德·纳特·特纳（Raymond Nat Turner）感染的西翼，黑色议程报告，诗人居住地，2020年5月20日</p> <p>Infector-in-Chief, Boss Tweet, Refuses to mask his lie hole. He insists on leaving out his snout— Normally affixed to CEO posteriors... 首席感染者，老板 Tweet， 拒绝掩盖他的谎言坑。他坚持要放弃他的鼻子 通常附属于 CEO 屁股。</p> <p>A walking WMD; were he, his handlers, Henchmen and hangers-on a rock band they'd rock the name: Boss Tweet and The Virus-Spitters—or Boss Tweet and The Infectors... 一个步行的大规模杀伤性武器；他，他的操纵者， 一个摇滚乐队的追随者， 他们会给乐队起个名字： “老大推特和病毒喷溅者” 或者“老板推特和感染者”</p> <p>Questions for scientists and medical Professionals: how huge has community spread from weaponized lies been?</p>	<p>“White House” is changed to “War House” （注：“白宫”改为“战争之家”Use of literary allusion. 使用文学典故。</p> <p>The American president is also the “Commander-in-Chief” of the armed forces. Here one finds: “Infector-in-Chief” 美国总统还是武装部队的“总司令”。在这里找到：“首席感染者”</p> <p>“Lie hole” (mouth) is an allusion to (A.O.) anus. “谎言洞”（嘴）是对（A.O.）肛门的暗示。</p> <p>Given that Trump did nothing to stop or even slow the spread of the COVID-19 infection, he is a WMD. (Metaphoric allusion) 鉴于特朗普没有采取任何措施阻止甚至减缓 COVID-19 感染的传播，他是一名大规模杀伤性武器。（隐喻）</p> <p>“To finger” someone means to select, choose, point out, and/or accuse. Here it means “chosen.” “指手画脚”是指选择、指指和/或指责某人。在这里，它的意思是“选择”</p>

How many unsuspecting factory workers fingered for photo-ops have been infected?
How many reporters—or stenographers—have WMD ‘briefings’ tainted?

给科学家和医学的问题

专业人士：社区（感染）有多大

从“武器化的谎言”传播出来了吗？

有多少不知情的工厂工人

已被新型冠状病毒感染

特朗普可以夸耀工作的美国人吗？

大规模杀伤性武器“新闻简报”期间有多少记者或速记员被感染？

Questions for the People: How many more

Body bags must graft and greed fill?

How many more refrigerated trucks must the plutocracy stuff with loved ones?

人民的疑问：还有多少“尸袋”需要贪污和贪婪填满？

又有多少“冷藏卡车”必须装满（死去的）亲人？

How many more mortuaries must he and his Handlers overrun with coworkers?

How many more ‘civilian casualties’ must their white phosphorus droplets cause? How much more “collateral damage” must his depleted pretense do?

他和他的手下还有多少太平间要挤满同事？

他们的白磷液还会造成多少平民伤亡？他的虚张声势还要造成多大的“附带损害”？

Just how many more lives must white lies—nuclear Fraudulence cost?

“善意的谎言”“核欺诈”还要付出多少生命代价？

<https://blackagendareport.com/war-house->

“Photo-op” means photos taken for propaganda purposes. Literally: “Photo opportunity.” “照相操作”是指出于宣传目的而拍摄的照片。从字面上看：“摄影机会。”

“Body bags” are for corpses.

Refrigerated trucks are for corpses.

“尸袋”是用来装尸体的。

冷藏卡车是用来装尸体的。

Here “stuffed with” means “crowded.”

这里“塞满”的意思是“拥挤”

These are rhetorical questions, and also “straight-talk.”

这些都是反问句，也是“直言不讳”

The phrase “white lies” usually means “harmless lies” (to protect someone’s feelings). But here he’s referring to the lies of powerful white men. “Nuclear” here emphasizes the scale of the fraud Trump has perpetuated with his failure to act to protect people from novel coronavirus.

“善意的谎言”通常意味着“无害的谎言”（保护某人的

hot-spot-infected-west-wing

感情)。但这里他指的是有权势的白人的谎言。这里的“核”强调了特朗普故意不采取行动保护人们免受新型冠状病毒侵害而犯下的欺诈行为的规模。

To learn to write poetry, read poetry. Get the feeling of the various styles. Then, pour your own thoughts and feelings on paper. Cut out whatever doesn't fit. Rap music (hip hop) is all poetry. Usually rap music uses rhyming lyrics, but great poetry does not have to rhyme. It just has to tell some great truth.

要学习写诗，请阅读诗歌。感受各种风格。然后，将自己的想法和感受倒在纸上。删去所有不合适的内容。说唱音乐（嘻哈）全都是诗歌。通常说唱音乐使用押韵的歌词，但是伟大的诗歌不必押韵。它只需要说出一些伟大的事实。

Just for Fun! Learning English and “Stupidity” 只是为了好玩！学英语与“愚蠢”

A piece of advice: Do not let the greedy evil people rob you of your joy of life, if you can. Stop and smell the flowers if there are any. Learn to fully enjoy and appreciate whatever little things you can. These are keys to happiness and health that should not be thrown away or ignored. Stay balanced. Exercise your body, and even the “funny” parts of your brain. You will function better. The time invested in these “maintenance costs” will be returned 100 times over.

一个建议：如果可以的话，不要让贪婪的邪恶的人抢夺您的生活乐趣。停下来闻一闻花香。学会充分享受和欣赏您能做的任何小事。这些是幸福和健康的关键，不应丢弃或忽略。保持平衡。锻炼身体，甚至锻炼大脑的“有趣”部分。您的功能会更好。在这些“维护成本”上花费的时间将被返还 100 倍。

Now, to the topic at hand. 现在，到手头的话题。

It's amazing how much we can learn from one single short stupid sentence. Let's examine the following sentence:

我们可以从一个简短的短句子中学到多少东西，这真是令人惊讶。让我们研究以下句子：

“He is stupider.” “他更愚蠢。”

Believe it or not, you cannot say: “He is more stupid.” That's wrong. “He is stupider,” is right, even though it might sound strange. Why is saying: “He is more stupid,” wrong? Very simply because some adjectives in English have a “comparative adjective” form.

[The following Chinese translation is not completely correct, because it doesn't use comparative and superlative adjectives in the same way as English. So, one needs to study the English carefully, and maybe read through the translation to see how the grammar structures of the languages differ.]

[下面的中文翻译不完全正确，因为它没有像英语那样使用比较形容词和最高级形容词。因此，我们需要仔细学习英语，也许可以通读译文，看看两种语言的语法结构有什么不同。]

信不信由你，你不能说：“他更蠢。”那是错误的。“他更傻了，”是对的，尽管听起来可能很奇怪。为什么说：“他更蠢”，错了？很简单，因为英语中有些形容词有比较形容词的形式。

That's English. English is a bit complicated in some strange ways sometimes. But sometimes it follows some rules too.

那是英语。英语有时在某些奇怪的方面有点复杂。但有时它也遵循一些规则

Let's analyze the whole sentence now.

现在让我们来分析整个句子。

"He," obviously is a pronoun; a subject pronoun. [I, you, he, she, it, we, you (plural), and they.]

"他"显然是个代词。[我，你，他，她，它，我们，你（复数），还有他们。]

(I think in Chinese subject and object pronouns are the same, not different. However, possessive pronouns have "的- de" after the root pronoun.) (我认为汉语中的主语和宾语代词是相同的，没有区别。但是，所有格代词在根代词后都有"的-"。)

In the short sentence above, "he" is the "subject" of the sentence.

在上面的简短句子中，“他”是句子的“主题”。

If "he" were the object, you wouldn't use "he" you'd use "him." For example, "Mary likes him." Mary is the subject, "him" is the object, and "likes" is the verb.

如果对象是“他”，则不会使用“他”，而会使用“him”。例如，“玛丽喜欢 him。”玛丽是主语，“him”是宾语，“喜欢”是动词。

"Is" of course is a very funny word; one of the craziest verbs in English in fact, because it is conjugated like this:

"Is"当然是一个非常有趣的词；事实上，英语中最疯狂的动词之一，因为它的共轭形式如下：

Conjugating (词形) the Subject Verb (主语动词) "to be"

Person	Subject Pronoun Singular (1 person)	Singular	Subject Pronouns Plural (2 or more)	Plural
1 st	I	I am	We	We are
2 nd	You	You are	You	You are
3 rd	He, she, it	He is, she is, it is	they	They are

Using Object Pronouns (宾语代词) With the Verb "Give"

Person	Singular	Plural
1 st	Give it to me .	Give it to us .
2 nd	Give it to you .	Give it to you .
3 rd	Give it to: him, her, it .	Give it to them .

Let's Practice 让我们来练习

Repeat after me: 跟我重复:

I am stupid. (First person singular) 我很蠢。(第一人称单数)

You are stupid (Second person singular) 你真蠢(第二人称单数)

He is stupid. She is stupid. It is stupid. (Third person singular) 他很蠢。她很蠢。这是愚蠢的。
(第三人称单数)

We are stupid. (First person plural) 我们很蠢。(第一人称复数)

You (all) are stupid. (Second person plural) 你们都很蠢。(第二人称复数)

They are stupid. (Third person plural) 他们很蠢。(第三人称复数)

Are We All Getting Stupider? 我们都变得愚蠢吗?

What? The reader doesn't like to say: "I am stupid?" 什么? 读者不想说: "我很傻?"

My dear readers. We are all stupid in many things. 亲爱的读者 我们在很多事情上都很愚蠢。

Please let me explain with a short story. 请让我用一个简短的故事来解释。

One day when I was a university student during a particularly boring statistics class it occurred to me the professor was quite stupid. He was very good at statistics, but he didn't know much about people, life, history, geography, music, literature, languages, and so on. (But he was brilliant at statistics.)

有一天, 当我还是一名大学生时, 在一次非常无聊的统计学课上, 对我来说, 这位教授很愚蠢。他非常擅长统计, 但是对人, 生活, 历史, 地理, 音乐, 文学, 语言等等一无所知。(但他在统计方面很出色。)

How can this be? 怎么会这样?

Then I figured it out. Humans, particularly in universities and scientific research organizations are discovering very large amounts of new information every day. All of the sciences are growing at a tremendous rate. And, there are new sciences being born quite often. For the past two hundred years there has been an endless series of explosions of new information in the world.

然后我想通了。人类, 尤其是大学和科学研究机构中的人类每天都在发现大量新信息。所有科学都在以惊人的速度发展。而且, 有很多新科学诞生。在过去的 200 年中, 世界上无休止的一系列新信息爆炸。

If intelligence is defined as the percentage of information in the world that one person can know, we are all getting stupider every day. Why? Because there is so much new information every day. Thus, the percentage of information that any one person can know, gets smaller every day.

如果将智力定义为一个人可以知道的世界信息的百分比, 那么我们每天都会变得越来越愚蠢。为什么? 因为每天都有太多新信息。因此, 任何人都可以知道的信息比例每天都在变小。

Maybe a hundred years ago, one very, very smart person could know 5% of the information in the world. But now, with all the new scientific information constantly growing, one person can only know .000000000001% of the information in the world. Thus, we are all getting stupider.

也许一百年前，一个非常非常聪明的人可以知道世界上 5% 的信息。但是现在，随着所有新的科学信息的不断增长，一个人只能知道世界上 .000000000001% 的信息。因此，我们都变得越来越愚蠢。

But that doesn't explain the professor. Then I figured it out: Professors are getting stupider faster than the rest of us. How is that possible? University professors are smart, right? Very smart!

但这并不能解释教授。然后我想出了：教授比我们其他人更快地变得更加愚蠢。那怎么可能？大学教授很聪明，对吗？很聪明！

Well, not always. As a university student I was taking five courses, that is, studying five different subjects. The professor however was mainly just studying one subject, statistics. So, I was getting stupider just a little less quickly than him, because I was studying more things!

嗯，不总是这样。作为一名大学生，我参加了五门课程，也就是说，学习五门不同的科目。然而大学教授主要只研究一门学科。所以，我变得比他更蠢，只是比他慢一点，因为我在学习更多不同的东西！

I explained my new theories to the professor during the class break. He didn't seem amused. Luckily, he didn't get angry. I actually liked that professor. Maybe he wasn't the most broadly educated person in the world, but he had a good heart. That's a different kind of knowledge. One I respect.

课间休息时我向教授解释了我的新理论。他似乎不觉得好笑。幸运的是，他没有生气。我真的很喜欢那个教授。也许他不是世界上受教育最广的人，但他有一颗善良的心。这是另一种知识。我尊重他。

Is that a stupid story? Maybe. There is however some truth in it. 那是个愚蠢的故事吗？也许吧。不过，这里面有些道理。

Question: Why can't I say: "I'm getting more stupid every day?" (Even if it is true!)

问：为什么我不能说：“我每天都变得越来越愚蠢？”（即使是真的！）

Comparative Adjectives 比较形容词

Adjectives have three forms – Positive form, Comparative form, and Superlative form

形容词有三种形式：正式、比较式和最高级

The **positive form** is the simplest, like: "**stupid.**"

积极的形式是最简单的，比如：“愚蠢”

The **comparative form** compares one thing to another,

比较形式将一件事与另一件事进行比较，

"stupider." → A is **stupider** than B. And then there's the superlative form.

“更蠢。” —A 比 B 更蠢，还有最高级的形式。

The **superlative form** of stupid is: 愚蠢的最高级形式是 "**stupidest**." "C" is the **stupidest** of all. "C" is the **stupidest** man of all. "C" is the **stupidest** book of all, and so on.

“A” is **stupid**. “A” 是愚蠢的。

“B” is **stupider**. (More stupid than A) “B” 更愚蠢。（比 A 更蠢）

“C” is **stupidest**. (The most stupid) “C” 是最愚蠢的。（最愚蠢的）

Irregular Comparative and Superlative Adjectives 不规则的比较级和最高级形容词

And then there are also “irregular” comparative and superlative adjectives. “Good, better and best, are the usual first examples most people think of.

还有“不规则”比较形容词和最高级形容词。“好的，更好的和最好的，是大多数人通常想到的第一个例子。

Good, bad, little, much and far - are the five most commonly cited irregular comparative and superlative adjectives.

好、坏、少、多和远是五个最常被引用的不规则比较形容词和最高级形容词。

These one just has to memorize. At the time of this writing a good online source for information in this subject is:

这些只需要记住。在撰写本文时，一个很好的在线信息来源是：

<https://www.ef.edu/english-resources/english-grammar/comparative-and-superlative>

Please keep in mind some adjectives do not have comparative or superlative forms.

请记住，某些形容词没有比较形式或最高级形式。

Adjectives with three or more syllables are used in comparing things by putting the qualifier “more” in front of the adjective, and the superlative by putting the qualifiers “most” in front of the adjective.

具有三个或三个以上音节的形容词用于比较事物，方法是将限定词“更多”放在形容词的前面，而最高级则将限定词“最多”放在形容词的前面。

Take “beautiful” for example. It’s a perfectly nice adjective, but! There is no comparative or superlative forms. So, one must say: Today is **more beautiful** than yesterday! Or, one might say: “That is the **most beautiful** flower in the world!”

以“美丽”为例。这是一个非常好的形容词，但是！没有比较形式或最高级形式。因此，必须说：今天比昨天更美丽！或者，也许有人会说：“那是世界上最美丽的花！”

What is stupidity? 什么是 stupidity?

Next one might wonder, what is “**stupidity**?” Luckily that’s pretty easy.

Stupidity is the noun form of stupid. 愚蠢是愚蠢的名词形式。

Stupidity 是 stupid 的名词形式

One could also argue that stupidity is not knowing how stupid we all are! Ha, ha, ha.

有人可能会说... stupidity... ...不知道我们所有人有多愚蠢！哈哈哈哈哈

Student Challenge! 学生挑战!

Try making lists of a) positive, b) comparative and c) superlative words.

试着列出 a) 肯定词, b) 比较词和 c) 最高级词。

For example: 例如:

Positive	Comparative	Superlative
big	bigger	Biggest
good	better	Best
funny	funnier	funniest

Try making dialogues using comparative and superlative forms of the following adjectives:

尝试使用以下形容词的正面, 比较和最高级形式进行对话:

Example 例子

A: You're stupid. 你真蠢。

B: I'm not stupid. You're stupider! 我不傻。你更蠢!

A: I am not stupider! You are the stupidest! 我并不傻。你是最愚蠢的。

B: I'm not the stupidest! You're the stupidest! 我不是最愚蠢的。你是最愚蠢的。

C: You are both the stupidest people I've ever met! 你们都是我见过的最愚蠢的人!

A & B: We're not stupid! You're stupider! 我们不傻! 你更傻!

- Smart – smarter - smartest
- Crazy – crazier - craziest
- Happy – happier - happiest
- Busy – busier – busiest
- Funny – funnier – funniest

Next either find a list, or try to make your own list of adjectives that don't have comparative or superlative forms.

接下来, 找到一个列表, 或者尝试制作自己的没有比较形式或最高级形式的形容词清单。

Here are a some: 这里有一些:

Expensive, boring, comfortable, popular, thoughtful, thoughtless

Example 例

That is an expensive shirt! 那是一件昂贵的衬衫!

That is a more expensive shirt. 那是一件更昂贵的衬衫。

That is the most expensive shirt. 那是最昂贵的衬衫。

Try making dialogues using the non-comparative adjectives. 尝试使用非比较形容词进行对话。

A: You are thoughtless. (粗心)

B: You are more thoughtless.

A: Oh no! You are the most thoughtless!

Now, try making sentences using a combination of regular comparative or superlative adjectives and adjectives that don't have comparative and superlative forms.

现在，尝试使用 a) 常规比较级或最高级形容词与 b) 没有比较级和最高级形式的形容词的组合来构成一个句子。

Example 例子:

"You are the **stupidest most thoughtless** person I ever met!

"She is the **wisest, most profound** woman I ever met!"

"你是我见过的最愚蠢，最没思想的人！

"她是我见过的最睿智，最深刻的女人！"

Have fun with this!

Refugee Youth Realities - Some Truths Will Not be Silenced 难民青年的现实-一些真相不会被压制

Simultaneous to the fun people can have writing, there are some truths that must be told. Some of these truths are not fun. They are the opposite of fun.

人们可以同时享受写作的乐趣-必须讲一些真理。这些事实中有些不好玩。它们与乐趣相反。

And yet, there is an intrinsic pleasure in "doing good" even if the topic is not a fun topic. Many studies on happiness suggest that random acts of kindness make the giver happier. And thus, I challenge all who read this book to at some time in your life, help to illuminate the realities of one or more "displaced" people. Consider it a labor of love. Or consider it "enlightened self-interest." Whatever the motivation, "just do it," please.

然而，即使这个话题不是一个有趣的话题，“行善”也是一种内在的乐趣。许多关于幸福的研究表明，随机的善举会让给予者更快乐。因此，我向所有读过这本书的人提出挑战，在你生命中的某个时刻，帮助他们阐明一个或多个“流离失所者”的现实。把它看作是爱的劳动。或者认为这是“开明的私利”，无论动机是什么，请“做吧”。

At the beginning of this Chapter on writing I wrote that I usually write mainly for advocacy. I advocate to end wars. I advocate for many things including taking better care of those who have lost their homes due to violence in its many forms.

在本章写作的开头，我写道，我通常主要是为倡导而写作。我主张结束战争。我倡导许多事情，包括更好地照顾因多种形式的暴力而失去家园的人。

To report that there has been a very rapid increase in the number of “displaced” people, including refugees in recent years is boring for most people in developed countries. The numbers are so huge, and the realities so far away and horrid practically nobody in the developed world (USA and western Europe) wants to think about it.

近年来，包括难民在内的“流离失所”人数迅速增加，这对发达国家的大多数人来说是无聊的。数量如此之大，而现实如此遥远和可怕，在发达国家（美国和西欧）几乎没人想考虑。

So, they close their eyes, ears and hearts to this reality of life for 71 million people.

<https://www.unhcr.org/figures-at-a-glance.html>

因此，他们为 7100 万人的现实生活闭上了眼睛，耳朵和心灵。

Global Trends At-a-Glance 全球趋势一览

By the end of 2018, 70.8 million individuals were forcibly displaced worldwide as a result of persecution, conflict, violence or human rights violations. That was an increase of 2.3 million people over the previous year, and the world’s forcibly displaced population remained at a record high. This includes:

截至 2018 年底，全球有 7080 万由于迫害，冲突，暴力或侵犯人权行为而被迫流离失所的人。与前一年相比，这增加了 230 万人，世界上被迫流离失所的人口仍然保持着历史新高。这包括：

25.9 million refugees in the world—the highest ever seen;

41.3 million internally displaced people; and

3.5 million asylum-seekers.

世界上有 2 590 万难民，是有史以来最高的；

4130 万国内流离失所者；和

350 万寻求庇护者。

New displacement remains very high. One person becomes displaced every 2 seconds – less than the time it takes to read this sentence. That’s 30 people who are newly displaced every minute.

1 in every 108 people globally is either an asylum-seeker, internally displaced or a refugee.

新的排水量仍然很高。每 2 秒就有一个人流离失所—少于阅读该句子所花费的时间。每分钟有 30 人新近流离失所。

全球每 108 人中就有 1 人是寻求庇护者，国内流离失所者或难民。

<https://www.unrefugees.org/refugee-facts/statistics>

“One person becomes displaced every 2 seconds – less than the time it takes to read this sentence. That’s 30 people who are newly displaced every minute.”

“一个人每两秒钟就会流离失所，这比阅读这句话所花费的时间还少。每分钟就有 30 人新流离失所。”

Imagine just for a few seconds what it is like to lose your home and everything you love and become homeless, forced to run or die. For most people in developed countries the thought is inconceivable. The numbers alone are too huge to imagine.

想象一下几秒钟，失去家园以及您所爱的一切并变得无家可归，被迫逃亡或死亡会是什么样的感觉。对于发达国家的大多数人来说，这种想法是不可想象的。仅数字是难以想象的。

We people from developed nations are great at closing our eyes and minds to the unpleasant truths of what our own governments are inflicting upon innocent men, women and children around the world. (Principally the USA, UK and France.) No refugee to my knowledge has had his or her voice heard on a global level. There is a reason for that. The American DoD keeps them voiceless. But some truths leak out do occasionally leak out in one form or another.

我们发达国家的人民对我们自己的政府对世界各地无辜的男人，女人和儿童施加的令人不快的真理闭上了双眼。（主要是美国，英国和法国。）任何读者都能说出一名难民吗？有人读过难民的书吗？是否有任何难民在世界剧院的舞台上有发言权？这是有原因的。美国国防部让他们保持静音状态。但是某些形式的真理确实偶尔会以一种或另一种形式泄漏出去。

How young refugees’ traumatic pasts shape their mental health

年轻难民的创伤历程如何影响他们的心理健康，

By Alison Abbott, 12 May 2020

Each subject, having immigrated to Germany, was dichotomously classified as having/not having been exposed to: (1) traumatic experiences before and (2) during flight (war, genocide, slavery, kidnapping, human trafficking, torture, assaults, murder, threats to physical integrity, terrorist attacks, witnessed death of others)...

这项研究的每一位移民到德国的参与者都被分为两类：（1）在逃亡之前和（2）在逃亡期间（战争、种族灭绝、奴役、绑架、人口贩运、酷刑、袭击、谋杀、人身安全威胁、恐怖袭击、目睹他人死亡）遭受创伤的经历。

Results 结果

In 9 German refugee centers, a total of (n=) 133 young refugees (»80% males), not previously in contact with the health system, were recruited from June 2018 to May 2019, many of them unaccompanied minors (age at flight: 18.3§4.1 years; age at arrival in Germany: 20.2§4.3; age at examination: 22.1§3.4). Those who agreed in the first place to participate in the study did complete it (no dropouts among the individuals pre-selected by the refugee centers).

在 9 个德国难民中心，从 2018 年 6 月至 2019 年 5 月，共招募了 133 名 年轻难民（80%为男性），他们以前没有接触过卫生系统。其中许多是无人陪伴的未成年人（飞行年龄：18.3±4.1 岁；抵达德国年龄：20.2±4.3 岁；检查年龄：22.1±3.4 岁）。最初同意参加研究的人确实完成了研究（在难民中心预先选定的个人中没有辍学者）。

Flight reasons were war/expulsion (25.6%), persecution and threats to life (51.9%), economic and others (22.5%). Most individuals had a passport from Afghanistan (27), or came from Nigeria (23), Syria (12) and Iraq (11)...

飞行原因为战争/驱逐（25.6%）、迫害和生命威胁（51.9%）、经济和其他原因（22.5%）。大多数人持有阿富汗护照（27），或者来自尼日利亚（23），叙利亚（12）和伊拉克（11）...

Over 50% of subjects suffered traumatic experiences before and during the flight, with most individuals coming from urban environment as an additional risk factor. Physical exam uncovered that many asylum seekers had suffered not only from psychological injuries. In fact, 54 individuals (40%) exhibited severe scars/wounds from externally inflicted injuries, such as gunshots, shrapnel or stab wounds, bomb explosions, burning or electrical shocks.

超过 50% 的受试者在飞行前和飞行中经历过创伤经历，其中大多数人来自城市环境是另一个危险因素。身体检查发现，许多寻求庇护者不仅遭受心理伤害。实际上，有 54 个人（占 40%）因外部伤害（例如枪击，弹片或刺伤，炸弹爆炸，燃烧或电击）表现出严重的疤痕/伤口。

All other readouts of physical exam were unremarkable; none of the subjects had any detectable neurological symptoms including soft signs. Additional physical and sexual abuse (apart from flight experiences) became evident in 27% and 14%, respectively.

体检的其他所有读数均无异常；没有一个受试者有任何可检测到的神经系统症状，包括柔软的体征。额外的身体和性虐待（除了飞行经历）分别为 27% 和 14%。

Discussion 讨论

In the present investigation, a substantial load of accumulated environmental risk factors became obvious in young 'healthy' refugees on top of migration/refuge.

Pre-flight and flight experiences of these young individuals frequently included extreme poverty, genocide, war, experience of terror, torture, persecution for ethnic or religious reasons or sexual orientation, kidnapping, slavery, human trafficking, sexual exploitation, forced labor, physical maltreatment, separation trauma, experiencing or witnessing assaults, massacres, rape and other threats to physical integrity, as well as murder and terrorist attacks.

在目前的调查中，在移徙/避难所之外的年轻“健康”难民中，大量累积的环境风险因素变得显而易见。这些年轻人的飞行前和飞行经历经常包括极端贫穷，种族灭绝，战争，恐怖经历，酷刑，出于种族或宗教原因或性取向的迫害，绑架，奴役，人口贩运，性剥削，强迫劳动，身体虐待，分离伤，经历或目击到袭击，屠杀，强奸和其他对人身安全的威胁，以及谋杀和恐怖袭击。

Post-flight experiences, i.e. problems upon arrival in the hosting country, here Germany, comprised problematic living conditions, multiple relocations, non-access to education and labor, maladaptation to language and culture, uncertain legal and residential status. In addition, social exclusion and hostility towards foreigners and refugees constitute post-flight reality. Especially in young refugees, this devastating situation adds to their already severe identity crisis with all its consequences for self and society. This may at least partly explain the increased suicidality of young migrants seen here and reported elsewhere [37].

飞行后的经历，即到达东道国（这里是德国）时遇到的问题，包括生活条件问题，多次搬迁，无法获得教育和劳动，对语言和文化的适应不良，法律和居住状况的不确定性。此外，社会排斥和对外国人和难民的敌意构成了飞行后的现实。尤其是在年轻的难民中，这种破坏性局势加剧了他们本已严重的身份危机，对自身和社会造成了一切后果。这至少可以部分解释在这里看到并在其他地方报道的年轻移民自杀倾向的增加[37]。

Refugees should be enabled to move away from just being cared-for to self-help plans. A somewhat provocative but ultimately successful idea would be to provide instantaneously jobs/contracts and let them earn their own modest living by supportive work. This requires perhaps modifications of existing legislation, but could then start immediately after the refuge and should be accompanied by regular social worker visits and language training/courses, until the decision of staying or leaving has been made by the authorities. Meanwhile refugees should be free to search in parallel for more adequate jobs with respect to their education or for apprenticeships.

应当使难民能够从照料计划转向自助计划。一个有点挑衅但最终成功的想法是提供即时的工作/合同，让他们通过支持性工作来赚取适度的生活。这可能需要对现有法律进行修改，但是可以在避难之后立即开始，并应伴随定期的社工访问和语言培训/课程，直到当局做出中止或离开的决定。同时，难民可以自由并行地寻找教育或学徒方面的更充分的工作。

M. Begemann et al., Accumulated environmental risk in young refugees - A prospective evaluation, 年轻难民中累积的环境风险-一项前瞻性评估 E Clinical Medicine (2020), <https://doi.org/10.1016/j.eclinm.2020.100345>

[https://www.thelancet.com/pdfs/journals/eclinm/PIIS2589-5370\(20\)30089-4.pdf](https://www.thelancet.com/pdfs/journals/eclinm/PIIS2589-5370(20)30089-4.pdf)

A keyword search of the above article for the following terms: “Islam,” “Moslem” and “Muslim” yielded no results. One can presume with the refugee participants in this study being from predominantly Muslim countries, most were Muslim. This sort of abuse of young Muslims is perfectly in accordance with the racial and religious bigotry at the heart of American capitalism, the Crusades, inquisitions and of course Nazism.

There are only a few studies similar to the above.

对上述文章的以下关键词进行关键词搜索：“伊斯兰教”、“穆斯林”和“穆斯林”均未得到结果。我们可以假设，参与这项研究的难民来自以穆斯林为主的国家，大多数是穆斯林。这种对年轻穆斯林的虐待完全符合美国资本主义、十字军东征、宗教裁判所，当然还有纳粹主义的核心种族和宗教偏见。

只有少数研究与上述类似。

<https://www.sciencedirect.com/science/article/abs/pii/S0145213419303230>

Also see: <https://www.unhcr.org/5943e8a34.pdf>

They are good studies because they illuminate the trauma and struggles of refugees worldwide.

他们是很好的研究，因为它们阐明了全世界难民的痛苦和斗争。

It also raises many unanswered questions. Given that the refugees that participated in this study are the “lucky ones,” (they survived the migration) what percentage are not so lucky and die or get repatriated along the way?

它还提出了许多未解决的问题。考虑到参加这项研究的难民是“幸运者”，（他们在移民中幸存了下来）有多少百分比的人不是那么幸运，并因此丧生或被遣返？

<https://migrationdataportal.org/themes/migrant-deaths-and-disappearances>

<https://www.iom.int/news/mediterranean-migrant-arrivals-reach-76558-2019-deaths-reach-1071>

So many human beings are caught and repatriated to refugee camps for example in Libya or otherwise incarcerated in “less hospitable” situations.

如此多的人被抓获并遣返到难民营，例如在利比亚或以其他方式被监禁在“不太好客”的情况下。

Refugees report brutal and routine sexual violence in Libya

难民报告说，在利比亚发生了残忍和常规的性暴力事件，

by Patrick Wintour Diplomatic editor, Mon 25 Mar 2019

Abuse often filmed and sent to victims’ relatives, Women’s Refugee Commission finds 妇女难民委员会发现，虐待行为经常被拍摄下来并发送给受害者的亲属

Refugees and migrants trying to reach Europe from Africa are being subjected to horrific and routine sexual violence in Libyan detention centres, a survey has found.

调查发现，试图从非洲到达欧洲的难民和移民正在利比亚拘留中心遭受可怕的例行性暴力。

People arriving at the centres are “often immediately raped by guards who conduct violent anal cavity searches, which serves the dual purpose of retrieving money, as well as humiliation and subjugation”, the report by the Women’s Refugee Commission says. Many of the victims have been forcibly returned to the country by the Libyan coastguard under policies endorsed by the European Union.

妇女难民委员会的报告说，到达中心的人“经常被进行暴力肛交搜查的警卫强奸，这有取钱，屈辱和屈服的双重目的”。利比亚海岸警卫队根据欧洲联盟认可的政策将许多受害者强行送回了该国。

The EU’s deal with Libya is sentencing refugees to death

欧盟与利比亚的协议正在判处难民死刑

The level of psychological treatment for victims of sexual violence who reach Italy is woefully inadequate, the report adds. 报告补充说，到达意大利的性暴力受害者的心理治疗水平严重不足。

Sarah Chynoweth, the lead researcher on the report, said: “Profoundly cruel and brutal sexual violence and torture are perpetrated in official detention centers and clandestine prisons, during random stops and checkpoints, and in the context of forced labor and enslavement. The fact that refugees and migrants crossing the Mediterranean are intercepted and forced back into this violence is untenable.”

该报告的首席研究员莎拉·奇诺维思（Sarah Chynoweth）说：“在官方拘留中心和秘密监狱，在随机停留和检查站，以及在强迫劳动和奴役的情况下，都发生了极其残忍和残忍的性暴力和酷刑。越过地中海的难民和移民被拦截并被迫重新卷入这场暴力是站不住脚的。”

<https://www.theguardian.com/world/2019/mar/25/refugees-face-routine-sexual-violence-in-libyan-detention-centres-report>

The human cost of the capitalist pursuit of hegemony in perpetuity cannot be measured or compared by any scientific research. 任何科学研究都无法衡量或比较资本主义追求永远霸权的人力成本。

Walk or die: Algeria abandons more than 13,000 migrants in forced Sahara march, June 25, 2018

走路或死亡：阿尔及利亚在强迫撒哈拉大游行中放弃了 13,000 多名移民，2018 年 6 月 25 日

ASSAMAKA, Niger -- From this isolated frontier post deep in the sands of the Sahara, the expelled migrants can be seen coming over the horizon by the hundreds. They look like specks in the distance, trudging miserably across some of the world's most unforgiving terrain in the blistering sun. They are the ones who made it out alive.

阿萨马卡，尼日尔——从撒哈拉沙漠深处这个与世隔绝的边防哨所，可以看到数百名被驱逐的移民越过地平线。它们看起来像远处的斑点，在烈日下艰难地跋涉在世界上最无情的地形上。是他们活下来的。

Here in the desert, Algeria has abandoned more than 13,000 people in the past 14 months, including pregnant women and children, stranding them without food or water and forcing them to walk, sometimes at gunpoint, under temperatures of up to 118 degrees Fahrenheit...

在过去的 14 个月中，阿尔及利亚在沙漠中遗弃了 13,000 多人，其中包括孕妇和儿童，他们被困在没有食物或水的情况下，被迫在高达 118 华氏度的温度下行走，有时甚至是在枪口下行走。

<https://www.cbsnews.com/news/algeria-abandons-13000-migrants-forced-sahara-desert-march>

And those are just two of Africa's 54 nations. 这些只是非洲 54 个国家中的两个。

Africa is a wholly owned subsidiary slave-state/colony of the United States, and in many countries, France. (See Chapter 1, section: American Capitalist pillaging of Africa 美国资本主义掠夺非洲, or just research FRANCAFRIQUE AND/OR AFRICOM).

非洲是美国和法国的全资子公司奴隶州/殖民地。（请参阅第 1 章，“美国资本主义掠夺非洲”，或研究 Francafrigue 和/或 AFRICOM）。

All of the wars from which the “displaced” people escaped were - in one way or another - caused by America's pursuit of hegemony in perpetuity. They are all the direct results of world capitalism and Euro-American 500 years of oppression of Africa, Asia, Latin America and the Middle East.

“流离失所”的人们逃脱的所有战争，都是以一种或另一种方式，是由美国永久地追求霸权引起的。它们都是世界资本主义和欧洲压迫非洲，亚洲，拉丁美洲和中东 500 年的直接结果。

The shareholders in American weapons corporations and politicians are most directly responsible (for the 71 million "displaced people"). The intentional negligence of the Mainstream Media (MSM) is a major cause of war and violence in the world. Voters that elect those politicians are also partly responsible. Too many voters don't think or examine very carefully the records of those politicians before voting for them. As of now, May 2020, the American public is given a choice between two war-mongering candidates for the next presidential election in the United States (Donald Trump and Joseph Biden).

美国武器公司的股东和政治家对 7100 万“流离失所者”负有最直接的责任。主流媒体的故意疏忽是导致世界范围内战争和暴力的主要原因。选举这些政客的选民也要负部分责任。太多的选民在投票给那些政客之前，不会仔细考虑或检查他们的记录。截至目前，即 2020 年 5 月，美国公众可以在 11 月美国下届总统选举的两位挑战者（唐纳德·特朗普和约瑟夫·拜登）中进行选择。

This situation (of endless war and rapid increase in the numbers of displaced people) will get worse without some very dramatic events occurring to radically alter the political landscape in the US.

这种情况（无休止的战争和流离失所者人数的迅速增加）将变得更糟，而不会发生一些非常戏剧性的事件来从根本上改变美国的政治格局。

That COVID-19 would kill predominantly racial minorities in the US was known by President Trump before he made the decision to ignore the pandemic early in 2020. According to my understanding of American law, his decision to ignore the COVID-19 epidemic until it spread all around the country constitutes (mass) murder of minorities in the USA.

特朗普总统知道，在 2020 年初做出无视这一流行病的决定之前，COVID-19 将杀死美国主要的少数民族。根据我对法律的理解，那项决定构成（大规模）谋杀。

Racial Disparities in the Time of COVID-19,

COVID-19 时期的种族差异 Kelly Malcom and Jina Sawani, May 04, 2020

A startling and disproportionate death rate among black Americans around the country from COVID-19 is revealing persistent inequities and the need for solutions to address them.

从 COVID-19 开始，全国黑人的死亡率令人震惊且比例过高，这表明持续存在的平等现象以及解决这些问题的解决方案的必要性。

<https://labblog.uofmhealth.org/rounds/racial-disparities-time-of-covid-19>

African Americans struggle with disproportionate COVID death toll,

非裔美国人与不成比例的 COVID 死亡人数作斗争 By Rodney A. Brooks, April 24, 2020

Creating a toxic storm of death and illness, the pandemic is devastating black communities across the United States and revealing the deadly legacy of inequality.

这种流行病造成了致命的死亡和疾病风暴，席卷了全美国的黑人社区，并揭示了不平等的致命遗产。

<https://www.nationalgeographic.com/history/2020/04/coronavirus-disproportionately-impacts-african-americans>

Minorities in the UK are also disproportionately killed by COVID-19

英国少数民族也不成比例地被 COVID-19 杀害

Black people in England and Wales are four times more likely to die from the coronavirus, data shows, by Haley Ott, May 7, 2020

数据显示，英格兰和威尔士的黑人死于冠状病毒的可能性高四倍。

<https://www.cbsnews.com/news/coronavirus-britain-black-people-likely-die>

For the past 500 years there has been an endless barrage of never-ending wars in the Americas, Asia and Africa, perpetuated by the infinite greed of the wealthiest among the Euro-Americans.

在过去的 500 年里，在美洲、亚洲和非洲，由于欧美最富有者的无限贪婪，无休止的战争层出不穷。

The genocides will not end until the moral conscience in the west is awakened. Can COVID-19 increase westerner's awareness of suffering in the 3rd world? At the moment it appears not. Currently the vast majority of Euro-Americans are only concerned with their own suffering.

在西方道德良知觉醒之前，种族灭绝不会结束。COVID-19 能提高西方人对第三世界苦难的认识吗？目前看来并非如此。目前绝大多数的欧美人只关心自己的痛苦。

And yet, through prolonged common suffering some understanding of the plight of world's most marginalized people may yet emerge.

然而，通过长期的共同痛苦，对世界上最边缘化的人的困境的一些理解可能还会出现。

Word Focus – Muse 单词焦点-缪斯

“By words we learn thoughts, and by thoughts we learn life.” - Jean Baptiste Girard

“通过言语，我们学习思想，通过思想，我们学习生活。” -让·巴蒂斯特·吉拉德

Definition of “Muse” “缪斯”的定义 – a noun 名词

1. (In Greek and Roman mythology) each of nine goddesses, the daughters of Zeus and Mnemosyne, who preside over the arts and sciences. “
(在希腊和罗马神话中) 九位女神中的每一位，宙斯和记忆女神的女儿，掌管艺术和科学。
2. A person or personified force who is the source of inspiration for a creative artist.
激发创意艺术家灵感的人或精神力量。

<https://www.lexico.com/en/definition/muse>

3. To idly think about something 无所事事地想某事

Usage of the word Muse 缪斯一词的用法

After his intense fevers, the muse abandoned him and he couldn't write a word until the next spring.

在他发烧之后，缪斯女神抛弃了他，直到第二年春天他才写下一个字。

This young woman was Elizabeth Siddall, who became the painters muse, lover, and ultimately his wife.

这个年轻的女人是伊丽莎白·西达 (Elizabeth Siddall)，后来成为画家的缪斯，情人，并最终成为他的妻子。

If the multiverse of games appeals to you more, you might choose Cloud Strife, Kitana, or Mario as your muse!

如果多种多样的游戏对您更具吸引力，则可以选择 Cloud Strife, Kitana 或 Mario 作为缪斯女神！

Muses in the News 新闻中的缪斯

There is an internet site 有一个互联网站点: <https://9musesnews.com>

That focuses on a wide range of liberal arts news and the spirits that inspire them.

Not bad! But they don't seem involved in larger global issues like this EFL book! Maybe next year.

侧重于广泛的文科新闻及其启发精神。 非常漂亮！ 但是他们似乎并没有卷入像 EFL 这样的更大的全球性问题！ 或许明年。

Speaking Practice 口语练习

Here's a question people have asked me about a hundred times: “How can I practice speaking English if I don't know anyone that speaks English?”

有一个问题人们已经问了我上百次了：“如果我不认识会说英语的人，我怎么能练习说英语呢？”

The easiest way, I think, is to imitate any English you can hear.

我认为，最简单的方法是模仿你能听到的任何英语。

I started imitating people when I was very young. I like to copy foreign accents, and even animal and bird sounds.

我很小的时候就开始模仿别人。我喜欢模仿面部表情，肢体语言，外国口音，甚至动物和鸟类的声音。我觉得这很有趣。我想这通常是个好习惯。（但是，有些人看到或听到你模仿他们会很生气！）

DVDs are great because here in Asia they usually have subtitles. With a DVD you can repeat (imitate) what you hear, aloud, again, and again, and again until you get it perfectly.

DVD 很好，因为在亚洲他们通常有字幕。有了 DVD，你可以一遍又一遍地重复（模仿）你所听到的，直到你能完美地模仿它。

Aristotle wrote that imitation is natural to human beings from childhood, and he observed that this is one of our advantages over the so-called lower animals.

亚里士多德写道，模仿是人类从小就有的天性，他观察到这是我们相对于所谓低等动物的优势之一。

A human being is "the most imitative creature in the world, and learns at first by imitation," he said.

他说，人类是“世界上最具模仿性的生物，最初是通过模仿来学习的。”。

In the last two millennia, we have learned very little that would contradict Aristotle's believe that imitation — the ability to see others and do what they do — is critical for human learning and development.

在过去的两千年里，我们所学到的东西很少，这与亚里士多德的观点相矛盾，亚里士多德认为模仿是人类学习和发展的关键。

<https://www.npr.org/sections/13.7/2016/05/20/478734530/do-we-learn-at-first-by-imitation>

So, imitating spoken English is probably the best way to start. Imitating the spoken English on DVDs, TV and radio really helps. Singing along with music really helps too. These days its easy to find song lyrics which makes it very easy to sing along with a song. Repetition is the key to mastery of any art. It takes time. Luckily, for people that like to play, its fun. Learning a foreign language is very similar to learning any other skill. It takes time and a lot of practice.

因此，模仿口语可能是最好的开始方式。模仿 DVD，电视和广播上的英语口语确实有帮助。与音乐一起唱歌确实很有帮助。如今，它很容易找到歌曲歌词，因此很容易与歌曲一起唱歌。重复是掌握任何艺术的关键。这需要时间。幸运的是，对于喜欢玩游戏的人来说，它的乐趣。学习外语与学习其他技能非常相似。这需要时间和大量练习。

People have also asked me: “But, what about conversation skill?”

人们也问我：“但是，谈话技巧呢？”。

Using Props 道具

Good question! All you need is a mobile phone. The mobile phone doesn't have to work. It can be a "dead" phone. They work just fine!

好问题！您只需要一部手机。手机不必工作。他们工作得很好！

So, you get on the phone, and make up conversations as if you were really talking with another person. For some reason, that phone really seems to help people.

因此，您接通电话并进行交谈，就好像您真的在和另一个人交谈一样。由于某种原因，该电话似乎确实可以帮助人们。

In the year 2000 a movie came out called "Cast Away" starring Tom Hanks. In that movie he is stuck on a desert island - alone - for years.

在 2000 年，汤姆·汉克斯（Tom Hanks）主演了一部电影，名为“Cast Away”。在那部电影中，他被困在一个荒岛上-独自呆了好多年。

Pretty soon he draws a face on a soccer ball and starts to imagine that it is his friend. Pretty soon he started talking to his new "friend" a lot.

很快，他在足球上画了一张脸，开始想象这是他的朋友。很快他就开始和他的新“朋友”聊天了。

In theater and movies, a "prop" is something actors use that looks real, but is really fake. The props make the scene look very real. According to the movie, the character needed a friend, and the "prop" of a soccer ball with a face drawn on it really helped.

在戏剧和电影中，演员使用的“道具”看上去很真实，但实际上是假的。道具使场景看起来非常真实。根据这部电影，角色需要一个朋友，并且在上面刻有足球的“道具”确实很有帮助。

Just so, a mobile phone can be a useful prop. 如此，手机可以成为有用的道具。

So too, a photo of someone could be a useful prop. 同样，某人的照片也可能是有用的道具。

Maybe there are some things the reader would like to say to President Trump?

读者可能想对特朗普总统说些话吗？

There are millions of photos of him on the Internet. So, just sit down and have a nice little chat with him.

互联网上有数百万张他的照片。所以，坐下来和他聊天。

You: Mr. President Trump. Do you know COVID-19 killed my father, and I blame you? Yes, the dictator in my country loves you and copied your advice to ignore the COVID-19 epidemic. So, my father got it and he suffered terribly before he died. Have you no moral conscience? I thought you were a Christian? Is mass murder a "Christian" thing to do?

您：特朗普总统先生。您是否知道 COVID-19 杀死了我的父亲，但我要怪您吗？是的，我国的独裁者爱你，并抄袭了你的建议，以无视 COVID-19 流行病。因此，我父亲得到了它，他去世前遭受了巨大的痛苦。你没有道德良心吗？我以为你是基督徒？大规模谋杀是“基督徒”要做的事吗？

And so on. Making it personal might help. On the other hand, a conversation with a fashion model or a pop star might be a lot more fun.

等等。使其个性化可能会有所帮助。另一方面，与时装模特或流行歌手的对话可能会更有趣。

You: "Hi there beautiful! What are you doing here in a rural area of Antarctica?" Are you having a good time? If you need any frozen fish, I am the guy to talk to talk to!"

您：“嗨，那里很美！您在南极的农村地区在做什么？”你现在玩的爽不？如果您需要任何冷冻鱼，我是可以与您交谈的人！”

It is possible if your friends see and hear you chatting with your props, they will think you have lost your mind. That's OK.

如果您的朋友看到并听到您与道具聊天，可能会认为您已经失去理智。没关系。

You can tell them in English: 您可以用英语告诉他们：

"My English teacher told me to paint a face on my soccer ball and talk with him (or her)."

“我的英语老师告诉我在足球上画一张脸，然后和他（或她）交谈。”

Because your friend doesn't speak English, he or she probably won't understand. But, that's OK too. Nothing in this material world will ever be perfect.

因为您的朋友不会说英语，所以他或她可能不会听懂。但是，也可以。在这个物质世界中，没有任何事物会是完美的。

Finding Foreign Hangouts 寻找外国视讯聚会

Foreigners are usually very predictable. Most of them like to hang out together.

外国人通常很容易预测。他们大多数人喜欢一起出去玩。

That's OK really. It reminds them of home. Some may feel homesick and hanging out with friends from their home cultures probably feels good. No problem with that.

真的可以 它使他们想起家。有些人可能会想家，与来自其家庭文化的朋友一起出去玩可能会感觉很好。没问题。

Most of the expatriate community I've met in dozens of countries like to hang out in bars when they are not working. Europeans and Americans are a diverse bunch of people. Some are cool, some are not.

我在数十个国家/地区遇到的大多数外籍人士社区都喜欢在不工作时在酒吧闲逛。欧洲人和美国人是一群不同的人。有些很酷，有些不酷。

Personally, I don't like to go into bars. But, there is no law that says anyone has to drink alcohol there. However, keep in mind that bar fights are not unusual with westerners.

就个人而言，我不喜欢进入酒吧。但是，没有法律规定任何人必须在那里喝酒。但是，请记住，酒吧打架在西方人中并不罕见。

There is nothing wrong with welcoming foreigners to your country.

欢迎外国人来贵国没有错。

I, the writer will now give all readers a homework assignment.

我，作家现在将向所有读者分配作业。

Please interview a foreigner. Ask some background and opinion questions.

请采访外国人。提出一些背景和意见问题

For example: 例如:

- 1) How long have you been in _____?
- 2) Are you having a good time?
- 3) Are you trying to learn the local language?
- 4) Can you tell me about the best things you've found here?
- 5) Are there any things about this country you would like to change?
- 6) Is there anything here you want or need you haven't been able to find?
- 7) Can you tell me what is your favorite local food?
- 8) Have you been making many local friends?

- 1) 您在_____呆了多长时间了?
- 2) 你玩得开心吗?
- 3) 您是否想学习当地语言?
- 4) 您能告诉我您在这里找到的最好的东西吗?
- 5) 您要更改该国家的任何信息吗?
- 6) 在这里您有没有想要的东西?
- 7) 你能告诉我你最喜欢的当地食物是什么吗?
- 8) 您是否认识了许多当地朋友?

And so on. 等等。

Now readers of this EFL book have a legitimate reason to talk with foreigners in your home country. Please think of other questions to ask as well. Please take notes. Please thank the foreigner for their time when you are finished.

现在，这本 EFL 书的读者有正当的理由与您所在国家的外国人交谈。请也考虑其他问题。请做笔记。完成后，请感谢外国人的时间。

In China people can hire online English teachers for about 100 Yuan an hour. They are also good people with whom you can practice conversation skills.

在中国，人们可以每小时约 100 元的价格聘用在线英语老师。他们也是好人，您可以与他们一起练习会话技巧。

Chapter 3 Fourteen Major Philosophies and Religions - 14 种世界主要哲学和宗教

Discussion Questions 1: 讨论问题 1:

1. Why are there so many philosophies and religions? What purpose do they serve?
为什么会有这么多的哲学和宗教信仰？他们的目的是什么？
2. In what ways are they similar to and different from each other?
它们以什么方式彼此相似和不同？
3. Do they do more good than harm?
他们的利大于弊吗？
4. Is there anything wrong with a life of complete selfishness and hedonism?
完全自私和享乐主义的生活有什么问题吗？

Debate Topic: Free Will vs. Fate/Destiny 辩论主题：自由意志与命运/命运

Goals of This Topic 本主题的目标如下：

- 1) Learn the differences between philosophy and religion.
了解哲学和宗教之间的区别。
- 2) Gain some appreciation of the universality of most philosophical and religious beliefs.
对大多数哲学和宗教信仰的普遍性有所了解。
- 3) Learn the basic vocabulary and concepts of 14 major philosophies and religions.
学习 14 种主要宗教和哲学的基本词汇和概念。
- 4) Encourage people to better understand how their own beliefs fit into the larger world belief systems.
鼓励人们更好地理解自己的信仰如何融入更大的世界信仰体系。
- 5) Cultivate readers' ability to communicate intelligently about philosophy and religion in an international context.
培养读者在国际背景下就哲学和宗教进行明智交流的能力。

How old are religions and philosophies? 宗教和哲学几岁了？

70,000-year-old remains suggest Neanderthals buried their dead, 18 February 2020

七万年前的遗骸表明尼安德特人埋葬了死者，2020 年 2 月 18 日

Modern humans were burying their dead at least 100,000 years ago, says Pomeroy. We don't know whether Neanderthals devised the behaviour themselves or if they learned it from humans, but we do know Neanderthals and humans encountered each other around the time of the Shanidar burials.

波默罗伊说，现代人类至少在 10 万年前就埋葬了他们的死者。我们不知道尼安德特人是自己设计的行为，还是他们从人类那里学到的，但我们确实知道尼安德特人和人类在 Shanidar 葬礼前后遇到过对方。

<https://www.newscientist.com/article/2233918-70000-year-old-remains-suggest-neanderthals-buried-their-dead>

And yet religion might be quite a lot older. 然而，宗教可能要古老得多了。

Hunter-Gatherers and the Origins of Religion

猎人聚会与宗教起源

Hervey C. Peoples, Pavel Duda, Frank W. Marlowe 2016

However, a case can be made that transmission of religious concepts from one individual to another requires complex mental imaging, and a capacity for symbolic thought and communication that might include ritual, dancing, singing, gestures, art and ornamentation, as well as language (Deacon and Cashman 2010; Mithen 1998). Some genetic and anatomical changes enabling speech and language can be traced to the most recent common ancestor of Neanderthals and anatomically modern humans about half a million years ago (Barney et al. 2012; Dediu and Levinson 2013; Krause et al. 2007). It has been suggested that rudimentary language could be older than symbolic thought (Barnard 2012).

但是，可以得出这样的情况：宗教观念从一个人到另一个人的传播需要复杂的心理想象，以及象征性思想和交流的能力，其中可能包括仪式，舞蹈，唱歌，手势，艺术和装饰以及语言（Deacon 和 Cashman，2010 年；Mithen，1998 年）。可以使语音和语言发生的一些遗传和解剖学变化可以追溯到大约一百年前的尼安德特人和解剖学上现代人类的共同祖先（Barney 等人，2012；Dediu 和 Levinson，2013；Krause 等人，2007）。有人提出，基本语言可能早于象征思想（Barnard 2012）。

Hum Nat. 2016; 27: 261–282. Published online 2016 May 6.

doi: 10.1007/s12110-016-9260-0

<https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC4958132>

So far, the earliest finds of modern Homo sapiens skeletons come from Africa. They date to nearly 200,000 years ago on that continent. They appear in Southwest Asia around 100,000 years ago and elsewhere in the Old World by 60,000-40,000 years ago.

到目前为止，最早发现的现代智人骨骼来自非洲。它们可追溯到该大陆近 20 万年前。它们出现在大约 100,000 年前的西南亚和大约 60,000-40,000 年前的旧世界的其他地区。

https://www2.palomar.edu/anthro/homo2/mod_homo_4.htm

Highly elaborate burial rituals are at least 8,000 years old. 精心制作的葬礼至少有 8,000 年的历史。

Burial rites were practiced as early as the Predynastic Period in Egypt (c. 6000 - c. 3150 BCE) and reflect this vision of eternity. The earliest preserved body from a tomb is that of so-called 'Ginger', discovered in Gebelein, Egypt, and dated to 3400 BCE, which contained grave goods for the afterlife. Burial rites changed over time between the Predynastic Period and the Ptolemaic Dynasty (323-30 BCE, the last Egyptian era before it became a Roman province) but the constant focus was on eternal life and the certainty of personal existence beyond death. This belief became well-known throughout the ancient world via cultural transmission through trade (notably by way of the Silk Road) and came to influence other civilizations and religions. It is thought to have served as an inspiration for the Christian vision of heaven and a major influence on burial practices in other cultures.

葬礼早在埃及王朝时代（约公元前 6000 年至约 3150 年）就开始实行，反映了这种永恒的观念。从坟墓中保存下来的最早遗体是所谓的“姜”，它是在埃及的盖贝林发现的，其历史可追溯到公元前 3400 年，里面存放着来世的重物。在朝代以前和托勒密王朝（公元前 323-30 年，埃及成为罗马省之前的最后一个埃及时代）之间，葬礼随时间而变化，但始终侧重于永恒的生命和除死亡之外的个人生存的确定性。这种信仰通过贸易（特别是通过丝绸之路）进行文化传播而在整个古代世界广为人知，并影响了其他文明和宗教。它被认为是基督教徒对天堂的愿景的启发，并且对其他文化中的葬礼活动产生了重大影响。

https://www.ancient.eu/Egyptian_Burial

On the other hand, there are scholars that suggest atheism may also have ancient roots. In a 2015 book titled *Battling the Gods: Atheism in the Ancient World* by Tim Whitmarsh he states that atheism may also be of ancient origin.

另一方面，有学者认为无神论也可能有其古老的渊源。蒂姆·惠特马什（Tim Whitmarsh）在 2015 年出版的《与众神作战：无神论》一书中指出，无神论也可能起源于古代。

"Whitmarsh cites the famous rhetorical flourish of the pre-Socratic philosopher Xenophanes: "Now if cows, horses or lions had hands, and were able to draw with those hands and create things as humans do, horses would draw gods in the form of horses, and cows in the form of cows, and create bodies just like they had." Yet, on the very next page he concedes that Xenophanes, a believer in "one god, greatest among gods and mortals, not at all like mortals in body or thought," is hardly the atheist the former quotation might suggest."

惠特马什引用了前苏格拉底哲学家色诺芬内斯著名的修辞手法：“如果牛、马或狮子有手，能够像人类一样用手画画和创造事物，马就会以马的形式画神，牛也会以牛的形式画牛，创造出与人类一样的身体。”他承认，色诺芬内斯信奉“一个上帝，在众神和凡人中是最伟大的，在身体和思想上根本不像凡人”这句话，他很难像前一句话所说的无神论者

<https://regarp.com/2016/04/17/review-of-battling-the-gods-atheism-in-the-ancient-world-by-tim-whitmarsh>

His argument here is an old one and can be summarized as follows: “Man created God in his own image.” Though his book is thought provoking he doesn’t provide substantive evidence of pre-Greek atheism. In the concluding paragraph the above reviewer wrote:

他在这里的论据很古老，可以概括为：“人以自己的形象创造了上帝。”尽管他的书发人深省，但他并没有提供前希腊无神论的实质性证据。在最后一段，上述审查员写道：

Remarkably, while I often found Battling the Gods to lack focus and ultimately concluded that Whitmarsh failed to substantively make his case, I still enjoyed reading this book for the author’s wide acquaintance and articulate commentary upon philosophy, religion and ancient history... Finally, I would note that while I agree with Whitmarsh that atheism is not purely a modern phenomenon, I would maintain that in the past its adherents likely remained lurking quietly at the periphery, even much more so than they do today.

值得注意的是，虽然我经常发现与众神抗争缺乏焦点，最终得出惠特马什没有实质性地证明自己的观点，但我仍然喜欢为作者的广泛认识阅读这本书，并对哲学、宗教和古代历史进行清晰的评论.....最后，我要指出，虽然我同意惠特马什的观点无神论并不是一个纯粹的现代现象，我坚持认为，在过去，无神论的追随者可能仍然静静地潜伏在外围，甚至比今天的情况要严重得多。

Ibid 同上

What are the differences between a philosophy and religion? 哲学和宗教之间有什么区别？

In some ways philosophies and religions are the same. They both offer values systems that help people organize their life and find meaning.

在某些方面，哲学和宗教是相同的。他们俩都提供了价值体系，可以帮助人们组织生活并找到意义。

Most philosophies help people organize their beliefs and behaviors such that they can better differentiate between good and evil.

大多数哲学可以帮助人们组织自己的信念和行为，以便他们可以更好地区分善与恶。

Religions and (most philosophies) give people a value system and greater understanding of themselves, their place in the world and universe and their relationships with other people.

宗教和（大多数哲学）为人们提供了一种价值体系，并加深了他们对自己，自己在世界和宇宙中的地位以及与他人的关系的理解。

Some people believe “religions” must have a “God,” but most people think if a philosophy recognizes a metaphysical plane – for example the existence of invisible “spirits,” and/or “life after death” - it is also a religion.

有些人认为“宗教”必须有“神”，但是大多数人认为，如果一种哲学认识到一种形而上的平面，例如存在无形的“精神”和/或“死后的生命”，那么它也是一种宗教。

Religions tend to have a more mystical and spiritual foundation than philosophies, but many philosophies are also mystical and spiritual!

宗教往往比哲学具有更多的神秘和精神基础，但是许多哲学也是神秘和精神的！

Discussion Questions 2 讨论题 2

Does everybody worship something? If not God or Gods, maybe money or power, love or pleasure?

Is Confucianism a religion or a philosophy?

- 每个人都崇拜吗？如果不是上帝或众神，也许是金钱或权力，爱还是享乐？
- 儒家是宗教还是哲学？

Humanism is definitely a philosophy and not a religion because it is empirically based and logical. They put humanity at the center of their value system and do not recognize any God or Gods. The same can be said for medicine, architecture and engineering. Although some religious people are very dismissive (and in some cases contemptuous) of humanism, most religious people (but not all) tend to be more open minded in regards to science.

人文主义绝对是一种哲学，而不是一种宗教，因为它是基于经验和逻辑的。他们把人放在价值体系的中心，不承认任何神。医学、建筑和工程也是如此。尽管一些宗教人士对人文主义很不屑一顾（在某些情况下是轻蔑的），但大多数宗教人士（但不是所有人）倾向于在科学方面更加开放。

Confucianism is more complex. For some people Confucianism is a philosophy; a pragmatic set of guidelines for a good life. For others; it is a religion, they worship their ancestors and believe in a life after death.

儒家思想更为复杂。对某些人来说，儒家思想是一种哲学；是一套实用的指导美好生活的准则。对其他人来说，这是一种宗教，他们崇拜祖先，相信死后的生活。

Afterlife and Salvation, by Jeffrey Richey

来世与拯救，杰弗里·里奇（Jeffrey Richey）

Kongzi stated that the afterlife was beyond human comprehension. Humans should live and behave in such a way as to promote ideal social relations, rather than to act based on the expectations of rewards or punishments after death. In Confucian terms, a meaningful life is one in which one develops one's innate moral potential to the fullest while fulfilling all of one's social obligations. At the same time, from a Confucian perspective, one cannot live fully in the present without being fully responsible to the past, both in terms of paying respect to one's ancestors and making the best of what they have left behind.

孔子说来世是人类无法理解的。人类应该以促进理想的社会关系的方式生活和行为，而不是基于对死后的报酬或惩罚的期望而行动。用儒家的话说，一种有意义的生活是指一种人在履行其所有社会义务的同时，最大限度地发挥其固有的道德潜能。同时，从儒家的角度来看，在尊重祖先并充分利用他们所遗留下来的东西方面，如果不对过去负完全责任，就不能活在当下。

<https://www.patheos.com/library/confucianism/beliefs/afterlife-and-salvation>

The following is a useful vocabulary list. It helps to organize people's belief systems in various abstract things. 以下是有用的词汇表。它有助于以各种抽象概念组织人们的信仰体系。

Atheism, Animism, Agnosticism, Polytheism and Monotheism 无神论，万物有灵，不可知论，多神论和一神论

Atheism is a belief that there is no God. 无神论是对没有神的信仰。

Animism is a belief that everything has spirit. Shamanism is often described as “animistic.”

万物有灵论是一种相信万物都有灵的信仰。萨满教常被描述为“万物有灵论”

Agnosticism is a vague belief in some divine forces or being, but nothing specific.

不可知论是对某些神的力量或存在的一种模糊的信仰，但没有什么具体的。

Polytheism is a belief in many Gods. 多神教是对许多神的信仰。

Monotheism is a belief in one God. 一神论是对一个而且只有一个神的信仰。

In a novel by writer James Michener called “The Source,” the writer theorizes that the first prayer was said by a farmer whose crops were in danger of being washed away by a rising river during a storm. The prayer that farmer might have uttered was: “Storm! Go back!” or something like that.

在作家詹姆斯米切纳（James Michener）的一部名为《源头》（The Source）的小说中，作者推断，第一次祈祷是一位农民说的，他的庄稼在暴风雨中有被上涨的河水冲走的危险。农夫也许会祈祷：“暴风雨！回去！”或者类似的。

From historical records it appears polytheistic religions (belief in many gods) are the oldest, and monotheistic religions came along later in history. A classic example of this is the word “Elohim” used in the Hebrew Bible. It was – according to ancient Hebrew scholars – originally a feminine plural word. So, when God said: “move my Spirit across the water,” it should have been translated as: God moved hers spirit across the water.

从历史记录来看，多神教（相信许多神）是最古老的，一神教在历史上出现得较晚。这方面的一个典型例子是希伯来圣经中使用的“Elohim”一词。根据古希伯来学者的说法，它最初是一个女性复数词。所以，当上帝说：“把我的灵魂移过水面”时，它应该被翻译成：上帝把她的（复数）灵魂移过水面。

The oldest monotheistic religion may have been started by Great King Akhenaten - an Egyptian Pharaoh who ruled during the 18th dynasty around 1300 BC, (along with his wife Nefertiti). Akhenaten was most well-known for his rejection of the highly polytheistic religion and culture of Egypt, and introducing monotheistic worship of a single god.

最古老的一神教宗教可能是由大法王阿克纳哈滕（Akhenaten）发起的，他是埃及法老，在公元前1300年的第18个王朝时期与他的妻子纳芙蒂蒂（Nefertiti）一起统治。Akhenaten最出名的是他拒绝了埃及高度多神教的宗教和文化，并引入了对一个神的一神教崇拜。

<https://www.gnosticmuse.com/akhenaten>

Though sciences, some philosophies and religions may in some ways be very different, it is nice to know some scientists, philosophers and religious people are bridging the gap between them in pursuit of a more peaceful and socially egalitarian world.

尽管科学，某些哲学和宗教在某些方面可能有所不同，但很高兴知道一些科学家，哲学家和宗教人士正在弥合它们之间的鸿沟，以追求一个更加和平和社会平等的世界。

The Unity of Science and Religion, September 2, 1920

科学与宗教的统一，1920年9月2日

The position taken up in it is one upon which the two standards of science and religion can be placed side by side to display to the world their unity of purpose. For Science and Religion are twin sisters, each studying her own sacred book of God and building a structure which remains sure only when established upon the foundation of truth. The day of bitter controversy between dogmatic theology and often no less dogmatic science is, we hope and believe, past and gone, and no one would wish to recall it.

它所处的位置是科学与宗教两个标准可以并排放置，以向世界展示其目的统一性的立场。因为科学与宗教是双胞胎姐妹，每个姐妹都学习自己的神圣圣经，并建立一种只有在建立在真理基础上之后才能确定的结构。我们希望并相信，教条神学与通常也不少于教条科学之间的激烈争论的日子已经过去，过去了，没有人会想起它。

Eventually might arise the philosophic conception that continuation of life lies, not in the immortality of the soul, but in the perpetual remembrance of the righteous by mankind...

最终可能会产生一种哲学观念，即生命的延续不在于灵魂的永生，而在于人类对正义的永恒记忆...

As regards the true relations between soul and body, we are in much the same position as that of the Persian poet who wrote long ago: There was a Door to which I found no Key; There was a Veil past which I could not see.

关于灵魂和身体之间的真正关系，我们的处境和很久以前写过的波斯诗人差不多：有一扇门我找不到钥匙；有一扇面纱我看不透

<https://www.nature.com/articles/106001a0.pdf>

(Readers can find the underlined words on the Vocabulary lists following the summaries.)

(读者可以在摘要后的词汇表中找到带下划线的词.)

Summaries of 14 Major Philosophies and Religions - 14 种主要哲学和宗教的摘要

Attempting to summarize the world's most famous philosophies and religions in a few short pages is a humbling task! Some general demarcations in time can safely be noted. 试图用几页短的篇幅总结世界上最著名的哲学和宗教是一项艰巨的任务！可以安全地注意到一些时间上的常规划分。

No one can really say how old spiritual beliefs are. Simply finding ancient artifacts or text doesn't really prove much. Humanities' ancestors may have had much the same spectrum of beliefs or lack of them as modern humans. The diversity of humankind appears to be the norm.

没有人能确切地证明形而上学/精神信仰到底有多古老。仅仅是找到古代文物或文字并不能证明什么。人文学科的祖先可能和现代人有着几乎相同的信仰谱，或者缺乏信仰谱。人类的多样性似乎是常态。

Egyptian Great King Akhenaten around 1300 BC promoted a monotheistic religion. This suggests the idea of a “One God” religion may be from Africa, though the dates of the origin of Zoroastrianism and Judaism are not exactly known.

公元前 1300 年左右，埃及伟大的国王阿肯纳顿提倡一神教。这表明“一神”宗教的概念可能来自非洲，尽管琐罗亚斯德教和犹太教的起源日期并不完全清楚。

It certainly coexisted with animist and polytheist belief systems in other lands.

当然，它与其他国家的万物有灵论和多神论信仰体系共存。

In the last chapter of this book, specifically on utopias, I quote a modern Chinese philosopher named Zhao Tingyang, who also wrote about monotheism. One reviewer wrote the following in regards to a publication called: Berggruen Seminar Series: Ten Letters Between Zhao Tingyang and Alain Le Pichon - Ten scenes of Chinese and Western thought excitation, July 23, 2019

在本书的最后一章中，特别是关于乌托邦，我引用了一位名叫赵廷扬的现代中国哲学家，他也写过一神论。一位审阅者在一篇名为《伯格鲁恩研讨会系列：赵廷扬与阿兰·乐·皮雄之间的十封信-中西思维的十景》中写了以下内容：2019 年 7 月 23 日

Although living in different ages and civilizations, all three of them had their “prophetic functions”. Today, global crisis calls for a new alliance; we need humankind to establish new relationships with the Earth, the Heavens and the Cosmos. In Le Pichon’s view, Zhao’s Theory of Tianxia has come at the right time, because it could constitute a better alliance between humans and Heaven (or God). This could be the start of a new moment in the historical process.

尽管他们生活在不同的时代和文明中，但他们三个都具有“预言功能”。今天，全球危机要求建立新的联盟。我们需要人类与地球，天堂和宇宙建立新的关系。在勒皮雄看来，赵的天下理论来得正是时候，因为它可以构成人与天堂（或上帝）之间更好的联盟。这可能是历史进程中新时刻的开始。

<https://www.berggruen.org/activity/berggruen-seminar-series-ten-letters-between-zhao-tingyang-and-alain-le-pichon>

The following religions and philosophies are generally organized by date founded, and in some cases clustered by geographic location of origin.

以下宗教和哲学通常是根椐建立的日期来组织的，在某些情况下，是根据起源的地理位置来组织的

Many of the sacred texts from the religions that follow can be downloaded from the Internet site:

下列宗教的许多神圣文本可以从 Internet 网站上下载：

<https://www.sacred-texts.com>

1. Hinduism 印度教

Hinduism is an Indian Dharma, or a way of life, widely practiced in South Asia. Hinduism has been called the oldest religion in the world, and some practitioners and scholars refer to it as "the eternal tradition", or the "eternal way", beyond human history. Hinduism is a "polytheistic religion" meaning they believe in many Gods.

印度教是印度佛法或一种生活方式，在南亚广泛使用。印度教被称为世界上最古老的宗教，一些实践者和学者将其称为人类历史之外的“永恒传统”或“永恒之道”。印度教是一种“多神教”，意味着他们信仰许多神。

Hinduism is a remarkably broad and deep religion. The roots of many or most religions can be found in Hinduism. Certainly, Buddhism and Yogachara*, and even some aspects of the Abrahamic religions can be found in Hinduism. Hinduism does have a “trinity” formed of three principal deities, Brahma (the Creator), Vishnu (the Preserver), and Shiva (Lord of Destruction, and the Dance). In this cosmology Brahma is the Supreme Deity.

[*Yogachara, (Sanskrit: “Practice of Yoga [Union]”) also called Vijnanavada (“Doctrine of Consciousness”) or Vijnaptimatra (“Consciousness Only”), an influential idealistic school of Mahayana Buddhism.]

印度教是一个非常广泛和深刻的宗教。许多或大多数宗教的根源可以在印度教中找到。当然，佛教和瑜伽，甚至亚伯拉罕宗教的某些方面都可以在印度教中找到。印度教确实有一个由三个主要神组成的“三位一体”，即梵天（造物主）、毗瑟奴（保存者）和湿婆（毁灭之主和舞蹈）。在这个宇宙学中，梵天是至高无上的神。

The sacred texts of Hinduism are the four Vedas, the Rig Veda, Sama Veda, Yajur Veda and Atharva Veda. The Bhagavad Gita or simply Gita, is also considered to be one of the most sacred and popular religious scriptures of Hinduism. But make no mistake about it, Hinduism is a polytheistic (belief in many Gods) religion. It is certainly one of the oldest religions and the exact ages of those beliefs are so old nobody can definitively date them. Hindus believe all religions can be found within Hinduism and indeed animism (all things have spirit), polytheism and some manifestation of monotheism can be found therein.

印度教的神圣文本是吠陀吠陀，吠陀吠陀，萨玛吠陀，耶祖尔吠陀和阿达瓦吠陀四个吠陀经。《博伽梵歌》或简称《歌》也被认为是印度教最神圣，最受欢迎的宗教经典之一。但是，不要误会，印度教是一种多神论（许多神信仰）的宗教。当然，它是最古老的宗教之一，这些信仰的确切年代如此之久，因此没人能确切地确定它们的年代。印度教徒认为，所有宗教都可以在印度教中找到，实际上万物有灵论（万物都有灵），多神教和一神教的某些表现都可以在其中找到。

2. Zoroastrianism 拜火教

Zoroastrianism is one of the world's oldest religions, and many believe to be the first monotheistic religion. Some believe it goes back about 4,000 years. It is based on the teachings of the Iranian prophet Zoroaster. It worships a God of wisdom, Ahura Mazda (Wise Lord) as its Supreme Being. Major features of Zoroastrianism, include dualism, messianism, judgment after death, heaven and hell, and free will. These beliefs have greatly influenced other religious systems, including the three Abrahamic religions of Judaism, Christianity, and Islam.

琐罗亚斯德教是世界上最古老的宗教之一，许多人认为这是第一个一神教宗教。有些人认为它可以追溯到 4000 年前。它基于伊朗先知琐罗亚斯德的教义。它崇拜智慧之神阿库拉·马自达（智者）作为至高无上的生命。琐罗亚斯德教的主要特征包括二元论，弥赛亚主义，死后的审判，天堂和地狱以及自由意志。这些信仰极大地影响了其他宗教体系，包括犹太教，基督教和伊斯兰教的三种亚伯拉罕宗教。

A Hundred Schools of Thought 諸子百家 - In China

The Hundred Schools of Thought were philosophies and schools that flourished from the 6th century to 221 BC, during the Spring and Autumn period and the Warring States period of ancient China.

一百种思想流派是从 6 世纪到公元前 221 年，在中国古代的春秋战国时期兴盛的哲学和流派。

An era of great cultural and intellectual expansion in China, it was fraught with chaos and bloody battles, but it was also known as the Golden Age of Chinese philosophy because a broad range of thoughts and ideas were developed and discussed freely. This phenomenon has been called the Contention of a Hundred Schools of Thought (百家争鸣; bǎijiā zhēngmíng; “hundred schools contend”). The thoughts and ideas discussed and refined during this period have profoundly influenced lifestyles and social consciousness up to the present day in East Asian countries and the East Asian diaspora around the world. The intellectual society of this era was characterized by itinerant scholars, who were often employed by various state rulers as advisers on the methods of government, war, and diplomacy.

这个时代在中国有着巨大的文化和知识扩展，充满了混乱和血腥的战斗，但是由于人们自由地发展和讨论了各种各样的思想和观念，因此也被称为中国哲学的黄金时代。这种现象被称为“百家争学派”（百家争鸣; bǎijiāzhēngmíng; “百家争辩”）。直到今天，在此期间讨论和完善的思想和思想已深刻影响着东亚国家和世界各地的东亚侨民的生活方式和意识。这个时代的知识社会的特点是巡回学者，他们经常被各种国家统治者聘请为政府，战争和外交方法的顾问。

<https://history.followcn.com/2017/02/01/contention-of-a-hundred-schools-of-thought>

The major four schools were: Confucianism, Taoism, Mohism, and Legalism. I listed Taoism first below because I believe it is the “original state,” that existed before Confucianism. 主要的四个流派是：儒家，道家，墨家和法制。我之所以将道教列为第一位，是因为我相信这是儒家之前存在的“原始状态”。

3. Taoism 道教

Taoism (Daoism) is probably the oldest religious and philosophical tradition of China. It emphasizes living in harmony with the Tao (道 Dào; literally: "the Way"). Tao is the source, pattern and substance of everything that exists. Taoism is the "natural way" and fundamentally not definable in words. It differs from Confucianism by not emphasizing rigid rituals and social order. Taoist ethics vary tend to emphasize *wu wei* (无为 effortless action), "naturalness", simplicity, spontaneity, and the Three Treasures: 慈 "compassion", 儉 "frugality", and 不敢為天下先 "humility".

道教（道教）可能是中国最古老的宗教和哲学传统。它强调与道（道）和谐共处。道是存在的一切的来源，模式和实质。道教是“自然之道”，从根本上讲是无法定义的。它与儒家的不同之处在于它不强调刻板的仪式和社会秩序。道家的道德观念倾向于强调无为，“自然”，朴素，自发性和“三宝”：慈“同情”，俭“俭”和“不敢为天下先”“谦卑”。

There is one most famous book associated with Taoism called the Tao Te Ching (道德经 Dàodé Jīng). 与道教有关的一本最著名的书叫做《道德经》

English translations can be downloaded from many internet sites:

http://www.with.org/tao_te_ching_en.pdf

<https://epdf.pub/tao-te-ching7ad7029f779f6573d1b52165d5264c631400.html>

The root word for "morality" in Chinese (道德 dàodé) derives from Tao 道.

汉语中的“道德”的词根来源于道德道。

Simultaneously most emperors in China did not fully embrace Taoism. There are several theories as to why this happened. One prevailing theory is that according to Taoist beliefs, a person who is one with the Tao, is equal to the emperor. Naturally emperors might not like that.

同时，中国大多数皇帝并没有完全接受道教。关于为什么发生这种现象有几种理论。一种流行的理论是，根据道教的信仰，与道合一的人等于皇帝。皇帝自然不会这样。

Taoism is often associated with various kinds of magic, including possession by/or union with animal spirits.

道教常常与各种魔术相关联，包括与动物精神交织在一起。

The first words of the Tao Te Ching are: "The Tao that can be captured in words is not the true Tao."

道德经的第一句话是：“可以用言语捕捉的道德不是真正的道德。”

This is interesting because most theistic religions also assert that God is ultimately unknowable, beyond comprehension and undefinable.

这很有趣，因为大多数有神论宗教也断言，上帝最终是不可知的，超越了理解和定义。

4. Confucianism 儒

Confucianism (儒), is described as a philosophy and a humanistic or rationalistic religion. It is also a way of governing, or simply a way of life. Confucianism formalized during "the Hundred Schools of Thought" Era.

儒教被描述为一种哲学和一种人文主义或理性主义的宗教。 它也是一种治理方式，或者仅仅是一种生活方式。 儒学在“一百个思想流派”时代正式化。

It is based on the teachings of the Chinese philosopher Confucius (551–479 BCE), though its roots may extend back as far as the Shang (1600 BCE–1046 BCE) and Zhou dynasties (1046 BCE–256 BCE). In the Han dynasty (206 BCE–220 CE), Confucian philosophies became more popular than Taoism when emperors mixed them with the realist practices of Legalism (法家)

它的基础是中国哲学家孔子（551-479 BCE）的教 though，尽管其根源可以追溯到商代（1600 BCE-1046 BCE）和周朝（1046 BCE-256 BCE）。 在汉代（公元前 206 年至公元 220 年），当皇帝将它们与法家的现实主义实践相融合时，儒家哲学比道教更加流行。

(Adapted from <https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Confucianism>)

The Five constant virtues of Confucius (五常 wǔ cháng) are benevolence 仁, righteousness 義|义, propriety 禮|礼, wisdom 智 and fidelity 信.

Confucianism is sometimes described as “the soul of Asia.” Though many Asians may also belong to other religions, Confucian values are so deeply engrained throughout the region, very few people will stray outside of family-centered values at the heart of Confucius’ teachings. At the same time, there are many intellectuals in Asia and China that prefer the teachings of Mozi.

儒家有时被称为“亚洲的灵魂”。 尽管许多亚洲人也可能属于其他宗教，但儒家价值观在整个地区根深蒂固，但很少有人会偏离孔子教义核心的以家庭为中心的价值观。 同时，亚洲和中国有很多知识分子都喜欢墨子的教。

5. Mohism 墨家

Mohism is an ancient Chinese philosophy of logic, rational thought and science developed by the academic scholars who studied under the ancient Chinese philosopher Mozi (c. 470 BC–c. 391 BC) and written about in a book titled: *The Mozi*. It evolved at about the same time as Confucianism, Taoism and Legalism, and was one of the four main philosophic schools from around 770–221 BC (during the Spring and Autumn (春秋时代) and Warring States periods. Mohists are perhaps best known for the ethical principle of *jian ai*, sometimes translated as “universal love.”

墨家是中国古代的逻辑，理性思想和科学哲学，是由在古代中国哲学家墨子（约公元前 470 年至前 391 年）研究的学术学者开发的，并写在《墨子》一书中。它与儒家，道家和法制大约同时发展，并且是大约公元前 770-221 年（春秋时代和战国时期）四大主要哲学流派之一。墨家也许以建爱的道德原则而闻名，有时被翻译为“普遍的爱”。

<http://www.newworldencyclopedia.org/entry/Mohism>

Mohism is quite different from Confucianism, for example it emphasizes universal love even above family and deemphasizes the need for the highly elaborate (and expensive) rituals that are essential elements in Confucian philosophy.

墨家与儒家有很大的不同，例如，墨家强调甚至在家庭之上的普遍爱，并不再强调儒家哲学中必不可少的精巧（昂贵）的仪式。

6. Buddhism 佛教

Buddhism is a pathway/gateway to the Great Enlightenment which can be achieved by letting go of the dichotomies and other illusions that bind one to the material world. The stages leading to this great enlightenment include letting go of “self” as an entity separate from universal consciousness, being and non-being.

佛教是通向大悟道的途径/途径，可以通过放开将二分法和其他幻觉结合在一起的方式来实现。导致这种巨大启蒙的阶段包括放开作为与普遍意识，存在和非存在分离的实体的“自我”。

Buddhism is a religion based on the teachings of Siddhartha Gautama who attained his great enlightenment sometime between the 6th and 4th centuries BCE. He is often referred to as the Buddha, though many followed in attaining the supreme enlightenment who are also called Buddha.

佛教是一种基于悉达多·高达摩（Siddhartha Gautama）教义的宗教，他在公元前 6 至 4 世纪的某个时候获得了伟大的启蒙。他常被称为佛陀，尽管许多人在获得最高觉悟后也被称为佛陀。

In the centuries that followed Buddhism spread through much of Asia, though its popularity declined in India during the Middle Ages.

在佛教之后的几个世纪中，佛教传播遍及亚洲的大部分地区，尽管中世纪它在印度的流行度有所下降。

There are two major branches of Buddhism: Theravada (小乘) and Mahayana (大乘). Buddhism is the world's fourth-largest religion, with over 520 million followers or over 7% of the global population. Those who follow the way of Buddha are called “Buddhists.” Guiding principles of Buddhism include:

佛教有两个主要分支：小乘 Theravada 和大乘 Mahayana。佛教是世界第四大宗教，拥有 5.2 亿追随者，占全球人口的 7% 以上。那些跟随佛陀的人被称为“佛教徒”。佛教的指导原则包括：

- 1) Life is suffering and
- 2) Desire is the cause of suffering

- 1) 生活在受苦，
- 2) 欲望是痛苦的原因

One of, if not the major law of Buddhism is: **Protect life.**

佛教的主要法律之一（如果不是）是：保护生命。

Buddhism is quite different from (for example Taoism) in many ways. Buddhists believe in the role of cause and effect in determining a person’s life, whereas Taoists generally do not. Buddhists are by definition vegetarian owing to the law: Protect life. Most Buddhists take this seriously, being very careful to avoid for example stepping on ants or killing other bugs. Buddhists believe in a cycle of rebirth, wherein the quality of one’s next life depends on the “karma” (payback for good and evil deeds) from this life.

佛教在许多方面与道教有很大的不同。佛教徒相信因果关系在决定一个人的生活中所起的作用，而道教通常则不然。根据法律，佛教徒是素食主义者：保护生命。大多数佛教徒都认真对待这一点，要格外小心，避免踩踏蚂蚁或杀死其他虫子。佛教徒相信重生的循环，其中下一个生命的质量取决于今生的“业力”（善恶行为的回报）。

Most Buddhists worship Buddha. There are those who believe Gautama Buddha never wanted to be worshipped – and that the worship aspects of modern Buddhism came along later in history. Likewise, those individuals believe in the century or two following Gautama Buddha’s life, making images of him was forbidden; and this practice didn’t start until after the invasion of Alexander the Great in 326 BC. None-the-less, most Buddhists do worship Gautama Buddha and enjoy having statues and paintings of him to remind them of their beliefs.

大多数佛教徒都拜佛。有人认为，高达摩佛从来不想被人崇拜，现代佛教的崇拜方面在他死后才出现。同样地，这些人认为制作高达摩佛像和绘画是被禁止的；直到公元前 326 年亚历山大大帝入侵之后才出现。然而，大多数佛教徒都敬拜高达摩佛，喜欢有他的雕像和绘画来提醒他们的信仰。

Once a person attains the Great Enlightenment (“Nirvana”), he or she has no need to be reborn and after death unites with the cosmos simultaneously within and beyond time and space. However, in Mahayana Buddhism it is believed that a person who has attained nirvana can be reborn - out of compassion for suffering beings such that he or she help guide them to the Great Enlightenment. Such a person is called a “bodhisattva.”

一旦一个人获得了伟大的启蒙（“涅槃”），他或她就不需要重生，死后与宇宙结合。然而，在大乘佛教中，人们相信，一个获得涅槃的人可以重生——出于对受苦众生的同情，这样他或她就能帮助引导他们走向伟大的启蒙。这样的人叫“菩萨”

7. Zen 禪 Chán

Chán is a branch of Mahayana (大乘) Buddhism that originated in China during the Tang dynasty. Chán school was influenced by Taoism and is sometimes called the direct path to enlightenment.

禅是大乘佛教的一个分支，大乘佛教起源于唐朝。禅宗哲学受到道教的影响，有时被称为通往启蒙的直接路径。

“Chan is short for Chan-na, which was originally transliterated from Indian Dhyana and translated as meditative state, and it is also known as Zen, the equivalent term in Japanese. Dharma Master Bodhidharma initiated Chinese Chan Buddhism which “points directly to one’s mind and does not stand upon words” but stresses a “special transmission outside scriptures”. Through the efforts of second Patriarch Huike, third Patriarch Sengcan, fourth Patriarch Daoxin, fifth Patriarch Hongren and sixth Patriarch Huineng, Chan tradition finally turns to be the largest Buddhist school in China. As a result, Bodhidharma was honored as the first Patriarch of Chan Buddhism. Shaolin Temple is the location where Dharma Master Bodhidharma attained his great enlightenment and it is sometimes called the home of Chan Buddhism.

禅是“Chan-na”的缩写，最初是由印度“dhyāna”（禅）音译而来
并被翻译为冥想状态，在日语中也称为“禅”。

菩提达摩（“菩提达摩”）发起了中国禅宗佛教活动，该佛教“直接指向人的思想，并且”不是基于文字，”而是强调“经文以外的特殊传播”。

通过第二任主教“慧可”，第三任主教“僧灿”，第四位主教“道信”，第五位主教“弘仁”和第六位主教“慧能”惠能），禅宗传统是中国最大的佛教学校。结果，菩提达摩（菩提达摩）被尊为禅宗佛教的首任族长。

少林寺是菩提达摩（Bodhidharma）受到启发的地方，素有“禅宗发源地”之称。

http://www.shaolin.org.cn/templates/EN_T_new_list/index.aspx?nodeid=358

According to Zen Studies.org 根据 Zen Studies.org 的说法

What is Zen? It's both something we are—our true nature expressing itself moment by moment—and something we do—a disciplined practice through which we can realize the joy of being. It is not a belief system to which one converts. There is no dogma or doctrine.

Zen is the direct experience of what we might call ultimate reality, or the absolute, yet it is not separate from the ordinary, the relative. This direct experience is our birthright. The practice of zazen—meditation—is a way of realizing the non-dualistic, vibrant, subtle, and interconnected nature of all life.

<https://zenstudies.org/teachings/what-is-zen>

禅是什么？这既是我们真实的本性，一刻一刻地表达自己，也是我们所做的事情——一种有纪律的实践，通过它我们可以体会到存在的快乐。它不是一个人皈依的信仰体系。

没有教条或教义。禅宗是我们可以称之为终极实在或绝对的直接体验，但它并没有脱离普通的相对。这种直接体验是我们与生俱来的权利。禅修的实践是一种实现所有生命的非二元性、活力、微妙和相互关联的本质的方式。

A reformist school of Chán reported: Chán mind is ordinary mind.

一个禅宗改良派报告说：禅心是普通的心。

Enough said.

Abrahamic Religions 亚伯拉罕的宗教

An Abrahamic religion is a religion whose followers believe Prophet Abraham and his descendants hold an especially important role in human spiritual development. The best-known Abrahamic religions are Judaism, Christianity and Islam. They all worship God.

One major difference between Abrahamic religions and Chinese Religious philosophies is that in Genesis, the first book of the Jewish Bible, it says:

亚伯拉罕宗教是一种信徒，他的信徒信奉先知亚伯拉罕及其后代在人类精神发展中的重要作用。最著名的亚伯拉罕宗教是犹太教，基督教和伊斯兰教。他们都崇拜上帝。

亚伯拉罕宗教与中国宗教哲学之间的一个主要区别是，《创世纪》是犹太圣经的第一本书，其中说：

“And God said, Let us make man in our image, after our likeness: and let them have dominion over the fish of the sea, and over the fowl of the air, and over the cattle, and over all the earth, and over every creeping thing that creepeth upon the earth.”

Genesis 1:26-28 King James Version (KJV)

“上帝说，让我们照着自己的形像，按我们的形像造人。让他们统治海洋的鱼，空中的飞鸟，牲畜，整个大地，甚至整个世界。在地上爬行的所有爬行物。”

创世记 1: 26-28 詹姆士王国王版 (KJV)

The word: “Dominion” above means “domination (统治) over nature.”

上方的“统治”一词的意思是“对自然的统治”。

Generally speaking, Chinese Confucianism, Taoism and Buddhism do not give man the authority to “dominate” over nature. Generally speaking, most of Chinese philosophy teaches people to harmonize with nature. Given that Europe and the U.S. are dominated by Judeo/Christian peoples, it is not surprising perhaps that domination is a major theme in their philosophies, or that it should contrast strongly with Chinese philosophy with its emphasis on harmony.

一般来说，中国的儒教，道教和佛教没有赋予人类“支配”自然的权力。一般来说，大多数中国哲学都教人与自然和谐相处。鉴于欧洲和美国以犹太人/基督教徒为主，因此称霸是其哲学的主题也许不足为奇，或者它应该与强调和谐的中国哲学形成鲜明对比。

8. Judaism 犹太教

Judaism is an ancient, monotheistic, Abrahamic religion with the Torah as its foundational text. It encompasses the religion, philosophy and culture of the Jewish people. Judaism is considered by religious Jews to be the expression of the covenant that God established with the Children of Israel. Judaism includes many beliefs, and sacred books. Jewish people believe God gave Moses 10 laws called “the Ten Commandments.” The Torah is part of the larger text known as the Hebrew Bible. With between 14.5 and 17.4 million believers worldwide, Judaism is the tenth largest religion in the world.

犹太教是古老的一神论的亚伯拉罕宗教，以《摩西五经》为基础。它涵盖了犹太人民的宗教，哲学和文化。犹太教徒认为犹太教是上帝与以色列儿童建立的盟约的表达。犹太教包括许多信仰和神圣的书籍。犹太人相信上帝给了摩西 10 条被称为“十诫”的法律。《律法》是希伯来语圣经的一部分。犹太教在全球范围内有 1450 至 1740 万信徒，是世界第十大宗教。

The 10 Commandments are: 十诫是：

1. I am the Lord – your God, and you shall have no other gods before Me.
我是主–你的神，在我以外，你将没有其他神。
2. You shall make and worship no idols. 禁止制造和崇拜偶像。
3. You shall not take the name of the Lord your God in vain.
你们不要徒劳地取耶和华你神的名。
4. Keep the Sabbath day holy. 守安息日为圣日。
5. Honor your father and your mother. 尊重你的父亲和母亲。

6. You shall not murder. 您不得谋杀。
7. You shall not commit adultery. 您不得奸淫。
8. You shall not steal. 您不得偷窃。
9. You shall not bear false witness against your neighbor. 您不得对邻居作虚假证人。
10. You shall not covet your neighbor's goods. 不可贪图邻居的财物。

All Jews, Christians and Muslims are supposed to obey these laws.

所有犹太人，基督徒和穆斯林都应遵守这些法律。

Some obviously are more “serious” violations of God’s laws than others. For example, murder is considered an unforgivable sin by many or most religions.

与其他人相比，某些人显然更严重地违反了上帝的律法。例如，许多或大多数宗教将谋杀视为不可饶恕的罪过。

9. Christianity 基督教

Christianity is an Abrahamic monotheistic religion based on the life, teachings, and miracles of Jesus (耶稣) of Nazareth (拿撒勒), known by Christians as the Christ (基督), or "Messiah" (弥赛亚), who is the focal point of the Christian faiths.

基督教是以拿撒勒（Nazareth）耶稣（Jesus）的生命、教义和奇迹为基础的亚伯拉罕一神论宗教，被基督徒称为基督（Christ）或“弥赛亚”（Messiah），他是基督教信仰的焦点。

Christians are supposed to obey the 10 Commandments. Christians believe Jesus allowed himself to be killed by the Romans as a lesson for people about sacrifice and love. It is the world's largest religion, with over 2.4 billion followers, or 33% of the global population. Christians make up a majority of the population in 158 countries and territories. They believe that Jesus is the Son of God and the savior of humanity whose coming as the Messiah (the Christ) was prophesied in the Old Testament. Christianity has played a major role in shaping western civilization.

基督徒应该遵守十诫。基督教徒相信耶稣允许自己被罗马人杀害，作为人们关于牺牲和爱的一个教训。它是世界上最大的宗教，拥有超过 24 亿信徒，占全球人口的 33%。基督徒占 158 个国家和地区人口的大多数。他们相信耶稣是上帝的儿子，是人类的救世主，他作为弥赛亚（基督）的降临是在旧约中预言的。基督教在西方文明的形成中发挥了重要作用。

The prophet Jesus was (among other things) a liberal Jewish reformer, for example he permitted his followers to eat pork which is forbidden in Judaism. Some aspects of his more liberal attitudes are attributed to growing up in the more temperate climate of Galilee. In contrast Jewish prophets are from the harsher climates of the “deep desert.” They tend to be more conservative. Others believe during Jesus’ “missing years,” (referring to the period of Jesus's life between the ages of 12 and 29) Jesus visited Kashmir, and/or China and/or studied with the Essenes in the Judea desert. Jesus’ message of universal love is strikingly similar to that of the Chinese philosopher Mozi (c. 500 BCE).

先知耶稣是（其中包括）一个自由的犹太改革者，例如，他允许他的追随者吃犹太教禁止的猪肉。他较宽松的态度在某些方面归因于在加利利更为温和的气候中成长。相反，犹太先知来自“深沙漠”的恶劣气候。他们往往比较保守。其他人则认为，在耶稣的“失踪岁月”（指耶稣生命中的 12 至 29 岁）期间，耶稣访问了克什米尔，和/或中国，和/或在犹太沙漠的埃森纳学习。耶稣的普遍爱的信息与中国哲学家墨子（公元前 500 年）惊人地相似。

In the Year 325 CE Roman Emperor Constantine reformulated Christianity, compiled and edited the Christian New Testament Bible from older texts and started the Catholic Church. He did not convert to the new religion he created until he was on his deathbed. Christianity was reformulated again during the Reformation period in Western Europe. This led to the “Wars of Religion” between different denominations of Christians. Essentially, Catholics did not want “reformed” versions of Christianity taking over all of Europe. Italy, Spain, France, Belgium, and Central and South America are still mostly Catholic. Most forms of Christianity are derivative of the post-Constantinian reforms. Not all however. For example, in Ethiopia they practice a form of Christianity that dates to before Roman Emperor Constantine. Catholics did try to take over Ethiopia and convert it to Catholicism, but after several bloody battles the Ethiopians decided to go back to their original form of Christianity.

公元 325 年，罗马皇帝康斯坦丁重新制定了基督教，编辑和编辑了基督教新约圣经旧文本，并开始了天主教会。直到临终前，他才皈依他创造的新宗教。在西欧宗教改革时期，基督教又被重新制定。这导致了不同教派基督徒之间的“宗教战争”。从本质上讲，天主教徒不希望基督教的“改革”版本接管整个欧洲。意大利、西班牙、法国、比利时、中美洲和南美洲仍然大多是天主教徒。大多数基督教形式都是后君士坦丁改革的产物。但也不是全部。例如，在埃塞俄比亚，他们信奉的基督教可以追溯到罗马皇帝君士坦丁之前。天主教徒确实试图接管埃塞俄比亚并将其转变为天主教，但在几次血腥的战斗之后，埃塞俄比亚人决定回到他们原来的基督教形式。

The “Gnostics” are group of Christians that follow the original “Gnostic” texts, writings attributed to the followers of Jesus before Emperor Constantine.

“诺斯替派”是一群基督徒，他们遵循最初的“诺斯替派”经文，即君士坦丁皇帝之前耶稣信徒的著作。

The leader of the Catholic Church is called the Pope. The current Pope Francis is a liberal reformer. For example, during the past 1700 years Catholics believed only Catholics can go to heaven. Pope Francis has changed that and now says “good people” can go to heaven. Pope Francis is the first pope from South America.

天主教会的领袖叫教皇。现任教皇方济各是自由派改革者。例如，在过去 1700 年中，天主教徒相信只有天主教徒才能上天堂。教皇方济各改变了这一点，现在说“好人”可以上天堂。教皇方济各是第一位来自南美洲的教皇。

There are a large number of sub-denominations within Catholicism. These include:

天主教内部有大量的亚教派。其中包括：

The Order of Malta, founded as the Knights Hospitaller around 1099 in Jerusalem, is a Roman Catholic chivalric society that received the Maltese Islands in a perpetual lease in 1530 from Charles I of Spain.

马耳他骑士团于 1099 年在耶路撒冷成立，名为 Hospitaller 骑士团，是罗马天主教骑士协会，1530 年从西班牙查理一世永久租赁马耳他群岛。

Franciscans are a group of related mendicant religious orders within the Catholic Church, founded in 1209 by Saint Francis of Assisi.

方济各会是由阿西西的圣方济各会于 1209 年在天主教会内建立的一个相关宗教组织。

The Society of Jesus - a religious order headquartered in Rome. It was founded by Ignatius of Loyola with the approval of Pope Paul III in 1540. The members are called Jesuits. Throughout their history they have been politically very active in various governments around world. They are somewhat controversial. There are also sub-denominations within the Society of Jesus. 耶稣会-总部设在罗马的宗教组织。它是由洛约拉的伊格纳修斯于 1540 年经教皇保罗三世批准建立的。这些成员被称为耶稣会士。纵观他们的历史，他们在世界各地的政府中政治上非常活跃。他们有些争议。在“耶稣会”内也有分教派

Opus Dei was founded in 1928 in Spain and is currently established in 66 countries. Like the Jesuits they also are controversial. For example, Opus Dei cast in a very negative light in the popular novel and movie Da Vinci Code. Many feel that characterization to be very unfair. 天主事工会于 1928 年在西班牙成立，目前在 66 个国家成立。像耶稣会一样，他们也有争议。例如，在受欢迎的小说和电影《达芬奇密码》中，《天主事工会》就被置于一个非常消极的角度。许多人认为这种定性是非常不公平的。

And many others 以及许多其他

Although the pope is the titular head of the Catholic Church, it is difficult to say to what extent he can actually control what the various sub denominations do. According to Catholic doctrine the Catholic Pope is infallible. Although the current Pope Francis is very popular around the world as a liberal reformer, there is a well-entrenched arch-conservative bureaucracy within the Catholic church that has very actively resisted many of his intended reforms.

尽管教皇是天主教会的名义领袖，但很难说他能在多大程度上真正控制各教派的活动。根据天主教教义，天主教教皇是绝对正确的。尽管现任教宗方济各作为自由派改革者在世界各地非常受欢迎，但天主教会内部有一个根深蒂固的保守派官僚机构，非常积极地抵制了他的许多改革计划。

10. Islam 伊斯兰教

Islam is an Abrahamic monotheistic religion teaching that there is only one God and that Muhammad (穆罕默德) is the last, final messenger and prophet of God. Islam teaches that God is merciful, all-powerful, unique and has guided mankind through prophets, revealed scriptures and natural signs.

伊斯兰教是一种亚伯拉罕式的一神教，教导只有一位上帝，穆罕默德（Muhammad）是上帝的最后一位，也是最后一位使者和先知。伊斯兰教教导说上帝是仁慈，无所不能，独特的，并已通过先知，显露的经文和自然标志引导了人类。

The primary scripture of Islam is the Quran (可兰经), viewed by Muslims as the word of God and the teachings Muhammad (c. 570–8 June 632 CE).

伊斯兰教的主要经文是可兰经，可兰经被穆斯林视为上帝的道理和穆罕默德的教义（约 632 年 6 月 8 日至 8 日）。

Muslims believe Adam, Abraham, Moses and Jesus were Holy Prophets of God. Muslims believe Islam is the oldest religion and many believe there were 124,000 prophets in history (although only 25 are named in the Quran). They include Adam, Abraham, Moses, Jesus and Muhammad. Islam is the world's second-largest religion and the fastest-growing major religion, with over 1.8 billion followers or 24.1% of the global population.

穆斯林相信亚当，亚伯拉罕，摩西和耶稣是上帝的圣先知。穆斯林认为伊斯兰教是最古老的宗教，许多人认为历史上有 124,000 名先知（尽管古兰经中只有 25 名被提名）。他们包括亚当，亚伯拉罕，摩西，耶稣和穆罕默德。伊斯兰教是世界第二大宗教，也是发展最快的主要宗教，拥有超过 18 亿的追随者，占全球人口的 24.1%。

Muslims are required to believe in and follow the “Five Pillars of Islam.” 穆斯林必须信仰并遵循“伊斯兰五大支柱”。

1. Profession of Faith (“shahada”). The belief that “There is no God but God, and Muhammad is the final Messenger of God” is central to Islam. It is an affirmation of the 1st of the 10 Commandments.
2. Five required Prayers (“salat”) per day
3. Alms (“zakat”) – Giving money to the poor
4. Fasting (“sawm”) particularly during the month of Ramadan, and
5. Pilgrimage (“hajj”) to Mecca

1.信仰职业（shahada）。伊斯兰的中心思想是“只有上帝，上帝，穆罕默德是上帝的最后使者”。 ...

2.每天需要五个祷告（salat）

3.施舍（zakat）–捐钱给穷人

4.斋戒，尤其是斋月期间，以及

5.朝圣（麦加朝圣）

There is no more misunderstood religion than Islam. This might have something to do with about 900+ years of very active anti-Islamic propaganda generated by Europeans. This goes back at least to the “Christian” Crusades (1096 to 1291). The word “Christian” is in quotation marks here (“ ”) to indicate that the intended meaning is not the usual meaning. This is a common convention (like a rule) in English. Quotation marks do not always mean a quotation.

没有比伊斯兰教更被误解的宗教了。这可能与欧洲人进行了大约 900 多年的非常积极的反伊斯兰宣传有关。这至少可以追溯到“基督教”十字军东征（1096 年至 1291 年）。“克里斯蒂安”一词在此处用双引号（“ ”）表示其预期含义不是通常的含义。这是英文的通用约定（如规则）。

In most respects Islam is the most liberal of the three major monotheistic religions.

在大多数方面，伊斯兰教是三大一神教中最自由的。

For example, 例如，

A Muslim can marry a Christian or a Jew. 穆斯林可以嫁给基督徒或犹太人。

In comparison, Christians are only supposed to marry Christians, and Jewish people only marry Jewish people.

相比之下，根据基督教和犹太教义，基督徒只能与基督徒结婚，而犹太人只能与犹太人结婚。

In Islam God rewards good deeds and a person cannot be punished for ignorance.

在伊斯兰教中，上帝奖励善行，一个人不能因无知而受到惩罚。

Surely, those who believe, those who are Jewish, the Christians, and the converts; anyone who (1) believes in God, and (2) believes in the Last Day, and (3) leads a righteous life, will receive their recompense from their Lord. They have nothing to fear, nor will they grieve.

Quran 2:62

信的人，犹太人，基督教徒，和皈依者，凡信神，信审判日，过公义生活的，必从他们的主那里得赏赐。他们不必害怕，也不必悲伤。

古兰经 2:62

Also, 也，

The Prophet explains that, when fates are apportioned in the Afterlife, “God does not wrong anyone of His creation.” Commenting on this hadith, al-Nawawi (d. 1277) adds, “Injustice is impossible for God’s truth.” With this firmly in mind, we can say with confidence and inner ease that, while we do not know the fate awaiting any one person after death, no one will be wronged before the “Best of judges” (95:8).

先知解释说，当命运在来世被分配时，“上帝不会冤枉他所创造的任何人。”纳瓦维（al-Nawawi，公元 1277 年）在评论这道圣训时补充道，“上帝的真理是不可能有不公正的。”有了这一点，我们可以满怀信心和内心的轻松地说，虽然我们不知道任何人死后的命运，但没有人会在“最好的法官”（95:8）面前受委屈。

<https://yaqeeninstitute.org/jonathan-brown/the-fate-of-non-muslims-perspectives-on-salvation-outside-of-islam>

So, Christians, Jewish people and others who do good in life will be judged mercifully on Judgement Day and welcomed into heaven. That is clearly the most liberal of the three major Abrahamic religions.

因此，基督徒，犹太人民和其他生活良好的人将在审判日受到仁慈的审判，并受到欢迎进入天堂。显然，那是三种主要的亚伯拉罕宗教中最自由的一种。

These kinds of beliefs are much more liberal than previous monotheistic religions. 这种信仰比以前的一神教自由得多。

Islam was the first major religion to grant marital property rights to women. 伊斯兰教是第一个给予妇女婚姻财产权的主要宗教。

“The divine justness and equitability of the Islamic laws of inheritance have been correctly appreciated by many non-Muslim scholars such as Professor Almaric Rumsey (1825-1899) of King's College, London, the author of many works on the subject of the Muslim law of inheritance and a barrister-at-law, who stated that the Muslim law of inheritance, ‘comprises beyond question the most refined and elaborate system of rules for the devolution of property that is known to the civilised world.’”

“许多非穆斯林学者，如伦敦国王学院的 Almaric Rumsey 教授（1825-1899 年）、许多关于穆斯林继承法的著作的作者和一名法律大律师，都正确地认识到了伊斯兰继承法的神圣公正性和公平性，他说，穆斯林继承法“毫无疑问地包括了文明世界所知的最精细和最详尽的财产移交规则体系。”

<http://www.islam101.com/sociology/inheritance.htm>

From the beginning Islam was not racist.

Bilal was one of the earliest great African Muslims, the first slave to convert to Islam, and the first "Muezzin" (the person who sings the "call to prayer").

比拉尔是最早伟大的非洲穆斯林之一，是第一个皈依伊斯兰教的奴隶，也是第一个唱“祈祷召唤”的人。

When Bilal was a slave, he was tortured for being Muslim. So, Muslims bought him and set him free. Islam have never been racist. Bilal was a very close friend (companion) of the Holy Prophet Mohammed.

当比拉尔是奴隶时，他因为是穆斯林而受到折磨。所以，穆斯林收买了他，让他自由了。伊斯兰教从来没有种族主义。比拉尔是神圣先知穆罕默德非常亲密的朋友（同伴）。

The so-called “Resource Curse” 所谓的“资源诅咒”

There is no doubt whatsoever that the Muslim countries suffer from the “Resources Curse.”

The “resource curse” states that countries with an abundance of natural resources (such as petroleum oil and rare earth minerals) tend to have less economic growth, less freedom, and worse development outcomes than countries with fewer natural resources.

毫无疑问，大多数穆斯林国家都遭受着“资源诅咒”。“资源诅咒”指出，拥有丰富自然资源（如石油和稀土矿物）的国家往往经济增长率较低，自由度较低，以及比自然资源较少的国家更糟糕的发展成果。

There is one simple major reason for this. The Europeans and Americans historically have always attacked and do their best to totally control any country with abundant natural resources. In most cases this means war followed by installing American approved “appointed” (“puppet”) dictators. The American imposed dictators then steal all the money and starve the people. Resource rich countries that do not bow down totally to western hegemony will suffer intensely, like Syria, Iran and Venezuela.

有一个简单的主要原因。欧美历史上一直在攻击和尽力控制任何一个自然资源丰富的国家。在大多数情况下，这意味着战争后安装傀儡独裁者。美国强加的独裁者然后偷走所有的钱，让人民挨饿。资源丰富的国家，如叙利亚、伊朗和委内瑞拉，如果不完全向西方霸权低头，将会遭受严重的打击。

According to current estimates, 79.4% of the world's proven oil reserves are located in OPEC Member nations.

据目前估计，全球已探明石油储量的 79.4% 位于欧佩克成员国。

https://www.opec.org/opec_web/en/data_graphs/330.htm

Most of them are Muslim, except for example Venezuela - a country that the USA also relentlessly attacks.

他们中的大多数是穆斯林，除了委内瑞拉——一个美国也无情地攻击的国家。

OPEC nations: Algeria, Angola, Congo, Equatorial Guinea, Gabon, Iran, Iraq, Kuwait, Libya, Nigeria, Saudi Arabia, United Arab Emirates, Venezuela.

阿尔及利亚，安哥拉，刚果，赤道几内亚，加蓬，伊朗，伊拉克，科威特，利比亚，尼日利亚，沙特阿拉伯，阿拉伯联合酋长国，委内瑞拉。

Venezuela's Maduro: Americans captured in failed coup plot

Florida-based ex-Green Beret officer says US-backed opposition leader Juan Guaido part of plan to 'liberate' Venezuela.

委内瑞拉马杜罗：美国在未遂政变阴谋中被捕

佛罗里达前绿色贝雷帽官员说，美国支持的反对派领导人胡安·瓜伊多是“解放”委内瑞拉计划的一部分。

6 May 2020

<https://www.aljazeera.com/news/2020/05/venezuela-americans-nabbed-failed-coup-plot-200505025057889.html>

Spreading hateful propaganda defaming Muslims, (and socialists - like the Venezuelan government) is profitable for the Euro-Americans. Consequently, there are all kinds of ridiculous lies about Islam (and socialism).

传播诽谤穆斯林的仇恨宣传（以及委内瑞拉政府等社会主义者）对于欧美人来说是有利可图的。因此，关于伊斯兰教（和社会主义）存在各种荒谬的谎言。

To become a Muslim all one has to do is go to a Mosque and say in front of three witnesses: 要成为一名穆斯林，所有人要做的就是去清真寺，在三位证人面前说：

"I bear witness that there is no God but God, and I bear witness that Mohammad is the final messenger of God."

“我见证除了上帝以外没有别的上帝，我见证穆罕默德是上帝的最后使者。”

There are also some highly derogatory (fake) "translations" of the Quran. They were translated by people who hate Islam and want to make Islam look evil. Most English-speaking Muslims prefer the 1946 A. Yusuf Ali Quran translation.

还有一些对古兰经高度贬损（伪造）的“翻译”。他们被那些憎恨伊斯兰教并想让伊斯兰教看起来邪恶的人翻译。大多数讲英语的穆斯林更喜欢 1946 年的《古兰经》译本。

This barrage of lies is to be expected. When anyone in the world does good things there will be evil people slandering them. Doing good is a dangerous thing because greedy evil people have a disproportionate amount of power in the world for obvious reasons. The greedy evil people won't be able to keep their power if good people work together and expose them. So, the greedy evil people are brilliant at dividing the good people and turning them against each other.

这一连串的谎言是意料之中的。世上若有人行善，必有恶人谗谤他们。行善是一件危险的事情，因为贪婪的恶人在世界上拥有不成比例的权力，原因显而易见。贪心的恶人如果好人一起揭发，就无法保住自己的权力。所以，贪婪的恶人善于分化好人，使他们互相对立。

Socialists have much the same problem, for example President Trump and Secretary of State Michael Pompeo constantly refer to the COVID-19 as the "China Virus." Yes, it's an obvious lie, but that's how American politics works.

社会党人也有同样的问题，比如特朗普总统和国务卿经常将 COVID-19 称为“中国病毒”。是的，这是一个明显的谎言，但美国政治就是这样运作的。



<https://news.sky.com/story/george-floyd-death-bishop-outraged-by-trumps-photo-op-outside-church-11999148>

It's slander and defamation. A profit driven lie designed to unify Americans around hate. It's a really sick and evil way to get power, but hate has a long history of being used by politicians to get power.

这显然是诽谤。一个以利益为导向的谎言，旨在把美国人团结在仇恨周围。这是一种病态而邪恶的获取权力的方式，但仇恨被政客用来获取权力的历史由来已久。

All Muslims (Christians, Jewish, Buddhists, etc.) are good people by definition. If they are not good, they are not the religion they claim to be. There are no "Islamic terrorists," there never have been and there never will be. Evil people are not Muslim. If someone who is Muslim does great evil, he or she has forfeit Islam.

按照定义，所有穆斯林都是好人。如果他们不好，那就不是穆斯林。没有“伊斯兰恐怖分子”，从来没有，也永远不会有。邪恶的人不是穆斯林。如果一个穆斯林犯下了极大的罪恶（例如恐吓或杀害无辜的人），他或她就不再是穆斯林。

Muslims are people of peace. 穆斯林是和平的人。

The word "Islam" is derived from the Arabic root "*Salema*": peace, purity, submission and obedience. "伊斯兰"一词源自阿拉伯语 "*Salema*": 和平，纯正和服从。

Religion summary 宗教总结

The central message of all religions is: "Be good!" (usually defined as: help the poor, protect the innocent, be patient, forgive others, work hard and so on.) There is nothing wrong or bad about any of those beliefs. It is believed by most secular scholars that religions evolved to promote harmony and stability within and between groups of people. The histories of the great religions can be interpreted as the evolution of law, as each major religion created laws to guide the followers of those religions.

所有宗教的中心思想是：“做个好人！”（通常被定义为：帮助穷人，保护无辜者，保持耐心，原谅他人，努力工作等等。）这些信念没有错。大多数世俗学者认为，宗教的发展是为了促进人群内部和人群之间的和谐。大宗教的历史可以解释为法律的演变，因为每个主要宗教都制定了法律来指导这些宗教的信徒。

Unfortunately, virtually all major religions have been “hijacked” for political purposes by very corrupt evil people and consequently more and more people dislike religion.

不幸的是，几乎所有主要宗教出于政治目的都被非常腐败的邪恶人“劫持”，因此越来越多的人不喜欢宗教。

A Few Other Major Philosophies 其他一些主要哲学

11. Humanism 人道主义

Humanism is a philosophical and ethical stance that emphasizes the value and agency of human beings by Dulanjali Nadeeshani

Humanism is a philosophical and ethical belief system that emphasizes the value and abilities of human beings, individually and collectively, and generally prefers critical thinking and evidence (rationalism and empiricism) over acceptance of dogma or superstition. The word humanism was created by Friedrich Niethammer at the beginning of the 19th century. Generally, however, humanism refers to a belief in human freedom and progress. In modern times, humanist movements believe that there is no God and look to science not “holy books” from a supernatural source to understand the world. Followers of humanism are called “humanists.”

人文主义是一种哲学和伦理立场，着重于杜兰加利·纳德阿萨尼（Dulanjali Nadeeshani）的人类价值和行动力

人文主义是一种哲学和伦理信仰体系，它强调个人的价值和能力，并集体地重视人类的价值和能力，并且相对于接受教条或迷信，它通常更喜欢批判性思维和证据（理性主义和经验主义）。人文主义一词是 19 世纪初由 Friedrich Niethammer 创建的。但是，总的来说，人本主义是指对人类自由和进步的信仰。在现代，人文主义运动相信没有上帝，他们寻求科学而不是来自超自然资源的“圣书”来理解世界。人文主义的追随者被称为“人道主义者”。

https://www.academia.edu/25357219/Humanism_is_a_philosophical_and_ethical_stance_that_emphasizes_the_value_and_agency_of_human_beings

Although humanists are often or usually caustically criticized by many or most religious people, in my personal experience they've been generally quite nice people.

尽管人文主义者经常或通常受到许多或大多数宗教人士的苛刻批评，但以我个人的经验来看，他们通常是相当友善的人。

12. Nihilism 虚无主义

Nihilism is from the Latin language “nihil” meaning “nothing” and is the philosophical viewpoint that denies “meaningful” aspects of life. It is an atheist philosophy, meaning there is no god. Existential nihilism, argues that life is without objective meaning, purpose, or intrinsic value. Moral nihilists assert that there is no inherent morality. The term is sometimes used to explain the general mood of despair at a perceived pointlessness of existence that one may develop upon realizing there are no necessary norms, rules, or laws. People who follow Nihilism are called “nihilists.”

虚无主义来自拉丁语“ nihil”，意为“无”，是否认生活中“有意义”方面的哲学观点。这是一种无神论哲学，意味着没有上帝。存在的虚无主义认为生活没有客观意义，目的或内在价值。道德虚无主义者断言没有内在的道德。该术语有时用于解释人们在意识到没有必要的规范，规则或法律时可能会发展起来的毫无意义的绝望情绪。追随虚无主义的人被称为“虚无主义者”。

Adapted from: <http://app.arc.m.ch/txdr4b/nihilism.html> (This site is no longer available on the internet.)

Most people consider most Nihilists to be somewhat or very depressing people. Others consider Nihilists to be dangerous as they have no morality.

大多数人认为大多数虚无主义者是一些或非常令人沮丧的人。另一些人认为虚无主义者是危险的，因为他们没有道德。

Whereas humanists for example are also atheist, humanists do have a moral code based on the value of humans. Nihilists however reject even that.

例如，人文主义者也是无神论者，但人文主义者确实有基于人类价值的道德准则。然而，虚无主义者甚至拒绝这样做。

13. Atheism 无神论

Atheism is the belief that there are no Gods or God. Many philosophies do not acknowledge a “God” or “Gods” and are thus atheistic. Some philosophies simply don’t mention the concept of a God or Gods, whereas others actively reject the concept of a God or Gods. A person who believes there is no God is called an “atheist.”

无神论（名词）是对没有神的信仰。许多哲学不承认“神”或“神”，因此是无神论的（形容词）。有些哲学根本没有提到上帝的概念，而另一些哲学家则积极拒绝上帝的概念。相信没有上帝的人被称为“无神论者”。（也是一个名词。）

‘**Theism**’ incidentally means belief in God or Gods. It comes from the Greek word “theos” which means God.

The prefix ‘a’ as in ‘atheist’ means ‘no,’ in English.

Thus, we have ‘**amoral**,’ which means no morality.

And, ‘**atypical**’ which means not typical, or unusual.

'Apolitical' means no interest in, or relationship with politics.

“有神论”顺便指对上帝的信仰。它来自希腊语“theos”，意为上帝。

“无神论者”中的前缀“a”在英语中表示“否”。

因此，我们有“道德的”，这意味着没有道德。

而且，“非典型”表示不典型或不寻常。

“政治性”表示对政治不感兴趣或与政治没有关系。

The atheists I have met were mostly deep thinkers. One must be patient with such people. In any large group there are going to be good and bad, with most being somewhere in the middle. It is best to not judge people too quickly. Some atheists have a highly refined sense of morality. Some do not.

我遇到的无神论者大多是思想渊博的人。必须对这种人有耐心。在任何一个大团体中，都会有好有坏，大多数都在中间。最好不要太快地判断人。一些无神论者具有高度精致的道德意识。有些没有。

14. Agnosticism 不可知论

Agnosticism is a vague belief that there may be some God, but not attached to any particular version of God. A person who believes in agnosticism is called an “agnostic.”

不可知论者是一个模糊的信念，认为可能存在（一个）上帝或许多神灵，但并不隶属于任何特定版本的神灵。相信不可知论者被称为“不可知论者”。

Timeline of the Great Religions and Philosophies 伟大宗教和哲学的时间表

2400-2300 BCE	The Pyramid Texts are the oldest religious texts in ancient Egypt 金字塔文字是古埃及最古老的宗教文字
2,000 BCE	Hinduism 印度教
2,000 BCE	Zoroastrianism 拜火教
2,000 BCE	Judaism 犹太教
1046 BCE	All Under Heaven 天下 Tiānxià
500 BCE	100 Schools of Thought in China (including Confucius, Lao Tzu, Mozi), Buddha, and Socrates 中国的 100 个思想流派（包括孔子，老子，墨子），佛陀和苏格拉底
30 ACE	Christianity 基督教
607 ACE	Islam 伊斯兰教
1517 – 1648	European Reformation 欧洲基督教改革
1517-1648	Counter Reformation 天主教反改革

According to the remains of ancient texts it appears the roots of organized religious beliefs might stem from “God Kings” who later externalized the Gods, then unified them into One (or simply recognized their intrinsic unity).

根据古代文献的遗存，有组织的宗教信仰的根源可能源于“神王”，他们后来将神外化，然后将它们统一成一个神（或仅仅承认它们的内在统一）。

Major Arguments for a Belief in God or Gods 信仰上帝的主要论据

A belief in God (or Gods): 对上帝的信仰:

...relieves people of some of the fear of death 减轻人们对死亡的恐惧

...gives people familiar and useful rituals at major turning points in life like birth, marriage and death
在人生的重大转折点，如出生、结婚和死亡，为人们提供熟悉而有用的仪式

...gives reassurance that in the end justice will prevail and thus reduces the perceived need for revenge

使人确信最终正义会获胜，从而减少对复仇的感知需求

...greater than one's own self helps ensure people do not think they are God and can for example kill whoever they want, because the supreme God will punish them

超越自己的自我，有助于确保人们不认为自己是上帝，并且可以杀死任何想要的人，因为至高无上的上帝会惩罚他们

Major Arguments Against a Belief in God or Gods 反对信仰上帝的主要论据

There is no concrete empirical scientific evidence that there is or ever was a God or Gods

没有具体的经验科学证据表明存在上帝

No good God would let so many terrible things happen to innocent people

没有一个善良的上帝会让这么多可怕的事情发生在无辜的人身上

A belief in some "magical" deity opens the door to all kinds of magical thinking which can permit any kind of behavior

对某种“神奇”神的信仰打开了各种神奇思维的大门，这些思维可以允许任何行为

Some people believe religions are the biggest criminal conspiracies in the history of the world because they say, religions sell a belief in something for which there is no scientific evidence

有些人认为宗教是世界历史上最大的犯罪阴谋，因为他们说，宗教对没有科学证据的事物产生了信仰。

The above arguments are at least 3,000 years old, and probably much older going back to the first large-scale organized religions probably around 8,000 to 10,000 BCE. I recite the above arguments so readers won't be too surprised when they are heard. The arguments above and many more will be heard in an educated environment. For every one of the above arguments there are counter-arguments, and counter-counter arguments.

上述论点至少已有 3,000 年的历史，并且可能要追溯到大约公元前 8,000 至 10,000 年的最早的大规模有组织宗教。我背诵以上论点，以使读者听到时不会感到惊讶。在受过良好教育的环境中，将会听到上述论点和更多论点。对于上面的每一个断言，都有反断言，以及反对这些反断言的论据。

An old joke: “There are no atheists in a foxhole (散兵坑).”

一个老笑话：“散兵坑里没有无神论者。”

This comes from WWI. When the bombs start dropping and the poison gas drifts in, it's pretty amazing how many people suddenly become religious! It's an old joke but there is an element of truth in it too.

这来自第一次世界大战。当炸弹开始掉落且毒气飘入时，令人惊讶的是有多少人突然成为宗教信仰者！这是一个古老的玩笑，但其中也包含了真相。

Most university first semester philosophy professors... 大多数大学第一学期哲学教授...

...will work to make people question their beliefs. If a student believes in God the professor will “prove” there “definitely is no God.” If the student doesn't believe in God, the professor will prove “there definitely is a God.” The point of this is to make sure that people think critically about their beliefs and see things from many points of view.

...会让人们质疑他们的信仰。如果一个学生相信上帝，教授会证明“绝对没有上帝”。如果这个学生不相信上帝，教授会证明“绝对有上帝”。这是为了确保人们批判性地思考他们的信仰，从多个角度看问题。

Religion, Socialism and Communism 宗教、社会主义和共产主义

Some religious people have asserted that socialism and communism are just “religions without God.” I suspect that's too simple an explanation for the historic trends that led to Karl Marx and associates banning religion.

一些宗教人士断言社会主义和共产主义只是“没有上帝的宗教”，我怀疑这对于导致卡尔·马克思及其同事禁止宗教的历史趋势的解释过于简单。

Their stated reason was that religion is the opiate of the masses, a non-rational belief system and big waste of time.

他们所说的原因是宗教是大众的鸦片，是一种非理性的信仰体系，浪费了大量的时间。

I suspect that if Marx and associates had sat down with the founders of each of the major religions, they would have had a splendid time and agreed on just about everything.

我怀疑，如果马克思和他的同事们与每一个主要宗教的创始人坐下来，他们会有一个美好的时光，就几乎所有的事情达成一致。

Why? I believe most or all religions are basically socialist.

They all promote helping the poor and the Abrahamic religions (Judaism, Christianity and Islam) all assert most of the rich people will go to hell.

为什么？我相信大多数或所有的宗教基本上都是社会主义的。他们都提倡帮助穷人，亚伯拉罕的宗教（犹太教、基督教和伊斯兰教）都断言大多数富人会下地狱。

“It is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle than for a rich man to enter the kingdom of God.”

New Testament Bible, Mark 10:25

骆驼穿过针眼要比有钱人进入上帝的国容易。
新约圣经，马可福音 10:25

And again, I say to you, It is easier for a camel to go through the eye of a needle, than for a rich man to enter into the kingdom of God. It.

Matthew 19:24

我再对你说，骆驼穿过针眼，要比有钱人进入上帝的国容易。它。马太福音 19:24

In the New Testament bible Jesus tells his followers:

Jesus said to him, “If you want to be perfect, go, sell what you have and give to the poor, and you will have treasure in heaven; and come, follow Me.”

Matthew 19:21

耶稣在新约圣经中告诉跟随者：

耶稣对他说：“如果你想变得完美，那你去卖掉你所拥有的，并献给穷人，你就会有天上拥有财宝；来，跟着我。”

马太福音 19:21

These are not things a capitalist would say. They are however exactly what a communist or communalist would say.

这不是资本家会说的话。然而，他们正是一个共产主义者或公社主义者会说的话。

What I think happened in history is that the founders of the great religions were very enlightened people, but in the centuries that followed, each of those religious organizations calcified and the leadership in each became more and more exclusive in their approaches to those religions. For marketing purposes, they changed the philosophies of the founders and they became hungrier and hungrier for more power. This tendency led to quite a number of religious wars. And it was this tendency, the aggressiveness of religious organizations that terrified Karl Marx so much he decided it was far safer to just outlaw religion.

我认为历史上发生的事情是，伟大宗教的创始人都是非常开明的人，但是在随后的几个世纪里，这些宗教组织中的每一个都钙化了，每一个组织中的领导层对这些宗教的态度越来越排斥。为了营销的目的，他们改变了创始人的哲学，他们变得越来越渴望获得更多的权力。这种倾向导致了相当多的宗教战争。正是这种趋势，宗教组织的侵略性，使卡尔·马克思非常害怕，他认为仅仅取缔宗教是安全得多的。

It is certainly true that just about all religions advocate to help the poor. In this respect religious organizations are more “socialist” than capitalist *per se*. Over time, as religious law evolved, more and more emphasis was put on defining exactly how much religious people should help the poor.

诚然，几乎所有的宗教都提倡帮助穷人。在这方面，宗教组织本身比资本主义组织更“社会主义”。随着时间的推移，随着宗教法的发展，人们越来越重视准确界定宗教人士应该帮助穷人的程度。

Most people assume that Stalin for example hated religion. This might not have been the case.

大多数人认为斯大林就是个讨厌宗教的人。可能不是这样。

“Stalin is unique among world communist leaders in at least one respect: he studied theology for five years at the Tiflis Spiritual Seminary, the training college for priests in the Russian Orthodox Church. He did so during a deeply formative time of his life, from the age of 15 to the verge of his 20th birthday (1894-1899). One of the best students, he was known for his intellect and phenomenal memory. And he was notably devout, attending all worship services and even leading the choir.

“斯大林在至少一个方面在世界共产主义领导人中是独一无二的：他在提夫利斯精神神学院（俄罗斯东正教牧师培训学院）学习了五年神学。从 15 岁到他 20 岁生日（1894-1899）的一生，他都是在这个深具形成力的时期里这么做的。他是最好的学生之一，以他的才智和非凡的记忆力而闻名。而且他特别虔诚，参加所有礼拜仪式，甚至领导合唱团。

“In the early years of the Second World War, Stalin made a historic compact with the Russian Orthodox Church. In return for support of the war effort that eventually defeated Hitler, Stalin allowed the reopening of tens of thousands of churches and the re-establishment of the church’s leadership hierarchy. (These developments are far more complex than the common argument that a morally bankrupt government sought to harness the church’s influence to counter the Nazis.) However, one condition applied: the church was to respect the ‘affirmative action’ that already applied to ethnic minorities. Stalin was the architect of the policy of fostering the languages, cultures, education, and self-government of the many ‘nations’ or ethnic groups in the USSR. This policy included religion: the Muslim sharia in the south was permitted, Buddhism in the east was fostered, and anti-Semitism was vigorously opposed, with many Jews in the government apparatus and heavy penalties for anti-Semitism. The old imperialism of the Russian church was to be a thing of past.”

“在第二次世界大战的初期，斯大林与俄罗斯东正教教堂签订了历史性契约。作为对最终击败希特勒的战争努力的支持，斯大林允许重新开放数万座教堂，并重新建立教堂的领导层级。（这些事态发展远比道德上破产的政府试图利用教会的影响力来对抗纳粹的普遍论点更为复杂。）但是，有一个条件适用：教会要尊重已经适用于少数民族的“平权行动”。斯大林是促进苏联许多“民族”或民族的语言，文化，教育和自治政策的制定者。这项政策包括宗教：南部允许穆斯林回教，东部则鼓励佛教，反对犹太主义则遭到强烈反对，政府机构中有许多犹太人，并对反对犹太主义处以重罚。俄罗斯教会的旧帝国主义已经成为过去。”

<https://politicaltheology.com/saint-iosif-stalin-and-religion>

Unfortunately, that didn’t happen. 不幸的是，那没有发生。

“Lenin began and Stalin completed the organizational structures and the repertoire of strategies and tactics that would be used as a model by almost all subsequent communist movements for suppressing religion. This model was primarily constructed to overcome the challenges posed to the revolution by a powerful Russian Orthodox Church. As such it did not fit the religious circumstances of other communist countries. It was poorly adapted to the decentralized patterns of religious practice in Asia, and it was unable to eliminate resistance from the Roman Catholic Church in Eastern Europe, especially when that church was connected with nationalism. Even though the Stalinist model initially seemed successful in eliminating political opposition from religion in the Soviet Union, it was in the long run a failure on its own terms.”

列宁开始了，斯大林完成了组织结构以及战略和战术的全部内容，几乎所有随后的共产主义运动都将其作为榜样来压制宗教。该模型主要用于克服强大的俄罗斯东正教教会对于革命提出的挑战。因此，它不适合其他共产主义国家的宗教环境。它没有很好地适应亚洲宗教活动的分散模式，无法消除东欧罗马天主教会的抵制，特别是当该教堂与民族主义联系在一起时。尽管斯大林主义模式最初似乎成功地消除了苏联宗教中的政治反对，但从长远来看，按其自身条件是失败的。”

Madsen, Richard, *The Oxford Handbook of the History of Communism*

China at this time is likewise dealing with an outbreak that nothing less than a revolution in Hong Kong.

<https://www.globalresearch.ca/money-behind-hong-kong-protests/5686679>

<https://stephenlendman.org/2019/08/civil-disobedience-in-hong-kong-or-us-color-revolution-attempt/>

UK ruled Hong Kong without a trace of democracy or human rights but is now ‘deeply concerned’ at China’s security proposals, by George Galloway - a member of the British Parliament for nearly 30 years.

<https://www.rt.com/op-ed/489819-china-hong-kong-taiwan-us>

Hong Kong protesters tear-gassed after clashes with police

警方在香港暴乱中使用催泪瓦斯

31 Aug 2019 Hong Kong, China – “Thousands of protesters in Hong Kong took to the streets for a 13th consecutive weekend and clashed with police who fired tear gas and water cannon to disperse them.

31 八月 2019 日，中国香港-“成千上万的抗议者在香港走上街头，连续第十三个周末与警察发生冲突。警察发射催泪瓦斯和水炮驱散闹事的学生。

“Black-clad demonstrators, some carrying crosses, gathered on Saturday at a sports stadium in Hong Kong's city centre for what they called a Christian rally, before fanning out into the streets and marching towards the police headquarters in central Wan Chai...”

“穿着黑色十字架的示威者，一些带着十字架的人，星期六聚集在香港市中心的一个体育场，他们所谓的基督教集会，然后在街上扇出街道，向湾仔中央警察局游行.....”

<https://www.aljazeera.com/news/2019/08/hong-kong-protesters-defy-police-ban-rally-13th-weekend-190831051941857.html>

With hymns and prayers, Christians help drive Hong Kong's protests

基督徒们通过赞美诗和祈祷来推动香港的抗议活动

<https://www.todayonline.com/world/hymns-and-prayers-christians-help-drive-hong-kongs-protests>

These facts illuminate a 20th and 21st century reality-based need for secular governments to defend themselves from the politically motivated use of religion, especially when that use is funded and organized by the CIA. <http://souciant.com/2015/11/christian-intelligence-agency/>

这些事实说明，20 世纪和 21 世纪，世俗政府需要保护自己免受出于政治动机使用宗教的影响，特别是当宗教使用由中央情报局资助和组织时。

Whereas the McCarthy era in the US cemented fear and hatred of communism into the American consciousness, most European countries have socialist political parties that sometimes are the ruling majority.

尽管美国的麦卡锡时代将对共产主义的恐惧和仇恨融入了美国人的意识，但大多数欧洲国家都有社会主义政党，这些政党有时是执政党的多数。

“The Party of European Socialists brings together Socialist, Social Democratic, Labour & Democratic Parties from Europe and Norway.

“The PES brings together 33 full member parties, 12 associate and 12 observer parties from all over Europe and neighboring countries.”

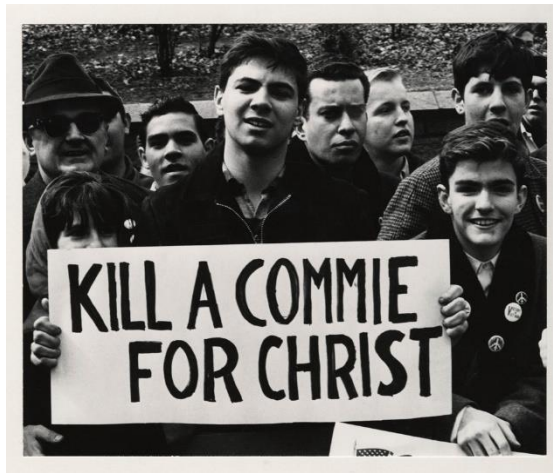
<https://www.pes.eu/en>

Though the US has a socialist party there has never been a socialist president or vice president proving if nothing else that the American “hate propaganda” and fear mongering work.

尽管美国有一个象征性的社会党，但从未有过社会党主席或副主席。这证明了美国“仇恨宣传”和散布恐惧的有效性。

An American version of the Czarist relationship with the church in opposition to Communism can easily be found on the Internet. Go to Google.com, type in “Kill a commie for Jesus,” and quite a number of graphic photos and artworks emerge.

在互联网上可以很容易找到美国版的沙皇与反对共产主义的教会的关系。去 Google.com，输入“为耶稣杀死一个共产主义者”，就会出现很多图片和艺术品。



https://68.media.tumblr.com/10482f781f1becfa1bce840621a05e28/tumblr_ojdz5t0VR71qivon6o1_1280.jpg

The tragic irony here is that according to the Gospel in the Christian Bible, (Matthew 19:21-22) Jesus himself was a communalist/communist. This “little” datum however has not stopped the United States from attacking one communist/socialist nation after another and destroying them at the cost of millions of lives and billions of dollars.

悲剧的讽刺是，根据基督教圣经中的福音，（马太福音 19:21-22）耶稣自己是一个社区主义者/共产主义者。然而，这个“小”数据并没有阻止美国一个接一个地攻击一个共产主义/社会主义国家，并以数百万人的生命和数十亿美元的代价摧毁它们。

The sight of the communist flag with the hammer and sickle strikes fear and loathing into many or most Americans, largely thanks to America’s McCarthyism Era.

在许多或大多数美国人中，看到带有锤子和镰刀的共产主义旗帜引起了恐惧和厌恶，这在很大程度上要归功于美国的“麦卡锡主义时代”。

The McCarthy Era, also called the “Red Scare” are political “witch hunts” which continue to this day.

麦卡锡时代，也被称为“红色恐慌”，是政治“狩猎女巫”，一直持续到今天。

<https://www.amnh.org/exhibitions/einstein/global-citizen/mccarthy-era>

<https://millercenter.org/the-presidency/educational-resources/age-of-eisenhower/mcarthyism-red-scare>

The political use of hatred has repeatedly been used to justify endless wars against the more socially egalitarian socialist nations.

看到共产主义旗帜的锤子和镰刀，使许多或大多数美国人感到恐惧和厌恶，这在很大程度上要归功于美国的麦卡锡主义时代。仇恨的政治使用已被用来为针对社会上更加平等的社会主义国家的无休止的战争辩护。

The U.S. tried to change other countries’ governments 72 times during the Cold War, By Lindsey A. O'Rourke, Dec. 23, 2016

在冷战期间，美国试图改变其他国家的政府 72 次（作者 Lindsey A. O'Rourke, 2016 年 12 月 23 日）

<https://www.washingtonpost.com/news/monkey-cage/wp/2016/12/23/the-cia-says-russia-hacked-the-u-s-election-here-are-6-things-to-learn-from-cold-war-attempts-to-change-regimes>

Most Americans don't know that the hammer and sickle really represent the workers, the people. It is a truism that socialist nations and labor parties in European countries do a much better job of helping the poor and working class than purely capitalist nations like the USA.

大多数美国人不知道锤子和镰刀真正代表的是工人和人民。西方国家的社会主义国家和劳动党在帮助穷人和工人阶级方面比美国这样的纯资本主义国家做得好得多，这是一个真理。

Socialism has proved itself hugely more successful than capitalism in eliminating global poverty. Above all, since 1981 socialist China lifted 853 million people out of internationally defined poverty – 75 percent of the world's total reduction. Socialist Vietnam lifted 31 million people out of similarly defined poverty. Together socialist countries account for 78 percent of world poverty reduction – lifting 887 million people out of poverty. In contrast, capitalist countries, dominated by the Washington Consensus, only achieved 250 million.

事实证明，在消除全球贫困方面，社会主义比资本主义更为成功。最重要的是，自 1981 年以来，社会主义中国使 8.53 亿人摆脱了国际定义的贫困，占世界总贫困人口 75%。社会主义越南使 3100 万人摆脱了同样的贫困。社会主义国家加起来占世界减贫的 78%，使 8.87 亿人脱贫。相比之下，以华盛顿共识为主导的资本主义国家只实现了 2.5 亿。

On the latest World Bank data only 92 million people live in internationally defined poverty in socialist countries compared to 789 million in capitalist ones. Only 6 percent of the population of socialist countries live in poverty compared to 14 percent in capitalist ones.

根据世界银行的最新数据，在社会主义国家中，只有 9200 万人生活在国际定义的贫困中，而在资本主义国家中，这一数字为 7.89 亿。在社会主义国家中，只有 6% 的人口生活在贫困中，而在资本主义国家中，这一比例为 14%。

<https://www.learningfromchina.net/socialist-policies-can-help-famine-stricken-countries>

Both China and Vietnam, Cuba and Venezuela permit religious activities, and thus it appears socialist and communist don't need to suppress religion, however do need to enforce laws when confronted by the political use of religion for destructive purposes.

中国和越南，古巴和委内瑞拉都允许进行宗教活动，因此，社会主义者和共产主义者似乎不需要压制宗教，但是当面对出于破坏性目的将宗教用于政治目的时，确实需要执行法律。

Unfortunately, the American CIA "tailors" (corrupts) religions – all religions – in foreign countries to subvert governments that do not kowtow exclusively to American hegemonic goals. I've personally seen this is country after country.

The Pentagon's Missionary Spies - US Military Used Christian NGO as front for North Korean Espionage

<https://theintercept.com/2015/10/26/pentagon-missionary-spies-christian-ngo-front-for-north-korea-espionage>

<https://daily.jstor.org/how-is-buddhism-being-used-to-justify-violence-in-myanmar>

Any and all religions can and will be subverted to achieve chaos and instability in any country that does not kowtow exclusively to the USA.

This Machiavellian use of religion evil and to be expected from a dying empire that is willing to sacrifice its moral integrity in a useless attempt to turn the entire world into a slave colony.

这种马基雅维利主义者对宗教的滥用是邪恶的，可以从一个垂死的帝国中预见到，该帝国愿意牺牲其道德品格，而无用的企图将整个世界变成一个奴隶殖民地。

History is littered with the bones of other would be world conquerors and it is infinitely tragic that policy makers in the USA didn't study history a lot more carefully.

历史上到处都是过去失败的世界征服者的遗骸，美国的决策者们没有更加仔细地研究历史，这是无限的悲剧。

The case can also be made that one of the reasons Islam is the fastest growing religion in the world is directly related to the American "defense" establishment having so intensely attacked so many Muslim countries. If American policy makers had studied history more carefully, they would know: attacking religions invariably makes them stronger. Left with nothing but peace and prosperity people often drift away from religion. Persecute people for their religion and it becomes a clarion call to greater religious involvement.

伊斯兰教是世界上发展最快的宗教的原因之一，与美国“防御”机构对如此众多的穆斯林国家的强烈攻击直接相关。如果美国决策者更加仔细地研究历史，他们就会知道：攻击宗教总是会使他们变得更坚强。有了和平与繁荣，人们往往就会远离宗教。迫害人们的宗教信仰，这成为呼吁更多宗教参与的有力呼吁。

More British People Believe in Aliens than God 英国人相信外星人多于相信上帝

"More Believe in Space Aliens Than in God According To U.K. Survey" By Lee Spiegel, 10/18/2012

“根据英国调查，在太空中比在上帝中更相信外星人”

https://www.huffingtonpost.com/2012/10/15/alien-believers-outnumber-god_n_1968259.html

The writer also reported that less than half the British people believe in God. A similar study in France got the same results. As time goes on more and more people believe in aliens, and less and less people believe in God. Communist governments do not need to suppress religion. The United States has done a great job - all by itself - of making all religions appear monstrous.

作者还报告说，不到一半的英国人信仰上帝。法国的一项类似研究也得到了相同的结果。随着时间的流逝，越来越多的人相信外星人，而越来越少的人相信上帝。共产主义政府不需要镇压宗教。美国在使所有宗教都显得可怕方面做了很大的工作。



Answers to Questions 1, 2 & 3 above

1. What is the purpose of all the philosophies and religions? What do you think?

所有哲学和宗教的目的是什么？你怎么认为？

Philosophies and religions were created to help people live together in peace, to help create stability within and between groups of people and help people try to understand their place in the universe.

创建哲学和宗教是为了帮助人们和平相处，帮助人们在群体内部和群体之间建立稳定，并帮助人们试图了解他们在宇宙中的地位。

2. Do religions do more good than harm?

宗教的好处多于伤害吗？

In most places and times philosophies and religions have done a lot more good than harm. There is an ancient city in Pakistan called Taxila (塔克西拉). Religions from all around the world had their places of worship next to each other for more than 1,000 years and they lived peacefully together. Religions usually are very peaceful except when they are used for political, military or economic purposes by greedy leaders.

在大多数地方和时代，哲学和宗教的好处多于伤害。巴基斯坦有一个古城叫做塔克西拉 (Taxila)。来自世界各地的宗教的宗教场所彼此相邻已有 1000 多年的历史，并且他们和平地生活在一起。宗教通常非常和平，除非贪婪的领导人将宗教用于政治，军事或经济目的。

(Unfortunately the CIA has been doing that all over the world.) (不幸的是，中央情报局一直在全世界这样做。)

3. Is there anything wrong with a life of 100% hedonism?

纯粹的自私和享乐主义生活有什么问题吗？

Total hedonists are usually not very healthy or happy for long. Usually they suffer from alcoholism (酗酒) get drug habits (毒品习惯) and STDs (性传播疾病). Usually they become very lazy and cruel, like monsters. Usually they die young and most people around them are happy when they die because they are very selfish people.

总体享乐主义者通常不太健康或长期幸福。通常，他们患有酗酒和酗酒和性传播疾病。通常，它们变得像怪物一样非常懒惰和残酷。通常他们死于年轻，而周围的大多数人死后都会很高兴，因为他们是非常自私的人。



Religion and Ancient Legal Systems 宗教与古代法制

The history of religion and philosophy accounts for most of *but not all of* the ancient history of law.

宗教和哲学史占古代法律史的大部分但并非全部。

For example:

- The Code of Ur-Nammu is the oldest known law code surviving today. It is from Mesopotamia and is written on tablets, in the Sumerian language c. 2100–2050 BC. Although it is known that earlier law-codes existed, such as the Code of Urukagina, this represents the earliest written legal text. It is three centuries older than the Code of Hammurabi. **The prologue, typical of Mesopotamian law codes, invokes the deities for Ur-Nammu's kingship, Nanna and Utu, and decrees “equity in the land”**

Ur-Nammu

法规是现存最古老的已知法律法规。它来自美索不达米亚，用苏美尔语 c 写在平板电脑上。公元前 2100 年至 2050 年。尽管已知存在较早的法律法规，例如《乌鲁卡吉纳法典》，但这是最早的书面法律文本。它比《汉 mura 拉比法典》早三个世纪。这是美索不达米亚法律典范的典型序言，引用了乌尔·纳姆穆王权，南娜和乌图的神灵，并颁布了“土地平等”法令。

<https://www.polk.k12.ga.us/userfiles/644/Classes/177912/Code%20of%20Ur-Nammu.pdf>

The Code of Hammurabi is a well-preserved Babylonian code of law of ancient Mesopotamia.

汉谟拉比法典是保存完好的古巴比伦古代美索不达米亚法典

The Code of Hammurabi (1800 BCE)

When the lofty Anu, king of the Anunnaki gods, and Enlil, lord of heaven and earth, he who determines the destiny of the land . . . pronounced the lofty name of Babylon; when they made it famous among the quarters of the world and in its midst established an everlasting kingdom whose foundations were firm as heaven and earth; [they] ... named me, Hammurabi, the exalted prince, the worshiper of the gods, to cause justice to prevail in the land, to destroy the wicked and the evil, to prevent the strong from oppressing the weak.

汉谟拉比法典（公元前 1800 年）

当崇高的阿奴，阿努纳基众神之王，和恩利尔，天地之主，他决定了这片土地的命运。宣告巴比伦的崇高名；他们使巴比伦在世界四分之一的地方出名，又在其中建立了一个根基坚固如天地的永远的国。。。你要给我起名叫汉谟拉比，他是尊贵的王子，是敬拜众神的，要使公义在这地得胜，要除灭恶人和恶人，防止强者欺压弱者

<https://www.sjsu.edu/people/james.lindahl/courses/Hum1A/s3/The-Code-of-Hammurabi.pdf>

Again, we find repeated references to the Gods.

我们又一次发现了对神的反复提及。

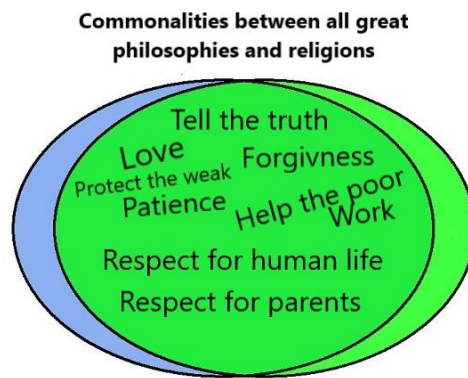
It appears the primary religion of the post-industrial age is worship of money and power. These objects of worship are far more dangerous than worship of a benevolent and just God. God, according to the great religions, rewards those who do good, and punishes those who do evil. Unrestrained capitalism unfortunately rewards people for doing terrible things, like selling weapons to all sides in wars.

似乎后工业时代的主要宗教是对金钱和权力的崇拜。这些敬拜对象远比敬拜仁慈公正的上帝危险得多。根据伟大的宗教，上帝奖励行善者，惩罚作恶者。不幸的是，不受约束的资本主义奖励人们做可怕的事情，比如在战争中向各方出售武器。

Commonalities of All Great Philosophies and Religions 所有伟大哲学和宗教的共性

If one constructs a Venn diagram of key words from all the great philosophies one finds a huge overlap.

如果你从所有伟大的哲学和宗教中构建一个关键词、短语和概念的维恩图，你会发现一个巨大的重叠。



In 1996 Samuel P. Huntington published a book titled: *The Clash of Civilizations and the Remaking of World Order* (New York, NY: Simon and Schuster) in which he predicted “clash” (war) between Asia with its Confucian philosophy and the West with its “Christian” philosophy. In fact, Confucius and Jesus had an enormous amount in common and very few differences.

1996年，塞缪尔·亨廷顿（Samuel P. Huntington）出版了一本书，题为《文明的冲突与世界秩序的重建》（纽约，纽约：西蒙和舒斯特），他在书中预言了亚洲儒家哲学与西方之间的“冲突”（战争）。以其“基督教”哲学。实际上，孔子和耶稣有很多共同点，很少有分歧。

One of many, many things both eastern and western philosophies agree on, is that violence is an evil thing that invariably comes to a bad end.

许多东西方哲学都同意的一个观点是，暴力是一种邪恶的东西，总是会有一个坏的结局。

“Then said Jesus unto him, ‘Put up again thy sword into his place: for all they that take the sword shall perish with the sword.’”

New Testament Bible Matthew 26, 26:52

“然后耶稣对他说，‘再次把你的剑放到他的位置：因为所有拿起剑的人都将随剑灭亡。’”

新约圣经马太福音 26， 26:52

The original source of the quote: “A violent man will die a violent death” is from the Chinese Tao Te Ching.

语录：“一个暴力的人会死于暴力死亡”来自中国的道德经。

What others have taught, I also teach:

The forceful and violent will not die from natural causes.

This will be my chief doctrine.

Tao Te Ching, Chapter 42

其他人教的，我也教：

使用武力和暴力的人不会死于自然原因。

这将是我的主要教义。

《道德经》第四十二章

The Tao Te Ching was written some 500 years before the birth of Jesus Christ, but the message remains the same. One can only wonder if Donald Trump, the members of the American National Security Council (NSC) and Michael Pompeo go to church on Sundays and if the preachers mentions the inevitable fate of those who promote violence.

《道德经》是在耶稣基督诞生前 500 年左右写成的，但其信息仍然是一样的。人们只能怀疑唐纳德·特朗普（Donald Trump），美国国家安全委员会（NSC）和迈克尔·庞培（Michael Pompeo）是否在星期天去教堂，以及部长们是否提到提倡暴力的人的必然命运。

Trump wins! Completing Obama’s Pivot to Asia and the Confrontation with China, Ajamu Baraka, 13 May 2020

The Trump administration is determined to “put China in its place,” a white supremacist mindset that will inevitably lead to monumental errors of judgement.

特朗普赢了！2020年5月13日，《完成奥巴马对亚洲的透视和与中国的对抗》

特朗普政府决心“把中国放在自己的位置”，这是白人至上主义的心态，将不可避免地导致巨大的判断错误。

“U.S. policymakers are openly advocating war with China.”

“美国决策者公开主张与中国开战。”

Even before becoming the 45th president of the United States, Donald Trump had one consistent foreign enemy – China. Partly fueled by his intrinsic white supremacy and his antipathy for the liberal elite “globalists” who evoked his personal inferiority complex, Trump has never wavered from his fierce opposition to what he saw as the “yellow peril” from China.

甚至在成为美国第 45 任总统之前，唐纳德·特朗普（Donald Trump）就有一个始终如一的外国敌人-中国。特朗普内在的白人至高无上的态度以及对自由派精英“全球主义者”的同情，在某种程度上激起了他的个人自卑感，在一定程度上推动了特朗普的发展，他从未动摇过反对他所认为的来自中国的“黄色危险”的强烈反对。

<https://blackagendareport.com/trump-wins-completing-obamas-pivot-asia-and-confrontation-china>

Is President Trump really a very prejudiced person? Or is he just following the dictates of the Defense Planning Guidance (see Preface) and CIA? Some things we may never know. Because of my educational background I like to believe that all people can learn. Sometimes it takes hard lessons, but given sufficient energy, anyone can learn.

特朗普总统真的是一个非常有偏见的人吗？还是他只是遵照《国防计划指南》（见前言）和中央情报局的指示？有些事情我们可能永远不会知道。由于我的教育背景，我喜欢相信所有人都能学习。有时需要艰苦的课程，但是只要有足够的精力，任何人都可以学习。

Yes, Dear Readers, if there is one thing, I have learned these past 63 years getting kicked around all of the major continents of the world, it's that all of the great philosophies and religions are One. Yes, cultures, languages, transcribers are different, and yes, in some ways they appear different from the outside. But inside, we are One.

是的，亲爱的读者们，如果说我学到了一件事，那就是所有伟大的哲学和宗教都是一体的。是的，文化，语言，转录者是不同的，是的，在某些方面他们看起来与外界不同。但在内心，我们是一体的。

Vocabulary 1 - With no definitions or translations 词汇 1-没有定义或翻译

* For English simplified definitions of the following see Vocabulary 2.

* For English definitions with Chinese translations see Vocabulary 3.

*有关以下内容的英语简化定义，请参见词汇表 2。

*有关带中文翻译的英语定义，请参见词汇表 3。

I provide this “Vocabulary 1” so students can test themselves and each other. I've taken national languages tests in several languages and I know students need to be able to test themselves.

我提供此“词汇表 1”，以便学生可以互相测试。我已经用几种语言参加了国家语言考试，而且我知道学生需要能够自我测试。

1. Hinduism (印度教)

Dharma

Scholar

Eternal

Polytheistic

2. Zoroastrianism (拜火教)

Monotheism

Dualism

Unique

Prophet

Worship

God

Wisdom

Supreme Being

Messianism

Judgment after death

Heaven and hell

Free will

Influence

Judaism

Christianity

Islam

3. Taoism (道教)

Emphasize

Harmony

Source

Pattern

Substance

Exists

Emphasize

Rigid

Ritual

Ethics

Vary

Effortless

Naturalness

Simplicity

Spontaneity
Three Treasures
Compassion
Frugality
Humility

4. Confucianism (儒)

Humanistic
Rationalistic
Governing
Hundred Schools of Thought
Confucius
Reorganizer
Retransmitter
Theology
Values
Inherited
Legalism

5. Buddhism - Buddhism (佛教)

Attributed
Declined
Middle Ages
Theravada
Mahayana

6. Zen (is Japanese language for Chinese: 禪 Chán; Korean: 선)

Zen
Distinct
Spread

7. Mohism (墨家 Mòjiā; literally: "School of Mo")

Logic
Rational thought
Science
Academic
Evolved
Ethical
Universal love
Together jointly
Connotation

Abrahamic Religions

Prophet
Abraham
Moses
10 Commandments
Descendants
Spiritual development
Judaism
Christianity
Islam
Worship

8. Judaism (犹太教)

Ancient
Monotheistic
Torah - foundational holy book of Judaism
Bible
Covenant
Israel

With between 14.5 and 17.4 million believers worldwide, Judaism is the ___ largest religion in the world.

9. Christianity (基督教)

Miracle

Jesus

Nazareth

Christ

Messiah

Focal point

Sacrifice

Faiths

Global Population

It is the world's largest religion, with over 2.4 billion followers, or ___% of the global population.

10. Islam - Islam (伊斯兰教)

Muhammad

Messenger

Quran (Koran)

primordial faith

revealed

Adam

Abraham

Moses

Jesus

11. Humanism (人道主义)

Ethical

Value

Abilities

Individually

Collectively

Critical thinking

Evidence

Rationalism

Empiricism

Acceptance

Freedom (from)

Dogma
Superstition
Supernatural

12. Nihilism - Nihilism (虚无主义)

Nothing
Atheist
Deny, denies
Meaningful
Intrinsic value
Morality
Despair
Pointlessness
Existence

Vocabulary 2 - With Simplified English Definitions 词汇 2-有简化的英语定义

Hedonism (noun, Adjective is hedonistic, a person who is hedonistic is called a hedonist) The philosophy of pleasure. Having fun is the most and only important thing.

1. Hinduism (印度教)

Dharma (noun) Teaching, or way of life

Scholar (noun, adjective is scholastic) A person who studies something or many things deeply.

Eternal (adj. Noun is eternity) Lasts or lives forever.

Polytheistic (adj. noun is polytheism) Belief in many Gods, like Hinduism and Shamanism.

2. Zoroastrianism (拜火教)

Monotheism (noun, adj. is monotheistic) Belief in one God

Dualism (noun, adjective is dualistic) A system made of pairs, like good and bad, God and the devil, heaven and hell, me and you.

Unique (adj. noun is uniqueness, adv. is uniquely) One of a kind, special, different from anything else.

Prophet (noun) A holy person given a special mission by God to teach people something.

Worship (verb or noun) To show the highest respect as in towards God.

God (noun, Godly, adv. The opposite is ungodly, or devilish) A supreme being

Wisdom (noun, the adj is wise, adv. Is wisely) Knowledge that is eternal and true everywhere. Wisdom is much greater than knowledge. To be wise is much greater than being smart. Many people are smart but not wise.

Messianism (Noun, adj. is messianic, the holy person believed to come in the future is called a **messiah**) Belief that some great holy person will be sent by God in the future to help humankind in a major way.

Judgment after death Belief in “Judgement Day” which some religions believe happens after death and God decides if the dead person’s soul should go to heaven (天堂) or hell (地狱).

Heaven (noun, adj. is heavenly) Some religions believe if a person is good during life after they die they will go to some perfect place and be totally happy with God.

Hell (Noun, adjective is hellish) Some religions believe if a person is bad after they die they will go to a horrible terrible place and suffer great pain. Some religions believe dead people can get out of hell after some time, others don’t. Some religions believe only followers of their religion will go to heaven and everyone else automatically goes to hell.

Free will People can choose what they do.

Fate (noun) The opposite of free will. People who believe in fate don’t think they have a choice in what they do.

Influence (noun or verb) The ability to change something or someone.

Judaism (noun) Abrahamic religion of Jewish people.

Christianity (noun) Abrahamic Religion of Christians.

Islam (noun) Abrahamic religion of Muslims.

3. Taoism (道教)

Emphasize (verb, the noun is emphasis) To say or do something very strongly, powerfully to make a point.

Harmony (noun, the verb is harmonize) Get along well together. Some musical notes played at the same time create a musical harmony, like C, E, G on a piano.

Source (noun and sometimes verb) Where something comes from.

Pattern (noun) Fits together as part of a system

Substance (noun) Something, or material.

Exists (verb, noun is existence) “Is’ as compared to “is not.”

Emphasize (verb, noun is emphasis) To make a point or idea very strongly.

Rigid (adj.) Not flexible, stiff, unbending, unyielding.

Ritual (noun) Something that people like to do again and again. For example, most cultures have wedding rituals and seasonal holiday (like New Year’s) rituals that are quite similar within that culture. Also, most religions have rituals as a very important part of that religion.

Morals (noun and adj. and morality is a noun) A system of beliefs that some things are good and some things are bad, and these beliefs do not change depending on the situation.

Ethics (noun, adj. is ethical) A system of beliefs that some things are good and some things are bad, but, ethics are usually more flexible than morals because the situation can change what's really good or bad. For example, executing a murderer to protect the community may ethically be OK.

Vary (verb, or adj. noun is variance, and variable) Change

Effortless (adj, noun is Effort) Requires no effort, naturally easy.

Naturalness (adj of natural) Being natural

Simplicity (noun) Very simple (adj.)

Spontaneity (noun, adj. is spontaneous) Doing things without thinking first. Usually this word is a good thing in English because it implies creativity and playfulness.

Three Treasures (noun) Three supremely important things in Taoism.

Compassion (noun, adj. is compassionate) Having a big heart, caring for other living things, kindness, empathy

Frugality (noun, adj. is frugal) Being very careful with resources like money, food, time, etc.

Humility (noun, adj. is humble) Not being proud

4. Confucianism (儒)

Humanistic (Adj.) [Humanism, Noun; Humanist, noun, a person who believes in humanism; humanistic, adj.] **Believing** that humans are special and caring about people.

Rationalistic (adv.) [Rationalism, Noun] [Rational, adj.] Based on thinking, not emotions or faith.

Governing (adj) Controlling, being the boss of some people or things.

Hundred Schools of Thought 100 very popular Chinese philosophies from about 500 BCE

Confucius (551–479 BCE) A man, perhaps the greatest of Chinese philosophers; founder of the major philosophy of all Asian countries. His philosophy is called: Confucianism. (Confucianist Adj; Confucianism Noun for the philosophy)

Reorganizer (noun) A person who organizes something for a 2nd or 3rd, or 4th... time.

Retransmitter (noun) Someone who transmits, or communicates something for the 2nd or 3rd, or 4th... time.

Values (noun) A system of beliefs regarding what's important and what's not important and how valuable things are.

Inherit (verb, the noun is inheritance) This word can refer to 1) genetic inheritance via traits passed through DNA from parent to offspring, or 2) something someone gets from another person, usually but not always from a parent, grandparents, or other ancestors after they die.

Legalism (Noun) A major branch of Chinese philosophy.

Filial Piety Respect for parents

4. Buddhism - Buddhism (佛教)

Attribute (verb) (Attribution, noun) - To say that something comes from this source, person, place or thing. The science of Chinese herbal medicine is attributed to Shennong.

Decline (verb, noun) To go down, downhill, or get worse

Middle Ages (noun) An 800 to 1,000 year period in European history, the period of European history from the fall of the Roman Empire in the West (5th century) to the fall of Constantinople (1453), or more narrowly from c. 1100 to 1453.

Theravada (noun) A branch of Buddhism called the “Lesser Vehicle” in English.

Mahayana (noun) A branch of Buddhism called the “greater Vehicle” in English.

6. Zen (is Japanese language for Chinese: 禪 Chán; Korean: 선)

Zen (noun) A Chinese branch of Mahayana Buddhism greatly influenced by Daoism.

Distinct (adj.) Very noticeable, special, outstanding, different, unique.

Spread (verb) To extend outwards or cover something with something. He spread the peanut butter on the bread. She spread lies about him. The disease spread around the world very quickly.

7. Mohism (墨家 Mòjiā; literally: ‘School of Mo’)

Logic (noun, adjective is logical) A system using reasoning to figure out the truth

Rational thought Thinking logically

Science (noun, adj. is scientific) An approach to discovery of truth by testing theories using experimentation and precisely defined methodologies

Academic (adj.) Relating to learning especially in a school or university

Evolve (verb, noun is evolution) Increasing complexity in systems

Universal love Principal of love for everyone

Together (adj. noun is togetherness) jointly *Jian - two or more become one*

Connotation (noun) Implied or secondary meaning

Abrahamic Religions (亚伯拉罕的宗教)

Prophet (Noun) A holy person believed to be sent by God to lead people on the right path

Abraham (noun) The first of the great Biblical (圣经) patriarchs (先祖), father of Isaac, and traditional founder of the ancient Hebrew Jewish nation.

Moses (noun) Jewish, Christian and Muslim people believe Moses was a prophet given the 10 commandments (laws) by God

10 Commandments (noun) The ten most important laws given by God to Moses.

Descendants (noun) Children, grandchildren, great grandchildren of someone.

Spiritual development The process of becoming more spiritual.

Judaism (noun) Religion based on beliefs of Prophet Abraham and later prophets; religion of the Jewish (犹太) people, and the religion of Israel (以色列).

Christianity (noun) Abrahamic religion mainly based on the philosophies of Jesus and the Bible

Islam (noun) Abrahamic religion mainly based on teachings of Muhammad and the Quran

Worship (verb or noun) To revere (尊敬), honor (荣誉) and homage paid to God or a holy person (神圣的人), or to any thing regarded as sacred (神圣).

8. Judaism (犹太教)

Ancient (usually adj, sometimes noun) Extremely old

Monotheistic (adj. noun is monotheism) Belief in one God

Torah (noun) Foundational holy book of Judaism

Bible (noun) There are two books most commonly called “the Bible.” The oldest is the Hebrew (希伯来语) Jewish holy book, also called by “Old Testament” (by Christians), and the Christian Bible, also called the “New Testament.”

Covenant (noun) An agreement, usually formal between two or more people, or between people and God

Israel (noun) Traditional homeland of the Jewish people

With between 14.5 and 17.4 million believers worldwide, Judaism is the tenth largest religion in the world.

9. Christianity (基督教)

Miracle (noun, adj. is miraculous) An amazing and unlikely event believed to have occurred with divine (神圣) assistance

Jesus (noun) Holy prophet of Christianity

Nazareth (noun) The village Jesus Christ came from

Christ (noun) Title for Jesus

Messiah (noun) A holy person (神圣的人) people think God sent or will send to help them

Focal point - The center place that gets the most attention

Sacrifice (verb or noun, adj. is sacrificial) - To give, throw away or destroy something usually for some strategic purpose

Faith (noun) Belief system not based on logic, but rather intuition or past experience

Global population The collective of all the people in the world

Christianity is the world's largest religion, with over 2.4 billion followers, or 33% of the global population.

10. Islam - Islam (伊斯兰教)

Muhammad (noun) The messenger and holy prophet of Islam

Messenger (the person, noun, the information that messenger is transmitting is called the “message”)
Someone who carries a message

Quran (Koran, noun) Holy book of the Muslims

Primordial faith A belief system going back to the beginning of humanity

Reveal (verb, noun is revelation) Show something that was hidden before

Adam (noun, a man’s name) Said in the Jewish Bible to be the first man; Christians and Muslims also believe this

Abraham (noun, a man’s name) Believed to be the father of the Jewish religion

Moses (noun, a man’s name) The prophet to whom God gave the 10 commandments

Jesus (noun, a man’s name) Holy Prophet of Christians and Muslims

Islam is the world's second-largest religion and the fastest-growing major religion in the world, with over 1.8 billion followers or 24.1% of the global population, known as Muslims.

11. Humanism (人道主义)

Ethical (adj. noun is Ethics) Knowing what’s right and wrong in different situations

Value (Noun) (verb when used with object) Worth, value or importance, how important is something or how much does it cost

Ability (noun) Skill, something someone can do well.

Individual (noun) A single person

Collective (noun) A group

Critical thinking Processing information logically, reasonably, examining something very closely and asking questions

Evidence (noun) Something to show that something did or did not happen or exist, used to prove or disprove something.

Rationalism (noun, adj is rational) A philosophy based on using rational logical thinking

Empiricism (noun, adj. is empirical) The belief that all knowledge comes from sensory experience (感官体验) and logic, not supernatural (不是超自然的) sources or faith (信仰).

Acceptance (noun, verb is accept) To agree that something or someone is tolerable

Freedom (noun, adj is free, adv. Is freely) To have choices

Dogma (noun, also dogmatism, adj. is dogmatic, adv. is dogmatically) A rigid system of strict beliefs that nobody is supposed to question (but people often or usually do)

Superstition (noun, adj. is superstitious) Belief in things that cannot be proven, usually supernatural (超自然 Chāozìrán) things

Supernatural (adj.) Not part of the natural world; something above or beyond nature

12. Nihilism - Nihilism (虚无主义)

Nothing (noun) A lack of everything, empty

Atheist (noun) A belief there is no God

Deny (verb, noun is denial) To negate something or someone verbally or internally; to say one does not believe in something, or didn't do, know or believe something

Meaningful (adj, noun is meaningfulness) Having some great value to someone

Intrinsic value Something that has great value inside a person, not because of external (extrinsic) (material) reward

Morality (noun) A strict sense of what is right and wrong. Not a flexible system.

Despair (noun or verb) Giving up hope (hopelessness), disbelief in everything. The feeling that "my wants, needs and beliefs are not important," and "nobody cares." Extreme depression

Pointlessness (noun, pointless is adj.) Without direction or meaning.

Existence (noun, verb is exist) Something that is in the real world

Vocabulary 3 - With Eng. Definitions & Chinese Transl. 词汇 3-有英文定义和中文翻译

Hedonism (享乐主义) noun, Adjective is hedonistic, a person who is hedonistic is called a hedonist) - The philosophy of pleasure. Having fun is the most and only important thing.

1. Hinduism (印度教)

People who believe in Hinduism are called Hindus.

Dharma (法 noun) Teaching, or way of life

Scholar (学者 noun, adjective is scholastic) A person who studies something or many things deeply.

Eternal (永恒 adj. Noun is eternity) Lasts or lives forever.

Polytheistic (多神教 adj. noun is polytheism; the person who is polytheistic is called a polytheist) Belief in many Gods like Hinduism and Shamanism.

2. Zoroastrianism (拜火教)

Monotheism (一神教 noun, adj. is monotheistic) Belief in one God

Dualism (二元论 noun, adjective is dualistic) A human created division or system made of pairs, like good and bad, God and the devil, heaven and hell, me and you, etc.

Unique (独特 adj. noun is uniqueness, adv. Is uniquely) One of a kind, special, different from anything else.

Prophet (预言家 noun) A holy person given a special mission by God to teach people something.

Worship (崇拜 verb or noun) To hold in the highest respect like a God.

God (神 noun, godly, adv.) A supreme being; The opposite is ungodly, or devilish

Wisdom (智慧 noun, the adj. is wise, adv. is wisely) Knowledge that is eternal and true everywhere. Wisdom is much greater than knowledge. To be wise is much greater than being smart. Many people are smart but not wise.

Messianism (弥赛亚 Noun, adj. is messianic, the holy person is a messiah, noun) A belief that some great holy person was or will be sent by God to help humankind in a major way

Judgment after death (审判日) “Judgement Day” Some religions profess that after death God will decide if the deceased “soul” should go to heaven (天堂) or hell (地狱).

Heaven (天堂 noun, adj. is heavenly) Some religions believe if a person is good during life after they die they will go to some perfect place and be totally happy with God.

Hell (地狱 Noun, adjective is hellish) Some religions believe if a person is bad after they die, they will go to a horrible terrible place and suffer great pain. Some religions believe dead people can get out of hell after some time, others don't. Some religions believe only followers of their religion will go to heaven and everyone else automatically goes to hell.

Free will (自由意志) Belief that people can make choices

Fate (命运) The opposite of free will. People who believe in fate don't think they have a choice in what they do; belief in predestination

Influence (影响 noun or verb) The ability to change something or someone.

Judaism (犹太教 noun) Abrahamic religion of Jewish people.

Christianity (基督教 noun) Abrahamic Religion of Christians

Islam (伊斯兰教 noun) Abrahamic religion of Muslims

3. Taoism (道教)

People who believe in Taoism are called Taoists.

Emphasize (强调 verb, the noun is emphasis) To say or do something very strongly, powerfully to make a point.

Harmony (和谐 [hé xié] noun, the verb is harmonize) Get along well together. Some musical notes played at the same time make a harmony, like C, E, G on a piano

Source (来源 noun and sometimes verb) Where something comes from

Pattern (模式 noun) Fits together in a system

Substance (物质 [wù zhì] noun) Some “thing,” or material

Exist (存在 [cún zài] verb, noun is existence) Something that “is” as compared to “is not.”

Rigid (固执的 adj.) Not flexible, stiff, unbending, unyielding

Ritual (仪式 [yí shì] noun) A preset routine of behaviors that people do again and again. For example, most cultures have wedding rituals and seasonal holidays (like New Year's) rituals that are quite similar within that culture. Also, most religions have rituals as very important parts of those religions.

Moral (道德 dào dé; noun and adj. and morality is a noun) A system of beliefs that some things are intrinsically good and some things are bad, and these beliefs do not change depending on the situation.

Ethics (伦理 lún lǐ; noun, adj. is ethical) A system of beliefs that some things are good and some things are bad but ethics are usually more flexible than morals because the situation can change the perception of what is really good or bad.

Vary (变化 [biàn huà] verb, or adj. noun is variance, and variable) Changes from an original state

Effortless (不费力的 adj, noun is effort) Requires no effort, naturally easy.

Naturalness (自然 adj of natural) Being natural

Simplicity (简单 noun; Simple, adj. simplistic adj.) Very easy to do or understand

Spontaneity (自发性 noun, adj. is spontaneous) Doing things without thinking first. Usually this word is a good thing in English because it implies creativity and playfulness.

Three Treasures (三宝 Sān bǎo noun) Three supremely important things in Buddhism: The Buddha, the Dharma (teachings), and the Sangha (the monastic order of Buddhism)

Compassion (同情 tóng qíng noun, adj. is compassionate) Having a big heart, caring for other living things

Frugality (节俭 jié jiǎn; noun, adj. is frugal) Being very careful with resources like money, food, time, etc.

Humility (谦卑 [qiān bēi] noun, adj. is humble) Not being proud

4. Confucianism (儒)

People who believe in Confucianism are called Confucianists.

Humanism (人文主义 rén wén zhǔ yì; Noun, humanism, Noun; Humanist, noun, a person who believes in humanism; humanistic, adj.) Believing that humans are different from other animals, special and caring about people

Rational (理性的 Adj. Rationalism, Noun; Rationally Adv.) Based on thinking, not emotions or faith.

Governing (治理 zhì lǐ adj) Controlling, e.g. could be an electronic control system or one person working as the manager of other people or things

Hundred Schools of Thought (諸子百家; pinyin: zhūzǐ bǎijiā) 100 very popular Chinese philosophies

Confucius (孔子 551–479 BCE) A man, perhaps the greatest of Chinese philosophers; founder of the major philosophy of all Asian countries. His philosophy is called: Confucianism. (Confucianist Adj; Confucianism Noun for the philosophy)

Reorganizer (改组 gǎi zǔ noun) A person who organizes something for a 2nd or 3rd, or 4th... time.

Retransmitter (转发器 noun) Someone who transmits, or communicates something for the 2nd or 3rd, or 4th... time.

Values (价值观 noun) A system of beliefs regarding what's important and what's not important and how valuable things are.

Inherit (继承 [jì chéng] verb, the noun is inheritance) Something someone gets from another person, usually but not always from a parent, grandparents, or other ancestors after they die.

Legalism (noun) (法家; pinyin: Fǎjiā) A major branch of Chinese philosophy, one of the top five Hundred Schools of Thought

5. Buddhism (佛教)

People who believe in Buddhism (noun) are called Buddhists (noun). The adjective is "Buddhistic."

Attribute (属性 verb or noun; attribution, noun) To say that something comes from a particular source, e.g. person, place or thing. The science of Chinese herbal medicine is attributed to Shennong

Decline (下降 [xià jiàng] verb, noun) To go down, downhill, or get worse

Middle Ages (中世纪 zhōng shì jì noun) An 800 to 1,000 year period in European history, the period of European history from the fall of the Roman Empire in the West (5th century) to the fall of Constantinople (1453), or, more narrowly, from c. 1100 to 1453.

Theravada (小乘 noun) A branch of Buddhism called the "Lesser Vehicle" in English

Mahayana (大乘 noun) A branch of Buddhism called the "greater Vehicle" in English

6. Zen (is Japanese language for Chinese 禅 Chán; Korean: 선 -

Zen (禅 chán noun) A Japanese word for 禅, a Chinese branch of Mahayana Buddhism greatly influenced by Daoism

Distinct (adj.) Very noticeable, special, outstanding, different, unique.

Spread (传播 chuán bō; verb) To open out (something) so as to extend its surface area, width, or length. To cover something with something. He spread the peanut butter on the bread. She spread lies about him. The disease spread quickly.

7. Mohism (墨家 [mò jiā]; literally: "School of Mo")

Logic (逻辑 luó jí; noun, adjective is logical) A system using reasoning to figure out the truth

Rational thought (理性的思考) Thinking logically

Science (科学 kē xué; noun, adj. is scientific) An approach to discovery of truth using research and experimentation

Academic (学术的 adj.) Relating to learning especially in a school or university

Evolve (进化 verb, noun is evolution) Increasing complexity in systems

Universal love (兼爱 jiān ài) Love for everyone

Together (集中, 共同, 合作, 协调, 衔接 adj. noun is togetherness)

Connotation (内涵 nèi hán; noun) Implied or secondary meaning

Abrahamic Religions (亚伯拉罕的宗教) Religions derived from teachings of Prophet Abraham

Prophet (先知 xiān zhī; noun) A holy person believed to be sent by God usually imparting some divine revelation

Abraham (亚伯拉罕 noun) The first of the great Biblical (圣经) patriarchs (先祖), father of Isaac, and traditional founder of the ancient Hebrew Jewish nation.

Moses (摩西 mó xī noun) Jewish, Christian and Muslim people believe Moses was a prophet given the 10 commandments (laws) by God

10 Commandments (10 条诫命 noun) The ten most important laws given by God to Moses

Descendants (后裔 hòu yì noun) Progeny, offspring, children, grandchildren, great grandchildren etc.

Spiritual development (灵性发展) Increasing spirituality in a person or system

Judaism (犹太教 yóu tài jiào; noun) Religion based on beliefs of Prophet Abraham and later prophets; religion of the Jewish (犹太) people, and the religion of Israel (以色列).

Christianity (基督教 jī dū jiào; noun) Abrahamic religion mainly based on the philosophies of Jesus and the Bible

Islam (伊斯兰教 yī sī lán jiào; noun) Abrahamic religion mainly based on teachings of Muhammad and the Quran

Worship (崇拜 chóng bài; verb or noun) To revere (尊敬), honor (荣誉) and homage paid to God or a holy person (神圣的人), or to any thing regarded as sacred (神圣).

8. Judaism (犹太教)

Ancient (古代 gǔ dài; usually adj, sometimes noun) Extremely old

Monotheistic (一神论 adj. noun is monotheism) Belief in one God

Torah (律法 noun) Foundational holy book of Judaism

Bible (圣经 shèng jīng noun) Hebrew (希伯来语) Jewish holy book

Covenant (协议 xié yì noun) An agreement, usually formal between two or more people, or between people and God to do or not do something.

Israel (以色列 yǐ sè liè; noun) Traditional homeland of the Jewish people

With between 14.5 and 17.4 million believers worldwide, Judaism is the tenth largest religion in the world.

9. Christianity (基督教)

People who behave in Christianity are called Christians.

Miracle (奇迹 qí jì; noun, adj. is miraculous) An amazing and unlikely event and belief there was divine (神圣) help.

Jesus (耶稣) Primary holy prophet of Christianity

Nazareth (拿撒勒) The place Jesus came from

Christ (基督) A title for Prophet Jesus

Messiah (弥赛亚) A holy person (神圣的人) people think God sent or will send to help them.

Focal point (焦点) The center place that gets the most attention

Sacrifice (牺牲 xī sheng; verb or noun, adj. is sacrificial) To give or throw something away for some reason. Christians believe Jesus sacrificed his life to save the souls of humankind.

Faith (信仰 xìn yang; noun) Belief system not based on logic, but rather intuition or simply past experience

Global Population (全球人口) The group of all the people in the world

Christianity is the world's largest religion, with over 2.4 billion followers, or 33% of the global population

10. Islam - Islam (伊斯兰教)

People who believe in Islam are called Muslim.

Muhammad (穆罕默德) The messenger and holy prophet of Islam

Messenger (信使) Someone who carries a message for other people. In Islam the Prophet Mohammed is considered a messenger of God.

Quran (Koran) (可兰经) Holy book of the Muslims

Primordial faith (原始的信念) A belief system going back to the beginning of humanity

Reveal (揭示 verb, noun is revelation) Show something that was hidden before

Adam (亚当) Said in the Jewish Bible to be the first man

Abraham (亚伯拉罕) Said to be the father of the Jewish religion and subsequent Abrahamic religions including Christianity and Islam

Moses (摩西 mó xī) The prophet to whom God gave the 10 commandments

Jesus (耶稣 yē sū) Holy Prophet of Christians and Muslims

Islam is the world's second-largest religion and the fastest-growing major religion in the world,* with over 1.8 billion followers or 24.1% of the global population, known as Muslims.

[*<https://www.theguardian.com/news/2018/aug/27/religion-why-is-faith-growing-and-what-happens-next>]

11. Humanism (人道主义)

People who believe in Humanism are called humanists.

Ethical (伦理的 adj. noun is Ethics) Knowing what's right and wrong in different situations.

Value (价值 Noun) (verb when used with object) Worth, value or importance, how important is something or how much does it cost

Ability (能力 néng lì; noun) Skill, something someone can do well.

Individual (个人 gè rén; noun) A single entity, person, place or thing

Collective (集体 noun) As a group

Critical thinking (批判性思维) Thinking logically, reasonably, examining something very closely and asking questions

Evidence (证据 noun) Something to show that something did or did not happen or exist, used to prove or disprove something.

Rationalism (理性主义 noun, adj is rational) The belief in using rational logical thinking

Empiricism (经验主义 noun, adj. is empirical) The belief that all knowledge comes from sensory experience (感官体验) and logic, not supernatural (不是超自然的) sources or faith (信仰).

Acceptance (受理 noun, verb is accept) To agree that something or someone is OK.

Freedom (自由 noun, adj is free, adv. Is freely) To have choices and the opportunities to make those choices

Dogma (教条 [jiào tiáo] noun, also dogmatism, adj. is dogmatic, adv. is dogmatically) Strict inflexible beliefs that nobody is supposed to question (but people often or usually do).

Superstition (迷信 noun, adj. is superstitious) Belief in things that cannot be proven, usually supernatural (超自然 Chāozìrán) things

Supernatural (超自然的 adj.) Not part of the natural world, but something above or beyond nature

12. Nihilism (虚无主义)

People who believe in Nihilism are called: Nihilists

Nothing (虚无 [xū wú] noun) A lack of everything, empty

Atheist (无神论者 noun) A belief that there is no God

Deny (否认 [fǒu rèn] verb, noun is denial) To say one does not believe in something, or didn't do, know or believe

Meaningful (有意义的 adj, noun is meaningfulness; the opposite is meaningless) Having some great value to someone

Intrinsic value (内在价值) Something that has great value from inside a person; not due to external (material) reward

Morality (道德 noun) A strict sense of what is right and wrong. Not a flexible system.

Despair (绝望 jué wàng; noun or verb) Hopelessness, giving up hope, disbelief in everything. The feeling that "my wants, needs and beliefs are not important," and nobody cares. Extreme depression.

Pointlessness (无意义 noun, pointless is adj.) Without direction or meaning.

Existence (存在 [cún zài] noun, verb is exist) Something that is in the real world

Review 回顾

Atheists don't believe in God. Humanism and Nihilism are atheistic.

无神论者不相信上帝。人文主义和虚无主义是无神论的。

Polytheists believe in many Gods. Hinduism is a polytheistic religion.

多神论者相信许多神。印度教是一种多神教

Hinduism and Zoroastrianism are probably the oldest surviving religions. 印度教和琐罗亚斯德教可能是现存最古老的宗教。(Along with "animism" the believe that everything has spirit. "万物有灵论"可能更古老。相信一切都有精神。)

Taoism, Confucianism, Buddhism and Mohism are all from about 500 BCE.

道教，儒教，佛教和墨家都是大约公元前 500 年。

Four monotheistic religions: Zoroastrianism, Judaism, Christianity, & Islam

四种一神教宗教：琐罗亚斯德教，犹太教，基督教和伊斯兰教

Three of these monotheistic religions are from the Abrahamic line: Judaism, Christianity, & Islam

这些一神教宗教中的三种来自亚伯拉罕系：犹太教，基督教和伊斯兰教

Philosophies and religions are designed to promote harmony and stability within and between individuals and groups of people, and provide a meaningful basis for life and relationships.

哲学和宗教旨在促进个人和人群内部和之间的和谐与稳定，并为生活和关系提供有意义的基础。

They all teach: Be good! (Except Nihilism, which doesn't care about being good.)

他们都教导：要好！（虚无主义除外，它并不关心成为好人。）

Multiple Choice Quiz 多项选择测验

1. Which of the following are the oldest surviving religions?

- A. Judaism & Christianity
- b. Zoroastrianism and Confucianism
- c. Hinduism and Zoroastrianism
- d. Christianity and Islam

2. Which of the following is a polytheistic religion?

- A. Confucianism b. Hinduism c. Judaism d. Christianity

3. What does atheist mean?

- a. believes in God

- b. does not believe in God
- c. believes in many Gods
- d. Hindu

4. Humanists are _____.

- a. monotheists
- b. atheist
- c. Polytheists
- d. Hindu

5. The three Abrahamic religions are:

- a. Judaism, Christianity and Islam
- b. Hinduism, Zoroastrianism, Buddhism
- c. Confucianism, Taoism, Buddhism
- d. Judaism, animism, polytheism, atheism

6. Should Christians follow the 10 commandments from Jewish law?

- a. Yes b. No
- c. Sometimes d. Only if they want

7. Should Muslims follow the 10 Commandments from Jewish law?

- a. yes b. No

8. Do Muslims believe Jesus was a holy prophet of God?

- a. Yes b. No

9. When people get along well together that's called _____.

- a. dogma b. focal point
- c. revelation d. harmony

10. Superstition is _____.

- a. empiricism
- b. atheism
- c. believing in things that cannot be proved (证明)
- d. Rational

Grammar Check 语法检查

Please fill in the blanks with the correct grammar form.

请使用正确的语法表格填写空白。

Noun	Verb	Adjective	Adjective
Compassion	XXX	1. _____	2. _____
3. _____	Reveal	4. _____	XXX
Harmony	5. _____	6. _____	7. _____
7. _____	XXX	Unique	8. _____
Wisdom	XXX	9. _____	10. _____

Match the following 匹配以下内容

- | | |
|----------------------|--|
| 1. Polytheistic ____ | a. Hindu |
| 2. Monotheistic ____ | b. Show something that was hidden before |
| 3. Rationalism ____ | c. Strict belief nobody is supposed to question |
| 4. Sacrifice ____ | d. Relating to learning especially in school or university |
| 5. Despair ____ | e. A system made of pairs, like good and bad, god and devil... |
| 6. Dogma ____ | f. To give or throw something away for some reason |
| 7. Reveal ____ | g. To give up hope |
| 8. Academic ____ | h. Not flexible, stiff, unbending, unyielding |
| 9. Dualism ____ | i. Using logical thinking |
| 10. Rigid ____ | j. One God |

Additional questions 其他问题

Compare and contrast any two philosophies and/or religions. How are they the same, how are they different?

比较和对比任何两种哲学和/或宗教。它们如何相同，如何不同？

Conclusion 结论

The above list of 14 major philosophies and religions was designed to provide readers with an overview and some core vocabulary for some very important belief systems. These ideas have very powerfully shaped human civilization, culture, and behavior. Hopefully this chapter will give the reader a better understanding of their own philosophy of life, and how it relates to others.

上面列出的 14 种主要哲学和宗教清单旨在为读者提供一些非常重要的思想的概述和一些核心词汇。这些想法非常有力地塑造了人类的文明，文化和行为。希望本章将使读者更好地了解自己的生活哲学，以及它与他人的关系。

Chapter 4 – Capitalism, Ego and Adam Smith 第三章-资本主义，自我和亚当斯密

Capitalism: 资本主义 zī běn zhǔ yì

“The poor know, we are just meat on the rich man’s table.”

“穷人知道，我们只是富人餐桌上的肉。”

Most people who have heard of Charles Darwin’s theories on evolution know he wrote that evolution is guided by the “survival of the fittest.” But most people misinterpret what he meant by “fit.” Most people think he was talking about big and strong like the movie actor Dwayne Johnson (the Rock) who can (probably) fight well and survive in difficult times. But, that’s not what Darwin meant. Survival in Darwin’s writing refers to reproduction – yes, human reproduction. Making babies is what drives evolution.

大多数听过达尔文进化论的人都知道他写的进化论是以“适者生存”为指导的。但是大多数人误解了他所谓的“适者生存”的意思。大多数人认为他说的是“大而强壮”，就像电影演员德韦恩·约翰逊（the Rock）一样，他（很可能）能很好地战斗并生存下来在困难时期。但是，这不是达尔文的意思。达尔文的“适者”指的是繁殖——是的，是人类的繁殖。生育是进化的动力。

The conscious and unconscious need to reproduce have guided evolution for millions of years. Some aspects of this biologically driven need to reproduce have resulted in a highly toxic psychopathology called “unrestrained capitalism.” Some deluded individuals confuse the size of their wallet or their car with their reproductive organs. It’s probably some kind of unconscious compensatory mechanism. It appears some men feel a great need to prove themselves to be the “alpha monkey.” But most modern American politicians don’t know that alpha monkeys need to possess leadership traits like generosity, peacekeeping, and empathy.

<https://www.wnyc.org/story/frans-de-waal-what-qualities-make-a-good-leader-in-chimpanzees>

有意识和无意识的繁殖需求已指导了数百万年的进化。这种由生物学驱动的繁殖需求的某些方面导致了一种剧毒的精神病理学，称为“无拘无束的资本主义”。一些受骗的人将钱包或汽车的大小与生殖器官相混淆。这可能是某种无意识的补偿机制。似乎有些人觉得非常有必要证明自己是“阿尔法猴子”。但是，大多数现代美国政客都不知道阿尔法猴子需要具备慷慨，维持和平和同情心等领导特质。

In measured doses competition (as in capitalism) does reliably enhance performance. Partly this is due to a genetic disposition towards play in humans.

在一定的剂量下，竞争（如资本主义）确实可以可靠地提高绩效。部分原因是由于人类对游戏的遗传倾向。

“I think our (neurological) hard-wiring has led to our great civilizations. We have evolved as a neotenous species- prolonging childhood play into adulthood. This adult play is what gives us all our greatest achievements - art, literature, poetry, theatre, music and scientific research. All these are based on neophilia - on endless curiosity, the pursuit of novelty, innovation and invention. One of the hemispheres of our brain has become specialized in analytical play- that gives us science, and the other hemisphere has become specialized in imaginative play - that has given us the arts. Our problem is that, with the ever more complex technology that stems from this inborn urge to perform adult play, has come a staggering success that has seen our populations grow from small tribes to huge urban super-tribes. We are not really suited to living in these huge conglomerates, and this is the cause of a lot of our modern problems.”

Interview with cultural anthropologist Desmond Morris

<http://www.cosmoetica.com/DSI8.htm>

“我认为我们（神经系统）的硬连线导致了我们的伟大的文明。我们已经进化成一个新的物种-把童年游戏延长到成年。这部成人剧给了我们所有最伟大的成就——艺术、文学、诗歌、戏剧、音乐和科学研究。所有这些都是建立在新石器时代的基础上——基于无尽的好奇心、对新奇、创新和发明的追求。我们大脑的一个半球专门从事分析游戏——这给了我们科学，另一个半球专门从事想象游戏——这给了我们艺术。我们的问题是，随着越来越复杂的技术，这种天生的表演成人游戏的冲动，已经取得了惊人的成功，我们的人口从小部落增长到巨大的城市超级部落。我们并不真正适合生活在这些庞大的企业集团中，这是我们现代许多问题的原因。”

文化人类学家德斯蒙德·莫里斯访谈录

Tragically, that childhood tribal play has turned into an endless plague of wars in today's super-societies enhanced by the populist system called democracy.

可悲的是，在今天的超级社会里，这种童年的部落游戏已经演变成了一场无休止的战争瘟疫，而这场战争正是由一种叫做民主的民粹主义制度所推动的。

During the 1992 presidential campaign former President Clinton's rallying cry was “It's the Economy, Stupid.’ He sang it to perfection.”

在 1992 年总统大选期间，前总统克林顿的集会呼喊是“这是经济，愚蠢的’。他唱得很完美”。

http://www.centerforfinancialstability.org/oped/MoneySupplyStupid_July2012.pdf

Unrestrained capitalism, as in colonial wars, in super-tribes has become a contagious disease vastly worse than the Bubonic plague, the Spanish Flu and COVID-19 combined. Capitalism has killed more human beings than all diseases combined.

像殖民地战争中那样，不受约束的资本主义已经成为超级部落中的一种传染性疾病，其严重程度远远超过了布波尼鼠疫，西班牙流感和 COVID-19。资本主义杀死的人类人数超过所有疾病的总和。

Capitalism's Voracious Appetite: Bodies are the Commodities, by Kathleen Wallace, May 6, 2020

资本主义的旺盛胃口：身体是商品，凯瑟琳·华莱士（Kathleen Wallace），2020年5月6日

There are layers of tragedy inherent to that capitalistic notion that all is a commodity. These wonders can be extracted, whether it's through destructive mining, plundering oceans, destroying old-growth forest.....but then this accepted practice carries over from these natural resources to human resources (yes, that phrase is loaded with symbolism—it's no accident that's what your job calls you). This has never been more evident in modern America than the push-pull of human worth versus the voracious, victim-hungry economy demands during this (COVID-19) pandemic. A testimony to the success of the immersive brainwashing of our capitalist society would be the pro-covid rallies (what else can you call them?) Screaming signs being held by screaming protesters—those demanding that restrictions be removed so commerce can continue despite the risks. The rallies don't ask for the kind of support the corporations get during these times—no, they request the right to die in order to keep the wheels (of capitalism) greased. It's really pretty astonishing. Like an Aztec saying, please, please take me instead....."I want my heart cut out for the needs of the sun god!"

资本主义认为一切都是商品，这一概念本身就包含着层层悲剧。无论是通过破坏性的采矿、掠夺海洋、破坏古老的森林.....这些奇迹都可以被挖掘出来，但这种公认的做法会从这些自然资源延续到人力资源（是的，这句话充满了象征意义——你的工作称你为“绝非偶然”）。在现代美国，这一点从未比在这场（COVID-19）大流行病期间，人类价值的推动作用与贪婪、饥渴的受害者经济需求的对比更为明显。我们资本主义社会沉浸式洗脑成功的一个证明就是“是的，我们想要 covid”集会（你还能叫他们什么？）

尖叫的抗议者们举着尖叫的标语，要求取消限制，这样尽管有风险，商业仍能继续。集会并不要求企业在这段时间得到什么样的支持——不，他们要求死的权利，以保持资本主义车轮润滑。真是太惊人了。就像阿兹特克人说的，求你了，请带我走吧.....“我要为太阳神的需要割下我的心！”

...Those who are the most sick among us (in a sociopathic sense) are the ones who rule over such a system. It selects for them. And they aren't even trying to hide right now that they consider “essential workers” to be essential to their wealth magnification only, not essential to their families or to their communities. This is a sickness that these leaders have, but the workers and the misguided protesters have it too. It spreads more easily than covid. The true protests should have been against these contrived economic conditions that perpetuate uncertainty and fear, forcing individuals to participate in a system that treats them as if they are nothing—completely disposable...

在我们当中，那些病得最重的人（在反社会的意义上）就是统治这样一个体系的人。它为他们选择。他们甚至不想隐瞒，他们认为“必要的工人”只对他们的财富放大至关重要，而不是对他们的家庭或社区至关重要。这是这些领导人有的病，但工人和被误导的抗议者也有。它比 covid 更容易传播。真正的抗议应该是针对这些人为制造的经济状况，这些状况会使不确定性和恐惧永久化，迫使个人参与到一个对待他们的体系中，就好像他们不是完全可以抛弃的一样...

The more difficult path is allowing an opening up to new ways of thinking—understanding that the path out will only be through extending rights to others and confronting terrible truths about ourselves—that we feel it's our right to take from others. It is not. We need to start respecting those who are human, animal, even the mountains and rivers. This is not our usual way of thinking. But this is the only way to get to a future will look like something worth having. 更困难的途径是允许开辟新的思维方式，认识到出路只会通过扩大对他人的权利和面对我们自己的可怕真相，我们认为我们有权从他人身上夺走。不是的。我们需要开始尊重那些人，动物，甚至山川。这不是我们通常的思维方式。但这是通往未来的唯一途径，看起来是值得拥有的。

<https://www.counterpunch.org/2020/05/06/capitalisms-voracious-appetite-bodies-are-the-commodities>

Sigmund Freud was right when he stated that humans are primarily motivated by unconscious forces. Those “unconscious forces” come from the more ancient parts of our brain. 西格蒙德·弗洛伊德 (Sigmund Freud)

所说的人类主要是由无意识力量驱动的，他是对的。这些“无意识的力量”来自我们大脑中更古老的部分。

In his breakthrough books on the similarities between human and animal behavior cultural anthropologist Desmond Morris* wrote that humans are primarily motivated by “status seeking” as a means to become the “dominant male monkey” in the tribe. For example, people with little money will buy an expensive car to exhibit a lofty status they don't really have. This is an affirmation of Freud's theory that it's all about ego.

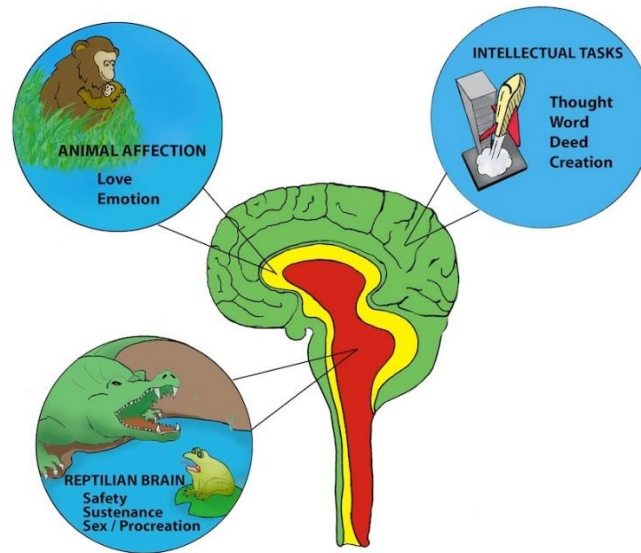
[**The Naked Ape*, by Desmond Morris, 1967, Jonathan Cape, London, *The Human Zoo*, by Desmond Morris, 1969, Jonathan Cape, London]

文化人类学家德斯蒙德·莫里斯在其关于人与动物行为相似性的突破性著作中写道，人类的主要动机是“寻求地位”，以此作为成为部落中“占主导地位的雄性猴子”的一种手段。例如，没钱的人会买一辆昂贵的汽车来展示他们并不真正拥有的崇高地位。这是对弗洛伊德的理论的肯定，弗洛伊德的理论是关于自我的。

Just so, the USA spends more than half its economy on the so-called “defense department,” in order to maintain the status of being the planet earth's dominant male “alpha monkey.”

正因如此，美国将一半以上的经济投入到所谓的“国防部”上，以保持作为地球上占主导地位的雄性“阿尔法猴”的地位。

These kinds of behavior are mediated in the mammalian mid-brain, also known as the Limbic System. It doesn't take the more newly evolved uniquely human thinking brain (neocortex) to desire such a lofty status as the Alpha Monkey. 这类行为在哺乳动物的中脑中被介导，也被称为边缘系统。它不需要更新进化的人类思维独特的大脑（新皮质）来渴望像阿尔法猴子这样的崇高地位。



<https://www.paulcheksblog.com/wp-content/uploads/2012/08/reptilian-brain1.jpg>

Fortunately, most people most of the time generally allow their uniquely human thinking brain (neocortex, the “new” brain) guide their lives. Unfortunately, the modern super-societies have “dumbed” many people down so much their behaviors are ruled by older parts of the brain. Too many people, especially in the USA have come to accept the “law of the jungle” as an accepted norm, as if the evolution of law had never occurred. The “law of the jungle” is fine for the rich capitalists because they can afford the best weapons and biggest armies.

幸运的是，大多数人在大多数时候都允许他们独特的人类思维大脑（新皮质，即“新”大脑）指导他们的生活。不幸的是，现代的超级社会已经让很多人“哑口无言”，以至于他们的行为都是由大脑的老部分控制的。太多的人，特别是在美国，已经接受了“丛林法则”作为一个公认的准则，似乎法律的演变从来没有发生过。“丛林法则”对富有的资本家来说很好，因为他们能负担得起最好的武器和最大的军队。

It is impossible to deny that *most* of our neurological architecture is inherited from animals. The “thinking brain” is uniquely human. It was the “thinking brain” that gave us arts, sciences and law. Unfortunately, the worst of Plato’s observations and predictions about democracy have come true. Populism degenerated into fascism, and a capitalist fascism is the deadliest system of all, at least for the working people and the poor.

我们无法否认，我们的大部分神经系统结构都是从动物身上遗传下来的。“思考的大脑”是独一无二的人类。是“思考的大脑”给了我们艺术、科学和法律。不幸的是，柏拉图关于民主的最坏的观察和预言已经实现了。民粹主义堕落为法西斯主义，资本主义法西斯主义是最致命的制度，至少对劳动人民和穷人来说是这样。

As power has collected at the top of the “super-societies,” arts, sciences and law in the 20th and 21st centuries have kowtowed to the basest of animal behaviors. The role of the “thinking brain” and law have been crushed by individual ego, tribal ego and nationalist ego. It’s all about ego now. Me, me, me! I’m the BIG MONKEY! All you little monkeys can just work to death! Ha!

当权力聚集在“超级社会”的顶端时，20世纪和21世纪的艺术、科学和法律已经向最基本的动物行为卑躬屈膝。“思维大脑”和法律的作用被个人自我、部落自我和民族主义自我所压垮。现在都是为了自我。我，我，我！我是大猴子！

你们这些小猴子都能“为我的荣耀工作！”哈！

Thus, we have President Trump, the Big Monkey, a populist leader. Insignificant things like truth and law mean nothing to him. Only the law of the jungle matters. I can destroy you, so give me your natural resources. And shut up! Human dignity? You want human dignity? You're fired!

因此，我们有特朗普总统，大猴子，民粹主义领袖。真理和法律这些无关紧要的东西对他来说毫无意义。只有丛林法则才重要。我可以摧毁你，所以给我你的自然资源。闭嘴！人的尊严？你想要人的尊严？你被解雇了！

Curiously, socialists have endeavored to maintain a level of humanity above simple greed and ego-aggrandizement by expanding the tribe to all of humanity, and recognizing the need for the tribe to act as one in order to preserve the maximum degree of human dignity and freedom for all.

奇怪的是，社会党人努力保持一种超越单纯贪婪和自我膨胀的人性水平，把部落扩大到全人类，并认识到部落必须团结一致，以维护所有人最大程度的尊严和自由。

The Kings of capitalism do not like this! No, no, NO!

资本主义之王不喜欢这样！不，不，不！

Human dignity and freedom were never real issues for the Kings of Capitalism who have thrived on the exploitation of “disposable” people for around the last six to ten thousand years. (It was the rise of the agrarian age that created significant differences between and within tribes – the wealthy and the poor.)

对于资本主义国王来说，人的尊严和自由从来都不是真正的问题，他们在过去六万到一万年里一直靠剥削“可支配”的人而兴旺发达。（正是农耕时代的兴起，造成了部落之间和部落内部的巨大差异——富人和穷人。）

Why do the already very rich capitalists feel they need to do this? Maybe during their childhoods, they didn’t get enough parental love and felt inferior. Consequently, they spend their lives attempting to make other people feel so small, so they feel “bigger,” more important and like the “big monkey” (the alpha monkey) in the tribe. That's called a "compensatory mechanism." They are trying to compensate for feelings of inferiority. Maybe they are just cowards and are too afraid to just be human. They think they have to make themselves into fake gods.

为什么已经非常富有的资本家觉得他们需要这样做？也许在他们的童年，他们没有得到足够的父母的爱，感到自卑。因此，他们一生都在试图让别人觉得自己很渺小，所以他们觉得自己“更大”，更重要，就像部落里的“大猴子”（阿尔法猴子）。这被称为“补偿机制”。他们试图补偿自卑感。也许他们只是懦夫，害怕成为人类。他们认为他们必须把自己变成假神。

Maybe someone in their childhoods taught them that being greedy and evil, and causing suffering to other people is “fun.” There are strong elements of sadism in capitalist psychology. President Trump and Michael Pompeo agree that torture is good, and appear to enjoy being cruel. It gives them pleasure.

也许他们小时候有人教过他们贪婪和邪恶，给无辜的人带来痛苦是“乐趣”，资本主义心理学中有强烈的虐待狂成分。特朗普总统和迈克尔·蓬佩奥都认为酷刑是好的，而且似乎喜欢残忍。它给了他们快乐。

Maybe their mothers were drinking too much alcohol when they were pregnant and their baby’s brains didn’t develop normally.

也许他们的母亲在怀孕时喝了太多的酒，孩子的大脑发育不正常。

It’s difficult to say really; the learning history of each individual is different.

Whatever the case may be, Adam Smith was the unholy prophet of capitalism, and below are some of his theories.

很难说真的，每个人的学习历史都不一样。不管是什么情况，亚当·斯密是资本主义的邪恶先知，下面是他的一些理论。

The Greedy World of Adam Smith 亚当·斯密的贪婪世界

Watch Video on Capitalism: 观看关于资本主义的视频:

<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=dluaW9YWqEU>

Adam Smith (1723-90) taught at Oxford University and then at the University of Glasgow.

亚当·斯密（1723-1790）曾在牛津大学任教，后来又在格拉斯哥大学任教。

A few of Smith’s ideas were correct. For example, he disliked slavery and knew that it was not morally justifiable or economically viable.

史密斯的一些想法是正确的。例如，他不喜欢奴隶制，他知道奴隶制在道德上不合理，在经济上也不可行。

Adam Smith however wasn’t the first to make that observation. The Romans more than a thousand years earlier had realized that free men were better artisans than slaves. This helped give rise to a middle class in Rome. Besides that one accurate observation, the majority of Smith’s theories have over time proven to contain a very large number of deadly serious errors.

然而，亚当·斯密并不是第一个提出这一观点的人。早在一千多年前，罗马人就意识到自由人比奴隶更能成为工匠。这有助于在罗马产生一个中产阶级。除了这一个准确的观察，随着时间的推移，史密斯的大多数理论已经被证明包含了大量致命的严重错误。

Remarkable as it may seem Adam Smith became famous as a moral philosopher and author of the book *The Theory of Moral Sentiments*. After 10 years of research and writing he went on to publish his greatest “masterpiece,” *An Inquiry into the Nature and Causes of the Wealth of Nations*, considered the classic work defining the advantages of a free market system.

亚当·斯密最初以道德哲学家和《道德情操论》一书的作者而出名，这似乎是很了不起的。经过10年的研究和写作，他接着发表了他最伟大的“杰作”，一部关于国家财富的性质和原因的调查，被认为是定义自由市场体系优势的经典著作。

The Wealth of Nations discusses the origin and use of money, apprenticeship, statistics, waste, the military, foreign trade, landlords, the clergy, royalty, farming, and the late “disturbances” in the American colonies,” referring to the American Revolutionary War against England.

《国富论》讨论了金钱的起源和使用、学徒制、统计、浪费、军事、外贸、地主、神职人员、皇室成员、农业以及美洲殖民地后期的“动乱”，指的是美国对英国的革命战争。

He also considered the conquest of the Americas by Europeans as the “greatest thing in history.” Thus, he wasn’t exactly a liberal at heart.

他还认为欧洲人征服美洲是“历史上最伟大的事情”，因此，他内心并不完全是一个自由主义者。

The following are some of Adam Smith's economic laws:

以下是亚当·斯密的一些经济定律：

1. Smith postulated two fundamental laws of the market starting with the notion that desire for wealth permeates all human activity. Therefore, self-interest, or profit, motivates people to perform necessary tasks for which society is willing to pay. As Smith writes, “It is not from the benevolence of the butcher, the brewer (someone who makes beer), or the baker that we expect our dinner, but from our regard to their self-interest.” Thus, the first law of the market is self-interest, or the profit motive.

一。史密斯假设了市场的两个基本规律，首先是对财富的渴望渗透到人类的所有活动中。因此，自利或利润激励人们去完成社会愿意为之付出的必要任务。正如史密斯所写，“我们期待晚餐的不是屠夫、酿酒人（酿造啤酒的人）或面包师的仁慈，而是我们对他们的私利的尊重。”因此，市场的第一法则是私利，或利润动机。

2. But how can the individual's selfish desires benefit society? What stops greed from overwhelming the public, resulting in ruthless exploitation by profiteers? Smith argues that the individual, while working for personal interests, unintentionally contributes to the economic wellbeing of society. Therefore, the second law of the market is competition. The individual who overcharges for products soon learns that competitors will take away business by offering more reasonable prices. If wages are too small, workers will go to work for another employer who will pay more for their services.

2.但是个人的自私欲望如何使社会受益呢？有什么能阻止贪婪压倒公众，从而导致暴利者的残酷剥削？史密斯（Smith）认为，个人为了个人利益而工作时，无意中为社会的经济福祉做出了贡献。因此，市场的第二定律是竞争。对产品多收费用的个人很快就知道竞争对手将通过提供更合理的价格来夺走生意。如果工资太低，工人将去另一个雇主工作，后者将为他们的服务支付更高的费用。

Thus, selfish motives are kept in balance by interaction, resulting in social harmony.

According to Smith, under the market system each worker freely chooses a trade. Through such a multitude of choices, society reaps the benefit of having all its necessary tasks filled.

The individual, motivated by self-interest, selects a particular task. Competition for these tasks prevents the individual from over-charging.

因此，自私的动机通过相互作用保持平衡，从而导致社会和谐。史密斯认为，在市场制度下，每个工人都可以自由选择一种贸易。通过如此众多的选择，社会从完成所有必要的任务中获益。个人出于私利，选择一项特定的任务。竞争这些任务可以防止个人过度收费。

Thus, the two laws of the market — self-interest and competition form a balance, protecting the survival of society.

因此，市场的两个定律-自利和竞争形成了一种平衡，保护了社会的生存。

The laws of the market - in theory at least - ensure prices are competitive, and control the quantities of goods produced. When the public demands more hammers than saws, there will be good business in hammers, but little demand for saws. Consequently, the price of hammers will rise as demand exceeds supply and drives prices up. At the same time the price of saws will go down because the supply is greater than the demand.

市场法则——至少在理论上——确保价格具有竞争力，并控制商品的生产量。当公众对锤子的需求大于对锯子的需求时，锤子的生意会很好，但对锯子的需求却很少。因此，随着需求超过供应，锤子的价格将上涨，并推动价格上涨。同时，锯子的价格也会下降，因为供应大于需求。

The laws of the market regulate the incomes of producers. When profits in one type of business become unusually large, new producers are attracted to the business until competition reduces everyone's profit. In the same way, the worker's wages are regulated. Workers are attracted to higher paying industry until the ever increasing labor supply lowers the pay scale to that of similar jobs. The reverse is true also. When profits or wages are too low, producers or workers will leave that field for more profitable areas.

市场规律调节着生产者的收入。当一种业务的利润变得异常巨大时，新的生产商就会被吸引到该业务中，直到竞争降低了每个人的利润。同样，工人的工资也受到监管。工人们被高薪行业所吸引，直到不断增加的劳动力供应将工资水平降低到类似工作的水平。反之亦然。当利润或工资过低时，生产商或工人将离开该领域，前往利润更高的领域。

Thus in theory the market is "its own guardian." It is self-regulating if left alone (*laissez faire*) so that competition can operate freely without government control and without monopolies.

因此，在理论上，市场是“它自己的守护者”，如果放任不管（放任自由），市场是自我调节的，这样竞争就可以在没有政府控制和垄断的情况下自由运作。

Discussion/Debate/Roleplay 讨论/辩论/角色扮演

- What are some flaws in Adam Smith's seemingly perfect capitalist system?
- What are the advantages and disadvantages of a capitalist system compared to a socialist or communist system?
 - Given the astronomical national debt of the United States in 2020 (<https://usdebtclock.org>) and economy teetering on the edge of insolvency,

• 亚当·斯密的看似完美的资本主义体系有哪些缺陷？

• 与社会主义或共产主义制度相比，资本主义制度有哪些优缺点？

鉴于 2020 年美国的天文数字的国债（<https://usdebtclock.org/>）和经济在破产边缘徘徊，

Monopolies 垄断

Unfortunately, monopolies became a huge problem as big fish (i.e. big companies) ate the small fish and federal laws against monopolies had to be made in the 1930s in the U.S.

不幸的是，随着大鱼（即大公司）吃掉了小鱼，垄断成为一个巨大的问题，联邦法律必须在 1930 年代制定反对垄断的法律。

Anti-monopoly laws are supposed to ensure a fair market-place.

反垄断法应该确保公平的市场地位。

Acceptance Speech at the Democratic National Convention, Franklin D. Roosevelt, July 27, 1936 1936 年 7 月 27 日，富兰克林·D·罗斯福在民主党全国代表大会上的致辞

Throughout the Nation, opportunity was limited by monopoly. Individual initiative was crushed in the cogs of a great machine. The field open for free business was more and more restricted. Private enterprise, indeed, became too private. It became privileged enterprise, not free enterprise.

在整个国家，机会受到垄断的限制。个人的主动性被一台伟大机器的嵌齿轮所粉碎。自由贸易的领域越来越受到限制。的确，私有企业变得过于私有。它变成了特权企业，而不是自由企业。

<https://teachingamericanhistory.org/library/document/acceptance-speech-at-the-democratic-national-convention-1936>

The laws have failed. 法律失败了。

The Rise, Fall, and Rebirth of the U.S. Antitrust Movement, by Maurice E. Stucke and Ariel Ezrachi, December 15, 2017

《美国反托拉斯运动的兴衰与重生》，莫里斯·E·斯塔克（Maurice E. Stucke）和阿里尔·埃兹拉奇（Ariel Ezrachi），2017 年 12 月 15 日

<https://hbr.org/2017/12/the-rise-fall-and-rebirth-of-the-u-s-antitrust-movement>

Apple, Facebook and Google Have Lost the Monopoly Argument

Even the Americans have woken up to the need to stop Big Tech snapping up any promising rivals. But big fines are more likely than breakups.

苹果，Facebook 和 Google 失去了垄断论点
甚至美国人也意识到停止大技术公司抢购任何有前途的竞争对手的必要性。但是，大笔罚款比分手更容易。

<https://www.bloomberg.com/opinion/articles/2019-06-05/apple-facebook-and-google-have-lost-the-monopoly-argument>

In 2020 a few “super-giants” majestically and cynically rule the IT field, e.g. Google, Apple and Facebook.

在 2020 年，一些“超级巨人”像皇帝一样玩世不恭地统治着 IT 领域，例如谷歌、苹果和 Facebook。

Recall the word “**duopoly**” introduced in the Preface to this book. Though technically illegal, they are generally permitted. 回想一下这本书序言中介绍的“双头垄断”一词。虽然从技术上是非法的，但一般是允许的。

The Democrats' "Better Deal" campaign document had a plank on bolstering antitrust policy and cracking down on monopolies, but it never really took center stage and pointedly left out the modern age's most fearsome trusts: the tech platforms. Senate Minority Leader Chuck Schumer, whose office was instrumental in putting together the "Better Deal" agenda, has a daughter who works in marketing at Facebook and reportedly told fellow Sen. Mark Warner to back off an investigation of the social media giant.

民主党人的“更好的交易”竞选文件提倡加强反托拉斯政策和打击垄断，但它从未真正成为焦点，并指出了现代最可怕的信任：技术平台。参议院少数党领袖查克·舒默（Chuck Schumer）的办公室在制定“更好的交易”议程方面发挥了作用，有一个女儿在 Facebook 从事市场营销工作，据报道，他告诉参议员马克·华纳（Mark Warner）不要对这家社交媒体巨头进行调查。

<https://theintercept.com/2018/11/28/monopoly-power-corporate-concentration>

The US government is not going to update or enforce anti-trust (anti-monopoly) laws because only those monopolies can guarantee the absolute domination of the super-rich capitalists over world information and trade – in perpetuity.

美国政府不会更新或实施“反垄断”（anti-trust）法律，因为只有那些垄断企业才能保证超级富有的资本家永远对世界信息和贸易的绝对统治。

The tech industry's monopolistic use of "shadow regulation" on the internet for example can determine the outcome of presidential elections by elevating some information sources while suppressing others. <https://www.eff.org/issues/shadow-regulation>

例如，科技行业对互联网上“影子监管”的垄断使用可以通过提高（“搜索排名”）某些互联网站点而压制其他互联网站点来确定总统选举的结果。 <https://www.eff.org/issues/shadow-regulation>

They pretty much killed my internet sites. In early 2019 I was getting more than a couple of thousand visitors a week, then in mid-2019 visitors suddenly dropped to under 30. I had invested a lot of time and money in those internet sites. But these are the days of the "super-predators." Honest people are eaten like snacks by corrupt politicians and monopolist corporations.

他们几乎杀死了我的几个互联网网站。2019 年初，我每周有超过两千名访客，然后突然访客降至 30 岁以下。我在那些网站上投入了大量时间和金钱。但是，这些都是“超级掠食者”的时代。诚实的人被腐败的政客和垄断企业像小吃一样吃掉。

Trade Unions 贸易联盟

Likewise, exploitation of workers became an epidemic and large trade unions grew to ensure that workers had some rights. These unions got bigger and bigger until the 1960s when many American companies had to move overseas because union workers were demanding too much money. High paying union salaries forced many American companies out of business so many moved overseas. Regular jobs were replaced with "temp. agencies" and millions of workers lost all labor protection rights.

同样，对工人的剥削也成为一种流行病，大型工会不断发展，以确保工人享有某些权利。这些工会的规模越来越大，直到 1960 年代，由于工会工人要求太多的钱，许多美国公司不得不迁往海外。高薪的工会工资迫使许多美国公司倒闭，因此许多公司迁往海外。常规工作被替换为“临时工”。机构”，数百万工人丧失了所有劳动保护权。

It is much easier for President Trump to blame China for the American jobs that moved to China, than discuss honestly the flaws in the capitalist system. The Trade Unions in the beginning (1930s-1960s) were wonderful. They did protect the workers for some time. But, American workers kept demanding more and more money so companies had to leave the USA or go out of business. The Capitalist system, American trade unions, and the wealth gap between the USA and the developing world led to American jobs leaving the USA. This was not a diabolical plot by China! This situation was created by big problems within the capitalist system. But, blaming and attacking China is easier than being honest – so – the wealthy capitalists lie about the causes of the trade imbalance and attack an innocent nation – China.

对于特朗普总统来说，指责中国为美国转移到中国的工作岗位负责，要比诚实地讨论资本主义制度的缺陷容易得多。开始时（1930-1960 年代）的工会很好。他们确实保护了工人一段时间。但是，美国工人不断要求越来越多的钱，所以公司不得不离开美国或倒闭。资本主义制度、美国工会和美国与发展中国家之间的贫富差距导致了美国的就业机会离开美国。这不是中国的一个邪恶阴谋！这种局面是资本主义制度内部的大问题造成的。但是，指责和攻击中国要比诚实容易得多，因此，富有的资本家们在贸易失衡的原因上撒谎，攻击一个无辜的国家——中国。

Adam Smith's visions of self-regulating market-places did over time reveal many flaws.

随着时间的推移，亚当·斯密（Adam Smith）自我调节市场的构想确实揭示了许多缺陷。

Despite subsequent events Adam Smith was optimistic about his vision of a self-regulating market system. To him, the society of the market system was dynamic and progressive.

尽管发生了随后的事件，但亚当·斯密（Adam Smith）对于他对自我调节市场体系的愿景持乐观态度。在他看来，市场体系的社会是充满活力和进步的。

To the average working person worldwide however his capitalism has become slavery; endless toil, poverty and hopelessness.

然而，对于全世界的普通劳动者来说，他的资本主义已经成为奴隶制。无尽的辛劳，贫穷和绝望。

There are numerous other liabilities associated with capitalism besides exploiting workers, and monopolies that totally control information and money flow.

除了剥削工人和完全控制信息和资金流动的垄断以外，资本主义还有许多其他严重问题。

The Instability of Global Capitalism and Disposable Workers 全球资本主义的不稳定和可支配工人

不幸的是，除了垄断之外，还有其他与资本主义有关的问题。

Richard Wolff: US jobless totals are about to get worse than during the Great Depression. It's time for a radical new approach, 6 May, 2020

理查德·沃尔夫：美国的失业总数将比大萧条时期更糟。到了采取激进新方法的时候了，2020年5月6日

By Richard D. Wolff

Professor of Economics Emeritus, University of Massachusetts, Amherst, and Visiting Professor in the Graduate Program in International Affairs of the New School University, NYC...

马萨诸塞大学阿默斯特分校经济学名誉教授，纽约新学校大学国际事务研究生课程客座教授。

<https://www.democracyatwork.info>

We are entering an even Greater Depression than the 1930s, with hundreds of millions thrown out of work across the world. Capitalism is a broken, unstable system that is beyond repair – but there are alternatives.

我们正进入比 1930 年代更严重的大萧条，全世界有数亿人失业。资本主义是一个破碎的，不稳定的系统，无法修复，但还有其他选择。

Ninety-one years after the start of the Great Depression (capitalism's worst downturn until now), we are entering an even Greater Depression. The 1930s were so awful that leaders of capitalist economies ever since have said they had learned how to avoid any future depressions. All promised to take the steps needed to avoid them. Those promises have all been broken. Capitalism remains intrinsically unstable.

在大萧条（迄今为止资本主义最严重的衰退）开始 91 年后，我们正进入一个更大的萧条。20 世纪 30 年代是如此糟糕，以至于资本主义经济体的领导人自此就表示，他们已经学会了如何避免未来的任何萧条。所有人都承诺采取必要的措施来避免他们。那些承诺都被打破了。资本主义本质上仍然不稳定。

Richard D. Wolff: Viruses like Covid-19 are a part of nature we must accept. But Capitalism-2020 must be destroyed.

沃尔夫：像 Covid-19 这样的病毒是自然的一部分，我们必须接受。但必须摧毁资本主义-2020。

That instability is revealed in its recurring cycles, recessions, downturns, depressions, crashes, etc. They have plagued capitalism wherever it has settled in as the prevailing economic system. Now that the whole world's prevailing economic system is capitalism, we suffer global instability. To date, capitalist instability has resisted every effort (monetary and fiscal policies, Keynesian economics, privatization, deregulation, etc.) to overcome or stop it. And now it is here yet again.

这种不稳定表现在其反复出现的周期、衰退、衰退、萧条、崩溃等方面，它们一直困扰着资本主义，无论资本主义在何处安顿下来，成为当时的经济体系。现在全世界普遍的经济体系是资本主义，我们遭受全球不稳定。迄今为止，资本主义的不稳定阻碍了克服或阻止这种不稳定的一切努力（货币和财政政策、凯恩斯经济学、私有化、放松管制等）。现在又来了。

Across the world, hundreds of millions of workers are unemployed. The tools, equipment, and raw materials in their factories, offices and stores sit idle, gathering dust and rust. The goods and services they might have produced do not now emerge to help us through these awful times. Perishable plants and animals that cannot now be processed are destroyed even as scarcities multiply.

全世界有数亿工人失业。他们工厂、办公室和商店里的工具、设备和原材料闲置着，积满灰尘和铁锈。他们可能生产的商品和服务现在还不能帮助我们度过这段糟糕的时期。现在无法加工的易腐动植物被摧毁，即使人们正经历着基本商品的匮乏。

Workers lose their jobs if and when employers – mostly private capitalists – fire them. Employers hire workers when workers add more value to what the employer sells than the value of those workers' wages. Hiring then adds to profits. Employers fire workers when they add less than the value of the wages paid to them. Firing then reduces losses. Employers protect and reproduce their enterprises by maximizing profits and minimizing losses.

如果雇主（主要是私人资本家）解雇了工人，工人就会失业。当工人为雇主出售的产品增加的价值大于工人工资的价值时，雇主雇用工人。雇用可以增加利润。雇主解雇工人的工资少于付给他们工资的价值。然后解雇工人可以减少损失。雇主通过使利润最大化和损失最小化来保护和复制企业。

Profit, not the full employment of workers nor of means of production, is “the bottom line” of capitalists, and thus of capitalism. That is how the system works. Capitalists are rewarded when their profits are high and punished when they are not.

利润，不是工人的充分就业，也不是生产资料的充分，是资本家的“底线”，因而是资本主义的“底线”。这就是系统的工作方式。资本家的利润高时会得到奖励，资本家的利润不高时就会受到惩罚。

<https://www.rt.com/op-ed/487934-covid-unemployment-great-depression>

Workers are thus disposable commodities not so different from slaves. Unemployed workers who can't pay the mortgages on their homes, lose their homes. The banks get the homes and resell them for good profit. The workers are the consistent losers.

因此，工人是可支配的商品，与奴隶没有太大区别。失业工人如果无力支付房屋抵押贷款，就会失去家园。银行得到这些房子并转售，以获取良好的利润。工人是始终如一的失败者。

Global Wealth Gap 全球贫富差距

Global capitalism murders nine million people every year by starving them to death. Every year the giant chasm between the rich and poor increases hugely.

全球资本主义每年因饿死而谋杀 900 万人。每年，贫富之间的巨大鸿沟大大增加。

Every day 10,000 people die because they lack access to affordable healthcare.

Each year, 100 million people are forced into extreme poverty due to healthcare costs.

Only 4 cents in every dollar of tax revenue comes from taxes on wealth.

The world's richest 1% have more than twice as much wealth as 6.9 billion people.

每天有 10,000 人因无法获得负担得起的医疗保健而死亡。

由于医疗保健费用，每年有 1 亿人被迫陷入极端贫困。

每 1 美元税收中只有 4 美分来自财富税。

世界上最富有的 1% 的财富是 69 亿人的两倍多。

Extreme inequality is out of control. Hundreds of millions of people are living in extreme poverty while huge rewards go to those at the very top. There are more billionaires than ever before, and their fortunes have grown to record levels. Meanwhile, the world's poorest got even poorer.

Many governments are fueling this inequality crisis. They are massively under taxing corporations and wealthy individuals, yet underfunding vital public services like healthcare and education.

These policies hit the poor hardest. The human costs are devastating, with women and girls suffering the most.

极端的平等已无法控制。数以亿计的人生活在极端贫困中，而最上层的人获得了丰厚的回报。亿万富翁比以往任何时候都多，他们的财富也达到了创纪录的水平。同时，世界上最贫穷的人变得更加贫穷。

许多政府正在加剧这场不平等危机。他们不向公司和富人征税，也不为重要的公共服务（如医疗保健和教育）提供资金。

这些政策对穷人的打击最大。人力成本是毁灭性的，妇女和女童遭受的损失最大。

<https://www.oxfam.org/en/5-shocking-facts-about-extreme-global-inequality-and-how-even-it>

Global Wealth Inequality by Jason Hickel, February 2016 Jason Hickel 撰写的全球财富不平等报告，2016年2月

During the colonial period, the gap between the richest countries and the poorest countries widened from 3:1 to 35:1, in part because European powers extracted so much wealth from the Global South in the form of resources and labour. Since then, that gap has grown to almost 80:1. How is this possible?

在殖民时期，最富裕国家与最贫穷国家之间的差距从 3:1 扩大到 35:1，部分原因是欧洲大国以资源和劳动力的形式从全球南方汲取了大量财富。

从那时起，这一差距已扩大到近 80:1。这怎么可能？

Capital flows from poor to rich 资本从穷人流向富人

The gap is growing in part because of the neoliberal economic policies that international institutions like the World Bank, the International Monetary Fund (IMF) and the World Trade Organization (WTO) have imposed on developing countries over the past few decades.

These policies are designed to forcibly liberalise markets, prying them open in order to give multinational corporations unprecedented access to cheap land, resources and labour. But at a serious cost: poor countries have lost around \$500bn per year in GDP as a consequence of these policies, according to economist Robert Pollin of the University of Massachusetts.

这种差距在不断扩大，部分原因是过去的几十年中，世界银行，国际货币基金组织（IMF）和世界贸易组织（WTO）等国际机构对发展中国家实施了新自由主义经济政策。这些政策旨在强行放开市场，撬开市场，以使跨国公司能够自由获得廉价的土地，资源和劳动力。但代价不菲：马萨诸塞州大学（University of Massachusetts）经济学家罗伯特·波林（Robert Pollin）表示，由于这些政策，贫穷国家每年的 GDP 损失约 5000 亿美元。

<https://www.cetri.be/Global-Wealth-Inequality?lang=fr>

The richest of the rich people are stealing ever increasingly from the poorest of the poor. This is global capitalism and it's getting much worse now. Due to inequalities in health care the poor just suffer die from COVID-19 while the rich laugh and have a party. No one is counting the deaths in the poor countries from COVID-19 because the rich – who completely dominate the media – keep information like that silenced.

富人中最富有的人越来越多地从穷人中最穷的人那里偷窃。这是全球资本主义，现在情况变得更糟了。由于医疗保健方面的不平等，穷人只是死于 COVID-19，而富人则笑着开派对。没有人统计来自 COVID-19 的贫困国家的死亡人数，因为 1) 没有人统计，2) 完全控制媒体的富人保持着这样的沉默。

It doesn't have to be this way though, there are other better systems than capitalism as we will see in the next chapter.

不过，不必一定要这样，我们将在下一章中看到比资本主义更好的系统。

Vocabulary 词汇

Test yourself! How many of the following words do you know? What part of speech are they? Nouns, verbs, adjectives, adverbs?

考验你自己！你知道下列几个词？它们是什么词类？名词，动词，形容词，副词？

Can you make sentences using the following vocabulary? In what contexts were the words below used in the story above?

你能用下列词汇造句吗？上面的故事中使用了什么语境？

Scholarly

Scottish

Bachelor

He gained fame

moral philosopher

Critics

Appraisal

Masterpiece

Tutor

Age of Enlightenment

Resembles

Encyclopedia,

Criticism

Apprenticeship,

Statistics,

Waste,
The military
Foreign trade
Landlords
Clergy
Royalty
Farming
"the late disturbances in the American colonies"
Unregulated market system
Permeates
Self-interest
Profit
Motivates
Benevolence
Butcher
Brewer
Baker
Profit motive
Benefit society?
Greed
Overwhelming
Ruthless exploitation
Profiteers
Unintentionally
Competition.
Overcharges
Competitors
Reasonable prices
Wages
Employer
Selfish motives are tempered by interaction
Resulting in social harmony
Market system

Reaps

Competition

Over-charging society

Laws of the market

Demand exceeds supply → pushes prices up

Regulate

Competition reduces the surplus of profit

Lucrative areas

Government control

Monopolies

Dynamic and progressive.

Vocabulary with English Definitions 带有英语定义的词汇

Scholarly (adj.) – Well educated, high level academic, usually implies researcher

Scottish (adj.) – From Scotland

Bachelor (noun or adj.) – Not married person

He gained fame – became famous

Moral philosopher – someone who studies morality

Critics – someone who studies the weaknesses of things and people

Appraisal (noun) – calculation the value

Masterpiece (noun) – a great piece of art or science

Tutor (noun) – private teacher

Age of Enlightenment - intellectual and scientific movement of 18th century Europe which was characterized by a rational and scientific approach to religious, social, political, and economic issues

Resemble (verb) – similar to

Encyclopedia – a book, set of books or online resources containing information on a variety of topics

Criticism – finding weakness or problems with something or someone

Apprenticeship – training period in some trade/profession

Statistics – branch of mathematics that analyzes data, including probability, variance from the norm, significant differences, reliability, and so on.

Waste – Verb: to throw away something useful – Noun → garbage

The military – collection of soldiers

Foreign trade overseas buying and selling of goods

Landlords – the owners of property, houses, buildings, etc.

Clergy – officials in a religious group

Royalty – kings, queens, princes, princesses and so on.

Farming – growing crops and raising animals

"the late disturbances in the American colonies" refers to the American Revolutionary war against England.

Unregulated market system – system of trading that where government does not interfere (不干扰)

Permeates – Goes all through something, saturates

Self-interest – concern for one's own benefits and not other peoples.

Profit – earnings from trade or business above costs

Motivate (verb) [motivation noun, motivational adj.] – the strength of desire, to do something

Benevolence – kindness, generosity

Butcher – the person who kills and cuts up animals for food

Brewer - the person who makes beer

Baker – someone who bakes bread, cakes, cookies, muffins, etc.

Profit motive – wanting to do something because of some benefit, e.g. profits, e.g. money

Benefit society – help the community

Greed – totally selfish, too selfish

Overwhelming – too much to deal with, so much a person cannot cope with it.

Ruthless exploitation – using people in a cruel way to make money

Profiteers – people who use other people in a cruel way to make money

Unintentionally doing something by accident – not intentional

Competition – effort to win in a contest of some kind, it can be business or sport usually

Overcharges – asking/demanding too much money

Competitors – people engaged in competition

Reasonable prices – when the cost is fair, not too cheap and not too expensive.

Wages – money paid for work

Employer – someone who gives another person a job

Selfish motives (自私的动机) are tempered (controlled 受约束的) by interaction (forces between different parties, people, companies, sellers and buyers, etc. Example: If you charge too much money people won't buy it. If you don't pay enough, people won't work for you...)

Resulting in social harmony – people get along together well

Market system – supply and demand

Reaps – get benefit

Over-charging society - place where things are too expensive

Laws of the market – rules that govern a system by which sellers and buyers, employers and employees all benefit from working together

Demand exceeds supply → pushes prices up – too many people want to buy your goods, so you can charge more money

Regulate - control

Competition reduces the surplus of profit – when there are many sellers selling the same thing, the sellers don't make as much money as when there is only one or a few people selling that thing.

Lucrative areas – places or markets that make a lot of money

Government control

Monopolies – when one person or company is the only person or company that produces or supplies a type of goods or services. (In the 1930s the US government made laws to stop monopolies from controlling markets as they are anti-competitive)

Dynamic and progressive – changing and improving

Vocabulary - English Definitions & Chinese Translations 词汇-英文定义和中文翻译

Scholarly (学术 adj. or adv.) – Well educated, high level academic, usually implies researcher

Scottish (苏格兰 adj.) – From Scotland

Bachelor (学士 noun or adj.) – Not married person

He gained fame – Become famous (成名)

Moral philosopher (道德哲学家) Someone who studies the abstract side of morality

Critic (评论家) Someone who studies the weaknesses and negative side of things and people

Appraisal (评价 noun) – Calculation the value

Masterpiece (杰作 noun) – A great piece of art or science

Tutor (导师 noun) – Private teacher

Age of Enlightenment (启蒙时代) Intellectual and scientific movement of 18th century Europe which was had a rational and scientific approach to religious, social, political, and economic issues

Resemble (像 verb) Similar to

Encyclopedia (百科全书 noun) A book, set of books or online resources containing information on a variety of topics

Criticism (批评) Finding weakness or problems with something or someone

Apprenticeship (学徒) Training period in some trade/profession (Apprentice the person who is in an apprenticeship.)

Statistics (统计 tǒng jì) Branch of mathematics that analyzes data (分析数据), including probability (可能性 kě néng xìng) Variance from the norm (范数方差), significant differences (显著的差异) Reliability (可靠性) and so on.

Waste (浪费) Verb: to throw away something useful – Noun → garbage

The military (军事) Collection of soldiers working together

Foreign trade (对外贸易) Overseas buying and selling of goods

Landlord (房东) The owners of property, houses, buildings, etc.

Clergy (神职人员) Officials in a religious group

Royalty (王室成员) Officials in a monarchy, kings, queens, princes, princesses and so on.

Farming (农事) Growing crops and raising animals

“**The late disturbances in the American colonies**” (“美国殖民地最近的动乱”) refers to the American Revolutionary war against England, mainly because they didn't like paying British taxes which they felt were exploitative.

Unregulated market system (不受管制的市场体系) System of trading where government does not **Interfere** (不干扰)

Permeates (渗透) Goes all through something, saturates

Self-interest (自我利益) Concern for one's own benefits and not other peoples.

Profit (利润) Earnings from trade or business above costs

Motivate (激励 verb) [motivation noun, motivational adj.] The strength of desire to do something

Benevolence (仁 Rén) Kindness, generosity

Butcher (屠夫) The person who slaughters food animals and cuts the meat for food

Brewer (布鲁尔) The person who makes beer

Baker (贝克) Someone who bakes bread, cakes, cookies, muffins, etc.

Profit motive (利润动机) Wanting to do something because of some benefit, e.g. profits, e.g. money

Benefit society (造福社会) Helps the community and/or nation

Greed (贪婪) Selfish, too selfish

Overwhelming (势不可挡的) Too much to deal with, so much a person cannot cope with it.

Ruthless exploitation (无情的剥削) Using people in a cruel way to make money; taking advantage of other people or resources

Profiteers (奸商) People who use other people in a cruel way to make money

Unintentionally (无意中) Doing something by accident – not intentional

Competition (竞争) Effort to win in a contest of some kind; usually business or sport

Overcharge (过充) Asking or demanding too much money

Competitors (竞争对手) People engaged in competition

Reasonable prices(合理的价格) When the cost is fair, not too cheap and not too expensive.

Wages (工资) Money paid for work

Employer (雇主 [gù zhǔ]) Someone who gives another person a job

Selfish motives (自私的动机) Doing something solely or primarily for self

Social harmony (社会和谐) People get along together well

Market system (市场体系) Based on supply and demand

Reap (收获) Harvest, or get benefit

Over-charging society (过充电的社会) Place where things are too expensive

Laws of the market (市场规律) Rules that govern a system by which sellers and buyers, employers and employees all benefit from working together

Demand exceeds supply (供不应求) Excess of purchasers beyond available quantities of products or services; usually pushes prices up

Regulate (规范) Control usually by some kind of authority

Competition reduces the surplus of profit (竞争减少利润的剩余) When there are many sellers selling the same thing, the sellers don't make as much money as when there is only one or a few people selling that thing.

Lucrative (有利可图的) Places or markets that make a lot of money

Government control (政府控制) The government regulates

Monopoly (垄断) When one person or company is the only person or company that produces or supplies a type of goods or services. (In the 1930s the US government made laws to stop monopolies from controlling markets as they are anti-competitive)

Dynamic and progressive (渐进的动态) Changing and improving

Multiple Choice Quiz 多项选择测验

1. According to the Adam Smith's theory of capitalism, people are motivated by:
 - a. benevolence
 - b. benefitting society
 - c. self-interest
 - d. exploitation
2. According to Adam Smith's theory of capitalism what stops greed from resulting in ruthless exploitation?
 - a. not needed
 - b. competition
 - c. benevolent
 - d. government control

3. According to Adam Smith's theory of capitalism are monopolies a good thing?
 - a. Sometimes
 - b. usually
 - c. yes
 - d. no

4. According to Adam Smith's theory of capitalism when profits in one type of business become unusually large _____.
 - a. new producers are attracted to the business — until competition reduces the surplus of profit.
 - b. government steps in to control ruthless profiteering
 - c. monopolies are formed that puts the other businesses out of business.
 - d. taxes need to be raised so the government can provide more public services.

5. According to Adam Smith's theory of capitalism social harmony results when:
 - a. benevolence rules over other concerns in the marketplace.
 - b. selfish motives are tempered by interaction.
 - c. profit motives can operate unrestrained by government interference.
 - d. government controls every aspect of the marketplace

6. What are Adam Smith's two primary economic laws?
 - a. Too much competition overheats the marketplace and governments need to pay careful attention to private business to prevent monopolies.
 - b. Not enough competition results in a wasteful marketplace.
 - c. Self-interest and competition drive and regulate the market place.
 - d. Ruthless exploitation is actually a good thing as it stimulates the market and keeps prices high.

Parts of Speech 词类

Fill in the blanks with the correct parts of speech.

Noun	Verb	Adjective	Adverb
Capitalism			
Monopoly			
Exploitation			
Greed	XXX		
Regulation			XXX
Competition			

Ruthlessness	XXX		
--------------	-----	--	--

Answers: 答案:

Noun	Verb	Adjective	Adverb
Capitalism	Capitalize	Capitalist/capitalistic	Capitalistically
Monopoly	Monopolize	Monopolistic	Monopolistically
Exploitation	Exploit	Exploitative	Exploitatively
Greed	XXX	Greedy	Greedily
Regulation	Regulate	Regulated/Regulating regulative	XXX
Competition	Compete	Competitive Ruthless	Competitively
Ruthlessness	XXX		Ruthlessly

Grammar Check: Articles 语法检查: 冠词

In theory the use of articles should be simple as there are only three of them in English: a, an, and the. (Latin languages like French, Spanish and Italian articles are more complicated than English because every noun in those languages is either masculine or feminine, and you have to use either masculine or feminine articles to preface their nouns!)

从理论上讲，冠词的使用应该很简单，因为英语中只有三种：**a**，**an** 和 **the**。（冠词的拉丁语语言（如法语，西班牙语和意大利语）比英语要复杂得多，因为这些语言中的每个名词都是男性或女性，并且您必须使用男性或女性文章作为其名词的开头！）

But, knowing when you need them and when you don't is a bit more complicated.

但是，知道何时需要它们以及何时不需要它们会更加复杂。

Articles are used before only nouns to limit or define their (Nouns) uses in the context of the sentence. Articles add specificity to nouns.

仅在名词之前使用冠词来限制或定义其在句子上下文中的（名词）用法。文章增加了名词的特殊性。

The word “the” is used to refer to specific nouns. “A” or “an” is used to modify non-specific or non-particular nouns. Grammarians call “the” the definite article and “a/an” the indefinite article.

单词“the”用于指代特定名词。“A”或“an”用于修饰非特定或非特定名词。语法学家将“该”定冠词称为“一个”，将“一个/一个”定为“不确定”冠词。

Probably the reader knows that the “indefinite article” “a” is used before words that start with a consonant (all the letters in the English alphabet except the vowels), and “an” is used before words that start with a vowel (a,e,i,o,u).

读者可能知道，“不定冠词”“a”用于以辅音开头的单词（英语中除元音以外的所有字母），“an”用于以元音开头的单词（a），e, i, o, u）。

Thus we have: 因此，我们有：

A mountain (with “m” being a consonant), and

一座山（“m”是辅音），以及

An apple (with “a”) being a vowel. 一个苹果（带有“a”）是元音。

Nouns that need an article: 为什么有些名词需要一篇文章：

- Countable singular nouns → **The** cow jumped over the moon. / **A** bird flew overhead.

Nouns that don’t (absolutely) need an article (but you can use one):

- Plural nouns → Cats and dogs sometimes fight. The cats and dogs sometimes fight. (Both are OK.)
- Uncountable nouns → Water is very refreshing. The water is very refreshing. (Both are OK.)

Languages do more than a little semi-random “meandering,” as do most natural systems following perhaps a higher order of organization than our scientists have yet to figure out. (For example, British people say:

语言的作用远不止是半随机的“弯道”，大多数自然系统遵循的组织顺序可能比我们科学家尚未弄清楚的要高。例如，英国人说：

“At the weekend,” whereas Americans say 而美国人说

“on the weekend.”

Why? Americans use articles in some cases British don’t, e.g.

为什么？美国人在某些情况下会使用英国人不使用的物品，例如：

“he’s going to **the** hospital,”

whereas British don’t always use the article “the” in this case:

而在这种情况下，英国人并不总是使用“the”一词：

“**He’s going to hospital.**”)

Given these complexities, how should someone use articles? I suggest you read a lot. Then, you’ll simply recognize what’s right and what’s wrong. Keeping the rules in mind helps, but being familiar with common phrases is a faster way to recognize correct use of different parts of speech.

鉴于这些复杂性，有人应该如何使用文章？我建议 you 阅读很多。然后，您只需识别对与错。记住规则会有所帮助，但是熟悉常用短语是识别正确使用不同词性的更快方法。

Using Key Words and Phrases for Research 使用关键词和短语进行研究

There are many internet sites that have free practice exercises and quizzes. How to find them?

有许多互联网站点提供免费的练习和测验。如何找到他们？

Type: "Use of articles in English grammar free quiz" into a major browser.

在主要浏览器中输入：“使用英语语法免费测验中的文章”。

Learning how to use the most efficient "search terms" (key words and phrases) helps develop research skills enormously.

学习如何使用最有效的“搜索词”（关键词和短语）可以极大地提高研究技能。

Essay Topics 散文专题

Please write a 2,000-word essay examining one of the following topics:

请写一篇 2000 字的论文，研究下列主题之一：

- Global economic inequality / Solutions to the global inequality gap
 - Flaws in and corrections needed by Adam Smith's work on capitalism
 - Plight of the refugees
-
- 全球经济不平等/解决全球不平等差距
 - 亚当·斯密关于资本主义的工作中的缺陷和需要纠正的地方
 - 难民的困境

Word Focus: "Impunity" 焦点词：“有罪不罚”

"No matter what anybody tells you, words and ideas can change the world."
John Keating

“不管别人怎么说，语言和思想都能改变世界。”—约翰·基廷

Impunity 有罪不罚

Exemption from punishment or freedom from the injurious consequences of an action.

'the impunity enjoyed by military officers implicated in civilian killings'

免于处罚或免于诉讼的伤害性后果。

“军官享受的有罪不罚现象与平民杀戮有关”

Origin 起源

Mid-16th century from Latin *impunitas*, from *impunis* 'unpunished', from *in-* 'not' + *poena* 'penalty' or *punire* 'punish'.

16 世纪中叶从拉丁语“*punitas*”，从“*punitis*”到“unpunished”，从“not”+“*poena*”到“*pension*”或“*punire*”

Pronunciation 发音

impunity/im'pyʊənədē/ /ɪm'pjʊnədi/

<https://www.lexico.com/en/definition/impunity>

Example 例子

This year's International Women's Day is devoted to ending impunity for violence against women and girls.

今年的国际妇女节致力于终止对妇女和女孩施暴而不受惩罚。

Impunity Meaning 有罪不罚的含义

Freedom from punishment or from the unpleasant results of something that has been done:

Criminal gangs are terrorizing the city with apparent impunity.

不受惩罚或不愉快的结果：犯罪团伙正在恐吓这座城市，显然不受惩罚。

Example 例子

She thought that her money and power gave her the right to ignore the law with impunity.

Staff members of human rights organizations highlighted impunity, and the deplorable record on human rights of various politicians, in their regional analyses.

(From Cambridge English Corpus) 她认为她的金钱和权力赋予她无视法律而不受惩罚的权利。人权组织的工作人员在其区域分析中强调了有罪不罚现象，以及各政治人物在人权方面的可悲记录。
(摘自剑桥英语语料库)

Moreover, public concerns with rule of law and justice are also closely linked to issues of law and order, impunity and corruption. From Cambridge English Corpus

此外，公众对法治和司法的关注也与法律和秩序、有罪不罚和腐败等问题密切相关。来自剑桥英语语料库

<https://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/impunity>

Contemporary issue involving "Impunity"

涉及“有罪不罚”的当代问题

US threatens International Criminal Court with 'consequences' if it acts on war crimes complaint against Israel filed by 'fake' Palestinian state

美国威胁国际刑事法院，如果它对“假”巴勒斯坦国对以色列提出的战争罪指控采取行动，将产生“后果”

16 May, 2020

Arguing that Palestine doesn't "qualify as a sovereign state" and that the International Criminal Court lacks jurisdiction over Israel, US Secretary of State Mike Pompeo has threatened "consequences" for any "illegitimate" probes.

美国国务卿蓬佩奥（Mike Pompeo）辩称，巴勒斯坦不具备“主权国家资格”，国际刑事法院对以色列也缺乏管辖权，他威胁说，任何“非法”的调查都将产生“后果”。

Following his trip to Israel this week, Pompeo issued a brief statement, denouncing the ongoing efforts by the ICC to investigate allegations of war crimes against Palestinians, including the use of live ammunition against protesters, the demolition and shelling of civilian homes and infrastructure, and forcible relocations as part of Israel's settlement projects in the occupied territories.

庞培在本周访问以色列后，发表了简短的声明，谴责国际刑事法院正在继续努力调查针对巴勒斯坦人的战争罪指控，包括对抗议者使用实弹，对平民房屋和基础设施进行拆毁和炮击，以及作为以色列在被占领土上定居项目的一部分，进行了强行搬迁。

"The United States reiterates its longstanding objection to any illegitimate ICC investigations," wrote Pompeo, blasting the ICC as "a political body, not a judicial institution," and arguing that it has no "jurisdiction over Israel, which like the United States, is not a party to the Rome Statute that created the court."

庞培写道：“美国重申其对任何非法的国际刑事法院调查的长期反对，”庞培批评国际刑事法院是“一个政治机构，而非司法机构”，并辩称它没有“对以色列的管辖权，就像美国一样，不是创建法院的《罗马规约》的当事方。”

<https://www.rt.com/news/488880-pompeo-israel-icc-war-crimes>

For further information on the meaning of the word “impunity” and Palestine, readers may wish to research the “Nakba.”

有关“有罪不罚”和巴勒斯坦一词的含义的更多信息，读者不妨研究“Nakba”。

Chapter 5 - Socialism and Communism 第四章社会主义与共产主义

Let's Take a Little Stroll... 让我们漫步一下...

...through time – say the past hundred years and around the world. Oh yes, this is very nice, and that's very nice, but! OMG! A wall 24,901 miles (40,075 km) long and 6.2 miles (10 km) high* of garbage!

* Those numbers represent the circumference of the earth and height of the stratosphere respectively. 这些数字分别代表地球的周长和平流层的高度。

Horrible! How disgusting! Let's just walk back the way we came and try to ignore all that unpleasantness, OK?

.....通过时间——比如说过去的一百年和世界各地。哦，是的，这很好，那很好，但是！天啊！一堵 24901 英里（40075 公里）长，6.2 英里（10 公里）高的垃圾墙！好可怕！真恶心！让我们回到过去，试着忽略所有的不愉快，好吗？

Seeing through the “wall,” the mountains of anticommunist and antisocialist propaganda spewed from the big guns of western unrestrained capitalism and colonialism to objectively understand the reasonably simple and socially egalitarian* systems of socialism and communism - is not easy – in fact it's just about impossible for most. We all the products of our language and cultures.**

* “Egalitarian” means: believing in or based on the principle that all people are equal and deserve equal rights and opportunities. (平等主义者)

** Older American will certainly recall the Rocky and Bullwinkle show – with the cute and clever flying squirrel Rocky, and the slower but kind-hearted Bullwinkle fighting the diabolical Russian Boris and Natasha! Cute and funny on the surface, but it is cruel anti-communist propaganda just the same.

年长的美国人肯定会想起洛奇和布卢文克尔的表演——可爱聪明的飞行松鼠洛奇，和速度较慢但心地善良的布卢文克尔对抗邪恶的俄罗斯鲍里斯和娜塔莎！表面上可爱搞笑，但反共宣传同样残酷。

<https://www.youtube.com/watch?v=hTzuO24i-YA>

透过这堵“墙”，从西方自由资本主义和殖民主义的大炮中喷出的反共产主义和反社会主义的宣传大山，客观地理解社会主义和共产主义的合理简单和社会平等制度，并不容易——事实上，对大多数人来说，这几乎是不可能的。我们都是语言和文化的产物。

It's difficult for many western people to examine socialism and communism objectively. This is due to nearly of century of finely crafted disinformation (really stinking garbage) and sabotage of socialism and communism. Socialism and communism are in fact the most socially egalitarian political/economic systems. Whereas Capitalism is ruthless and predatory, socialism and communism promote greater economic and social equality.

许多西方人很难客观地看待社会主义和共产主义。这是由于近一个世纪以来精心制作的虚假信息（实际上是垃圾）和社会主义与共产主义的破坏。实际上，社会主义和共产主义是社会上最平等的政治/经济体系。资本主义是残酷的，掠夺性的，而社会主义和共产主义则促进了更大的经济和社会平等。

Pernicious western critics of socialism and communism take great joy in asserting that socialist and communist states always fail economically, conveniently forgetting the Chinese economic “miracle,” which wasn’t a miracle at all, but rather careful planning and disciplined allotment of resources to help foster growth and development of people and industry, rather than just enrich bankers and other wealth capitalists.

西方对社会主义和共产主义的恶毒批评者非常高兴地断言，社会主义和共产主义国家总是在经济上失败，顺手忘记了中国的经济“奇迹”，这根本不是奇迹，但是，更为谨慎的计划和有纪律的资源分配，以帮助促进人民和工业的增长和发展，而不仅仅是银行家和超级富有的资本家。

Readers should be reminded that 应该提醒读者

It was the Communist Soviet people who won the heroic war against Hitler’s Germany, not the Capitalist USA and western Europe

赢得对希特勒德国的英勇战争的是共产主义苏维埃人民，而不是资本主义的美国和西欧

It was American shadowy political figures, American industrialists and big bankers of the US and Europe that put Hitler into power in the first place.

首先让希特勒上台的是美国阴暗的政治人物、美国实业家和欧美的大银行家。

“In sum, Allen Dulles future CIA Director and John Foster Dulles (future Secretary of State) were (in the 1930s) lead attorneys for Wall Street law firm Sullivan and Cromwell that, in cooperation with several of Americas largest corporations helped the Nazis rise to power.”

Talbot, David “The Devil's Chessboard: Allen Dulles, the CIA, and the Rise of America's Secret Government” HarperCollins Publishers, 2015
总而言之，艾伦·杜勒斯（未来的中情局局长）和约翰·福斯特·杜勒斯（未来的国务卿）是（上世纪 30 年代）华尔街“沙利文和克伦威尔”律师事务所的首席律师，他们与美国几家最大的公司合作，帮助纳粹党上台。

大卫塔尔博特，“魔鬼棋盘：艾伦·杜勒斯，中情局，和美国秘密政府的崛起”，哈珀柯林斯出版社，2015 年

Also see: 另见:

<https://www.globalresearch.ca/history-of-world-war-ii-nazi-germany-was-financed-by-the-federal-reserve-and-the-bank-of-england/5530318>

<https://erenow.net/modern/the-brothers-john-foster-dulles-allen-dulles-and-their-secret-world-war/3.php>

<https://www.thenewamerican.com/print-magazine/item/28299-john-foster-dulles-how-this-early-deep-stater-harmed-america>

'Mein Kampf' - Hitler Used Rothschild Banker's Typewriter, By Henry Makow
PhD <https://rense.com/general77/meinl.htm>

Probably no one hated communists more than:

当时最恨共产党的最有权势的人是:

Father Włodzimierz Ledochowski (1866–1942): Driving Force behind Papal Anti-Communism during the Interwar Period

沃兹米泽·雷多夫斯基 (Włodzimierz Ledochowski) 父亲 (1866–1942) : 两次世界大战期间教皇反共的幕后推手

Philippe Chenaux, Pontifical Lateran University, Journal of Jesuit Studies 5 (2018) 54-70, brill.com

Why all this hatred of communists and socialists? Probably it was fear of a morally and economically superior system.

他们为什么那么恨共产党人和社会主义者? 仇恨来自恐惧。富有的资本家害怕道德和经济上优越的制度: 社会主义和共产主义。

It was only days after the end of WWII in China that the USA turned 180° around and started bombing their former allies, the communist forces in China. This kind of murderous duplicity boggles the mind of any person with moral integrity. It also does not give a socialist or communist government a fair chance to compete economically. China had just been through 100 years of war. They didn't need a civil war driven by the United States especially at that time!

第二次世界大战在中国结束后几天, 美国就掉头开始轰炸他们以前的盟友, 中国的共产党军队。这种杀人的口是心非, 对任何有道德的人来说都是可耻的。它也没有给社会主义或共产主义政府一个公平的机会在经济上竞争。中国刚刚经历了 100 年的战争。他们绝对不需要美国发动内战, 尤其是在那个时候!

As author William Blum noted: 正如作者威廉·布鲁姆所指出的:

“It's as if the Wright brothers' first experiments with flying machines all failed because the automobile interests sabotaged each test flight. And then the good and god-fearing folk of the world looked upon this, took notice of the consequences, nodded their collective heads wisely, and intoned solemnly: Man shall never fly.”

“这就好像莱特兄弟的第一次飞行器试验都失败了, 因为汽车公司悄悄地破坏了每次试飞。然后, 全世界善良的、敬畏上帝的人们都看到了这一点, 注意到了后果, 明智地点头, 庄严地唱道: “人类永远不会飞翔。”

Killing Hope – U.S. Military and CIA Interventions since World War II, Updated Version, 2004, P. 20

扼杀希望——二战以来美国军方和中情局的干预, 更新版, 2004 年, 第 20 页

In country after country around the 3rd World (Africa, Asia and Latin America) it was the communists who fought wars to help free the indigenous people from the odious yoke of Euro-American colonialism. The capitalists were not going to liberate their colonies because they profited, and still profit from them.

在第三世界一个接一个的国家（非洲、亚洲和拉丁美洲），共产党人发动战争，帮助土著人民摆脱欧美殖民主义的可憎枷锁。资本家不会解放他们的殖民地，因为他们从中获利，而且仍然从中获利。

In every case however, as soon as the communists secured freedom for the people in Africa, Asia and Latin American from colonialism, the USA flew in with huger armies, killed everyone that resisted them, and then installed their own puppet governments. These are the bare bones facts, dried in the sun, ground into powder and then hidden in the closets of the Euro-American colonial masters.

然而，在任何情况下，一旦共产主义者保证非洲、亚洲和拉丁美洲人民免于殖民主义的自由，美国就会携更强大的军队飞来，杀死所有抵抗他们的人，然后建立自己的傀儡政府。这些都是赤裸裸的事实，在阳光下晒干，磨成粉末，然后藏在欧美殖民大师的衣橱里。

Don't worship Europe in its totality. There is good as well as evil everywhere. There are angels and devils everywhere. There are devils with the faces of angels, and angels with the faces of devils everywhere. And there is one thing that stays the same, Child, that is eternal: The colonialist is always a devil....”

Book: *Child of All Nations*, by Pramoedya Ananta Toer, 1996 Penguin Books, p. 82

“不要崇拜整个欧洲。到处都有善也有恶。到处都是天使和魔鬼。有天使脸的魔鬼，到处都有魔鬼脸的天使。还有一件事是不变的，孩子，那就是永恒的：殖民主义者总是一个魔鬼.....”

书名：《万国之子》，印度尼西亚人普拉莫迪亚·阿南塔·托尔著，1996 年企鵝图书，第 82 页

Before WWII there was a big debate amongst the imperialistic capitalist leaders in the USA. Should we attack the communists first or Hitler's fascists first? They finally decided to attack Hitler first, and then later tricked Hitler in to attacking Communist Russia. Far more Russians were killed in WWII than Americans.

第二次世界大战前，美国的帝国主义资本主义领导人之间有一场大辩论，我们应该先攻击共产党，还是先攻击希特勒的法西斯？他们最终决定先攻击希特勒，然后诱骗希特勒攻击共产主义俄罗斯。二战中被杀的俄罗斯人比美国人多得多。

Theories of Karl Marx and Friedrich Engels 马克思与恩格斯的理论

The following sections are adapted from: 以下章节改编自：

<https://study.com/academy/lesson/marxism-lesson-for-kids-definition-explanation.html>

<https://www.quora.com/Whats-the-difference-between-Socialism-Marxism-and-Communism>

Wikipedia.org &

Other sources

In the 1800s, people in Europe had to work hard but still struggled to survive. Children had to work hard all day every day seven days a week. Still, workers often went hungry.

Carl Marx and Engels believed that exploitation of workers, or treating people unfairly and gaining profit from it, was a real problem. Over time they realized all of history has been a class struggle. The common workers, (proletariat) struggled to be treated fairly. They were taken advantage of by the class who held power: the bourgeoisie. Marx and Engels believed that in a perfect world, such classes would not exist.

Adapted from: <https://study.com/academy/lesson/marxism-lesson-for-kids-definition-explanation.html>

Marx and Engels hoped to improve conditions especially for workers. One might think this is not such a terrible crime. It's not a crime at all is it? In fact it is a good thing, right?

马克思恩格斯希望改善特别是工人的条件。有人可能会认为这不是一个可怕的罪行。这根本不是犯罪，是吗？事实上这是件好事，对吧？

Marx and Engels then created a system to protect the workers and ensure greater equality between people. Why should some people be born fabulously rich, while others have to work like slaves their whole life and remain poor? The system to ensure greater equality between people later became known as "Marxism." Marxism is a general term for the political, economic, and social theories of Karl Marx. It is based on the belief that struggle between social classes is a major force in history, and there should eventually be a society in which there are no classes.

随后，马克思和恩格斯创立了一个保护工人和确保人与人之间更大平等的制度。为什么有些人生来就富可敌国，而另一些人却要一辈子像奴隶一样工作，继续贫穷？确保人民之间更大平等的制度后来被称为“马克思主义”，马克思主义是马克思主义政治、经济和社会理论的总称。这是基于这样一种信念：社会阶级之间的斗争是历史上的一股主要力量，最终应该有一个没有阶级的社会。

Generally speaking, the poor like socialism and communism, while the rich hate it and prefer capitalism. Why? The rich like to lord over the poor and middle class like gods. This makes them feel very good about themselves.

一般来说，穷人喜欢社会主义和共产主义，而富人讨厌社会主义，更喜欢资本主义。为什么？富人喜欢像上帝一样统治穷人和中产阶级。这让他们对自己感觉很好。

Marx and Engels believed when workers (the "proletariat") become too unhappy they would rise up and start a revolution. They wanted all people free from being exploited and being poor. In many places their theories have been proven correct. Socialist nations tend to have economies with growing middle classes and lower wealth gaps between the wealthy and poor. Predictably, the USA, the leader of the capitalist world, has had a shrinking middle class for decades.

马克思和恩格斯认为，当工人（即“无产阶级”）变得太不高兴时，他们就会起来发动革命。他们希望所有人都不受剥削和贫穷。他们的理论在许多地方被证明是正确的。社会主义国家往往拥有中产阶级不断增长、贫富差距缩小的经济体。可以预见，作为资本主义世界的领导者，美国的中产阶级几十年来一直在萎缩。

<https://www.investopedia.com/insights/americas-slowly-disappearing-middle-class>

Oxfam – One of the world’s most prestigious humanitarian aid organizations recently reported the wealth of more than 2,200 billionaires across the globe had increased by \$900bn in 2018 – or \$2.5bn a day. The 12% increase in the wealth of the very richest contrasted with a fall of 11% in the wealth of the poorest half of the world’s population. (Jan 20, 2019)

乐施会（Oxfam）是世界上最负盛名的人道主义援助组织之一，最近报告称，2018年，全球2200多位亿万富翁的财富增加了9000亿美元，即每天增加25亿美元。最富有的人的财富增长了12%，而世界上最贫穷的一半人口的财富却下降了11%。（2019年1月20日）

In other words, economic inequalities in capitalist countries are bad and getting worse, proving that the rich are getting richer, and the poor are getting poorer at an alarming rate. Throughout history when these trends continue unabated, violent revolutions result.

换言之，资本主义国家的经济不平等是不好的，而且越来越严重，这证明富人越来越富，穷人越来越穷的速度令人震惊。纵观历史，当这些趋势有增无减，暴力革命就会产生。

A pleasantly non-violent alternative to a violent revolution is socialism.

一个愉快的非暴力的替代暴力革命是社会主义。

Socialism 社会主义, Marxism (马克思) and Communism 共产主义

By Robert Palermo, Former academic, USCG veteran

In classic Marxist theory, Communism is the final stage of the evolution of human socioeconomic relations. In the Marxist model, the feudal state is overthrown by the rise of the bourgeoisie, bringing in the “capitalist era.” Capitalism in theory will then be overthrown by the rise of the proletariat, which brings in the Socialist state, which eventually will evolve into a peaceful communist state. Each previous step is the necessary precondition for the next.

在经典的马克思主义理论中，共产主义是人类社会经济关系演变的最后阶段。在马克思主义模式中，资产阶级的兴起推翻了封建国家，带来了“资本主义时代”。从理论上讲，资本主义将被无产阶级的兴起所推翻，而无产阶级的兴起又带来了社会主义国家，而社会主义国家最终将演变成一个和平的共产主义国家。先前的每个步骤都是进行下一步的必要先决条件。

The socialist state is thus the precondition for communism, and its function is to alter the state of human material conditions in such a way that communism can function. In theory everyone will be happy and educated and have an intrinsic desire to contribute towards collective well-being and happiness. Unfortunately, this isn’t going to happen soon.

The centralized socialist state then should “wither away,” leading to the end of political power in any centralized form including nation states.

Communism as envisioned by Marx is to be an international system not so different from John Lennon's song "Imagine."

因此，社会主义国家是共产主义的先决条件，其功能是以使共产主义能够发挥作用的方式改变人类物质条件的状态。从理论上讲，每个人都会感到幸福和受过教育，并且内在地渴望为集体的幸福和幸福做出贡献。不幸的是，这不会很快发生。

然后，中央集权的社会主义国家应该“消亡”，导致包括民族国家在内的任何集中化形式的政治权力的终结。

马克思所设想的共产主义是一个国际体系，与约翰·列侬的歌曲《想象》没有太大不同。

During this process of moving from the disappearance of social class distinctions, which goes along with the end of political power as we know it. When in the course of development, class distinctions have disappeared and all production has been concentrated in the hands of a vast association of the whole nation, the public power will lose its political character. Political power is seen as the organized power of one class for oppressing another.

在这一过程中，随着社会阶级差异的消失，伴随着我们所知道的政治权力的终结。在发展过程中，阶级区别消失了，所有的生产都集中在整个国家的庞大组织手中，公共权力将失去其政治性。政治权力被视为一个阶级压迫另一个阶级的组织力量。

Carl Marx summarized communism like this: "an association in which the free development of each is the condition for the free development of all."

卡尔·马克思这样概括共产主义：“一个协会，其中每个人的自由发展是所有人自由发展的条件。”

{Both quotes are from The Manifesto of the Communist Party. Three short works from which one can get a very basic understanding of Marx's political and economic theories are *Wage, Labor, and Capital*, *The Manifesto of the Communist Party*, and *The Eighteenth Brumaire of Louis Bonaparte*.}

{两者引自《共产党宣言》。可以从中获得对马克思的政治和经济理论最基本的了解的三篇短篇小说：《工资，劳动和资本》，《共产党宣言》和《路易斯·波拿巴第十八届布鲁梅尔》。}

Adapted from:

<https://www.quora.com/Whats-the-difference-between-Socialism-Marxism-and-Communism>

<http://activistmanifesto.org/assets/original-communist-manifesto.pdf>

The above could easily go in the chapter on utopias in this book. The super-rich capitalists probably would hate this concept of a utopian world – because their pleasure is the exploitation of the weak. Pleasure from that cruelty is what drives them. And so, the enlightened are welcome to try to educate such individuals.

以上内容可以轻松地进入本书关于乌托邦的章节。超级富裕的资本家可能会讨厌这种乌托邦式世界的概念，因为他们的快乐是对弱者的剥削。驱使他们的是残酷的乐趣。因此，欢迎有识之士尝试教育这样的人。

Enormous intrinsic pleasure can be achieved through altruism! Cruelty is most certainly not the pinnacle of pleasure. The capitalist-elite aristocrats simply need to learn this.

利他主义可以带来巨大的内在快乐！残酷绝对不是快乐的顶峰。资本主义精英贵族只需要学习这一点。

Personally, I don't agree with everything in the Communist Manifesto. I don't think the transition from capitalism to socialism and then communism has to be violent, at least in an educated society. Instead I believe those transitions can come about through "enlightened self-interest."

我不同意《共产党宣言》中的一切。我不认为从资本主义到社会主义再到共产主义的转变必须是暴力的，至少在一个受过教育的社会。相反，我相信这些转变可以通过“开明的自我利益”来实现

For example, the archetypal prototype of racism, capitalism and exploitation in the USA now is President Trump. He was perfectly happy to do nothing while COVID-19 spread like wildfire around the USA, knowing full well that it would kill mainly minorities. It is possible for the oppressed working people in the USA to simply halt the capitalist system this coming summer by going on an indefinite strike until a stable socialist candidate can be found to run in the election in November. President Trump, who potentially faces spending the rest of his life in a mental health facility, might agree to this kind of compromise. It would be in his self-interest to allow the American political system to evolve beyond the laws of the jungle he has attempted to enforce.

例如，现在美国种族主义、资本主义和剥削的原型就是特朗普总统。当 COVID-19 像野火一样在美国蔓延时，他非常高兴什么也不做，因为他深知它会杀死主要是少数民族。今年夏天，美国受压迫的劳动人民有可能通过无限期罢工来停止资本主义制度，直到找到一位稳定的社会主义候选人参加 11 月份的选举。特朗普总统可能会面临在精神卫生机构度过余生，他可能会同意这种妥协。允许美国政治体系超越他试图实施的丛林法则，这符合他的自身利益。

Does a President Trump deserve a safe, clean future in a mental health facility with three meals a day and possibly even visitation from family members once a week?

特朗普总统是否应该在精神卫生机构拥有一个安全、清洁的未来，每天三餐，甚至可能每周一次家人探访？

Neither President Trump, Michael Pompeo or other Directors of the CIA invented this corrosive system of ultimate exploitation. They are only the predictable end-products of millennia of cruel abuses. These chains of abuse go back at least to the sacking of Jericho (c. 1350 BCE).*

特朗普总统、迈克尔·蓬佩奥或其他中情局局长都没有发明这种最终剥削的腐蚀性系统。它们只是数千年残酷虐待的可预见的最终产物。这些虐待链至少可以追溯到耶利哥被洗劫（约公元前 1350 年）。

* <https://core.ac.uk/download/pdf/39937804.pdf> & Hebrew 'Old Testament' Bible
Joshua 6: 1-27

These chains of abuse cannot be extinguished by repeating them. 这些虐待的链条不能通过重复来消除。

In regards to this issue I lean on the teachings of the notable psychologist B. F. Skinner who believed that human behavior is primarily determined by reinforcement history. (B. F. Skinner, Beyond Freedom and Dignity, 1971) Skinner wrote that the difference between humans and rats is that rats learn from their experience. I would add that political man has not learned from experience.

关于这个问题，我依靠著名心理学家 B.F.斯金纳的教导，他认为人类行为主要由强化历史决定。斯金纳写道，人类和老鼠的区别在于老鼠从他们的经验中学习。我要补充的是，政治人物并没有从经验中吸取教训。

Socrates could have accepted exile but instead chose to accept the punishment of death. Why? To make a point in regards to his beliefs, chief among them was his belief that democracy ultimately leads to fascism. And this has never been truer than now with the national “security” apparatus of the United States attempting to provoke war against China for the crime of having a more successful political/economic system than the United States. This is a classic symptom of an out-of-control fascist state.

苏格拉底本可以接受流放，但选择接受死刑。为什么？强调他的信念；其中最主要的是他相信民主最终会导致法西斯主义。而这从未像现在这样真实。美国国防部目前正试图惹对华战争。为了什么？拥有比美国更成功的政治/经济体系的“罪行”。这是法西斯主义国家失控的典型症状。

After his “hospitalization” perhaps President Trump can earn 1) visitation rights with family 2) time in the sunshine, 3) freedom to watch movies, etcetera by being agreeable and revealing the details of his violations of international law.

在“住院治疗”之后，也许特朗普总统可以获得 1) 与家人的探望权 2) 在阳光下的时间 3) 自由看电影。仅当他透露自己违反国际法的细节时，才应给予这些自由。

The same reward system can be provided for Mr. Pompeo, other past Directors of CIA and members of the Department of Defense that have participated in violations of international law.

庞培先生，中情局的其他前任局长和参与违反国际法的国防部成员都可以得到相同的奖励制度。

Thus, I don't agree with Marx that violence is necessary for socio-political-economic evolution to occur.

因此，我不同意马克思的观点，即暴力是社会政治经济发展发生所必需的。

Likewise, I don't agree with Marx that the abolition of the family is necessary or desirable for a utopian society.

我也不同意马克思的观点，即废除家庭对于乌托邦社会而言是必要或可取的。

None-the-less, I do agree with the general sequence of stages necessary for socio-political-economic evolutionary changes described by Karl Marx.

但是，我确实同意卡尔·马克思所描述的社会政治经济进化变革所必需的一般阶段顺序。

Evidence of the superiority of the socialist system over capitalism is abundant.

社会主义制度优于资本主义的证据很多。

Socialism with Chinese Characteristics 中国特色社会主义

What is Socialism with Chinese characteristics? Even most Chinese high school students can't answer this question. Below is a list of the characteristics of Socialism with Chinese characteristics. Knowing this list (in English) will help Chinese students talk about this subject intelligently in conversations in western nations. More complete descriptions can be found on the reference hyperlink below this list.

什么是中国特色社会主义？即使是大多数中国高中生也回答不了这个问题。下面是中国特色社会主义的特点一览表。了解这个列表（英语）将有助于中国学生在西方国家的对话中明智地谈论这个话题。更完整的描述可以在这个列表下面的引用超链接上找到。

1. People-Centered 以人为本 [yǐ rén wéi běn]
2. A strong Ruling Party 强大的执政党 [Qiángdà de zhízhèng dǎng]
3. Pooling Resources 汇集资源 [Huìjí zīyuán]
4. Effective Democracy 有效民主 [Yǒuxiào mínzhǔ]
5. Ability to Reform 改革能力 [Gǎigé nénglì]
6. Innovative market Economy 创新市场经济 [Chuàngxīn shìchǎng jīngjì]
7. Maintaining Stability 保持稳定 [Bǎochí wěndìng]
8. Win-Win & Sharing 双赢与共享 [Shuāngyíng yǔ gòngxiǎng]
9. Following its own Path 走自己的路 [Zǒu zìjǐ de lù]
10. Maintaining Cultural Roots 维护文化根基 [Wéihù wénhuà gēnjī]

http://www.xinhuanet.com/english/2017-10/08/c_136665156.htm

Please read the above article. It is very enlightening!

请阅读以上文章。很有启发性！

The People's War on COVID-19 关于 COVID-19 的人民战争

In the People's War against COVID-19, Socialism Offers Victory while Capitalism Spells Defeat 在反对 COVID-19 的人民战争中，社会主义提供了胜利，而资本主义却失败了

Danny Haiphong, BAR Contributing Editor, 06 May 2020

Socialist societies are capable of doing much more than capitalist societies to contain diseases like Covid-19, such as rapid testing, neighborhood food deliveries, and the use of AI technology to trace contacts and symptoms.

与资本主义社会相比，社会主义社会在遏制诸如 Covid-19 之类的疾病方面的能力要强得多，例如快速检测，邻里食品交付以及使用 AI 技术来追踪接触和症状。

"In struggle to contain the COVID-19 pandemic, the biggest enemy of the people is not partial lockdown orders, but capitalism itself."

“在努力遏制 COVID-19 大流行的过程中，人民的最大敌人不是部分封锁令，而是资本主义本身。”

No one should be surprised that the most individualistic and atomized of all capitalist societies, the United States, is struggling to curb the spread of COVID-19. In recent weeks, white supremacist and libertarian forces representing the most impassioned stewards of imperial decline have gathered in states across the country to protest partial lockdown orders. A deeply dangerous narrative exists in the United States that characterizes partial lockdown orders to contain the virus as an example of “medical martial law” and a wholly ineffective means of containing the virus. The absence of any political and social infrastructure that places the needs of people rather than profit in command of society has only allowed this libertarian narrative to fester and grow within the United States. However, in struggle to contain the COVID-19 pandemic, the biggest enemy of the people is not partial lockdown orders, but capitalism itself.

在所有资本主义社会中，个人主义和原子化程度最高的美国发现很难遏制 COVID-19 的传播，这一点谁也不应该感到惊讶。最近几周，代表着帝国衰落最热情的管理者的白人至上主义和自由主义势力聚集在全国各州，抗议部分封锁令。在美国存在着一种非常危险的说法，将遏制病毒的部分封锁令定性为“医疗戒严”的一个例子，以及遏制病毒的一种完全无效的手段。由于没有任何政治和社会基础设施将人民的需要而不是利润置于社会的支配之下，这只会让这种自由主义的叙述在美国国内溃烂和发展。然而，在遏制 COVID-19 流行病的斗争中，人民最大的敌人不是部分封锁令，而是资本主义本身。

Lockdown measures are not what principally distinguish countries hit hard by COVID-19 from those that have fared better with the virus. Many of the charts making the comparison between lockdown and non-lockdown countries fail to include socialist societies. China, for example, saw the number of cases and deaths from COVID-19 decrease directly after the January 23rd lockdown of Wuhan began to take effect. Without a known treatment or vaccine available, the reduction of human contact and viral transmission represented a critical aspect of China’s successful response to the virus. However, it would be inaccurate to assert that lockdown alone flattened China’s COVID-19 curve. If the capitalist market had been in command of Chinese society like it is in the U.S. and West, then measures such as rapid testing, the redirection of production, the mobilization of neighborhood-wide food deliveries, and the use of AI technology to trace contacts and symptoms would have been far more difficult, if not impossible, to implement.

主要区别受 COVID-19 重创的国家和那些抗击病毒更为成功的国家的并不是封锁措施。许多用来比较被封锁国家和非被封锁国家的图表都没有包括社会主义社会。以中国为例，在 1 月 23 日武汉的封锁开始生效后，COVID-19 的病例和死亡人数直接下降。当时没有已知的治疗方法或疫苗。减少人类接触和病毒传播是中国成功应对病毒的一个重要方面。然而，仅仅封锁并没有使中国的 COVID-19 曲线变平。如果资本主义市场像在美国和西方那样控制着中国社会，那么，诸如快速检测、重新调整生产方向、动员整个社区的食品配送、使用人工智能技术追踪接触者和症状等措施，即使不是不可能，也要难得多。

Another socialist country, Vietnam, has managed to contain COVID-19 with far more success than the capitalist West. Vietnam had 268 reported cases of COVID-19 and zero deaths. According to The Nation, Vietnam's success cannot be credited to a singular response such as lockdown, but rather to a multifaceted policy of containment:

另一个社会主义国家越南成功遏制了 COVID-19，其成功率远远高于西方资本主义国家。越南报告的 COVID-19 病例有 268 例，死亡人数为零。越南认为，越南的成功不能归功于封锁等单一的应对措施，而应归功于多方面的遏制政策：

“Vietnam's approach was never based on mass testing, which has been the panicky and inadequate response of the United States and most other Western countries. And this was not because its resources were limited; it was a deliberate preemptive strategy to minimize infections. The gross number of tests—about 175,000 so far—is the wrong yardstick to use. What is significant is the ratio of tests to confirmed cases, and that ratio in Vietnam is almost five times greater than in any other country. Testing was followed by strict contact tracing (including secondary contacts) for anyone known to be infected, immediate isolation followed by quarantining, and the prompt creation of a real-time database and two mobile apps by which people could record their health status and symptoms. All this was backed up by the mass mobilization of the country's military, public security forces, the health care system, and public employees and an energetic and creative public education campaign that included TV cartoons, social media, and posters that draw on the traditional iconography of official propaganda but replaced heroic workers and peasants with heroic doctors in face masks.”

“越南的做法从来没有建立在大规模测试的基础上，这一直是美国 and 大多数其他西方国家的恐慌和不充分的反应。这并不是因为它的资源有限，而是一种故意先发制人的策略，以尽量减少感染。到目前为止，测试总数约为 17.5 万次，这是一个错误的衡量标准。重要的是，检测与确诊病例的比率，越南的比率几乎是任何其他国家的五倍。测试之后，对已知感染者进行严格的接触追踪（包括二次接触），立即隔离，然后隔离，并迅速创建实时数据库和两个移动应用程序，人们可以通过它们记录自己的健康状况和症状。所有这些都得到了国家军队、公安部队、医疗保健系统和公共雇员的大规模动员以及包括电视动画片、社交媒体在内的充满活力和创造性的公共教育运动的支持，招贴画借鉴了官方宣传的传统形象，但用戴着面具的英雄医生取代了英勇的工人和农民。”

<https://blackagendareport.com/peoples-war-against-covid-19-socialism-offers-victory-while-capitalism-spells-defeat>

American capitalists' Machiavellian use of COVID-19 to strengthen its fascist grip

美国资本家马基雅维利利用 COVID-19 加强法西斯控制

Fighting the Invisible Enemy: Imperial Fascism 2020, Not Covid-19, by Lauren Smith, 06 May 2020

与隐形敌人作战：帝国法西斯主义 2020，不是 Covid-19

What could possibly be a more effective way to seal borders, discourage protest, and position the United States into perfect alignment for WWII?

有什么可能是更有效的方法来封锁边界，阻止抗议，并使美国处于第三次世界大战的完美位置？

“At minimum, one could convincingly argue that the arrival of COVID-19 is fortuitous for certain economic sectors within the United States.”

“至少，可以令人信服地说，COVID-19 的到来对美国某些经济部门来说是偶然的。”

What could possibly be a better way to usher in a racist New World Order, that's hell-bent on population control, than an invisible enemy that gets nearly everyone to gladly jail themselves, fear physical contact with their family, friends, and neighbors, and that disproportionately kills the impoverished and African Americans?

有什么可能比一个隐形的敌人更能带来一个种族主义的新世界秩序呢？这个新世界秩序一心要控制人口，而这个无形的敌人让几乎所有人都乐于坐牢，害怕与家人、朋友和邻居的身体接触，并且不成比例地杀害贫穷的非裔美国人？

What could possibly be a better way to bail out Wall Street's failing repurchasing (repo) market, increase surveillance on a more granular level , and mandate an experimental global vaccination program that's eagerly awaited even though it's spearheaded by Bill Gates , the second richest man in the world, whose major concern is ending overpopulation in predominately non-white populations?

有什么可能是更好的办法来拯救华尔街失败的回购（repo）市场，在更细的层面上加强监管，并强制实施一项实验性的全球疫苗接种计划，尽管该计划是由全球第二富有的比尔·盖茨（Bill Gates）牵头的，但人们热切期待，谁最关心的是结束以非白人为主的人口过剩？

What could possibly provide wide enough cover to desensitize all to the massive troop buildup in Europe that encircles Russia, and the deployment of warships that threaten Venezuela, Iran, and China with invasion, and that ratchets-up its criminal economic sanctions against the most vulnerable people in these respective countries and 36 others under the hypocritical ruse that these measures are really to protect them?

什么能提供足够大的掩护

*让每个人都不在乎欧洲围绕俄罗斯的大规模军事集结，以及

*解释以入侵威胁委内瑞拉、伊朗和中国的军舰部署，以及

*增加对这些国家和其他 36 个国家最脆弱人民的刑事经济制裁，

-用荒谬的借口说这些措施真的是为了“保护”他们？

What could possibly be a more effective way to accomplish repatriation, seal borders, discourage protest, and position the United States into perfect alignment for WWII? If you've correctly answered imperial fascism 2020, you've won, they've lost, and the resistance takes a quantum leap forward. At minimum, one could convincingly argue that the arrival of COVID-19 is fortuitous for certain economic sectors within the United States. For even if COVID-19 is not perceived as a U.S. bioweapon, Washington is undeniably its pimp.

有什么可能是更有效的方式来完成遣返，封锁边境，阻止抗议，并使美国处于启动第三次世界大战的最佳位置？如果你正确地回答了帝国法西斯主义 2020，你赢了，他们输了，抵抗运动向前迈出了一大步。至少，可以令人信服地说，COVID-19 的到来对美国某些经济部门来说是偶然的。因为即使 COVID-19 不被视为美国的生物武器，华盛顿也不可否认是它的皮条客。

<https://blackagenda.com/fighting-invisible-enemy-imperial-fascism-2020-not-covid-19>

Oh yes, WWII might not be just another TV show for Americans. It's hard to say really, but global economic collapse would probably not be a "good thing" for anyone.

With virtually all global supply chains irreparably broken, most companies closing down, global unemployment at 90%, global starvation, yes even in the USA... It's not a pretty picture.

几乎所有的全球供应链都将无法修复地断裂，大多数公司将倒闭，全球失业率将达到 90%，全球将面临饥荒，是的，即使在美国.....这不是一个美好的景象。

President Donald Trump promised he'd make American Number 1 again – but he didn't say Number 1 in deaths. None the less, his popularity remains high (as of this writing).

美国总统特朗普（Donald Trump）承诺，他将再次使美国成为世界第一——但他没有说死亡人数是世界第一。同样，他的人气仍然很高（截至本文撰写时）。

What exactly are American capitalists so afraid of that they need to construct an enormous wall of lies to conceal the relatively simple truths of socialism and communism? What is scarier than what President Trump and his minions have already done to the US during the past three and a half years? Each person infected with COVID-19 has the potential to be the incubator for a new mutation. What could be scarier than that?

美国资本家到底害怕什么？在过去三年半的时间里，有什么比特朗普总统及其下属对美国所做的事情更可怕的呢？每个感染了 COVID-19 的人都有可能成为新突变的孵化器。还有什么比这更可怕的？

I suspect American ultra-rich late-stage capitalists are afraid of finding a morally superior system that functions vastly better at caring for the people – all the people, regardless of race, religion or wealth. And yet, they are willing to murder off a hundred thousand Americans to increase their ill-gotten wealth – wealth stolen from workers in the USA and the natural resources and blood of people in the “developing world.”

看来，美国的超富裕资本家害怕找到一种道德上优越的制度，该制度在照顾人民-所有人民，不论种族，宗教或财富方面，都具有更好的功能。然而，他们愿意杀害十万美国人，以增加他们不义之财-美国工人的财产以及“发展中世界”的人民的自然资源和财产被盗。

Also please see: Chinas Diplomacy (外交) - From: People's Daily Online

<http://en.people.cn/92824/92845/92870/6441512.html> (APPENDIX 2)

Vocabulary with English Definitions 带有英语定义的词汇

Marxism – A system of political and economic thought developed by Carl Marx and Friedrich Engels that theorizes the state (government) working with rich people exploit (use and abuse) the poor working people, and sooner or later a socialist and then communist system will evolve without different “classes” of people, e.g. rich and poor workers.

Socialism – A partial but not complete shared ownership of things – a step above capitalism, on the way to a more perfect system without rich and poor people.

Communism – A utopian theory or system of social organization based on the holding of all property in common; actual ownership being ascribed to the community as a whole.

Classic – best or perfect example or model of something.

Theory – a belief about how things work or why they work the way they do.

Final stage – The end state

Evolution – natural tendency towards more sophisticated improved better systems.

Socioeconomic relations – the extent to which people share social, economic and political power

Feudal state – families or small groups of families owning everything and poor people being similar to slaves. Feudal states usually war against each other a lot for power and land. Later in history they were replaced by nation/states with powerful central governments that collected taxes from the feudal lords.

Overthrow – defeat, win against the rulers, take over the state or country

Bourgeoisie – rich people

Proletariat - workers who are usually poor

Usher – show or guide the way

Epoch – period of time

Capitalism (noun) the socio-economic- political system where people work to earn money.

Capitalist – (noun) a person who is successful in a capitalist (adj.) system.

Socialist state – a state between capitalist and communist where things are partly owned by the individual and partly owned collectively or by the state.

Necessary precondition – something that must happen before something else happens.

Withers away – slowly dies naturally, like a flower withers as the winter comes.

Disappearance – to go away

Social class distinctions – the differences between the rich capitalists and the poor workers

Political power – influence of the state

Oppressing – using other people in a bad way

Reductionist – breaking things or processes down into smaller pieces to make them easier to understand

Presupposes – assuming something will happen before it happens.

Strong centralized state – powerful government

Wage – money earned from working

Manifesto – a written statement where a person or people state what they strongly believe.

Vocabulary with English Definitions and Chinese Translations 带有英语定义和中文翻译的词汇

Marxism (马克思) A system of political and economic thought developed by Carl Marx and Friedrich Engels that theorizes the state (government) working with rich people exploit (use and abuse) the poor working people, and sooner or later a socialist and then communist system will evolve without different “classes” of people, e.g. rich and poor workers.

Socialism (社会主义 shè huì zhǔ yì) – A partial but not complete shared ownership of things – a step above capitalism, on the way to a more perfect system without rich and poor people.

Communism (共产主义 gòng chǎn zhǔ yì) – A utopian theory or system of social organization based on the holding of all property in common, actual ownership being ascribed to the community as a whole.

Classic (经典) Best or perfect example or model of something.

Theory (理论 lǐ lùn) A belief about how things work or why they work the way they do.

Final stage (最后阶段) The end state

Evolution (进化) Natural tendency towards more sophisticated improved better systems.

Socioeconomic relations (社会经济关系) The quality of relationships in regards to class and money, the extent to which people share social, economic and political power

Feudal State (封建国家) Families or small groups of families owning everything and poor people being similar to slaves. Feudal states often war against each other for power and land.

Overthrow (推翻) Defeat, overturn, cast out, win against the rulers, take over the state or country

Bourgeoisie (资产阶级 Zīchǎn jiējí) Literally middle class, but often used to refer to the capitalist class, and/or rich people

Proletariat (无产阶级 wú chǎn jiē jí) Workers who are usually poor

Usher (迎来) Show or guide the way

Epoch (时代) Time period in history or a person's life

Capitalism (资本主义 zī běn zhǔ yì) Noun, the socio-economic- political system were people work to earn money.

Capitalist (资本主义)– When referring to a person is noun; when referring to the economic system it is usually an adjective; a person (noun) who is successful in a capitalist (adj.) system.

Socialist state (社会主义国家) An intermediate stage between capitalism and communism where things are partly owned by the individual and partly owned collectively or by the state.

Necessary precondition (必要的前提) Something that must happen before something else happens.

Withers away (枯萎) Slowly dies naturally, like a flower withers as the winter comes.

Disappearance (消失) To cease to be visible or go away

Social class distinctions (社会阶级的区别) The differences between the rich capitalists and the poor workers

Political power (政治权力) Strength of influence of the state/government

Oppress (压迫 yā pò) To oppress people means to treat them cruelly, or to prevent them from having the same opportunities, freedom, and benefits as others

Reductionist (还原论) breaking things or processes down into smaller pieces to make them easier to understand

Presupposes (预设) Assuming something will happen before it happens.

Strong centralized state (强大的中央集权的国家) Powerful government

Wage (工资) Money earned from working

Manifesto (宣言) A written statement where a person or people state what they strongly believe.

Discussion, Debate and/or Writing 讨论, 辩论和/或写作

What percentage of your earned money do you think should go just to help very poor people in: 你认为你挣的钱中有多少应该用于帮助非常贫困的人:

Your city 你的城市

Your country 贵国

The world 世界

Should rich people have to pay a higher percentage of their earned income than middle class people?

富人应该比中产阶级支付更高比例的收入吗？

How much more? 还要多少？

If a person earns the following income per year, what percentage of their income should go towards taxes? 如果一个人每年有以下收入，他们收入的多少应该用于纳税？

\$1,000,000 _____ % Tax 纳税

\$ 500,000 _____ % Tax

\$ 100,000 _____ % Tax

\$ 50,000 _____ % Tax

\$ 20,000 _____ % Tax

Should someone who earns less than \$20,000 a year have to pay taxes? 年收入低于 2 万美元的人应该纳税吗？

Yes/No

- Debates can be done “one on one” or with teams.

Question: Is the death penalty justifiable? If yes, under what circumstances is it justifiable?

Be sensitive – Regarding Religions and Politics 灵敏—关于宗教和政治

On one hand most educated people can discuss the topics of philosophies, religions and politics quite easily without getting upset. People like that are very fun to talk with. On the other hand, some people can be very sensitive and easily offended. If the reader should happen to be on a long plane, train or bus ride, these are sometimes not the best topics of discussion. It can be pretty difficult to guess what kind of person is sitting next to you. Some people may appear very relaxed and friendly, but turn into a rabid animal when discussing some topics. It's usually best to talk about neutral subjects with strangers, like the weather, sports, holidays, and so on. If the reader should get stuck discussing some stranger's very strong philosophical, religious or political viewpoints, it's usually best to appear mildly interested and then change the topic if and when it's possible.

一方面，大多数受过教育的人可以非常自由和愉快地讨论哲学、宗教和政治的话题。这样的人很有趣。另一方面，有些人可能非常敏感，容易被冒犯。如果读者碰巧坐了很长的飞机、火车或公共汽车，这些通常不是最好的讨论话题。很难猜到坐在你旁边的是什么样的人。有些人可能看起来很放松和友好，但在讨论一些话题时却变成了一种狂暴的动物。通常最好和陌生人谈论中性话题，比如天气、运动、假期等等。

如果读者应该和一个有很强的哲学、宗教或政治观点的人呆在一起很长时间，通常最好表现出温和的兴趣，然后在可能的时候改变话题。

Grammar Check – Prepositions 介词

Prepositions are short simple “funny little words” that show location and direction. They usually go before and sometimes after nouns. Some examples are:

介词是表示位置和方向的简单的“有趣的小词”。它们通常在名词之前，有时在名词之后。例如：

At, on, in, next to, under, towards, between, before, after, among... and so on.

在.....之上，之中，之下，之下，朝向，之间，之前，之后，之中.....等等。

It's easy to remember that they usually come before the noun because of the name: “pre-position.” The prefix “Pre” means “before.” Example: “After lunch...”

容易记住，介词通常会在名词之前出现，因为它的名字是“介词”。前缀“Pre”表示“之前”。示例：“午餐后.....”“After”是介词，位于名词“午餐”之前。

To summarize:

At: Located at a specific place or time. 地点：位于特定的地点或时间。

In: Located within boundaries 在：位于边界内

On: Located on the surface 开：位于表面

Next to: Besides, alongside, adjacent to 旁边：除了，旁边，旁边

Under: Beneath, below 下：在下面

To: Moving towards a specific place 至：移至特定地点

Into: Moving inside an enclosed space 进入：在封闭空间内移动

Onto: Moving towards a surface 上：移向表面

Before: Ahead of something in time or space 之前：在时间或空间上超前

After: following some event in time or space 之后：在时间或空间上发生某些事件或事物之后

British and Americans use some prepositions a bit differently.

For example, British people say: 英国人和美国人使用某些介词有所不同。例如，英国人说：“**At** the weekend,”

But Americans say 但是美国人说 “**On** the weekend.”

There are a few rules that can help English learners a lot in knowing when and how to use prepositions. 有一些规则可以帮助英语学习者了解何时以及如何使用介词。

1. Prepositions must have an object – that is they must refer to some thing or event.

For example: “...at **home**.” Home is the object. “...to the **store**.” Store is the object.

介词必须有一个对象—即它们必须引用某些事物或事件

例如：“.....在家”。家是对象。“...到商店。”商店是对象。

2. When using a pronoun after a preposition, it should be in object form.

Examples:

Let's go after **them**. ("them" is the object pronoun for "they.")

She always finishes before **him**. ("him" is the object pronoun of "he.")

They got there before us. ("us" is the object pronoun of "we.")

And so on.

3. There are also these funny little things called "complex prepositions."

For examples: "according to," "but for," "in spite of," "on account of")

Like other pronouns they usually come before the object in a sentence.

4. Keep in mind: Prepositions are never followed by a verb.

Preposition Quiz 介词测验

1. We'll wait _____ 9:00 am then we'll start the meeting.
a. until b. from c. on
2. He'll be ready to leave ____ 20 minutes.
a. on b. with c. in
3. She is going ____ the store.
a. at b. to c. on
4. Mary is named _____ her mother
a. on b. under c. after
5. The naughty child responded to his mother's request ____ throwing a tantrum.
a. by b. from c. with
6. We'll meet you _____ the fountain ____ 6:30 pm.
a. on/on b. by/at c. under/next to
7. The lady _____ New York was very knowledgeable.
a. from b. of c. besides
8. It's been raining _____ yesterday.
a. to b. of c. since
9. I'll see you ____ the park this afternoon
a. on b. of c. at
10. He lives _____ Maple Street.
a. of b. on c. in

Chapter 6 – Conflict Resolution 冲突的解决

An overview of conflict resolution strategies 冲突解决策略概述

Questions 问题

What is a conflict? 什么是冲突?

Why do people have conflicts? 为什么人们会有冲突?

What are some different ways conflicts can be resolved?

有哪些不同的方法可以解决冲突?

Does there always have to be a winner and a loser in conflicts?

在冲突中总有赢家和输家吗?

1. Sharing Experiences 分享经验

Please write, or tell a partner in class about one experience you've had with one conflict in your personal life.

请写信或告诉班级同伴有关您个人生活中一次冲突的经历。

a. Who was involved?

谁参与其中?

b. What was it about (the reason, the cause of the conflict)?

它是关于什么的(原因,冲突原因)?

c. Was it resolved and how?

解决了吗?如何解决?

d. After the conflict were things between the conflicting people better, the same or worse?

冲突之后,冲突的人们之间的状况是好还是坏?

e. Can you at this time think of a better strategy for resolving that conflict?

您现在可以考虑解决此冲突的更好策略吗?

2. Confucian Conflict Resolution Strategies 儒家冲突解决策略

The Confucian conflict resolution paradigm is based on learning moral virtue.

儒家的冲突解决范例是基于学习道德美德的。

Chief among these are 其中主要是:

Forgiveness 恕 Shù

Benevolence/humaneness 仁 Rén

Harmony (union, together, peace & with) 和 Hé

Propriety (etiquette / courtesy / gift / rite / ceremony) 礼 Lǐ

Reciprocity (empathy, “consideration of others” or “do to others as you would have others do to you”) 恕 Shù as in the phrase 己所不欲, 勿施於人 Jǐ suǒ bù yù, wù shī yú rén - For explanation see for example:

<https://core.ac.uk/download/pdf/41121953.pdf>

<https://dro.deakin.edu.au/eserv/DU:30045835/pan-aconfucian-2012.pdf>

Like many sage philosophers of his time Confucius was an advisor to powerful feudal lords. He was an advocate of peaceful solutions to conflict and a strategist. At the age of 55 (13th year of Lord Dingong) he found it wise to set an example. Consequently, he chose self-exile over making some moral compromises he preferred to not make. Thus, he taught by example: In some cases, avoidance is better than compromise. Both, he appeared to believe were better than conflict (warfare). In this particular case, avoidance was the best solution to avoid conflict.

孔子和他那个时代的许多圣哲一样，是强大的封建领主的顾问。他是和平解决冲突的倡导者和战略家。他 55 岁（定公十三年）时就发现以身作则是明智之举。因此，他选择自我放逐，而不是做出一些他不愿做出的道德妥协。因此，他以身作则：在某些情况下，回避胜于妥协。他似乎认为，两者都比暴力冲突（战争）好。在这种情况下，回避是最好的解决办法。

The following years from 497 to 484 BC found Confucius roaming from one state to another with his disciples, getting rejected and frustrated everywhere for his old-fashioned, unpopular politics.

After 14 years of lobbying among the states Confucius was reckoned back by his country. He was already 68. Though he was highly respected at home he was kept out of power. In 16th year of Lord Aigong, when he was 73, Confucius got ill and died before long.

从公元前 497 年到公元前 484 年，孔子和他的弟子们从一个国家游荡到另一个国家，因为他老套的、不受欢迎的政治而到处遭到拒绝和挫折。

经过 14 年的游说，孔子被国家邀请回国。他已经 68 岁了。尽管他在家里很受尊敬，但却被排除在权力之外。爱公十六年，73 岁时，孔子病了，不久就死了。

<https://www.cctv.com/lm/176/71/88863.html>

Though some might consider his choice of avoidance a sign of weakness, it is far more likely it was a symbol of strength. He chose the harder road for himself, his family and his followers to set an example for the powerful lords that even difficult paths are better than violence and other moral compromises.

尽管有些人可能认为他的回避选择是软弱的迹象，但它更有可能是力量的象征。他为自己，他的家人和追随者选择了一条更艰难的道路，为强大的君主树立了榜样，即使艰难的道路也比暴力和其他道德妥协更好。

Confucius left behind him a moral philosophy that has not only endured 2,500 years, but has served as a shining model of civilized behavior guiding humankind peacefully through many events that could have been far worse. 孔子留下了一种道德哲学，这种哲学不仅忍受了 2500 年的历史，而且还成为文明行为的光辉典范，它通过许多本来可以更糟的事件和平地指导人类。

3. Five Most Common Conflict Resolution Strategies 五种最常见的冲突解决策略

Conflicts can occur in all aspects of life. The following list of conflict resolution strategies are the most commonly accepted categories used to resolve conflict. Being from a large family I had to engage in conflict resolution many times.

Having traveled a lot from a young age I had to engage in conflict resolution many times. Thus, I know well there is not always one best strategy for all situations.

生活的各个方面都可能发生冲突。以下冲突解决策略列表是解决冲突最常用的类别。来自一个大家庭，我不得不多次参与解决冲突的工作。

从小旅行很多，我不得不多次参与解决冲突的工作。因此，我很清楚，并非总是有一种针对所有情况的最佳策略。

I first learned about the science of conflict resolution in an online class:

我首先在在线课程中了解了解决冲突的科学：

Conflict Resolution Skills – University of California, Irvine via Coursera

冲突解决技能-加州大学欧文分校

Certificate: <https://www.coursera.org/account/accomplishments/verify/8LRTRMDGW83B>

The instructor of that class explained conflict resolution in the context of business management. None-the-less, these conflict resolution strategies can be used in resolving many other kinds of conflicts as well.

那个班的老师在商业管理的背景下解释了解决冲突的方法。同样，这些冲突解决策略也可以用于解决许多其他类型的冲突。

It is very useful to know and be able to recognize these five strategies. Most people have a habit of using one or two of them. We should all know all five in order to avoid reflexively relying on one or two of them.

了解和认识这五种策略是非常有用的。大多数人都有使用其中一个或两个的习惯。我们都应该知道所有的五个，以避免反身依赖其中的一个或两个。

There is, in most cases, one “best” strategy: Collaborating (problem solving). Unfortunately that is not always possible. I like to believe however, that with enough creativity, it is usually possible, but... some individuals simply are not cooperative and it doesn't always work. Some people always insist on

In all cases, all five of the following should be considered, before the optimal solution is decided upon. In some extreme cases however, Confucius' solution is best: “leave.”

1. **Competing/confronting/conflict** – Competition can be win-win, win-lose and in some cases a lose/lose scenario. In sports for example, competing is usually a win/lose scenario, although both athletes benefit from the competition. The winner earns recognition and pride, the loser learns his or her weaknesses and how to improve. That is in most respects, a win/win scenario.

竞争/对抗/冲突-竞争可以是：“双赢”“输赢”或“双输”情景。例如，在体育运动中，尽管两名运动员都从比赛中受益，但比赛通常是一种双赢的局面。胜利者赢得认可和自豪，失败者学会自己的弱点和如何改进。在大多数情况下，这是一个双赢的局面。

In business competition is usually a win/lose competition. In wars it can be “win/lose,” or “lose/lose.” It can be argued that both sides lose in a war, even though one side loses more.

商业竞争通常是“赢/输”竞争。在战争中“赢/输”或“失去/失去。”可以说，双方在战争中都输了，尽管一方输得更多。

Some kinds of competitions are good, some are not. War is certainly the worst of all. On one hand competition can make both parties stronger however, for every winner a loser is simultaneously created. That’s usually not so fun, though it may be a valuable learning experience. From a management point of view some competition between workers can increase performance, however if taken to extreme levels workers will sabotage each other to win. This will be harmful to the workers and disrupt production. Like all things, there must be some balance in an approach to competition.

有些比赛是好的，有些则不是。战争当然是最糟糕的。一方面，竞争可以使双方更加强大，但对于每一个胜利者来说，一个失败者是同时产生的。这通常不那么有趣，尽管这可能是一个宝贵的学习经验。从管理的角度来看，员工之间的一些竞争可以提高绩效，但如果将其推向极端，员工之间就会互相破坏，以取得胜利。这将对工人有害，扰乱生产。像所有的事情一样，在对待竞争的方法上必须有某种平衡。

2. **Accommodating** is cooperative, but it’s also giving the other person exactly what they want. It has the drawback of reinforcing bullies who often demand more and more until the accommodator/victim is a slave or dead. In my opinion accommodation is the second worst conflict resolution strategy (with war being the worst). Today the bully wants my lunch money. If I give it to him, tomorrow he will want my lunch money and my jacket. Soon, I will be a slave of the bully.

在冲突中迁就欺负者是合作的，但也会强化欺负者。恃强凌弱者则要求越来越多，直到受害者成为奴隶或死亡。以我的经验，容忍欺负是第二差的冲突解决策略（战争是最差的）。今天恶霸要我的午餐钱。如果我给他，明天他就要我的午餐钱和夹克。很快，我就会成为恶霸的奴隶。

3. **Avoidance** - hiding, postponing and running from conflicts and problems is sometimes the best strategy, but not usually. Usually people eventually run out of places to hide and they’ve earned a reputation for being weak and cowardly. This is usually not a good negotiating position. On the other hand, some problems and people will eventually just go away if one ignores them long enough. Thus, there are potential advantages and disadvantages to this strategy depending on the situation.

避免-隐藏、推迟和逃避冲突和问题有时是最好的策略，但通常不是。通常人们最终会跑出藏身之地，他们以软弱和懦弱而闻名。这通常不是一个好的谈判立场。另一方面，一些问题和人们最终会离开，如果一个人忽视他们足够长的时间。因此，根据情况，这一战略有潜在的优势和劣势。

In regards to a gang of school yard bullies running away may seem like the best strategy. On some IQ tests there is (or was) a question about this. The “correct” answer is: “Tell your teacher.” But in my experience, this didn’t work. Sooner or later the gang will get you. The subsequent beating will be worse. Why? They will be doubly angry because you got them in some small trouble. In my experience it is better to fight even if you know you will lose. Why? You may be able to hurt enough of them to earn some respect. And sometimes, other children on the playground will take note of this and in some cases can put pressure on the gang to leave you alone. When a single individual has had to fight gangs enough times, he or she will learn strategies that can result in victory, even when heavily outnumbered. This is my personal experience in different schools in different countries. Thus, sometimes confrontation (fighting) is better than avoidance, and accommodating bullies even if you know you will lose that fight, at least the first time.

对于一帮校园恶霸来说，逃跑似乎是最好的策略。在一些智商测试中有一个问题。“正确的”答案是：“告诉你的老师。”但根据我的经验，这是行不通的。这帮人迟早会抓到你的。随后的殴打会更严重。为什么？他们会加倍生气，因为你给他们带来了一些小麻烦。以我的经验，即使你知道你会输，也最好还是战斗。为什么？你可能会伤害他们足够赢得尊重。有时，操场上的其他孩子也会注意到这一点，在某些情况下，他们会给帮派施加压力，让他们离开你。自由并不总是自由的。有时人们不得不为自由而战。当一个人与帮派斗争的次数足够多时，他或她将学习能够导致胜利的策略，即使在人数严重不足的情况下。这是我在不同国家不同学校的亲身经历。因此，有时候对抗（战斗）比逃避要好，即使你知道你会输掉那场战斗，至少是第一次。

Sometimes it is possible to avoid conflicts with bullies by forming a “minority coalition.” Gangs of bullies are usually hated by many people. Unfortunately, bullies are usually cowards and choose weak people (and/or new students, e.g. foreigners) for victims. Thus, one may not find many people among the “minority” that is capable of teaching bullies the lessons they need. But, in some cases building a minority coalition does work. It’s usually worth a try.

有时可以通过组成一个“少数派联盟”来避免与恶霸发生冲突。恶霸团伙通常被许多人憎恨。不幸的是，欺负者通常是懦夫，他们选择弱者（和/或新生，如外国人）作为受害者。因此，人们可能不会发现很多人有能力教恶霸他们需要学习的东西。但是，在某些情况下，建立一个少数派联盟确实有效。通常值得一试。

In regards to psychological “inner conflicts” (problems), avoidance is usually the worst strategy. These kinds of problems tend to get worse over time. I worked as a counselor for many years. There are fortunately many ways to resolve most psychological problems if the person is able to rationally think about them. Sometimes some counselors can help. Some counselors however can make things worse. (See Chapter 7: Counseling anyone?)

对于心理上的“内部冲突”（问题），回避通常是最糟糕的策略。随着时间的推移，这些问题往往会变得更糟。我做了很多年的顾问。幸运的是，如果一个人能够理性地思考，那么有很多方法可以解决大多数心理问题。有时候一些顾问可以帮忙。然而，一些顾问会让事情变得更糟。（见第7章：咨询任何人？）

4. Collaborating (problem solving) is an assertive and cooperative strategy for dealing with conflict and usually creates a win-win scenario. In most cases collaborating is the best strategy. People who work together usually both benefit.

协作（解决问题）是一种处理冲突的果断合作策略，通常会创造双赢的局面。在大多数情况下，协作是最好的策略。一起工作的人通常都会从中受益。

Unfortunately collaborating is not always possible. In business for example, one's competitors are not likely to collaborate ("join forces") with some new competition. In most cases the established businesses will want to crush and destroy new competition. Though there are national and international laws prohibiting unfair business practices, they are very common and because of the very high level of corruption these days, most laws are not enforced.

不幸的是，合作并不总是可能的。例如，在商业领域，竞争对手不太可能与一些新的竞争对手合作（“联手”）。在大多数情况下，老牌企业会想粉碎和摧毁新的竞争。尽管有国家和国际法律禁止不公平的商业行为，但这些法律非常普遍，而且由于目前腐败程度很高，大多数法律都没有得到执行。

5. **Compromising** works sometimes. Compromising usually means each party gets 50% of what they want. In some cases, it's a good proactive strategy. In other cases, it can involve giving a bully half of something they don't deserve. Thus, compromising can be good or bad depending on the circumstances. Compromising can be a "slippery slope." Once a person starts compromising, where does he or she stop?

Soon, all is lost. But, sometimes it's the best one can get and when there are no other alternatives, one has to accept compromise. Confucius chose at the age of 55 he wasn't going to compromise and the rest is history. Two hundred years after Confucius a Greek philosopher named Zeno of Citium started a philosophy known as Stoicism. Confucius might have liked him as both had reverence for virtue and enduring patiently.

有时妥协是有效的。妥协通常意味着每一方都能得到他们想要的 50%。在某些情况下，这是一个很好的主动策略。在其他情况下，这可能涉及给一个恶霸一半的东西，他们不值得。因此，妥协可能是好的，也可能是坏的，这取决于具体情况。妥协可能会滑向奴役。一旦一个人开始妥协，他或她会停在哪里？

很快，一切都失去了。但是，有时候这是最好的选择，当没有其他选择的时候，你必须接受妥协。孔子在 55 岁的时候选择了不妥协，其余的都是历史。孔子两百年后，一位名叫齐诺的希腊哲学家创立了一种叫做斯多葛主义的哲学。孔子可能喜欢他，因为他既尊重美德，又耐心忍耐。

Most of us use all of these strategies at one time or another. But it's also true that most of us have a pretty strong habit to rely on only one or two strategies more than the others. If we reflexively use collaborating, that's great!

It means we are solution oriented and cooperative. Unfortunately, this strategy isn't always possible, especially in cases where one party has vastly more power than the other. In those cases, the super-powerful party will usually just refuse to collaborate.

我们大多数人都会在某一个时候使用所有这些策略。但事实上，我们大多数人都有一个很强的习惯，只依赖一个或两个策略多于其他策略。如果我们一贯使用协作太好了！

这意味着我们喜欢参与解决问题和合作的细节。不幸的是，这种策略并不总是可行的，尤其是在一方拥有比另一方多得多的权力的情况下。在这种情况下，超级强权政党通常会拒绝合作。

Conflict Management Styles Quiz 冲突管理风格测验

For students in a classroom the "Conflict Management Styles Quiz" is a good (free) way to find out what strategies we usually use.

对于课堂上的学生来说，“冲突管理风格测验”是一个很好的（免费的）方法来找出我们通常使用的策略。

Take: Conflict Management Styles Quiz Source: Reginald (Reg) Adkins, PhD, Elemental Truths. It can be downloaded from:

采取：冲突管理风格测验来源：雷金纳德（Reg）阿德金斯，博士，基本真理。可从以下网址下载：

<https://facultyombuds.ncsu.edu/files/2015/11/Conflict-management-styles-quiz.pdf>

After taking this Quiz students can analyze their own results. Which of the five strategies did they score highest? Second? Third? Fourth? Fifth? Do they agree with the results? Why or why not? Can they give examples from their lives where they've used the wrong strategy?

参加完这个测验后，学生们可以分析他们自己的结果。他们在五种策略中哪一种得分最高？第二个？第三个？第四个？第五个？他们同意结果吗？为什么或者为什么不？他们能举出他们生活中使用错误策略的例子吗？

What are pros and cons of each of the five strategies? 五种策略各有哪些利弊？

	Pros	Cons
Collaborating		
Competing		
Avoiding		
Accommodating		
Compromising		

4. Positive and Negative Effects of Conflict 冲突的正面和负面影响

First, in small groups or pairs, try to make a list of what you think are the positive and negative effects of conflicts.

Then, research them on the internet. The following is one example.

首先，在小组或小组中，试着列出你认为冲突的积极和消极影响。

然后，在互联网上进行研究。下面是一个例子。

Read: Conflict's Positive and Negative Aspects 解读：冲突的积极和消极方面

<https://viaconflict.wordpress.com/2014/02/16/conflicts-positive-and-negative-aspects>

Writer's Note: To the rather short list of negative consequences of conflict (on the above link) I'd add that conflict can:

编者按：在冲突的负面后果的简短列表中（在上面的链接上），我要补充一点，冲突可以：

Start feuds that can last generations,
Kill a lot of people
Destroy entire families, villages, towns, cities and nations - literally erase them from the earth.

开始可以持续几代人的仇恨，
杀死很多人
摧毁整个家庭，村庄，城镇，城市和国家-从字面上将它们从地球上抹去。

Thinking Question 思考问题

What are some situations when some of the conflict resolution strategies might not work?

当某些冲突解决策略可能不起作用时，会出现什么情况？

5. Conflict Resolution in the EFL Classroom EFL 课堂中的冲突解决

The United States Institute of Peace has developed this guide on conflict resolution as a resource for students and educators to help students develop the skills necessary to negotiate the world and to be effective, responsible individuals.

美国和平研究所制定了这一冲突解决指南，作为学生和教育工作者的一种资源，帮助学生发展必要的技能，以便与世界谈判，成为有效和负责的个人。

The United States Institute of Peace is an independent, nonpartisan federal institution created by Congress to promote the prevention, management, and peaceful resolution of international conflicts.

美国和平研究所是由国会建立的独立，无党派的联邦机构，旨在促进预防，管理和和平解决国际冲突。

<http://teachesl.pbworks.com/f/Conflict+resolution+in+ESL+classroom+copy.pdf>

(And yes, it is ironic that the US Federal government also known as earth's "War-Monger in Chief of the 20th and 21st Centuries" actually produced a pretty good handbook on Conflict Resolution, but life is full of irony.)

(是的，具有讽刺意味的是，美国联邦政府也被称为地球的“20世纪和21世纪的首席战争贩子”，实际上编写了关于冲突解决的相当不错的手册，但生活充满讽刺意味。)

6. Conflict Resolution Strategies Vocabulary with Chinese Translations 中文翻译中的冲突解决策略词汇

FIVE STRATEGIES PEOPLE USE TO DEAL WITH CONFLICT:

Strategy -策略 [cè lüè] way of doing something – plan - approach

Avoidance (noun) Avoid (verb) – hide from, run away from a problem, 回避 huí bì = Deny (v.) there is a problem. (denial - noun.)

Confrontation (= competing) (noun) Confront (verb) – attack back, fight 对抗 duì kàng

Accommodation (noun) Accommodate (verb) 姑息 gū xī = Give them what they want. = Appeasement 姑息 gū xī = Yielding 屈服 Qū fu = Surrender 投降 tóu xiáng

Compromise (Noun and verb) 妥协 tuǒ xié = A 50/50 solution - you get half, I get half

Collaboration (Problem Solving) 解决问题 jiějué wèntí – figure out solutions to the problem behind the problem. (Figure out solutions: 找出解决方案)

Conflict Resolution Vocabulary Quiz 冲突解决词汇测验

Fill in the blank with the conflict resolution strategy (above) being used in the situations below.

1. _____ You start yelling (大喊) at your younger sister for always following (跟随) you around. You slam the door in her face. (Follow you around everywhere: 到处跟着你) (slam the door 摔门)
2. _____ You always know the answers in your history class. Some of your friends make fun of (取笑) you for that, so you've decided not to answer questions any more.
3. _____ Your mother is angry because you came home 2 hours after your curfew (宵禁). You don't get mad; instead you ask if you can talk about this tomorrow because you're tired. She agrees to do this.
4. _____ Your parents are worried about your grade in math. You don't understand the math homework, but your parents think it's because you are not spending enough time doing your homework. You ask your father if he can help you once a week for an hour on your math homework. He agrees.
5. _____ Two students are talking in the back of the class about someone you know but don't know very well. You know what they are saying is untrue but you don't say anything to them.
6. _____ You want your parents to change your curfew from 10:00 pm to midnight (12:00) on Saturday nights, but after talking with them about this, you agree on 11:00 pm.

What Would You Do? 你会怎么做?

Directions: Write the letter of the response that most closely matches what you would do in each situation.

YOUR PROBABLE RESPONSE

- A. Try to convince someone of your point or stand up for what you believe.
- B. Walk away from the situation, ignore the situation, or deny that there is a problem.
- C. Do what others want even if you disagree or if it's not what you want. (Accommodation)
- D. Agree to a 50/50 solution. (Compromise)
- E. Find a solution that makes everyone happy. (Problem solving)

Situation 情况

- ____ 1. Your mother wants you to help her clean the house on Saturday night and you want to go out with your friends.
- ____ 2. Your best friend always borrows your things and never gives them back.

___ 3. Someone is saying bad things about your friend. You're angry because you know what they are saying isn't true.

___ 4. You think your teacher has been unfair in grading your test. You think your grade should be higher.

___ 5. Your friend always wants to copy your homework and it bothers you because it takes you a very long time to do your assignments.

___ 6. Your friends want to skip school and you don't

Small Group Discussion - What Would You Do? 小组讨论-您会怎么做?

Try to problem solve the following situations

Hint: Collaborating (Problem Solving) usually works best when it's an option.

Note: When is problem solving not an option? Usually when one of the conflicting parties has such overwhelming power that it doesn't want to "problem solve." However, sometimes creative solutions can be found.

Scenarios 情境

1. Your little sister is always following you around and it's making you crazy. How can you solve this problem?
2. Your friend always copies your test answers during tests and you're not comfortable with this. But, you're afraid to tell him or her to stop.
3. Your mother is mad because you came home 2 hours after your curfew.
4. You are a chicken farmer. Every week the uneducated farmer near your farm steals two of your chickens because his chickens are always sick and die. They die because he doesn't feed them right.
5. Every day when you're in school pink monkeys from mars go into your bedroom and steal your underwear.

Examples From Your Own Life 自己生活中的例子

Please describe one or two examples from your own life when you've used the wrong conflict resolution strategy and it made the conflict worse instead of better:

- a. Avoidance – hide from, run away from a problem 回避 huí bì

Can you think of a better way to solve this problem (解决问题) now?

- b. Confrontation – compete, attack back, fight 对抗 duì kàng

Can you think of a better way to solve this problem (解决问题) now?

- c. Accommodation 姑息 gū xī = Give them what they want. = Appeasement 姑息 gū xī =
Yielding 屈服 Qū fu = Surrender 投降 tóu xiáng

Can you think of a better way to solve this problem (解决问题) now?

- d. Compromise 妥协 tuǒ xié = A 50/50 solution - you get half, I get half

Can you think of a better way to solve this problem (解决问题) now?

Please give an example from your life when you think you've done a good job of solving a problem.

- e. Collaborating (Problem Solving) 解决问题 jiějué wèntí – figuring out solutions to the problem behind the problem.

Role Plays 角色扮演

Each pair of students will be asked to choose one of the above scenarios for a role play. Each role play will have two parts:

将要求每对学生选择上述场景中的一个进行角色扮演。每个角色扮演都包含两个部分：

1. Write a short 2 - 3-minute role-play with the unsatisfactory ending based on one of the above.

根据上述情况之一，写短短的 2-3 分钟角色扮演，结局不理想。

2. Re-write the ending with a better conflict resolution strategy. In most cases (but maybe not all) it will involve problem solving rather than avoidance, confrontation, compromise or accommodation. This second part can be just one minute as it involves just re-writing the ending.

用更好的冲突解决策略重写结尾。在大多数情况下（但可能不是全部），这将涉及解决问题，而不是避免，对抗，妥协或适应。第二部分可能只是一分钟，因为它涉及重新编写结尾。

Opinion 意见

There are now five or so superpowers in the world: USA, China, Russia, Japan, Germany, India. Can you try to specify which of the five conflict resolution strategies described in this chapter each of those countries usually uses these days and why?

现在世界上大约有五个超级大国：美国，中国，俄罗斯，日本，德国，印度。您能否尝试指定本章所述的五种冲突解决策略中的哪些策略，这些国家/地区最近通常使用这些策略，为什么？

USA:

China:

Japan:

Germany:

India:

Hint: The following pie chart may give some indication as to why one or more of the super-powers may prefer confrontation to other strategies:

提示：下面的饼图可以说明为什么一个或多个超级大国可能比其他策略更喜欢对抗：

Hint: Research arms export by country.

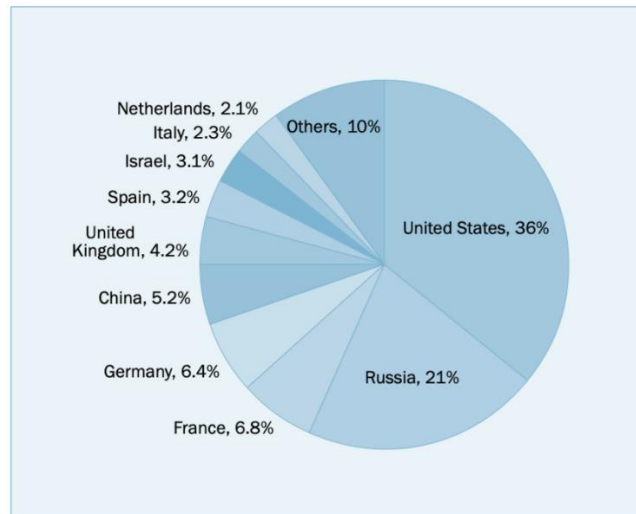


Figure 2. Global share of major arms exports by the 10 largest exporters, 2014–18

Source: SIPRI Arms Transfers Database, Mar. 2019.

Research Project 研究项目

Each student or pair of students will research a different country looking for primary and secondary domestic and international conflict resolution strategies used by that country. Students will write short essays with three references presenting their findings.

The USA has for example tried problem solving with racism, e.g. the “bussing program” under President Johnson, and Affirmative Action. Have these problem-solving strategies been successful? Why or why not?

每个学生或一对学生将研究一个不同的国家，以寻找该国家使用的主要和次要的国内和国际冲突解决策略。学生将撰写短文，其中三篇参考文献介绍了他们的发现。

例如，美国曾尝试通过种族主义解决问题，例如约翰逊（Johnson）总统领导下的“公车计划”和平权行动。这些解决问题的策略是否成功？为什么或者为什么不？

Additional Writing Practice 附加写作练习

Students can be encouraged to write on the subject of conflict resolution strategies using different text types, e.g. essay, feature article, speech, script, instructions and/or blog.

可以鼓励学生写关于解决冲突策略的文章

使用不同的文字类型，例如 文章，专题文章，演讲，脚本，说明和/或博客。

Chapter 7 – Counseling Anyone? 咨询心理学

The ABCs of professional counseling skills so the EFL student can help other people solve their own problems in a safe way.

Everybody needs a counselor sometimes

咨询心理学 (Counseling Psychology)

Introduction 介绍

Do you have problems? 你有麻烦吗? (麻烦 Máfán, trouble, problem, burden)

If you say “No” you are a liar. If you say “yes” you’re a “cry baby” (whining like a baby). What’s a good answer? “Sometimes everybody has problems.” Or maybe: “Nothing I can’t deal with.” That’s a real “tough guy” answer.

如果你说“不”，你就是个骗子。如果你说“是”，你就是一个“哭泣的婴儿”。什么是一个好的答案？“有时候每个人都有麻烦。”或者：“没什么我不能处理的。”这是一个真正的“硬汉”回答。但是，让我们诚实一点！你所有的关系都完美吗？你的健康和工作完美吗？你生活中的一切真的很完美吗

Whatever the answer, today I’m going to give you more problems!

不管答案是什么，今天我都会给你带来更严重的困难！

When I was young a wise old woman told me: “There are no problems, only challenges.”

当我年轻的时候，一位聪明的老妇人告诉我：“没有麻烦，只有挑战。”

What does that mean? It’s a way of redefining “problems” in a positive way.

那是什么意思？这是一种以积极的方式重新定义“问题”的方法。”

Challenges teach us things and increase our ability to analyze complicated situations and find solutions.

挑战教会了我们很多东西，提高了我们分析复杂情况和找到解决问题的能力。

Don’t worry! The problems I give you are fake (hopefully, unless pink monkeys from Mars really are stealing your underwear)!

别担心！我给你的问题是假的（希望，除非火星上的粉红猴子真的在偷你的内衣）！

FYI: The person asking the questions is the “**Counselor.**” The person with the “problem” is called “the **client.**”

仅供参考：提出问题的人是“顾问”。有“问题”的人被称为“客户”

Below are seven short questions that together can help solve most problems, yes, even in the real world.

下面是七个简短的问题，可以一起帮助解决大多数问题，是的，即使在现实世界。

Counselor Questions 辅导员问题

1. How can I help you? (OR) What can I do for you? (OR) *What seems to be the matter?*
我能帮你什么忙吗？（或）我能为您做些什么？（或者）怎么了？
2. How do you feel about that? 你对这件事有什么感想？
3. Is this the first-time something like this has happened to you? [or, “When did it start?”]
这是您第一次发生这种情况吗？ [或者, “什么时候开始的?”]
4. What do you think you should do? 您认为应该怎么办？
5. Do you have any other ideas? 你还有其他建议吗？
6. Do you have friends or family you can talk to? (If “no” counselor says, “*you can always come and talk with me.*”)
您有可以与之交谈的朋友或家人吗？（如果服务对象说“不”，顾问会说：“您可以随时与我交谈。”）
7. What is the best thing for you to do now? 你现在最好做什么？

Counselor Questions in Detail 辅导员详细问题

1. **How can I help you? (OR) What can I do for you? (OR) *What seems to be the matter? You’ve got to ask this question gently so the person you’re helping feels like you care.*** Watch the person you are counseling and their body language. A lot of times people don’t tell you their real problem at the beginning of the client/counselor relationship because of fear or embarrassment. Is their body language open, or closed? A person with closed body language might have their arms and legs crossed, and may not be telling you the real problem at the beginning. Sometimes you have dig a little deeper to find out what’s really bothering the person. The best counselors pay equal attention to body language, emotion and the content of the words. If all three are in agreement, the person is telling the truth. If they are different, the client is not telling the complete story. Professional counselors say: “You have to follow the emotions like following river downhill until you get to the ocean.”

我能帮你什么忙吗？（或）我能为您做些什么？（或者）怎么了？你必须温和地问这个问题，这样你帮助的人会觉得你在乎他。注意你正在咨询的人和他们的肢体语言。很多时候，在客户/顾问关系开始时，人们不会告诉你他们真正的问题，因为害怕或尴尬。他们的肢体语言是开放的还是封闭的？一个肢体语言封闭的人可能手脚交叉，一开始可能不会告诉你真正的问题。有时候你会更深入一点，找出真正困扰这个人的是什么。最好的辅导员对肢体语言、情感和语言内容都给予同等的关注。如果三人都同意，那人说的是实话。如果他们是不同的，客户没有讲完整的故事。专业顾问说：“你必须跟着情绪走，就像顺着河流下山，直到你到达大海。”

2. How do you feel about that?

Usually the client will say something like: sad, angry, afraid, embarrassed...

MINI-PRACTICE EXERCISE

How many feelings can you name?

Many or most counselors believe many or most people sometimes think too much about non-relevant issues, have difficulty identifying what their real issues are, and don't pay enough attention to physical and emotional health and happiness.

许多或大多数咨询师认为，许多或大多数人有时会对不相关的问题想得太多，难以确定他们真正的问题是什么，对身体和情感健康和幸福没有足够的关注。

3. Is this the first-time something like this has happened to you? [or, "When did it start?"]

Don't ask this question if a loved one is dying or they have a fatal disease like HIV/AIDS or terminal cancer. In those cases, this question will sound really insensitive and stupid. Instead just go to the next question. 这是你第一次遇到这样的事吗？[或者，“什么时候开始的？”]不要问这个问题，如果客户的爱人正在死亡，或者他们患有艾滋病毒/艾滋病或晚期癌症等致命疾病。在这种情况下，这个问题听起来真的很迟钝和愚蠢。而是直接问下一个问题。

4. What do you think you should do?

This question makes the point that people have their own best answers. The counselor gently pulls the solutions from the client, (if necessary with "leading questions"). It is very important that the client finds his or her own solutions because only the client knows his or her own value system. The solution must fit within the value system of the client or huge new problems can emerge.

Advice can go terribly wrong, **so never give advice!** That's my advice! Seriously.

A "leading question" might be like: Would you feel comfortable doing XXX? Or, have you thought of trying XXX? Only use "leading questions" if the client has no idea what to do.

你认为你应该怎么做？这个问题表明人们有自己最好的答案。咨询师轻轻地从客户那里获取解决方案（如有必要，用“引导性问题”）。客户找到自己的解决方案非常重要，因为只有客户知道他们的价值体系。解决方案必须符合客户的价值体系，否则会出现新的巨大问题。

忠告可能会大错特错，所以千万不要给忠告！这是我的建议！说真的。

一个“首要问题”可能是这样的：你觉得做 XXX 舒服吗？或者，你有没有想过试试 XXX？只有当客户不知道该怎么做事时，才使用“引导性问题”。

5. Do you have any other ideas?

Why ask this? Sometimes the first idea is a really bad idea.

你还有别的想法吗？为什么问这个？有时候第一个想法真的是个坏主意。

A really terrible solution: "Kill that guy!" 一个非常糟糕的解决方案：“杀了那个家伙！”

The job of the counselor is to help the client explore and weigh options. So, the more potential solutions the client can think of, the better.

顾问的工作是帮助客户探索和权衡选择。所以，客户能想到的潜在解决方案越多越好。

The counselor can sometimes help the client explore options with leading questions: “Do you think you might feel comfortable going to a hospital?” But often it’s a good idea to let the client struggle a bit – to work his or her way through the problem into real solutions. Counselors can use silence while the client thinks.

Don’t rush to offer “leading questions. Give the client a bit of time if they need it to evaluate their feelings and thoughts in regards to their solutions. That’s important. 咨询师有时可以用引导性的问题来帮助客户探索各种选择：“你觉得去医院会舒服吗？”但通常让客户挣扎一点是个好主意，让他/她把问题解决成真正的解决方案。咨询师可以在客户思考的时候保持沉默。不要急于提出“引导性问题”。

如果客户需要的话，给他们一点时间来评估他们对解决方案的感受和想法。这很重要。

6. Do you have friends or family you can talk to?

If the person says “no” counselor says, “You can always come and talk with me.” 你有朋友或家人可以交谈吗？如果那个人说“不”顾问说，“你可以随时来和我谈谈。”

People often have resources (like family and friends), but don’t think to use them. 人们通常拥有资源（比如家人和朋友），但却不想利用它们。

If someone has a deeply personal problem like HIV/AIDS, they might not want to talk about it with their mom or friends. This reticence can be discussed. Again, explore options.

如果某人有严重的个人问题，如艾滋病毒/艾滋病，他们可能不想和他们的母亲或朋友谈论。这种沉默是可以讨论的。再次，探索选项。

7. What is the best thing for you to do now?

This means the client has to prioritize the solutions, and then start to put the best solution into action. A very important step! If the counselor is not comfortable with the client’s “final solution,” he or she can ask more leading questions like: What do you think the result would be, if you XXX? This way the counselor can explore other options the client maybe didn’t think of, and understand why the client doesn’t want to use some other more obvious solutions.

你现在最好做什么？这意味着客户必须确定解决方案的优先级，然后开始将最佳解决方案付诸实施。非常重要的一步！如果咨询师对客户的“最终解决方案”不满意，他或她可以问更多的引导性问题，比如：你认为结果会是什么，如果你做/去/和 XXX 交谈，你认为会发生什么？这样，咨询师可以探索客户可能没有想到的其他选择，并理解客户为什么不想使用其他更明显的解决方案。

QUESTIONS? Comments? 问题？评论？

Now, it’s time to start. If this is exercise is done in a classroom its best if the desks/chairs can be put in a circle so everyone can see each other. It’s strange to be counseled by someone sitting behind you. Comfort and eye contact are really important.

现在，是时候开始了。如果这是在教室里做的练习，最好把桌椅围成一圈，这样每个人都能看到对方。和坐在你后面的人说话很奇怪。舒适和眼神交流非常重要。

TOP SECRET list of 20 horrifying problems! 最高机密的 20 个令人恐惧的问题!

The teacher can ask students to work with a partner, and figure out who will be the first counselor and who will be the client. Sometimes the old “scissors-paper-stone” game can help.

老师可以让学生和一个搭档一起工作，找出谁是第一个辅导员，谁是委托人。有时旧的“剪刀纸石”游戏可以帮助你。

Teacher says: “Please choose a random number between 1 and 20. Then I’ll read the problem.”

老师问第一个客户：“请选择一个 1 到 20 之间的随机数。那我就去读你那可怕的新问题！”

The counselor just has to read the questions, sound like he or she cares, and watch the client’s body language. If the client starts asking the counselor questions, the counselor needs to - gently - turn those questions back to the client. For example: “What do I think you should do? I really don’t know now. The more important question is, what are your options? What do you think and feel will be your best option?” Sometimes the counselor might have to ask the client to clarify something if he or she doesn’t understand something the client says. That’s fine.

咨询师只需阅读问题，听起来像他或她关心，并观察客户的肢体语言。如果客户开始向咨询师提问，咨询师需要-温和地-将这些问题返回给客户。例如：“我认为你应该怎么做？我现在真的不知道。更重要的问题是，你有什么选择？你觉得什么是你最好的选择？”

有时，如果咨询师不理解客户所说的话，他或她可能不得不要客户澄清一些事情。没关系。

The answers are in the client; the counselor is only there to help the person discover their own solutions. Why? The counselor cannot possibly know the inner value system of the client and imposing his or her value system on the client can have terrible long-term consequences. For example: “You really should DIVORCE that fat stupid ugly old husband of yours!” OMG! Then what happens if the client kills herself after being alone for a few weeks?

答案就在客户身上；咨询师只是在那里帮助这个人找到他们自己的解决方案。为什么？辅导员不可能了解委托人的内在价值体系，将其价值体系强加于委托人会产生可怕的长期后果。例如：“你真的应该和你那个又胖又笨又丑的老丈夫离婚！”天哪！那么，如果客户在独处几周后自杀，会发生什么？

Ready? Below are the TOP SECRET 20 PROBLEMS! 准备好了吗？下面是 20 个绝密问题！

Teacher’s Note: If the “client” doesn’t like the problem it’s OK to exchange it for another one. It might be the “client’s” real problem(!) and an EFL class isn’t usually the best venue for dealing with real problems. That’s why most of the problems below are obviously fictional.

老师的笔记：如果“客户”不喜欢这个问题，可以换另一个。这可能是“客户”的真正问题（！）英语课通常不是解决实际问题的最佳场所。这就是为什么下面的大多数问题显然都是虚构的。

<p>1. You always smell bad.</p> <p>2. Your mother is an alien.</p> <p>3. A vampire bit you.</p> <p>4. You are going crazy.</p> <p>5. A witch turned you into a frog.</p> <p>6. You have a drug problem.</p> <p>7. You are pregnant (or your girlfriend is pregnant).</p> <p>8. You just found out you have an STD!</p> <p>9. Your 17-year-old daughter just ran away.</p> <p>10. You are really stupid and ugly.</p> <p>11. You're going to prison for murder but you're innocent.</p> <p>12. Nobody loves you.</p> <p>13. You just found out your brother is gay. (For many western people this isn't a problem, but some people think it is a problem.)</p> <p>14. Everybody thinks you are gay/lesbian but you're not. (Again, for many western people this isn't a problem, but some people think it is a problem.)</p> <p>15. All your hair is falling out.</p> <p>16. Your parents moved away without telling you because they don't like you.</p> <p>17. Aliens are following you.</p> <p>18. Your English teacher hates you.</p> <p>19. You have a date with a pop star you're madly in love with but you have a huge pimple on your nose.</p> <p>20. Pink monkeys from mars are stealing your underwear.</p>	<p>1. 你总是很难闻。</p> <p>2. 你妈妈是外星人。</p> <p>3. 吸血鬼咬了你。</p> <p>4. 你快疯了。</p> <p>5 个。一个女巫把你变成了青蛙。</p> <p>6. 你有毒品问题。</p> <p>7 号。你怀孕了（或者你女朋友怀孕了）。</p> <p>8 个。你刚发现你有性病！</p> <p>9 号。你 17 岁的女儿跑了。</p> <p>10 个。你真是又笨又丑。</p> <p>11 号。你将因谋杀罪入狱，但你是无辜的。</p> <p>12 岁。没有人爱你。</p> <p>13 岁。你刚发现你弟弟是同性恋。（对许多西方人来说，这不是问题，但有些人认为这是一个问题。）</p> <p>14 岁。每个人都认为你是同性恋，但你不是。（同样，对许多西方人来说，这不是问题，但有些人认为这是一个问题。）</p> <p>15 岁。你的头发都掉下来了。</p> <p>16 岁。你父母不告诉你就搬走了，因为他们不喜欢你。</p> <p>17 岁。外星人在跟踪你。</p> <p>18 岁。你的英语老师讨厌你。</p> <p>19 岁。你和一个你疯狂爱上的流行歌星约会，但是你鼻子上长了一个大痘痘。</p> <p>20 岁。火星上的粉红猴子在偷你的内衣。</p>
---	---

At the end 在最后

Both the client and the counselor need to feel comfortable with the solution. If either is not satisfied, maybe exploring more options is a good idea.

客户和顾问都需要对解决方案感到满意。如果客户或咨询师对最佳选择不满意，也许探索更多的选择是一个好主意。

Questions for Discussion 讨论问题

1. Describe one problem you've had and how another person tried to help you resolve it. Was it a lasting solution?
描述你遇到的一个问题，以及其他人是如何帮助你解决的。这是一个持久的解决方案吗？
2. Do you think you could use the above seven questions to help someone solve a real problem in the real world? Why or why not?
你认为你可以用以上七个问题来帮助别人解决现实世界中的真正问题吗？为什么或者为什么不？

Counseling Quiz 咨询测验

1. Why do some people not tell the counselor the real problem in the beginning?
 - a. they are proud of their problem
 - b. they don't know what the problem is
 - c. fear and/or embarrassment
 - d. too lazy
2. "Closed" body language can include
 - e. a big smile
 - f. blinking a lot
 - g. folded arms and legs
 - h. sleepy appearance
3. If death is involved in any way involved, the counselor should not ask:
 - i. What seems to be the matter?
 - j. Is this the first time this has happened?
 - k. What do you think you should do?
 - l. Do you have any other ideas?
4. Question 5 is: Do you have any other ideas? Why ask that question?
 - m. It takes up time so the client pays more
 - n. It shows the client that the counselor is really smart
 - o. Sometimes the client's first idea is not the best solution
 - p. It shows the client that the counselor doesn't like his or her first idea
5. What's wrong with a counselor giving advice?
 - a. Advice can go horribly wrong because the counselor can't really know the value system of the client.
 - b. Nothing. Clients have no idea what to do so giving advice is helpful.
 - c. Advice makes the client lazy.
 - d. Advice slows the process down.
6. If the client appears to have no good idea at all how to solve his or her problem, is it OK for the counselor to ask "leading questions?"
 - a. Yes
 - b. No
 - c. Only on Tuesdays
 - d. Only if the client is suicidal

7. A good leading question might start like:
 - a. Isn't about time you grew up and started to...?
 - b. Stop being a baby and think about....?
 - c. You'd be crazy if you didn't... ?
 - d. Would you feel comfortable trying...?

8. If the client has no one else to talk to about their problem the counselor should say _____.
 - a. What kind of weird freak doesn't have any friends?
 - b. That's OK, you'll feel better soon anyways.
 - c. I understand because I don't have any friends either.
 - d. You can always come and talk with me.

9. Why should the last question be: "What do you think you should do now?"
 - a. It makes the client uncomfortable
 - b. It helps the client prioritize their solutions
 - c. It makes the client think about how inferior they are
 - d. It makes the counselor feel good

10. If the counselor is not comfortable with the client's final solution to their problem, the counselor can _____.
 - a. Ask more leading questions
 - b. Harass the client into being more realistic
 - c. Give up on the client and send them home.
 - d. Let them make their own mistakes so they learn what not to do.

Please write the letter of the meaning on the right on the line next to the emotion on the left

Emotion	Meaning
1. Frustrated ___	a. Don't know what to do; maybe because someone doesn't understand the choices
2. Embarrassed ___	b. Giving up hope; hopelessness
3. Disgusted ___	c. Uncomfortable self-consciousness, maybe ashamed
4. Enraged ___	d. Having a lot of hope
5. Depressed ___	e. Disappointed, you can't get what you want.
6. Despairing ___	f. The feeling someone has when they want to kill themselves.
7. Confused ___	g. Feeling of revulsion (厌恶), extreme dislike, loathing
8. Suicidal ___	h. Extremely angry
9. Hopeful ___	i. Extremely happy
10. Delighted ___	j. Very sad for a long time

Active Listening 主动倾听

Active Listening, summarizing and paraphrasing - Labeling emotions and checking for accuracy

主动倾听，总结和解释-标注情绪并检查准确性

Vocabulary and practical exercises

Gist: (Noun) The most important meaning. (主旨 zhǔ zhǐ) MAIN POINT(S) Essence.

Summarize – a short form of a communication containing the gist (总结 zǒng jié)

Paraphrase – saying or writing the same thing but in different words 改述 – REPHRASING

Pay attention: focus one's mind on something: (注意 zhù yì)

Hear – sound enters the ears – maybe one pays attention, maybe not. 听

Listen – pay attention to what one hears (倾听 qīngtīng)

Nod – head goes down and up a little to show one understands. 点头 [diǎn tóu]

Facial Expression – the expression on someone’s face: 面部表情

Posture – position of the body 姿势 [zī shì]

Frustrated – similar to 受挫 [shòu cuò] Needs are not being met. (The source of most conflicts.)

NOTE: I think most translations from online English-Chinese dictionaries are wrong. This is not just sad, or depressed. Maybe: 惘然若失. Very disappointed (很失望) is the closest synonym I can think of, but it’s a little different too. Most frustrated people also may feel anger, surprise or disbelief. “It’s unbelievable!” Example: I cooked a very delicious hamburger, and was just about to eat when a dog jumped up and ate it. I was so frustrated!

Encourage – to give/offer support and energy (鼓励 gǔ lì)

We all hear, but how much do we listen? 我们都听到了，但是我们真正听了多少？

Hearing and listening are significantly different in English.

Hearing 和 listening 在英语中有显著差异。

Hear: The sound goes in the ears. 声音进入耳朵。

Listen: We pay attention to what we hear. 我们关注所听到的。

I can hear you, but I’m not really listening because

我可以 hear 您但我不是真的 listening 因为...

I’m angry and thinking about what I’m going to say next, 我很生气，正在考虑接下来要说的话，
I’m thinking about lunch or something else. 我正在考虑午餐或其他问题。

I read, but I don’t really understand much because: 我读过，但我不太了解，因为：

I’m not really thinking much about it 我并没有考虑太多

I’d rather be playing a game 我宁愿玩游戏

It’s difficult 它很难

**These days everybody is talking, but not many people are listening
and fewer still are critically thinking about what they hear, see,
read, think or feel.**

如今，每个人都在讲话，但很少有人倾听，仍然很少有人
批判性地思考他们听到，看到，阅读，思考或感觉到的东西。

How can we really show that we are listening?

How can we know that someone is really listening to us?

There is a very way to do both!

Please remember that without listening, there will be no trust.

我们怎样才能真正表明我们在听呢？
我们怎么知道有人真的在听我们说话？
有两种方法很简单！
请记住，不听便不会信任。

First, what's the difference between summarizing and paraphrasing?

首先，总结和释义有什么区别？

Summarizing is making a shorter version of what you hear or read, but containing the gist of that communication.

总结是对你所听到或读到的内容做一个简短的版本，但包含了交流的要点。

Paraphrasing is saying the same thing in different words – maybe shorter, maybe the same length.

释义就是用不同的词来表达同一件事——也许更短，也许同样长。

We'll be doing one or the other here. **If it's a long communication, we'll summarize. If it's a short communication, we'll just paraphrase.**

我们在这里做一个或另一个。

如果是长时间的交流，我们会总结。

如果这是一个简短的交流，我们将只是转述。

Why? This is an “active listening” exercise. It's a great way make sure we really understand what the other person is saying and build trust.

为什么？这是一个“积极倾听”的练习。这是一个很好的方法，可以确保我们真正理解对方在说什么，并建立信任。

How do we know if someone is listening to us? 我们怎么知道有人在听我们说话？

Any ideas? 有什么想法吗？

1. BODY LANGUAGE 肢体语言

Nod occasionally 偶尔点头

Smile and show caring using facial expressions at appropriate times

在适当的时候用面部表情微笑和“表示关心”

PAY ATTENTION TO your body posture and make sure it is open and inviting

注意您的身体姿势，并确保它保持开放和诱人

Encourage the speaker to continue with small verbal comments like “yes,” and “uh huh,” and maybe add a: “I know what your mean,” here and there.

鼓励演讲者继续说“是”和“嗯”的小口头评论，并可能在这里和那里添加：“我知道你的意思”。

2. SUMMARIZE or PARAPHRASE back to the person what you heard them say before you start presenting your own ideas.

在你提出自己的想法之前，把你听到的话总结或复述给对方听。

Example

“I hear you saying that... “我听到你这么说... _____.” (Paraphrase or summarize what they said. 解释或总结他们所说的话.)

Then, AFTER that, you can present your own ideas. 然后，之后，您可以提出自己的想法。

“In my opinion, 在我看来 _____.”

This way the other person knows you listened to them.

这样，其他人知道您已听了他们的话。

Let's Practice! 让我们来练习!

Mom: You're spending all your time playing games on the weekend and you're not studying your school courses. Don't you know that I'm very worried you're going to fail your courses. Then you will end up very unhappy and go to a so-so university. Then get a so-so job and not be very happy in life. I'm paying a lot of money for this education of yours and you're wasting that opportunity playing games all the time!

妈妈：您将所有时间都花在周末玩游戏，而不是在学习学校课程。您是否不知道我很担心您将无法通过课程。然后，您最终会很不高兴，然后上了平庸的大学。这样一来，您将获得平庸的工作，而不是幸福的生活。我为此付出了很多钱，而您却一直在浪费这个机会玩游戏！！

Your summary: “I hear you saying that you're worried I'm wasting a lot of time playing games and not learning much. So you think I'll end up really unhappy later on in life.”

您的摘要：“我听到您说您担心我在浪费大量时间在玩游戏上，而没有学到很多东西。所以你认为我以后的生活会很不开心。”

(Then you politely present your own thinking:) (然后你礼貌地提出你自己的想法：)

“But, please understand that that I live at school and study 12 hours every day. I need to relax sometime and have fun. If I don't I'll go crazy. Balance and relaxation are important too.

“但是，请理解我每天都在学校学习 12 个小时。我需要放松和享受。否则我会发疯的。平衡和放松也很重要。

Situation 情况

I work so hard keeping this house clean and nice. I sweep and wash the floors, I dust the furniture, and wash the clothes. I go shopping and buy the food, and I cook and wash the dishes. But what do you do? You just come and go as you like and throw your clothes all over the house. You leave your things everywhere, and never organize anything! Your room is mess. You don't seem to care about the work I do! I'm really angry and I'm not going to take this anymore!

我很努力地保持这房子的干净和漂亮。我扫地、洗地板、擦家具、洗衣服。我去购物买菜，做饭洗碗。但你是做什么的？你就随便来去，把衣服扔得满屋都是。你把东西放在任何地方，从不整理任何东西！你的房间很乱。你好像不在乎我的工作！我真的很生气，我不想再忍受了！

You say (a summary): “I hear you saying that: 你说（总结）：“我听到你这么说：

_____.”

Then, you respond to what he/she said (using one of the five Conflict Resolution Strategies we talked about last week): 然后，你回应他/她所说的话（使用我们上周讨论的五种冲突解决策略之一）：

Hint: Compromise or collaboration (problem solving) usually works best in cases like the above.

提示：妥协或合作（解决问题）通常在上述情况下效果最好。

Situation 情况

I got a new computer game last week and it's really exciting! First you have to choose a map, character and weapons to defeat an army of monsters from hell, that want to eat you and pick his teeth with your bones! The only way to win is to find who their leader is and keep killing him, but as soon as you kill one leader another pops up out of nowhere and leads one of his armies to kill you again! Their armies have all kinds of magic weapons, like illusions, lasers, RPGs, crossbows and of course, lots of spies! To learn this new game I'm playing all night every night, but wow, I'm getting good fast. With a little more practice I can become the king of the universe and make all the slave monster armies work for me!

上周我有一个新的电脑游戏，真的很刺激！首先，你必须选择一张地图，一个人物和武器来打败一大群来自地狱的怪物，他们想吃掉你，用你的骨头剔牙！唯一的办法就是找到他们的首领，然后继续杀他，但是一旦你杀了一个首领，另一个就会突然冒出来，带领他的一支军队再次杀了你！他们的军队有各种各样的魔法武器，像幻觉，激光，火箭推进系统，弩，当然，还有很多间谍！为了学习这个新游戏，我每天晚上都要玩一整夜，但是哇，我玩得很快。再多练习一点，我就能成为宇宙之王，让所有的奴隶怪物军队为我工作！

Summarize: 总结：

You are a friend, parent, or teacher. Which conflict resolution strategy would you use to respond to this story? 你是朋友、家长或老师。你会用哪种冲突解决策略来回应这个故事？

Why? 为什么？

ACTIVE LISTENING, LABELING EMOTION and CHECKING THE ACCURACY of your SUMMARY/PARAPHRASE (Longer version)

NOW, I'd like you to do two other things besides just summarizing or paraphrasing.

1. I'd like you **name the emotion** of that the person, **right at the beginning before your summary.**

我想让你在总结之前先说出那个人的情绪。

2. **After your summary, check to make sure that your summary is good, by asking: "Is that right?"**

在你的总结之后，检查你的总结是否正确，问：“对吗？”

WARM-UP: PRACTICE NAMING EMOTIONS (please name two or more emotions you might feel in each situation):

1. A slaps B in the face. What emotion(s) will B feel? _____

A 在脸上拍 B。B 会感觉到什么？

2. X tells Y he/she doesn't love him/her anymore and is leaving. What emotion(s) might Y feel?

_____ X 告诉 Y，他/她不再爱他/她而要离开。您可能会感觉到什么？

3. Boss tells worker that he's slow, lazy and does a bad job even though worker Z is really a great worker. What emotion(s) might the worker feel? _____

老板告诉工人他很慢，很懒，工作做得很差，尽管 Z 工人真的是个好工人。工人会有什么样的情绪？

4. Dad tells his son that he's going to divorce his mother and live with another younger woman.

What emotion(s) might the son feel? _____

爸爸告诉儿子，他将与母亲离婚，并与另一个年轻女子住在一起。他的儿子可能会感到什么情绪？

5. Boss tells workers a, b, c, and 27 others that the company will close and they don't have a job anymore. What emotion(s) might workers a, b, c, and 27 others feel? _____ 老板告诉

工人 a, b, c 和其他 27 位员工，公司将关闭，并且他们没有工作了。工人 a, b, c 和 27 个其他工人会感觉到什么情绪？

EXAMPLE 3

- A. Label emotion 说出您听到的是什么情绪
- B. Summarize or paraphrase 总结或解释
- C. Then check to make sure you've got it right. 然后检查以确保您理解正确：“对吗？”

The workers don't want to work more than eight (8) hours a day, they will not work more than five days a week unless they are paid a lot more for working "overtime." They want a one-hour lunch break, and they want insurance. Also, they want to have drinking water provided by the company, and safe working conditions. If their demands are not met, they will go on strike until these demands are met. You are the boss, but your company does not have the money to give them insurance or overtime money. It's too expensive. You just don't have the money.

工人们不想一天工作超过八（8）个小时，他们一周工作不会超过五天，除非他们因“加班”而得到更多的报酬，他们想要一小时的午休，他们想要保险。同时，他们希望公司提供饮用水和安全的工作条件。如果他们的要求得不到满足，他们将举行罢工，直到这些要求得到满足。你是老板，但你的公司没有钱给他们保险或加班费。太贵了。你就是没钱。

So, you say: 所以，你说：

1. It sounds like you're _____ (what emotion?)

你听起来像是 _____ (名字情感)

2. Summarize or paraphrase 总结或解释 _____."

3. Checking: "Is that right?" 检查：“对吗？”

4. Now, you've got to tell them the realities of your company's financial situation and offer a resolution: 现在，你必须告诉他们你公司的财务状况，并提出一个解决方案：

EXAMPLE 4

You are the boss and two workers are arguing about who should clean up at the end of the work day. One worker, Joe has been there 10 years and he says the new guy, Bill should clean up. The new guy Bill says he's tired and both should clean up. It looks like they are going to have a fight. How will you describe their feelings and paraphrase this so that both know you're listening?

你是老板，两个工人在争论谁该在工作日结束时打扫卫生。一个工人，乔已经在那里呆了10年了，他说新来的人，比尔应该收拾一下。新来的比尔说他累了，两个人都应该收拾一下。看起来他们要打架了。你将如何描述他们的感受，并解释这一点，以便双方都知道你在听？

So you say:

It sounds like you're _____ (describe their emotion) , and that Joe, you're saying that _____ and Bill, you think that _____. (Checking) _____?

EXAMPLE 5

You're a policeman in the police station and someone calls you with the following story:

Officer! Every time after I come home from school some of my underwear is missing. At first, I couldn't figure out what's happening. So I put a video camera in my room, and I saw that a pink monkey from mars is coming into my room and stealing my underwear! This is amazing! The next time this happens I'm going to kill that pink monkey!

你是警察局的警察，有人给你打电话说：

官员！每次我放学回家后，我的一些内衣都不见了。一开始我不知道发生了什么事。所以我在房间里放了一台摄像机，我看到一只来自火星的粉色猴子正走进我的房间偷走我的内衣！这太可怕了！下次我要杀了那只粉红猴子！

So you say:

It sounds like you're _____ (describe the caller's emotion) , and you're telling me that _____ (Summary). Is that right? (Now, offer a conflict resolution):
_____.

EXAMPLE (Putting it all together in the semi-real world or Washington DC)

You are President Trump and want to be friends with Russian President Putin. But the FBI, CIA, Justice Department, broadcast media and press, the other major political party the Democrats, and many other citizens don't like this. They think that Russian President Putin and his government helped you become president. They don't like Russian President Putin, and are preventing you from working together with Russian President Putin to make peace in various conflicts around the world. Some Americans think you are a Russian agent!

你是特朗普总统，想和俄罗斯总统普京做朋友。但联邦调查局、中情局、司法部、广播媒体和新闻界、另一个主要政党民主党和许多其他公民都不喜欢这样。他们认为俄罗斯总统普京和他的政府帮助你成为总统。他们不喜欢俄罗斯总统普京，阻止你与俄罗斯总统普京合作，在世界各地的各种冲突中实现和平。一些美国人认为你是俄国特工！

So, you are going to make a speech to the American people (and world actually) to resolve this conflict. What would you say? Start with Active Listening skills practiced above, then offer a conflict resolution.

所以，你要向美国人民（和全世界）发表演讲来解决这场冲突。你会怎么说？从以上练习的积极倾听技巧开始，然后提供冲突解决方案。

Before trying to write this speech, first two questions. 在写这篇演讲之前，先问两个问题。

1. What conflict resolution strategy (or strategies) has President Trump been using so far?
2. Have they worked?

1. 特朗普总统到目前为止一直在使用什么冲突解决策略？

2. 它们起作用了吗？

FIRST: Please use the active listening skills learned above: 第一：请使用以上所学的积极倾听技巧：

- A. Label emotion
- B. Summarize or paraphrase
- C. Then check to make sure you've got it right. (This might be a token question to the audience).

A、标记情感

B、总结或解释

C、然后检查一下，确保你做对了。（这对听众来说可能是个象征性的问题）。

SECOND: Then write about the conflict resolution skill you think would be best in this situation and explain why this is the best solution.

第二：然后写下你认为在这种情况下最好的冲突解决技巧，并解释为什么这是最好的解决方法。

Review 回顾

1. Avoidance (noun) Avoid (verb) – hide from, run away from a problem, 回避 huí bì = Deny (v.) there is a problem. (denial - noun.)
2. Confrontation (noun) Confront (verb) – attack back, fight 对抗 duì kàng
3. Accommodation (noun) Accommodate (verb) 姑息 gū xī = Give them what they want. = Appeasement 姑息 gū xī = Yielding 屈服 Qū fu = Surrender 投降 tóu xiáng
4. Compromise (Noun and verb) 妥协 tuǒ xié = A 50/50 solution - you get half, I get half
5. Collaborating (Problem Solving) 解决问题 jiějué wèntí – figure out solutions to the problem behind the problem. (Figure out solutions: 找出解决方案)

I will help you get started:

My dear fellow Americans...

Writing, Debate or Debate Exercises 写作、辩论或辩论练习

(For writing exercise) Please choose one of the following questions and write a short essay. (150 – 200 words) (写作练习) 请选择下列问题之一并写一篇短文。(150-200字)

1. Please describe a time in your life when someone didn't listen to you; how that made you feel, and how you reacted to that situation.

请描述一下你生命中有一段时间，有人不听你的话；那让你感觉如何，以及你对这种情况的反应。

2. Please describe a time in your life when you didn't listen to someone else and something bad happened because you didn't listen.

请描述你生命中的一段时间，你不听别人的话，因为你不听别人的话而发生了一些不好的事情。

Write and present a role-play with your partner 与你的搭档一起写一个角色扮演

Write a two-part short dialogue about two people having a conflict:

写一篇两部分的简短对话，讲述两个人之间的冲突：

- a. ...One person isn't listening. What happens?
- b. ... Both are listening. What happens?

a、一个人没在听。会发生什么？

b、两人都在听。会发生什么？

Other Multi-Cultural Questions 其他多元文化问题

Do all cultures encourage listening by all parties the same?

所有的文化都鼓励所有的人都听吗？

Cultures can be: 文化可以是：

- Within or between rich, middle class, poor (The politically correct label for this is high, middle and low Socio-Economic Status - SES)
富人、中产阶级、穷人内部或之间（政治上正确的标签是高、中、低社会经济地位-SES）
- A school (within or between different groups of students and/or teachers and/or administrators), company (bosses/workers), club, or other social group
学校（学生和/或教师和/或行政人员不同群体内部或之间）、公司（老板/工人）、俱乐部或其他社会团体
- Within or between people in different tribes, countries and/or political systems (remember the U.S. has two very different political systems with very different priorities in regards to some but not all issues)
在不同部落、国家和/或政治制度的人内部或人与人之间（请记住，美国有两个非常不同的政治制度，在某些问题上有非常不同的优先权，但不是所有问题上都有）

Word Focus – Etymology 单词焦点-词源

A new word can create a new world 一个新词就能创造一个新世界。

“Etymology” definition: The study of the origin of words and the way in which their meanings have changed throughout history.

词源学定义：研究词的起源及其意义在历史上的变化方式。

<https://www.lexico.com/en/definition/etymology>

Roots of the word “etymology”

Late Middle English from Old French “ethimologie,” via Latin from Greek “etumologia,” from “etumologos” ‘student of etymology’, from “etumon,” neuter singular of “etumos” ‘true’. 中晚期英语源于古法语“ethimologie”，拉丁语源于希腊语“etumologia”，源于“etumologos”，“student of etymology”，源于“etumon”，“etumos”的中性单数“true”。

<https://www.lexico.com/en/definition/etymology>

Usage examples 使用示例

You don't really know a word until you've studied its etymology.

除非你研究过一个词的词源，否则你一个字都不知道。

There has been a rapid decline in the study of etymology in recent decades.

近几十年来，词源学的研究迅速减少。

The study of etymology opens up the rich layers of meaning in a word.

词源学的研究揭示了一个词丰富的词义层次。

An amusing example of etymology, and the layered meanings of words over time is the word “testify.” In ancient times when a man swore an oath, he would place one hand over his testicles to swear to the truthfulness of his words. The implication was if he lied, he would lose those testicles. Now-a-days in the US when people testify in court, they are required to place one hand on a Christian Bible instead of their testicles. One can only wonder if they are more or less honest now than in ancient times.

词源学的一个有趣示例（以及单词随时间的分层含义）是“作证”一词。在古代，当一个人发誓时，他会把手放在睾丸上发誓要保证自己话语的真实性。言下之意是，如果他撒谎，他将失去那些睾丸。如今，在美国，当人们在法庭上作证时，他们必须一只手放在基督教圣经上，而不要放在睾丸上。人们只能怀疑他们现在是否比古代更诚实。

Etymology in the News 新闻中的词源

Stay alert, infodemic, Black Death: the fascinating origins of pandemic terms

保持警惕，信息流行，黑死病：流行病术语的迷人起源

May 14, 2020

Language always tells a story. As COVID-19 shakes the world, many of the words we’re using to describe it originated during earlier calamities – and have colorful tales behind them.

In the Middle Ages, for example, fast-spreading infectious diseases were known as plagues – as in the Bubonic plague, named for the characteristic swellings (or “buboes”) that appear in the groin or armpit.

语言总是讲一个故事。随着 COVID-19 震撼世界，我们用来形容世界的许多词语都起源于较早的灾难-背后有五颜六色的故事。

例如，在中世纪，快速传播的传染病被称为鼠疫-在布波尼克鼠疫中以腹股沟或腋窝中出现的典型肿胀（或称“bubos”）命名。

With its origins in the Latin word *plaga* meaning “stroke” or “wound”, plague came to refer to a wider scourge through its use to describe the ten plagues suffered by the Egyptians in the biblical book of Exodus...

瘟疫起源于拉丁语“*plaga*”，意为“中风”或“伤口”，瘟疫通过使用它来描述埃及人在出埃及记中所遭受的十个瘟疫而泛指更广泛的灾祸...

Snake venom, the original ‘virus’蛇毒，原始的“病毒”

The later plagues of the 17th century led to the coining of the word epidemic. This came from a Greek word meaning “prevalent”, from *epi* “upon” and *demos* “people”. The more severe pandemic is so called because it affects everyone (from Greek “*pan*” “all”).

17 世纪后期的瘟疫导致“流行病”一词的产生。这来自希腊语，意思是“流行”，来自 *Epi* 的“*upon*”和演示的“*people*”。之所以称其为更严重的大流行病，是因为它影响到所有人（从希腊语“*pan*”“*all*”开始）。

A more recent coinage, “infodemic,” a blend of “info” and epidemic, was introduced in 2003 to refer to the deluge of misinformation and fake news that accompanied the outbreak of SARS (an acronym formed from the initial letters of “severe acute respiratory syndrome”).

2003 年引入了一种新近的造币，即“信息流行病”，即“信息流行病”和“流行病的混合体”，是指伴随着 SARS 的爆发而传播的大量错误信息和虚假新闻（缩写为“严重急性”呼吸综合征”）。

<https://theconversation.com/stay-alert-infodemic-black-death-the-fascinating-origins-of-pandemic-terms-138543>

Chapter 8 - Current Armed Conflicts 现在正在进行的战争

There is only one war in the world now. It is an ancient war. The battlefields are spread across all continents. It is a war of the rich against the poor. The war was not started by the poor. The poor only want self-determination and freedom for their children. The rich only want to get richer.

现在世界上只有一场战争。这是一场古老的战争。战场遍布各大洲。这是一场富人与穷人的战争。战争不是穷人发动的。穷人只希望他们的孩子有自决权和自由。富人只想变得更富有。

The American Rogue Empire 美国流氓帝国

The struggle is between those who believe that the land, labor, capital, technology, and markets of the world should be dedicated to maximizing capital accumulation for the few, and those who believe that these things should be used for the communal benefit and socio-economic development of the many.

这场斗争发生在那些认为世界上的土地、劳动力、资本、技术和市场应当致力于为少数人实现资本积累最大化的人和那些认为这些东西应当用于为多数人的公共利益和社会经济发展的人之间。

William Blum, America's Deadliest Export

威廉布鲁姆，美国最致命的出口 (See: <https://williamblum.org>)

“The United States is not actually against terrorism per se, only those terrorists who are not allies of the empire.” “美国实际上并不反对恐怖主义本身，只是那些不是帝国盟友的恐怖分子。”

William Blum, America's Deadliest Export

威廉布鲁姆，美国最致命的出口 (See: <https://williamblum.org>)

“The National Endowment for Democracy, (NED) an agency created by the Reagan administration in 1983 to promote political action and psychological warfare against states not in love with US foreign policy, is Washington’s foremost non-military tool for effecting regime change.”

“国家民主基金会（NED）是里根政府于 1983 年成立的一个机构，旨在促进针对不喜欢美国外交政策的国家的政治行动和心理战，是华盛顿实现政权更迭的首要非军事工具。”

William Blum, America's Deadliest Export

威廉布鲁姆，美国最致命的出口 (See: <https://williamblum.org>)

(NED incidentally – and not surprisingly - is one of the principle funding agencies for the rioters in Hong Kong.)

(奈德顺便说一句，并不奇怪，这是香港暴乱者的主要资助机构之一。)

“The idea was that the NED would do somewhat overtly what the CIA had been doing covertly for decades, and thus, hopefully, eliminate the stigma associated with CIA covert activities. Allen Weinstein, who helped draft the legislation establishing NED, declared in 1991: ‘A lot of what we do today was done covertly 25 years ago by the CIA.’⁶ NED receives virtually all its financing from the US government (\$5 billion in total since 1991), but it likes to refer to itself as an NGO (non-governmental organization) because this helps to maintain a certain credibility abroad that an official US government agency might not have. But NGO is the wrong category. NED is a GO.”

他们的想法是，内德会公开地做中情局几十年来一直在秘密做的事情，因此，希望能消除与中情局秘密活动有关的耻辱。帮助起草建立内德法案的艾伦·韦恩斯坦（Allen Weinstein）在 1991 年宣布：“我们今天所做的很多事情都是 25 年前由中情局秘密完成的。”⁶ 内德实际上从美国政府获得了所有资金（自 1991 年以来，总计 50 亿美元），但它喜欢把自己称为非政府组织（NGO），因为这有助于维持美国政府官方机构可能不具备的某种海外信誉。但非政府组织是错误的类别。内德是一个政府组织（“G.O.”）。

William Blum, America's Deadliest Export

威廉布鲁姆，美国最致命的出口 (See: <https://williamblum.org>)

“to the American power elite one of the longest lasting and most essential foreign policy goals has been preventing the rise of any society that might serve as a good example of an alternative to the capitalist model. This was the essence of the Cold War. Cuba and Chile were two examples of several such societies in the socialist camp which the United States did its best to crush.”

“对美国权力精英来说，最持久和最基本的外交政策目标之一，就是阻止任何可能成为资本主义模式替代品的好例子的社会的崛起。这就是冷战的实质。古巴和智利是社会主义阵营中几个这样的社会的两个例子，美国尽其所能粉碎了这些社会。”

William Blum, America's Deadliest Export

威廉布鲁姆，美国最致命的出口 (See: <https://williamblum.org>)

Venezuela, Cuba, North Korea and China are examples of socialist nations the United States is attempting to crush right now.

委内瑞拉、古巴、朝鲜和中国是美国目前试图摧毁的社会主义国家的例子。

<https://www.rt.com/news/489193-venezuela-coup-plot-tapes>

Combined, the Treasury Department, the Commerce Department and the State Department list embargoes against 30 countries or territories: Afghanistan, Belarus, Burundi, Central African Republic, China (PR), Côte d'Ivoire, Crimea Region, Cuba, Cyprus, Democratic Republic of the Congo, Eritrea, Fiji, Haiti, Iran, Iraq, Kyrgyzstan, Laos, Lebanon, Liberia, Libya, Myanmar, North Korea, Palestinian Territories, Russia, Rwanda, Somalia, South Sudan, Sri Lanka, Sudan, Syria, Venezuela, Yemen, Zimbabwe.

美国财政部，商务部和国务院合计列出了针对 30 个国家或地区的禁运：阿富汗，白俄罗斯，布隆迪，中非共和国，中国（PR），科特迪瓦，克里米亚地区，古巴，塞浦路斯，刚果民主共和国，厄立特里亚，斐济，海地，伊朗，伊拉克，吉尔吉斯斯坦，老挝，黎巴嫩，利比里亚，利比亚，缅甸，北朝鲜，巴勒斯坦领土，俄罗斯，卢旺达，索马里，南苏丹，斯里兰卡，苏丹，叙利亚，委内瑞拉，也门，津巴布韦。

One either kowtows to American foreign policies and its neo-liberal economic policies that strangles the poor, or one's entire nation's economy gets strangled.

要么屈服于扼杀穷人的美国外交政策及其新自由主义经济政策，要么整个国家的经济就被扼杀。

“After World War II, the United States, triumphant abroad and undamaged at home, saw a door wide open for world supremacy. Only the thing called ‘communism’ stood in the way, politically, militarily, economically, and ideologically. Thus it was that the entire US foreign policy establishment was mobilized to confront this ‘enemy’, and the Marshall Plan was an integral part of this campaign. How could it be otherwise?”

Anti-communism had been the principal pillar of US foreign policy from the Russian Revolution up to World War II, pausing for the war until the closing months of the Pacific campaign when Washington put challenging communism ahead of fighting the Japanese. Even the dropping of the atom bomb on Japan – when the Japanese had already been defeated – can be seen as more a warning to the Soviets than a military action against the Japanese.¹⁹ After the war, anti-communism continued as the leitmotif of American foreign policy as naturally as if World War II and the alliance with the Soviet Union had not happened. Along with the CIA, the Rockefeller and Ford Foundations, the Council on Foreign Relations, certain corporations, and a few other private institutions, the Marshall Plan was one more arrow in the quiver of those striving to remake Europe to suit Washington's desires:

“第二次世界大战后，美国在国外取得了胜利，在国内未受到损害，为世界霸权敞开了大门。在政治，军事，经济和意识形态上，只有所谓的“共产主义”成为阻碍。因此，就是动员了整个美国外交政策机构来对抗这种“敌人”，而《马歇尔计划》是该运动不可或缺的一部分。怎么会这样呢？”

从俄罗斯大革命到第二次世界大战，反共主义一直是美国外交政策的主要支柱，直到战争结束的几个月后，华盛顿才在与日本抗衡之前提出挑战共产主义，从而暂停了战争。即使在日本已经被击败之后向日本投下原子弹，也可以看作是对苏联的警告，而不是对日本采取军事行动。战后，反共主义继续自然而然地成为美国外交政策的主旋律，就好像第二次世界大战和与苏联的结盟并未发生一样。与中央情报局，洛克菲勒基金会和福特基金会，外交关系委员会，某些公司以及其他一些私人机构一道，马歇尔计划又是一个箭头，在那些试图重塑欧洲以适应华盛顿的愿望的人中：

William Blum, *America's Deadliest Export*

威廉布鲁姆，美国最致命的出口 (See: <https://williamblum.org>)

“While many nations have a terrible record in modern times of dealing out great suffering face-to-face with their victims, Americans have made it a point to keep at a distance while inflicting some of the greatest horrors of the age: atomic bombs on the people of Japan; carpet-bombing Korea back to the stone age; engulfing the Vietnamese in napalm and pesticides; providing three decades of Latin Americans with the tools and methods of torture, then turning their eyes away, closing their ears to the screams, and denying everything ... and now, dropping 177 million pounds of bombs on the people of Iraq in the most concentrated aerial onslaught in the history of the world.”

“虽然许多国家在现代都有与受害者面对面造成巨大痛苦的可怕记录，但美国人在制造一些当代最可怕的恐怖事件的同时，也强调要保持距离：原子弹袭击日本人民；地毯式轰炸朝鲜，使其回到石器时代；把越南人吞没在凝固汽油弹和杀虫剂中；给 30 年来的拉丁美洲人提供折磨的工具和方法，然后转过头，闭上耳朵听尖叫，否认一切.....现在，在历史上最集中的空袭中，向伊拉克人民投下了 1.77 亿磅炸弹全世界的。”

William Blum, *Killing Hope: U.S. and C.I.A. Interventions Since World War II--Updated Through 2003* 威廉·布鲁姆 (William Blum)，《杀死希望》第二次世界大战以来的干预措施-更新至 2003 年

If I were the president, I could stop terrorist attacks against the United States in a few days. Permanently. I would first apologize -- very publicly and very sincerely -- to all the widows and the orphans, the impoverished and the tortured, and all the many millions of other victims of American imperialism. I would then announce that America's global interventions -- including the awful bombings -- have come to an end. And I would inform Israel that it is no longer the 51st state of the union but -- oddly enough -- a foreign country. I would then reduce the military budget by at least 90% and use the savings to pay reparations to the victims and repair the damage from the many American bombings and invasions.

There would be more than enough money. Do you know what one year of the US military budget is equal to? One year. It's equal to more than \$20,000 per hour for every hour since Jesus Christ was born. That's what I'd do on my first three days in the White House. On the fourth day, I'd be assassinated.

如果我是总统，我可以在几天内制止针对美国的恐怖袭击。永久性。首先，我非常公开和非常诚挚地向所有寡妇和孤儿，贫穷和折磨的人以及所有数百万其他美国帝国主义受害者表示歉意。然后，我宣布，美国的全球干预行动-包括可怕的轰炸-已经结束。我想告诉以色列，它不再是联盟的第51个州，但奇怪的是，它是一个外国。然后，我将军事预算削减至少90%，并用这些积蓄向受害者赔偿，并修复美国多次轰炸和入侵造成的损失。

钱将绰绰有余。你知道美国军事预算等于一年吗？一年。自从耶稣基督出生以来，这等于每小时超过每小时 20,000 美元。这就是我在白宫的前三天要做的事情。第四天，我将被暗杀。

William Blum "War against terrorism or expansion of the American Empire?"

It was in the early days of the fighting in Vietnam that a Vietcong officer said to his American prisoner: "You were our heroes after the War. We read American books and saw American films, and a common phrase in those days was 'to be as rich and as wise as an American'. What happened?"

An American might have been asked something similar by a Guatemalan, an Indonesian or a Cuban during the ten years previous, or by a Uruguayan, a Chilean or a Greek in the decade subsequent. The remarkable international goodwill and credibility enjoyed by the United States at the close of the Second World War was dissipated country by country, intervention by intervention. The opportunity to build the war-ravaged world anew, to lay the foundations for peace, prosperity and justice, collapsed under the awful weight of anti-communism.

就在越南战争初期，一名越共军官对他的美国战俘说：“你是二战后我们的英雄。我们读美国的书，看美国的电影，那时候有句俗语叫“像美国人一样富有，一样聪明”。怎么了？

“在十年前，危地马拉人、印度尼西亚人或古巴人，或在十年后的乌拉圭人、智利人或希腊人，可能会问美国人类似的问题。美国在第二次世界大战结束时所享有的非凡的国际善意和信誉，被一个国家一个国家地消散了，通过干预进行了干预。重建饱受战争蹂躏的世界，为和平、繁荣和正义奠定基础的机会，在美国反共的可怕重压下崩溃了。

William Blum, *Killing Hope: US Military and CIA Interventions Since World War II* (See: <https://williamblum.org>)

威廉·布鲁姆 (William Blum)，《杀死希望》：第二次世界大战以来的美国军事和中央情报局干预

When I first came to China in 2007, and then came here to live in 2009, I found a nation wildly in love with the United States. Now, the American war machine has set its sights on destroying China, again. The vast majority of Chinese people are in shock. They can't believe their god has turned on them. I'm not in shock or surprised. Why not? I converted to Islam in 1987. My life has been a nightmare ever since. The only thing that surprises me is that the Chinese people did not see this coming.

当我 2007 年第一次来到中国，然后在 2009 年来到这里生活时，我发现一个国家疯狂地爱着美国。现在，美国的战争机器又把目光投向了摧毁中国。绝大多数中国人感到震惊。他们不敢相信他们的上帝背叛了他们。我一点也不吃惊。为什么不？1987 年我皈依了伊斯兰教。从那以后，我的生活就是一场噩梦。唯一让我吃惊的是，中国人民没有看到这一天的到来。

Sixty percent of the world's natural resources are on Muslim lands, so naturally the USA had to make all Muslims appear to be monsters. This makes it perfectly acceptable to torture and kill all Muslims. Now, China's economy is soon to become larger than the American economy. So, the USA must now destroy China, and naturally must make all Chinese people appear to be monsters. It is cruel. It is not fair, or just, or honest. But it has been American policy from the beginning of its history to generate big lies about large groups of people, kill them, and steal their lands. It is not complicated. A child can understand it.

世界上 60% 的自然资源都在穆斯林土地上，因此美国自然不得不使所有穆斯林看起来都是怪物。这使得酷刑和杀害所有穆斯林完全可以接受。现在，中国的经济很快就会超过美国经济。因此，美国现在必须摧毁中国，并且自然必须使所有中国人看起来像是怪物。太残忍了 这是不公平，公正或诚实的。

但是，从其历史开始就一直是美国的政策，即在大批人中散布谎言，杀害他们并窃取他们的土地。这并不复杂。一个孩子可以理解。

By the end of the Second World War, every American past the age of 40 had been subjected to some 25 years of anti-communist radiation, the average incubation period needed to produce a malignancy. Anti-communism had developed a life of its own.

到第二次世界大战结束时，每个 40 岁以上的美国人都受到了大约 25 年的反共辐射，这是产生恶性肿瘤所需的平均潜伏期。反共主义发展了自己的生活。

William Blum, *Killing Hope: US Military and CIA Interventions Since World War II*

威廉·布鲁姆 (William Blum)，《杀死希望》：第二次世界大战以来的美国军事和中央情报局干预

From the Red Scare of the 1920s to the McCarthyism of the 1950s to the Reagan Crusade against the Evil Empire of the 1980s, the American people have been subjected to a relentless anti-communist indoctrination. It is imbibed with their mother's milk, pictured in their comic books, spelled out in their school books; their daily paper offers them headlines that tell them all they need to know; ministers find sermons in it, politicians are elected with it, and Reader's Digest becomes rich on it.

从 1920 年代的红色恐慌到 1950 年代的麦卡锡主义到 1980 年代反对里根帝国的里根十字军东征，美国人民遭受了不懈的反共灌输。反共产主义被他们母亲的牛奶所吸收，他们的漫画书中有插图，他们的教科书中有清楚的说明；他们的日常报纸教导反共产主义；部长们找到了反共的讲道，政客们被选为反共产主义，而《读者文摘》则因反共而富有。

William Blum, *Killing Hope: US Military and CIA Interventions Since World War II*

威廉·布鲁姆（William Blum），《杀死希望》：第二次世界大战以来的美国军事和中央情报局干预

The ridiculous thing is, even if China became a democracy tomorrow, the USA would still work to destroy China. Why? It's not the political system that's driving the American efforts to destroy China now. It's the fact that China's economy will probably get larger than the American economy. The American Department of Defense cannot tolerate that. China must be destroyed. A hundred years of anti-communist lies helps, as do lies about COVID-19, and lies about Huawei. No lie is too big for the American government to tell the American people.

可笑的是，即使中国明天成为一个民主国家，美国仍然会努力摧毁中国。为什么？现在推动美国摧毁中国的不是政治体制。事实上，中国的经济规模可能会超过美国。美国国防部不能容忍这种情况。中国必须被摧毁。一百年的反共谎言有帮助，关于 COVID-19 和华为的谎言也有帮助。对于美国政府来说，任何谎言都不至于太离谱或可笑，以至于不能告诉美国人民。

Wars That Are Not Wars? 不是战争的战争？

There are many wars going on now, but most of them are not called "wars." There are several reasons for this.

现在发生了许多战争，但其中大多数不被称为“战争”。有几个原因。

First, US foreign policy administrators like to hide the facts regarding how many wars they are causing and fighting. So, they have a variety of excuses to deny some wars are really wars. For example: 首先，美国外交政策管理者喜欢隐瞒他们正在引发和战斗多少场战争的事实。所以，他们有各种各样的借口来否认有些战争是真正的战争。例如：

- Too small!
- Not enough casualties!

• 太小！

• 伤亡人数不足！

And so on. According to official American policy, the Vietnam War was not a war. It was a "Police action." Not until 1995 did Vietnam release an official estimate of war dead. Two million civilians on both sides were killed, and some 1.1 million North Vietnamese soldiers. Somewhere between three and four million people were killed in that war, that the USA says was not a war.

等等。根据美国的官方政策，越南战争不是一场战争。这是一次“警察行动”，直到 1995 年越南才公布了官方估计的战争死亡人数。双方 200 万平民丧生，约 110 万北越士兵丧生。大约有三百万到四百万人在那场战争中丧生，美国说那不是一场战争。

Why does the USA deny some wars are wars? 美国为什么否认某些战争是战争？

- By denying a war is a war, the US does not have to follow the laws of war. And thus, torture, and the murder of prisoners, etc. is perfectly acceptable.
否认战争就是战争，美国不必遵守战争法。因此，酷刑和谋杀囚犯等是完全可以接受的。

Basic War Vocabulary 基本战争词汇

- **International War** - War between nations 国际战争-国家之间的战争

Civil War - War between different sides within a nation, e.g. the American Civil war between the North and South (1861 to 1865), and the Chinese Civil War (1927 to 1950 - really a proxy war, see below). “Inter-tribal wars” are between large groups of people of different ethnic/cultural backgrounds, for example in Rwanda between the Tutsis and the Hutus. Often or usually these civil wars have their roots in the Colonial era of those nations’ history.

内战-一个国家内不同群体之间的战争，例如 美国内战（1861 年至 1865 年）和中国内战（1927 年至 1950 年-确实是代理战争，请参见下文）。“部落间战争”发生在不同种族/文化背景的大批人之间，例如在图西人和胡图斯之间的卢旺达。这些内战通常或通常都起源于这些国家历史上的殖民时代。

Proxy War - A war where both sides are supported by other “outside” 3rd party nations or people. The war in Syria is an example. The U.S. and Saudis are helping the “rebels” in their war against the Syrian government, while Iran and Russia are helping the Syrian government led by President Bashar al-Assad.

Another example is the proxy war in Yemen with the U.S, UK, France and several Arab countries including the Saudis helping the government, while the Houthi Rebels are helped by Iran. Many or most civil and international wars are really proxy Wars between the superpowers.

“代理战争”-双方都受到其他“外部”第三党国家或人民支持的战争。叙利亚战争就是一个例子。美国和沙特阿拉伯在与叙利亚政府的战争中帮助“叛军”，而伊朗和俄罗斯则在以巴沙尔·阿萨德总统为首的叙利亚政府中提供帮助。

另一个例子是在也门与美国，英国，法国以及包括沙特在内的数个阿拉伯国家的代理战争，包括沙特政府协助政府，而胡特叛军则由伊朗协助。许多或大多数内战和国际战争实际上是超级大国之间的代理战争。

Battle - A violent segment part of a war; A hostile encounter between different sides usually during a war. A famous saying: “You can win many battles but still lose the war.” An example is the American Revolutionary War against the British. The early Americans lost most of the battles against the British until near the end of the war when they won some major battles.

Battle -战争中的暴力冲突；通常在战争中不同方面之间的敌对冲突。一句名言：“你可以打赢很多仗，但还是输了。”美国对英革命战争就是一个例子。早期的美国人在与英国的战争中输掉了大部分战争，直到战争接近尾声时，他们赢得了一些重大战役。

Pyrrhic victory - A victory achieved at too high a cost, e.g. everyone is dead and your nation is destroyed. You “won,” but lost so much the victory was not worth the loss.

Pyrrhic victory 以太高的代价获得的胜利，例如 每个人都死了，你的国家被摧毁了。您“赢了”，但输了那么多胜利就毫无意义。

Student Research Project 学生研究计划

Each pair of students will be randomly assigned a current conflict, and research the following questions:
每对学生将被随机分配一个当前冲突，并研究以下问题：

When did it start?

Who is fighting? (“Belligerents”)

Why?

How many people have been killed?

Are any foreign countries involved in that conflict or war? If yes, which ones?

什么时候开始？

谁在战斗？

为什么？

有多少人被杀？

是否有任何外国参与这场冲突或战争？如果是，哪个？

Conflict/War 冲突/战争	Start Date 开始日期	Who is fighting? 谁在打架?	Why? 为什么?	How many people have been killed? 有多少人被杀?	Foreign involvement? Yes/No and if yes, who? 有外国参与吗? 是/否, 如果是, 谁?
1. Syrian Civil War 叙利亚“内战”战争					
2. Mexican Drug War 墨西哥毒品战争					
3. Iraq Conflict/Iraq Civil War 伊拉克冲突					
4. War in Afghanistan 阿富汗战争					
5. Internal “Conflict” in Myanmar 缅甸内部的“冲突”					
6. Moro Conflict in the Philippines 菲律宾的摩洛冲突					
7. Oromo Conflict Ethiopia 奥罗莫冲突埃塞俄比亚					
8. Somali Civil War 索马里内战					
9. Conflict in Nigeria 尼日利亚的冲突					
10. North Mali Conflict					

北马里冲突					
11. Libyan Civil War 利比亚内战					
12. War in Darfur 达尔富尔战争					
13. Yemen Civil War 也门内战					
14. South Sudan Civil War 南苏丹内战					
15. Central African Republic Conflict 中非共和国冲突					
16. Democratic Republic of Congo 刚果民主共和国					
17. War in Kashmir 克什米尔战争					

After research is completed each pair of students will do an oral presentation on their armed conflict. After that we will fill in the above chart together.

研究结束后，每对学生将对他们的武装冲突进行口头报告。之后，我们将一起填写上表。

Questions for Students (discussion) 给学生的问題（讨论）

Of the 17-armed conflicts listed above, how many of them have foreigners involved in one way or another?

在上面列出的 17 次武装冲突中，有多少外国人以一种或另一种方式介入？

Do all of these armed conflicts have anything in common?

所有这些武装冲突都有共同点吗？

Is there any hope for peace in any of these conflicts and when?

在这些冲突中以及何时发生冲突是否有和平的希望？

Can anyone think of ways to help promote peace in any of these conflicts?

任何人都可以想到在任何这些冲突中帮助促进和平的方法吗？

Vocabulary Quiz 词汇测验

Vocabulary 词汇	Meaning 含义
1. International War 2. Proxy War 3. Civil War 4. Pyrrhic Victory 5. Battle	

Chapter 9 - Humanitarian Aid Organizations (人道主义援助组织)

Introduction 介绍

In this chapter we will: 在本章中，我们将：

1. Learn about the four most important humanitarian principles.
了解四项最重要的人道主义原则。
2. International Aid Organizations 国际援助组织
3. Learn about the concepts and realities of impartiality, neutrality, and Independence.
了解公正，中立和独立的概念和现实。
4. Learn about funding for International Aid Organizations and how “strings” are often attached
了解为国际援助组织提供资金的情况，以及这些援助通常附带的“秘密条件”
5. Each pair of students will choose one aid organization, research it and do a presentation on its history: where they’ve worked in the past and where they’re working now, and discuss their record of neutrality and impartiality when possible.

每一对学生将选择一个援助组织，对其进行研究，并介绍其历史：他们过去在哪里工作，现在在哪里工作，并尽可能讨论他们的中立和公正记录

Four Humanitarian Principles 四项人道主义原则

Humanity: Human suffering must be addressed wherever it is found. The purpose of humanitarian aid is to **protect life and health and ensure respect for human dignity.**

人性：无论在何处发现人类苦难，都必须加以解决。人道主义援助的目的是保护生命和健康，确保尊重人的尊严。

Impartiality: Humanitarian action must be implemented **on the basis of need alone**, giving priority to those with the greatest need and not discriminate based on nationality, race, gender, religious belief, class or political opinions.

公正性：人道主义行动必须仅在需要的基础上执行，优先考虑最需要帮助的人，并且不得基于国籍，种族，性别，宗教信仰，阶级或政治见解进行歧视。

Neutrality: Humanitarian actors **must not take sides in conflicts** or engage in controversies of a political, racial, religious or ideological nature. 中立：人道主义行为者不得在冲突中表示立场或参与具有政治，种族，宗教或意识形态性质的争议。

Independence: Humanitarian action must be **totally separate from political, economic, military or other objectives.** 独立性：人道主义行动必须与政治，经济，军事或其他目标完全分开。

Mnemonic Aids: 4 Humanitarian Principles (4HuPrin) 助记符：4 条人道主义原则

HINI

Hu - Im - Neu - In

HU - Purpose: Protect life/health respect dignity (**P:PL/HRDig**)

Im - Need alone, greatest need, no discrim. Nat, Race, Gend. Rel. Class, Pol Ops (**NRGRCP**)

Neu - not take sides on basis of Pol, Rac, Rel, Ideo (PRRI)

Ind - Separate from Pol. Econ. Mil. Or Other (PEMOther)

Why are Impartiality, Neutrality and Independence so important? 为什么公正，中立和独立如此重要？

Many reasons: 很多原因：

- 1) Building trust with the people who need assistance isn't easy at the best of times and impossible when the aid worker appears to be biased.

在最好的情况下，与需要帮助的人建立信任并不是一件容易的事，而当援助工作者似乎有偏见时，这是不可能的。

- 2) "Aid organization workers continue to be killed, injured or kidnapped in the world's most dangerous humanitarian crises. In 2016, there were 150 attacks on aid workers in 20 countries affecting 238 workers of which 88 were killed. In 2017 there were 35 aid workers killed in 22 attacks through March."

“在世界上最危险的人道主义危机中，援助组织的工作人员继续被杀害，伤害或绑架。2016年，在20个国家/地区发生了150次针对援助人员的袭击，影响了238名工人，其中88人被杀。截至3月，2017年有35名援助人员在22次袭击中丧生。” (Source:

<https://reliefweb.int/report/south-sudan/attacks-aid-workers-countries-ten-or-more-victims-jan-2016-mar-2017>)

Overview of International Aid Organizations 国际援助组织概述

Helping to protect human dignity is very important for a lot of reasons. One way to do that is to work with local health and community workers and the beneficiaries wherever you go. They...

出于多种原因，保护人的尊严非常重要。做到这一点的一种方法是，无论您身在何处，都要与当地的卫生和社区工作者以及受益人一起工作。他们...

- 1) know the language and people much better than you do, and
比您更了解语言和人，并且

- 2) they have many more resources in the places you're going. Also, 他们在您要去的的地方拥有更多资源。也，
- 3) if you do all the work yourself, giving food and medicine to hungry and sick people, they will not have the opportunity to maintain and develop their own aid delivery systems. This is bad because your aid organization will not be there forever so they really need to maintain and develop their own food and health systems.

如果您自己做所有工作，为饥饿和患病的人提供食物和药品，他们将没有机会维护和发展自己的援助提供系统。这很糟糕，因为您的援助组织不会永远存在，因此他们确实需要维护和发展自己的食品与卫生系统。

- 4) When you don't let local people help it robs them of their dignity. Usually they are not helpless. Thinking of locals as stupid or incompetent is a huge mistake.

如果您不让当地人帮忙，这会剥夺他们的尊严。通常他们不是无助的。将当地人视为愚蠢或无能的人是一个巨大的错误。

Most organizations that help hungry and sick people in disasters and conflicts are called: NGOs, which stands for "Non-Governmental Organization." They are supposed to be neutral and impartial, but sometimes they are not. Usually their neutrality and impartiality depends on where they get their money from. Sometimes that neutrality is influenced by which side in a conflict most people in the world think is the real victim. (For example, in the Bosnian war, most people in the world believed that the Serbians were very terrible and the Bosnian Muslims were innocent victims.)

大多数在灾难和冲突中帮助饥饿和病人的组织称为：非政府组织，代表“非政府组织”。他们本来应该是中立和公正的，但有时并非如此。通常，他们的中立性和公正性取决于他们从哪里获得钱财。有时，中立性受到冲突的影响，这是世界上大多数人认为是真正的受害者。（例如，在波斯尼亚战争中，世界上大多数人认为塞尔维亚人非常可怕，波斯尼亚穆斯林是无辜的受害者。）

Please look at one or more of the following sites and read about at least three different humanitarian aid organizations. Look on the aid organization's front-page menu at the top of their site and click on something like: "About Us," "Who we are," "What we do," or something like that to get a quick overview of those organizations.

请查看以下一个或多个站点，并阅读至少三个不同的人道主义援助组织的信息。查看位于其网站顶部的援助组织的首页菜单，然后单击诸如“关于我们”，“我们是谁”，“我们做什么”之类的内容，以快速了解这些组织。

<http://guides.lib.berkeley.edu/c.php?g=496970&p=3626027>

https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Category:Humanitarian_aid_organizations

<https://borgenproject.org/5-top-humanitarian-aid-organizations>

After looking at three humanitarian aid organizations from one of the above lists, choose the one that you like.

从以上列表之一查看了三个人道主义援助组织之后，请选择您喜欢的组织。

Presentation Assignment 演示作业

Prepare a PPT with at least 20 slides describing:

准备至少包含 20 张幻灯片的 PPT，其中包括：

Who do they primarily help? 他们主要为谁提供帮助？

Where do they primarily work? 他们主要在哪里工作？

Where do they get their money from? 他们从哪里得到钱？

Do you think they are truly neutral and impartial? 您认为它们真正中立且公正吗？

Do you think having military support will help protect humanitarian aid workers in conflict zones, or put the aid workers in greater danger?

您认为获得军事支持将有助于保护冲突地区的人道主义援助人员，还是使援助人员面临更大的危险？

Aspirational Principles 志向原则

“The Red Cross/NGO Code also lists a number of more “aspirational principles” which are derived from experience with development assistance.”

“红十字会/非政府组织守则还列出了一些更多的“理想原则”，这些原则源于发展援助的经验。”

Agencies should operate with respect to culture and custom

机构应在文化和习俗方面运作

Humanitarian response should use local resources and capacities as much as possible.

人道主义应对措施应尽可能利用当地资源和能力。

The participation of the beneficiaries should be encouraged

应鼓励受益人参与

Emergency response should strive to reduce future vulnerabilities

应急响应应努力减少未来的漏洞

Agencies should be accountable to both donors and beneficiaries

机构应对捐助者和受益者负责

Humanitarian agencies should use information activities to portray victims as dignified human beings, not hopeless objects.

人道主义机构应利用信息活动将受害者描绘成有尊严的人，而不是绝望的物体。

Quiz 测验

You are a humanitarian aid worker in a civil war. In that war a Western country is supporting a dictator that most of the people in that country hate, but he's getting huge money from western countries so they can get that country's natural resources cheaply. So, the dictator doesn't care about what the people think. Consequently, a rebel army has formed and is fighting against the government.

您是内战中的人道主义援助人员。在那场战争中，一个西方国家正在支持一个独裁者，该独裁者表示那个国家的大多数人都讨厌，但他从西方国家那里获得了巨额资金，因此他们可以廉价地获得该国的自然资源。因此，独裁者不在乎人们的想法。因此，一支反政府武装已经组成并正在与政府作战。

1. Your boss ordered you to take a convoy of trucks with food and medicine to help a small town where the people are hungry. The people in that town support the dictator. On the way there your convoy of trucks is stopped by rebels. There are three of them. They have guns, but you've got 10 guys with guns in your convoy. They want all of your food and medicine. They say they are starving to death and much hungrier than the people in the town you're supposed to take the food and medicine to. What should you do?
你的老板命令你带一辆载有食品和药品的卡车，去帮助一个饥饿的小镇。那个镇上的人支持独裁者。在那里，您的卡车车队被叛军拦下。一共有三个。他们有枪，但是您的车队中有 10 个人拿着枪。他们想要您所有的食物和药品。他们说，他们饿死了，比您应该把食物和药品带到镇上的人们要饿得多。你该怎么办？
 - a. Get your 10 guys with guns to shoot them because you have to follow orders.
射击三个叛军，因为您的命令是将援助带到支持独裁者的城镇。
 - b. Try to pursue them to take only half so the aid keeps flowing.
让他们只拿走一半的补给。
 - c. Let them take all of it.
让他们拿走全部。
 - d. Turn back where you were coming from.
回到你来的地方。

2. Does having a military escort help protect your convoy of trucks with aid, or put it in greater danger?
拥有军事护送是否可以帮您保护卡车车队，或者使其处于更大的危险之中？
 - a. It usually helps protect the aid workers and the food and medicine
它通常有助于保护救援人员以及食品和药品
 - b. It usually puts the aid workers in much greater danger
这通常会使得救援人员面临更大的危险
 - c. It's about 50/50
大约是 50/50
 - d. It's always a good idea to have a military escort when traveling in conflict zones.
在冲突地区旅行时，有军事陪同总是一个好主意。

3. The boxes with food and medicine in your truck have USA written in big letters on every box. The rebels hate the USA because they know Americans are helping the government. What would you do before you start on your journey to the small town?
你卡车上装有食品和药品的箱子，每个箱子上都用大字写着“美国”。叛军憎恨美国，因为他们知道美国人在帮助政府。在你开始去小镇的旅行之前，你会做什么？
 - a. Change the boxes so they don't appear to be from the USA.
把盒子换一下，这样看起来就不会是美国货了。
 - b. Leave the food and medicine in the same boxes but try to paint over the big USA signs.
把食物和药品放在同一个盒子里，但尽量盖上美国的大招牌。
 - c. Just follow orders and deliver the boxes the way they are.
只需遵循订单并按原样交付包装箱即可。
 - d. Pretend to be sick so you don't have to go with that convoy.

假装生病，所以您不必和那个车队一起去。

4. When you get to the small town what should you do?
到达小镇时，您应该做什么？
 - a. Start giving the aid supplies to the poor and sick people yourself as quickly as possible.
尽快开始向贫困者和病人提供援助物资。
 - b. Look for the local leaders and/or health providers so they can find people to help you distribute the supplies.
寻找当地领导人和/或卫生保健提供者，以便他们可以找到人来帮助您分发物资。
 - c. Look around for the hungriest and sickest people so you can give it to them first.
到处寻找最饥饿和最病的人，以便您可以先将其送给他们。
 - d. Find a warehouse so you can unload your trucks and figure out what to do later.
找到一个仓库，这样您就可以卸下卡车并弄清楚以后要做什么。

5. One of the local people helping you is not very smart and keep making mistakes and getting in the way. What should you do?
帮助您的当地人之一不是很聪明，会不断犯错误并妨碍您前进。你该怎么办？
 - a. Tell him to go away. 叫他走开。
 - b. Get a local person to tell him to go away. 让当地人告诉他离开。
 - c. Try to teach him how to do better. 尝试教他如何做得更好。
 - d. Call the local police (if there are any police) and get them to take him away.
给当地警察打电话（如果有警察），叫他们带走他。

6. Do you think that sending photos of starving people to all the newspapers in the world is a good idea to help get money?
您认为向世界上所有报纸发送挨饿的人的照片是帮助赚钱的好主意吗？
 - a. Yes
 - b. Probably
 - c. Probably not
 - d. No

7. Suppose when your convoy arrives at the small town there are some foreign reporters there that start asking questions about your trip and your NGO. What should you tell them?
假设您的车队到达小镇时，那里有一些外国记者开始询问有关您的旅行和您的非政府组织的问题。你应该告诉他们什么？
 - a. The rebels are thieves and stole half or most of your food and medicine.
叛军是盗贼，偷走了您大部分的食物和药品。
 - b. The dictator is a really bad guy who is starving and killing his own people just so he can get rich.
独裁者真是个坏人，他饿死并杀死自己的人民，只是为了致富。
 - c. Don't say anything. 不要说什么
 - d. Show them photos of the rebels. 向他们展示叛军的照片。

8. Imagine you gave $\frac{3}{4}$ of your medical supplies to the rebels, gave the rest to the people in the town and then went back to your NGO in a safe place. Your boss is really angry at you. What should you do?
想象一下，您将 $\frac{3}{4}$ 的医疗物资交给了叛军，其余的交给了镇上的人们，然后又回到了安全的地方回到您的非政府组织。你的老板真的很生你的气。你该怎么办？
 - a. Argue with your boss that you would have been killed if you didn't give the food and medicine to the rebels.
与您的老板争辩说，如果您不向叛乱分子提供食品和药品，您将被杀害。

- b. Quit your NGO and go to work for a different one.
退出您的非政府组织，然后去另一个工作。
 - c. Contact the people that give money to your NGO and try to pursue them to understand your need for impartiality and neutrality.
请与向您的 NGO 捐款的人联系，并尝试让他们了解您对公正和中立的需求。
 - d. Just forget about it and keep trying to do your job.
只需忘记它，然后继续尝试做您的工作即可。
9. NGO stands for: 非政府组织代表:
- a. Not Giving Over - that is, helping everyone 不放弃-也就是说，帮助所有人
 - b. Never a Government Organization 从来没有政府组织
 - c. Non-Governmental Organization 非政府组织
 - d. Non-Giving Organization 非捐赠组织
10. NGO work is usually 非政府组织的工作通常是_____.
- a. Dangerous 危险的
 - b. more dangerous in some places than others 在某些地方比其他地方更危险
 - c. pretty safe compared to being a police officer 比起当警察还算安全
 - d. always fun 总是很有趣

Also see: 另请参阅:

<https://www1.essex.ac.uk/rightsinacutecrisis/report/morris.htm>

<https://www.intrac.org/resources/ontrac-28>

<http://foreignpolicy.com/2011/03/16/there-is-no-neutral-2>

Chapter 10 – Diplomacy 外交

Introduction 介绍

What is diplomacy? 什么是外交?

In both international and interpersonal relations, it's the art and science of building positive productive relationships between countries.

在国际关系中，这是在国家之间建立积极的生产关系的艺术和科学。

Diplomacy is a learned skill. Partly it's based on building trust and then establishing tangible forms of mutual benefit.

外交是一门学问。其部分基础是建立信任，然后建立有形的互利形式。

Diplomacy is used for all kinds of things. 外交是用来做各种事情的。

Can you name some? 你能说出外交的一些实际用途吗?

Improving trade, sharing educational and technical expertise, and resources, mutual defense, promoting regional stability and a hundred other things.

Bullies 恶霸

Unfortunately, bullies don't use diplomacy. They usually use violence and threats to achieve selfish goals. However, individuals and groups that are being bullied can form "minority coalitions" to protect themselves from bullying. That takes some diplomatic skill. Though this doesn't always work, there are times bullies can be persuaded to negotiate.

不幸的是，欺负者不使用外交手段。他们通常使用暴力和威胁来达到自私的目的。然而，被欺负的个人和团体可以组成“少数民族联盟”来保护自己不受欺负。这需要一些外交技巧。虽然这并不总是奏效，但有时可以说服欺负者进行谈判。

Most people and nations are not bullies and thus when they can work together they can find ways to educate the bullies such that the bullies learn there are better ways to get what they want. Three-year-olds often try to bully their moms into giving them candy. They might scream and fall on the floor in hysterical outbursts knowing full well this embarrasses their mom. Just like selfish three-year-olds, bullies need to be educated.

大多数人和国家都不是欺负者，因此当他们能够一起工作时，他们可以找到教育欺负者的方法，这样欺负者就知道有更好的方法得到他们想要的。三岁的孩子经常欺负他们的妈妈给他们糖果。他们可能会尖叫，然后歇斯底里地摔在地上，因为他们很清楚这会让他们妈妈难堪。就像自私的三岁小孩一样，欺负者需要接受教育。

Root of the English Word “Diplomacy” 英语“外交”一词的词根

Though the history of diplomacy is at least 5,000 years old, the English word “diplomacy” comes from the Greek word “*diploun*” which literally means “fold.” This is the same root word for “diploma.” The translation “fold” refers to the fact that ancient messages were usually documents that were “folded” for transport, though in ancient Greece they were often sealed in a metal plate and sewn together. Documents transported in this way were called “diplomas.” (Reference: A Natural History of Diplomacy, Chapter 3 of the book manuscript in progress, *When Diplomacy Works* by Shuhei Kurizaki)

虽然外交史至少有 5000 年的历史，但英语中的“外交”一词来源于希腊语“*diploun*”，字面意思是“fold”。这是“diploma”的同一个词根。“fold”的翻译是指古代信息通常是运输而“fold”的文件，尽管在古希腊，它们常常被封在一个金属板里，缝在一起。以这种方式传送的文件被称为“文凭”

Ancient History of Diplomacy 古代外交史

Mesopotamian Diplomacy 美索不达米亚外交

“Sumerians, the early inhabitants of Mesopotamia, invented writing sometime in the fourth millennium BC. Archaeologists discovered the first diplomatic documents from the period 2500 BC. These documents include references to relations among city-states, peace negotiations, arbitrations, and status of envoys. These early diplomatic notes were written on clay tablets using cuneiform characters. In typical diplomatic protocol, on arrival, the messenger would read the message from a clay tablet and provide an additional oral explanation. The dispatch of single messengers, usually on foot, gradually evolved into messenger systems with relay stations situated on the main roads.

苏美尔人，美索不达米亚的早期居民，在公元前四千年的某个时候发明了文字。考古学家发现了公元前 2500 年的第一批外交文件。这些文件包括提及城邦之间的关系、和平谈判、仲裁和特使的地位。这些早期的外交笔记是用楔形文字写在泥板上的。在典型的外交礼节中，信使到达时会从一块泥板上读出信息，并提供额外的口头解释。单一信使的派遣，通常是步行，逐渐演变成在主要道路上设有中继站的信使系统。

“In the Babylon era, during the rule of Hammurabi (seventeenth century BC), a highly functional system of messengers was developed. In the same period, according to the archives of Mari, there was a well-developed system of envoys ranging from simple messengers to ‘plenipotential ambassadors’ empowered to negotiate agreements on behalf of their masters. The archives of Mari also included the first references to diplomatic immunities, diplomatic passports, and letters of accreditation. “在巴比伦时代，在汉谟拉比统治时期（公元前 17 世纪），一个高度实用的信使系统得到发展。在同一时期，根据马里的档案，有一个发达的特使制度，从简单的信使到有权代表其主人谈判协议的“全权大使”。马里档案馆还首次提到外交豁免权、外交护照和认证书。

Diplomatic letters in the Mari Archives: 马里档案馆的外交信函：

<https://discoverarchive.vanderbilt.edu/bitstream/handle/1803/4005/OnReadingTheDiplomatic.pdf?sequence=1>

Mesopotamian Diplomacy Vocabulary 美索不达米亚外交词汇

Inhabitants - A person or animal that lives in a specific place - For example he is an inhabitant of Germany.

居住者-居住在特定地方的人或动物-例如他是德国的居民。

Peace negotiations - Discussion for the purpose of making peace.

和平谈判-以和平为目的的讨论

Arbitration (noun) (arbitrate, verb) - Using a “third party” (someone not involved) to help resolve a conflict or disagreement. Arbitration

(名词) (arbitrate, 动词) -使用“第三方”(不涉及的人)帮助解决冲突或分歧。

Envoys - an official messenger, representative or agent of one nation to another

使节-一个国家派往另一个国家的官方信使、代表或代理人

Cuneiform - Ancient writing system of Akkadians, Assyrians, Babylonians, Persians, and others.

楔形文字-阿卡迪亚人、亚述人、巴比伦人、波斯人和其他人的古代书写系统。

Protocol - The formal customs, regulations and etiquette required when dealing with high ranking diplomats and government officials.

礼节-与高级外交官和政府官员打交道时所需的正式习俗、规章和礼仪。

Etiquette - requirements for good social behavior within any class or group of people

礼仪.任何阶层或群体内良好社会行为的要求

Clay tablet - a piece of clay used for writing in ancient times

粘土碑-古代用来写字的一块粘土

Relay station - In ancient times a place along a long road where messengers can pass a message to another messenger so the message gets to its destination faster

中继站-在古代, 沿着一条很长的路, 信使可以把信息传递给另一个信使, 使信息更快地到达目的地

Hammurabi - Sixth king of the First Babylonian Dynasty, reigning from 1792 BC to 1750 BC 汉谟拉比-巴比伦第一王朝的第六位国王, 从公元前 1792 年到公元前 1750 年统治

Archive - a place where ancient records or historical documents are kept

档案馆-保存古代记录或历史文件的地方

Plenipotential - full authority of a government. A plenipotential ambassador can made decisions in the name of the leader of the country he or she is from.

全权——政府的全权。全权大使可以他或她来自的国家的领导人的名义作出决定。

Diplomatic immunities - Protection and immunity from some laws and taxes given to official representatives of foreign governments, for example some high ranking government officials when in foreign countries cannot be arrested for any crime, cannot be searched at border crossings, and don't have to pay taxes in the countries where they work

外交豁免权——对外国政府官方代表的某些法律和税收的保护和豁免权，例如在外国不能因任何罪行被捕的一些高级政府官员，不能在过境点被搜查，也不必在他们工作的国家纳税

Diplomatic passports - A special passport for diplomats which identifies them as diplomats and in many cases gives them diplomatic immunity

外交护照-外交人员的一种特殊护照，它表明他们是外交官，在许多情况下给予他们外交豁免权

Letters of accreditation - Diplomatic accreditation is the process in which an ambassador is certified as one country's official representative to another. Accreditation occurs when a new ambassador presents "letters of credence", or diplomatic credentials, to the host country's head of state.

认证书-外交认证是指大使被认证为一个国家对另一个国家的官方代表的过程。当新大使向东道国国家元首提交“信任书”或外交证书时，即表示认可。

Mesopotamian Diplomacy Quiz 1 美索不达米亚外交测验 1

1. The history of diplomacy is at least _____ years old.
 - a. 500
 - b. 1,500
 - c. 3,500
 - d. 4,500
2. Diplomatic letters from _____ date back to about 2500 BC.
 - a. Babylonia
 - b. Mesopotamia
 - c. Talleyrand
 - d. ancient Greece
3. An inhabitant is a person or animal _____.
 - a. From a faraway place
 - b. Traveling
 - c. that lives in a specific place
 - d. died
4. Arbitration is when _____.
 - a. a third party is used to help resolve a conflict or disagreement
 - b. a third party is causing problems for the first two parties
 - c. two groups of people solve problems by themselves
 - d. two groups of people end up in a war
5. An envoy is _____.
 - a. a person who helps make peace between warring parties
 - b. an official messenger, representative or agent of one nation to another
 - c. a document that specifies the terms and conditions for peace
 - d. the person who answers the door at an ambassador's house
6. Cuneiform is _____.
 - a. An ancient kind of dress that comes down just below the knees
 - b. Ancient writing system of Greece
 - c. Ancient writing system of Akkadians, Assyrians, Babylonians, Persians, and others

- d. Ancient writing system of Greece, Rome, Germany, France and Italy
7. An archive is _____.
- an ancient civilization older than Babylonia
 - a place where diplomats can buy things very cheaply without paying taxes
 - a place where ancient records or historical documents are kept
 - a scientific method for determining the age of old documents
8. Letters of Accreditation _____.
- give a person credit when buying something at a traditional market
 - prove that the person is “credit worthy” that is OK to lend money to
 - give a person credit for having done something good in the past
 - prove someone is the official representative of one country to another
9. A Diplomatic Passport _____.
- allows a person to go anywhere anytime unharmed
 - identifies a person as a diplomat and in many cases gives them diplomatic immunity
 - signifies that a person really is not an agent provocateur of another nation
 - is a kind of passport that never expires and is usually waterproof too
10. Diplomatic Immunity _____.
- provides immunity from some laws and taxes given to official representatives of foreign governments
 - is a special kind of vaccination given only to diplomats so they don't get diseases in the countries they're going to
 - gives diplomats the legal power to say anything they want to anyone they want without fear of reprisal
 - the place where diplomats live when they're on vacation from their foreign postings

Amarna Diplomacy (14th Century BC) 阿玛娜外交（公元前 14 世纪）

“Three centuries after Babylon, Amarna diplomacy emerged. It is usually singled out as the most developed diplomatic system in the ancient civilizations. Professor Raymond Cohen argues that Amarna diplomacy was the first fully developed diplomatic system comprising the main diplomatic techniques, including the sending of representatives, negotiating, and the handing out of immunities. He challenges the predominant view among diplomatic historians that the first diplomatic system was established in Renaissance Italy with the establishment of permanent embassies among Italian city states.

“巴比伦三个世纪后，阿玛纳外交出现。它通常被列为古代文明中最发达的外交制度。雷蒙德·科恩教授认为，阿玛纳外交是第一个全面发展的外交体系，包括派遣代表、谈判和发放豁免权等主要外交手段。他对外交历史学家的主要观点提出质疑，即第一个外交体系是在文艺复兴时期的意大利建立的，当时意大利城邦之间建立了永久大使馆。

“Amarna diplomacy is named after the Egyptian city of Tel-el Amarna, where archaeologists discovered the first diplomatic archive (Tal-Amarna letters). According to available sources, Tel-el Amarna was the capital of the Egyptian XVIII dynasty (sixteenth–thirteenth century BC), during the reign of Amenhotep III (1390–1352 BC) and Amenhotep IV (1352–1336 BC). These dynasties oversaw a period of extensive creativity, particularly noticeable in the architectural constructions. Diplomacy was favored over war.

“阿玛纳外交是以埃及城市特拉埃尔阿玛纳命名的，考古学家在那里发现了第一个外交档案（塔尔阿玛纳信件）。据现有资料显示，在阿蒙霍特普三世（公元前 1390-1352 年）和阿蒙霍特普四世（公元前 1352-1336 年）统治期间，特拉阿玛纳是埃及第十八王朝（公元前 16-13 世纪）的首都。这些朝代见证了一个广泛的创造性时期，尤其是在建筑结构中。外交比战争更受欢迎。

<https://www.diplomacy.edu/2014/evolution/february/background>

Also see: <http://www.theamarnaresearchfoundation.org>

After these brief descriptions of Mesopotamian and Amarna diplomatic histories the above excellent site goes on to briefly describe:

在对美索不达米亚和阿玛纳的外交历史进行了简要描述之后，上述绝佳地点接着进行了简要描述：

Persian Diplomacy 波斯外交

... forming the bridge that linked the ancient world with Greece. ...

形成连接古代世界和希腊的桥梁。

Most scholars of ancient history seem to acknowledge that Amarna Period of Egyptian history was the height of ancient diplomatic history.

大多数古代史学者似乎都承认，埃及阿玛纳时期是古代外交史的鼎盛时期。

“As evidenced by the archives of Mari, the Amarna letters and later the Hittite documents, as early as the second millennium BC the peoples of the Near East engaged in intense diplomatic exchanges that required a formalized system of international relations, modelled on interpersonal relationships in which metaphors of brotherhood and parent/child relationships were used to describe the relationship between the kings of different communities. The sources provide evidence of some terms used to denote this system: “*salimum*” (peace, reconciliation, friendship) and “*atḥutum*” or “*ahḥutum*” (brotherhood).

“马里的档案、阿玛纳的信件和后来的赫梯人的文件证明，早在公元前第二个千年，近东人民就进行了紧张的外交交流，需要一个正式的国际关系制度，以人际关系为模型，用兄弟情谊和亲子关系的隐喻来描述不同社区国王之间的关系。资料来源提供了一些用于表示这一制度的术语的证据：“萨利姆”（和平、和解、友谊）和“阿图姆”或“阿图姆”（兄弟情谊）。

The first expression could indicate both the equal relationship between kings who called each other “brothers”, and the relationship between sovereign people and subordinate people, respectively “fathers” and “sons”. “*Aḫḫūtum*” expressed the nature of “*salimum*,” and referred to both the cordial relations that preceded the alliance and to the new link that came into being...”

第一种表达方式既可以表示称为“兄弟”的国王之间的平等关系，也可以表示主权人民和从属人民之间的关系，分别是“父亲”和“儿子”。“阿 *ḫḫūtum*”表达了“*salimum*”的性质，既指同盟之前的友好关系，也指产生的新联系

<http://www.scielo.org.za/pdf/funda/v20n1/17.pdf>

The above article goes to state these vastly older approaches to diplomacy “profoundly influenced” the Romans and forced them to rethink their approach to international relations. 上面的文章阐述了这些古老的外交方法“深刻影响”罗马人，并迫使他们重新思考他们的国际关系的方法。

The Amarna tablets by the way are written in Akkadian cuneiform script and which are uniquely different from any other Akkadian dialect.

顺便说一句，阿玛纳石碑是用阿卡德楔形文字书写的，与其他任何阿卡德方言都有独特的区别。

<http://www.tau.ac.il/humanities/semitic/amarna.html>

Linguistics: Akkadian and Semitic Languages of Arabic and Hebrew 语言学：阿拉伯和希伯来语的阿卡德语和闪族语

Learning that “*salimum*” in Akkadian means “peace, reconciliation, friendship” might just remind us that “*Salam*” in Arabic means peace, and “*Shalom*” in Hebrew means peace. So, given the similarities in these words:

得知“萨利姆”在阿卡迪亚语中的意思是“和平、和解、友谊”，也许会提醒我们，“萨拉姆”在阿拉伯语中的意思是和平，而“沙龙”在希伯来语中的意思是和平。因此，考虑到这些词的相似之处：

Salimum → Salam → Shalom

This is not surprising as Arabic and Hebrew are both Semitic languages.

这并不奇怪，因为阿拉伯语和希伯来语都是闪族语言。

Sumerian and Akkadian were once the lingua franca of the most highly developed international world as it evolved along the Silk Roads. To unlock the secrets of the ancient world, these are the languages to learn.

苏美尔人和阿卡德人曾经是最发达的国际语言，它是沿着丝绸之路发展而来的。为了解锁古代世界的秘密，这些都是要学习的语言。

https://www.researchgate.net/publication/330753957_Akkadian_and_Sumerian_Language_Contact

https://www.academia.edu/10841183/Introduction_to_the_Akkadian_Language

<https://www.lingfil.uu.se/semitic-languages>

[It is consequently not surprising that the IB international education program forbids the study of these languages for credit. Western hegemony is in the process of erasing as much of the ancient world as possible, to place Euro-American culture as the beginning and ultimate form of culture. What they cannot forbid in classrooms, they bomb, in Iraq, Iran, Syria and other cradle of civilization nations. Erasing history is a major preoccupation of western hegemony.

[因此，IB 国际教育计划禁止以学分形式学习这些语言并不奇怪。西方霸权正在尽可能地抹杀古代世界，把欧美文化作为文化的开始和最终形式。他们不能禁止的是在教室里，他们轰炸伊拉克，伊朗，叙利亚和其他文明国家的摇篮。抹杀历史是西方霸权的一大心病。

<https://www.npr.org/2020/01/06/794006073/trump-says-hell-target-iran-s-cultural-sites-that-s-illegal>

Below is a link to a translation of one of the Amarna Letters:

以下是其中一封阿玛纳字母翻译的链接：

Amarna Letter no. 255 as Diplomatic Correspondence: A New Interpretation by Krzysztof J. Baranowski. It gives a pretty good inside view to some of the complexities in translating ancient documents.

Amarna 信号 255 作为外交往来：Krzysztof J. Baranowski 的新解释。它很好地说明了翻译古代文献时的一些复杂情况。

<https://depot.ceon.pl/bitstream/handle/123456789/5107/Baranowski%20Amarna%20Letter%20no.%20255.pdf?sequence=1>

If you're really interested in this history of diplomacy read: *Amarna diplomacy: the beginnings of international relations* by Cohen, Raymond, 1947, Westbrook, Raymond, 2002.

如果您真的对这段外交史感兴趣，请阅读：《阿玛娜外交：国际关系的开端》，科恩，雷蒙德，1947年，威斯布鲁克，雷蒙德，2002年。

http://paperroom.ipsa.org/papers/paper_12434.pdf

Also read:

Egypt's Foreign Relations During the Amarna Period: Recent and Future Research by Richard H. Wilkinson,

Current Work at Amarna by Barry Kemp

Amarna 时期的埃及对外关系：Richard H. Wilkinson 的最新和未来研究，Barry Kemp 在 Amarna 的最新工作

<http://www.theamarnaresearchfoundation.org/Sun2009%20Spring%20Vol%2015%20No%201.pdf>

Ancient Diplomacy Vocabulary Quiz 2 古代外交词汇测验 2

1. Amarna was in _____.
 - a. Greece
 - b. Mesopotamia
 - c. Egypt
 - d. Rome

2. Amarna diplomacy started around the _____.
 - a. 10th Century BCE
 - b. 14th Century BCE
 - c. 18th Century BCE
 - d. 20th Century BCE

3. The dynasties of Amenhotep III and Amenhotep IV were periods of _____.
 - a. creativity in architecture and diplomatic advances
 - b. slow decline in sciences
 - c. rapid decline in science and diplomacy
 - d. creativity in war mongering and provocation

4. The Amarna Letters describe relations between kings of different communities as _____ and the relationship between sovereign and subordinate people as _____ relationships.
 - a. masters and slaves / brotherhood
 - b. brotherhood / fathers and sons' relationships
 - c. Misogyny / calculated domination
 - d. Strictly vertical / horizontal levels of power sharing

5. Records in the Amarna Letters suggests that _____.
 - a. Roman diplomacy greatly influenced Egyptian diplomacy
 - b. Greek diplomacy influenced Egyptian diplomacy
 - c. The vastly older Egyptian diplomacy greatly influenced later Roman diplomacy
 - d. Romans did not need to rethink their diplomatic systems

6. The Amarna Letters were written in _____.
 - a. Akkadian cuneiform
 - b. Babylonian cuneiform
 - c. Latin
 - d. Greek

7. In those letters the word "salimum" meant _____.
 - a. war, strife, conflict, aggression
 - b. domination, control & dictatorial rulership
 - c. peace, reconciliation, friendship
 - d. ambivalence, neutral feelings, lukewarm relations

8. Arabic and Hebrew are _____ languages.
 - a. Latin
 - b. Greek
 - c. Semitic
 - d. Indo-European

9. It is possible that the Akkadian word for peace is the root word for the Arabic and Hebrew words:
- Cuneiform and Latvia
 - Anarchy and mayhem
 - Salam and Shalom
 - Apekabar and Kabarbai
10. _____ diplomacy was probably the link between Greek diplomacy and the rest of the ancient world.
- Egyptian
 - Mesopotamian
 - Persian
 - Turkic

Kautilya & Ancient Indian Diplomacy 和古代印度外交

After Alexander “the Great” left India the next great empire to emerge was called the Mauryan Empire, which was larger than the British India and extended to Iran in the West. A man named Kautilya was a very powerful and articulate minister (317-293 BCE) that advised the king. He wrote a book titled *Arthashastra* that covered war, statecraft, politics, ethics and diplomacy. War belongs first on that list because he believed a king must generate huge wealth, host huge armies and conquer neighboring kingdoms to expand the size and wealth of this state.

亚历山大大帝（Alexander）离开印度后，下一个伟大的帝国诞生了，称为莫里扬帝国（Mauryan Empire），它比英属印度还大，并延伸到了西方的伊朗。一位名叫考蒂里亚（Kautilya）的人是一位非常有权力和善于表达的部长，曾为国王提供建议。他写了一本书，题为《阿尔萨斯特拉》，内容涉及战争，政治，道德和外交。战争在这份名单上排在首位，因为他认为国王必须创造巨大的财富，拥有庞大的军队，并征服邻国以扩大该州的规模和财富。

He believed that a state was always at war or preparing for war and diplomacy was just another weapon, albeit an especially powerful weapon.

他认为，一个国家一直处于战争状态，或者为战争和外交做准备只是另一种武器，尽管它是一种特别强大的武器。

Kautilya believed Diplomatic relationships were created just to be broken by betraying the terms of the treaty. This he believed ultimately serving the kingdom. His concepts on treaties were very similar to Machiavelli and later on, German Chancellor Otto von Bismarck (1815–1898). He wrote: “A King who understands the true implication of diplomacy conquers the whole world.”

Kautilya 相信建立外交关系是为了打破这种关系，并且背叛了条约的条款。他认为这最终将为王国服务。他关于条约的概念与马基雅维利和后来的德国总理奥托·冯·s 斯麦（Otto von Bismarck, 1815-1898 年）非常相似。他写道：“一位了解外交真正含意的国王征服了整个世界。”

Horrid as it is, Kautilya may have been right, at least for a short time. Allen Dulles could well have learned the philosophies of Kautilya from his “friend” Vijaya Lakshmi Nehru. The Dulles brothers were the principle architects of WWII. They more than any other individuals empowered and emboldened Germany and Japan prior to WWII. “Who in the end profited most from WWII?” The roots of WWII may be within the ultimately cynical philosophies of Kautilya in about 300 BC. Such an empire is doomed to failure, as nature abhors vacuums such as are invariably created by monopolar systems. The individual and collective human inborn desire for freedom invariably work strongly against a monopolar world structure lasting very long. How long can someone ride a unicycle? Not so long. The energy required to maintain balance is simply too great. Suck too much energy from the rest of the world and it will unify in rebellion.

尽管如此，Kautilya 至少在短时间内是正确的。艾伦·杜勒斯很可能已经从他的“朋友”维贾亚·拉克希米·尼赫鲁那里学到了 Kautilya 的哲学。杜勒斯兄弟是第二次世界大战的主要建筑师。他们比第二次世界大战前赋予德国和日本更大的权力和勇气的其他任何人都要多。“到底谁从第二次世界大战中获利最多？”第二次世界大战的根源可能是在公元前 300 年的 Kautilya 最终愤世嫉俗的哲学之内。然而，这样的帝国注定要失败，因为自然界讨厌诸如单极系统总是产生的真空。人类与生俱来的对自由的天生渴望始终与长期存在的单极世界结构产生强烈的反作用。有人可以骑独轮车多长时间？不太长。维持平衡所需的能量实在太大了。从世界其他地方吸取过多的能量，它将在叛乱中统一起来。建立外交关系只是为了最终为王国服务。他关于条约的概念与马基雅维利以及后来的 very 斯麦非常相似。他写道：“一位了解外交真正含意的国王征服了整个世界。”

“The Arthashastra dedicates many chapters on the need, methods and goals of secret service, and how to build then use a network of spies that work for the state. The spies should be trained to adopt roles and guises, to use coded language to transmit information, and be rewarded by their performance and the results they achieve, states the text.

“Arthashastra 专门讨论了秘密服务的需求，方法和目标，以及如何建立然后使用为国家服务的间谍网络的许多章节。应当对间谍进行培训，使其扮演角色和伪装，使用编码语言来传递信息，并因其表现和所取得的成果而得到回报。

“The roles and guises recommended for Vyanjana (appearance) agents by the Arthashastra include ascetics, forest hermits, mendicants, cooks, merchants, doctors, astrologers, consumer householders, entertainers, dancers, female agents and others. It suggests that members from these professions should be sought to serve for the secret service. A prudent state, states the text, must expect that its enemies seek information and are spying inside its territory and spreading propaganda, and therefore it must train and reward double agents to gain identity about such hostile intelligence operations. “Arthashastra 为 Vyanjana

（出场）特工推荐的角色和指南包括禁欲主义者，森林隐士，务工人员，厨师，商人，医生，占星家，消费户，艺人，舞蹈演员，女特工和其他人员。它建议应寻求这些专业的成员担任秘密服务。案文载明，一个审慎的国家必须期望其敌人寻求情报并在其领土内从事间谍活动并进行宣传，因此，它必须训练并奖励双重代理人，以获取有关这种敌对情报行动的身份。

“The goals of the secret service, in Arthashastra, was to test the integrity of government officials, spy on cartels and population for conspiracy, to monitor hostile kingdoms suspected of preparing for war or in war against the state, to check spying and propaganda wars by hostile states, to destabilize enemy states, to get rid of troublesome powerful people who could not be challenged openly.

The spy operations and its targets, states verse 5.2.69 of Arthashastra, should be pursued ‘with respect to traitors and unrighteous people, not with respect to others.’”

“在 Arthashastra 的特勤局的目标是测试政府官员的完整性，监视卡特尔和人口的阴谋，监视涉嫌准备为战争或与国家作战的敌对王国，检查间谍和宣传战争被敌对国家破坏稳定，摆脱无法公开挑战的麻烦大国。

Arthashastra 第 5.2.69 节指出，间谍活动及其目标应“针对叛徒和不义之人，而不是针对他人”。

https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Arthashastra#On_spying,_propaganda_and_information

The following is a portion of the *Arthashastra*: 以下是 Arthashastra 的一部分：

Book XII, “Concerning a Powerful Enemy”

第十二本书，“关于强大的敌人”

CHAPTER I. THE DUTIES OF A MESSENGER

第一章信使的职责。

If the enemy desires to make peace on condition of the weak king surrendering a portion of this army, he may give the enemy such of his elephants and cavalry as are uncontrollable or as are provided with poison; if the enemy desires to make peace on condition of his surrendering his chief men, he may send over to the enemy such portion of his army as is full of traitors, enemies and wild tribes under the command of a trusted officer, so that both his enemy and his own undesirable army may perish; or he may provide the enemy with an army composed of fiery spies, taking care to satisfy his own disappointed men (before sending them over to the enemy); or he may transfer to the enemy his own faithful and hereditary army that is capable to hurt the enemy on occasions of trouble; if the enemy desires to make peace on condition of his paying certain amount of wealth, he may give the enemy such precious articles as do not find a purchaser or such raw products as are of no use in war;

if the enemy desires to make peace on condition of his ceding a part of his land, he should provide the enemy with that kind of land which he can recover, which is always at the mercy of another enemy, which possesses no protective defenses, or which can be colonized at considerable cost of men and money; or he may make peace, surrendering his whole state except his capital....

如果敌人希望在软弱的国王交出这支部队的一部分的情况下实现和平，则他可以将无法控制或带有毒药的大象和骑兵交给敌人；如果敌人希望在投降首领的情况下实现和平，则可以在可信赖的军官的指挥下，将充满叛徒，敌人和野蛮部落的那部分军队移交给敌人。因此，他的敌人和他自己的不良军队都可能灭亡。或者，他可以向敌人提供一支由炽热间谍组成的军队，并照顾他们自己失望的士兵（在将他们交给敌人之前）。或者，他可以将自己的忠实世袭军队移交给敌人，在遇到麻烦时，他们有能力伤害敌人。如果敌人希望在支付一定数量的财富的条件下实现和平，则可以给敌人提供找不到购买者的珍贵物品或在战争中没有用的原始产品。如果敌人希望在割让其一部分土地的条件下实现和平，则应向敌人提供他可以收回的那片土地，“这土地总是受到另一位敌人的摆布”，“它没有保护性防御”或“可以花费大量的人力和财力进行殖民”或他可以使和平，除了首都以外，放弃他的整个国家.....。

Fiery spies, hidden in an underground chamber, or in a tunnel, or inside a secret wall, may slay the enemy when the latter is carelessly amusing himself in a pleasure park or any other place of recreation; or spies under concealment may poison him; or women under concealment may throw a snake, or poison, or fire or poisonous smoke over his person when he is asleep in confined place; or spies, having access to the enemy's harem, may, when opportunities occur, do to the enemy whatever is found possible on the occasion, and then get out unknown. On such occasions, they should make use of the signs indicative of the purpose of their society.

当敌人在游乐园或任何其他娱乐场所不小心将自己逗弄时，隐藏在地下房间，隧道或秘密围墙内的炽热间谍可能会杀死敌人。否则间谍可能会毒死他。当他在密闭的地方睡觉时，被隐藏的妇女可能会向其身上投掷蛇，毒药，火或有毒的烟雾。或有机会接触敌人后宫的间谍，可能会在机会出现时对敌人进行任何可能的事，然后逃脱。在这种情况下，他们应使用表明其社会目的的标志。

https://ia802703.us.archive.org/13/items/Arthasastra_English_Translation/Arthashastra_of_Chanakya_-_English.pdf (Free download of entire text.)

In other words, even a messenger is an agent of war ultimately based on intrigue, deception and provocation and peace treaties designed to lower the enemies' defenses so as to make his destruction inevitable.

换句话说，即使是使者也是战争的最终推动者，其最终目的是基于阴谋诡计，欺骗和挑衅以及旨在降低另一国的防御力以摧毁其的和平条约。

Scholar Roger Boesche wrote a rather nice summary of Arthasastra.

学者 Roger Boesche 撰写了 Arthasastra 的精彩摘要

Kautilya's Arthashastra on War and Diplomacy in Ancient India

Kautilya 的《古代印度战争与外交理论》

by Roger Boesche

Abstract: Kautilya was the key adviser to the Indian king Chandragupta Maurya (c. 317-293 B.C.E.), who first united the Indian subcontinent in empire. Written about 300 B.C.E., Kautilya's Arthashastra was a science of politics intended to teach a wise king how to govern.

In this work, Kautilya offers wide-ranging and truly fascinating discussions on war and diplomacy, including his wish to have his king become a world conqueror, his analysis of which kingdoms are natural allies and which are inevitable enemies, his willingness to make treaties he knew he would break, his doctrine of silent war or a war of assassination against an unsuspecting king, his approval of secret agents who killed enemy leaders and sowed discord among them, his view of women as weapons of war, his use of religion and superstition to bolster his troops and demoralize enemy soldiers, the spread of disinformation, and his humane treatment of conquered soldiers and subjects.

摘要：考蒂里亚是印度国王昌德拉古普·毛里雅（Chandragupta Maurya，约公元前 317 年至 293 年）的主要顾问，后者首先在印度建立了印度次大陆。Kautilya 的《阿尔萨斯斯特拉》（Arthashastra）写于公元前 300 年左右，是一门政治科学，旨在教导明智的国王如何执政。

在这项工作中，Kautilya 对战争和外交进行了广泛而真正令人着迷的讨论，包括他希望国王成为世界征服者的愿望，他对哪些王国是自然盟友，哪些是不可避免的敌人的分析，他愿意订立条约。知道他会失败，他的沉默战争学说或对一个毫无戒心的国王的暗杀战争，他杀死了敌方领导人的秘密特工的批准，在他们之间撒下了不和，他认为妇女是战争武器，使用宗教和迷信加强他的部队，使敌军士气低落，虚假信息的传播，以及他对被征服的士兵和臣民的人道待遇。

<https://muse.jhu.edu/article/40432>

<https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Chanakya>

<https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Arthashastra>

Kautilya: Politics, Ethics and Statecraft

Kautilya: 政治，道德与治国之道, by Pravin Chandrasekaran (Harvard), May 2006

<https://mpr.ub.uni-muenchen.de/9962>

Ancient Chinese Diplomacy 中国古代外交

China's history has many illustrious diplomats. Probably the most famous is Zhang He, the great navigator that explored the maritime Silk Roads. But the roots of Chinese diplomacy are much older. Below I quote a good summary article.

中国历史上有许多杰出的外交官。也许最著名的是张鹤，他是探索海上丝绸之路的伟大航海家。但是，中国外交的根基要古老得多。在下面，我引用了一篇不错的摘要文章。

China's Cultural Diplomacy: Historical Origin, Modern Methods and Strategic Outcomes 中国的文化外交：历史渊源，现代方法和战略成果, by Parama Sinha Palit, January 13, 2014

Cultural Diplomacy: An Ancient Chinese Legacy 文化外交：中国古代遗产

Cultural Diplomacy (CD) is widely used by modern states for enhancing soft power. Soft power, popularized in the contemporary discourse on international relations by Joseph Nye, focuses on diplomatic engagement for strategic dividends. Several prominent political thinkers, e.g. Foucault, Bourdieu, Gramsci, Habermas and E.H. Carr, also have variously expounded on the concept prior to Nye. As a conceptual identity, soft power and the role of culture in its use are hardly limited to the western political discourse. Indeed, the prevalent impression of China's modern soft power strategy for connecting with the rest of the world being essentially an emulation of similar strategies pursued by major western powers overlooks the fact that soft power was strongly embedded in ancient Chinese history and philosophy.

文化外交（CD）被现代国家广泛用于增强软实力。约瑟夫·奈（Joseph Nye）在当代国际关系理论中广为传播的软实力，着眼于外交参与以获取战略红利。几位杰出的政治思想家，例如福柯，布迪厄，格拉姆西，哈贝马斯和 E.H. 在 Nye 之前，Carr 也曾对此概念进行过各种阐述。作为一种概念认同，软实力和文化的在其使用中的作用几乎不限于西方政治话语。的确，中国现代软实力战略与世界其他地区联系的普遍印象实质上是西方主要大国奉行的类似战略的模仿，却忽视了软实力已深深植根于中国古代历史和哲学的事实。

The specific period in Chinese history that can be identified for its distinct emphasis on spread of harmony and amity is the Spring and Autumn era (771 BC – 476 BC), also known as the Hundred Schools of Thought. Marked by significant cultural and intellectual developments, the historical thoughts of the period remain relevant in the modern era and are reflected in the contemporary Chinese articulation of soft power and its emphasis on CD. Thus, recognizing culture as an effective instrument of soft power and modern statecraft is an example of the pragmatism characterizing contemporary Chinese foreign policies.

可以肯定的是，在中国历史上的特定时期是春秋战国时代（公元前 771 年–公元前 476 年），也被称为“百年思想流派”。以重要的文化和智力发展为标志，这一时期的历史思想在现代仍然具有现实意义，并反映在当代中国对软实力及其对 CD 的强调中。因此，承认文化是软实力和现代治国方略的有效手段，是当代中国外交政策的实用主义特征的一个例子。

According to the literature of the Hundred Schools of Thought, China's ancient strategists preferred diplomatic maneuvering to secure state objectives and were averse to territorial expansion by force. Kong Zi or Confucius (551 BC – 479 BC) stressed the limitation and regulation of power. Rather than war, Confucius' teachings focused on education and humanity. Mencius (372 BC – 289 BC), another great thinker of the time, also denounced wars with the idea that benevolent kings who could easily win over masses had no enemies.

The Confucius-Mencius political construct rejected the need for possessing large territories for enhancing state prestige. The Chou kingdom (1027 BC – 256 BC), for example, was hardly large but was nonetheless able to retain its dynastic command for eight hundred years—the longest for any Chinese dynasty.

根据《一百个思想流派》的文献，中国古代的战略家更喜欢通过外交手段来确保国家目标，并反对以武力扩张领土。孔子或孔子（公元前 551 年–公元前 479 年）强调权力的限制和调节。孔子的教义不是战争，而是教育和人文。当时的另一个伟大思想家孟子（公元前 372 年–公元前 289 年）也谴责战争，认为仁慈的国王很容易战胜群众，没有敌人。

孔孟的政治体系拒绝了拥有大片领土的需要。增强国家声望。例如，周氏王国（公元前 1027 年–公元前 256 年）虽然规模不大，但仍然能够保持其王朝统治八百年，是中国王朝中最长的。

Along with Confucianism, the doctrine of Taoism and Mohism also emphasized “universal love” and the virtues of discussion and persuasion for solving problems.

Lao Zi, another ancient Chinese philosopher who wrote the main texts of Taoism along with Zhuang Zi, discounted wars, with the latter emphasizing education and humility. Ideas such as culture winning over an enemy and winning a battle before it is fought are replete in ancient Chinese writings.

与儒学一样，道家、墨家也强调“博爱”，强调讨论、劝导等解决问题的美德。

老子是中国另一位古代哲学家，他与庄子一起撰写了道教的主要著作，反对战争。后者强调教育和谦卑。强调利用文化交友等思想。这在中国古代文字中很常见。

The celebrated military strategist, Sun Zi (722 BC – 481 BC), in *The Art of War*, argued for attacking the enemy's mind rather than his fortified cities. Indeed, Chinese ancient philosophy and history rarely espoused hard power and focused on cultivating friends as opposed to engaging in conflicts.

Later Chinese history obviously produced different strategies and priorities dictated by national interests of the time. Nonetheless, soft power and CD – conspicuous in modern China's strategic engagement – are essentially products of its ancient history and tradition, not emulations of western experiences.

在《孙子兵法》中，著名的军事战略家孙子（722 BC – 481 BC）主张攻击敌人的思想而不是攻击他的防御工事。的确，中国古代哲学和历史很少拥护硬实力，而是注重培养朋友而不是冲突。

后来的中国历史显然根据当时的国家利益产生了不同的战略和优先事项。 尽管如此，软实力和裁谈会（在现代中国的战略参与中引人注目）本质上是其古代历史和传统的产物，而不是西方经验的模仿。

https://www.chinacenter.net/2014/china_currents/12-2/chinas-cultural-diplomacy-historical-origin-modern-methods-and-strategic-outcomes

Proxeny - Ancient Greek Diplomacy 代理-古希腊外交

“Proxeny in ancient Greece was an arrangement whereby a citizen (chosen by the city) hosted foreign ambassadors at his own expense, in return for honorary titles from the state. The citizen was called “proxenos.”

The proxeny decrees, which amount to letters of patent and resolutions of appreciation, were issued by one state to a citizen of another for service as proxenos, a kind of honorary consul looking after the interests of the other state’s citizens.

在古希腊，“代理人”是一种由市民（由城市选择）自费接待外国大使的安排，作为奖励，公民被授予国家荣誉称号，该公民被称为“proxenos”。

（由专利权书和鉴赏决议组成）由一个州签发给另一国的公民作为proxenos 服务，proxeno 是一种荣誉领事，负责照顾另一州公民的利益。

“A proxenos would use whatever influence he had in his own city to promote policies of friendship or alliance with the city he voluntarily represented. For example, Cimon was Sparta’s proxenos at Athens and during his period of prominence in Athenian politics, previous to the outbreak of the First Peloponnesian War, he strongly advocated a policy of cooperation between the two states. Cimon was known to be so fond of Sparta that he named one of his sons Lacedaemonius.

“ proxenos 将利用他在自己的城市中拥有的任何影响力来促进与他自愿代表的城市的友谊或结盟政策。 例如，西蒙（Cimon）是雅典的斯巴达（Sparta）的proxenos，在雅典政坛上的显赫时期，即第一次伯罗奔尼撒战争爆发之前，他强烈主张两国之间实行合作政策。 众所周知，西蒙（Cimon）非常喜欢斯巴达（Sparta），因此将他的儿子命名为 Lacedaemonius。

“Being another city's proxenos did not preclude taking part in war against that city, should it break out – since the proxenos’ ultimate loyalty was to his own city.

However, a proxenos would naturally try his best to prevent such a war from breaking out and to compose whatever differences were threatening to cause it. And once peace negotiations were on the way, a proxenos’ contacts and goodwill in the enemy city could be profitably used by his city.

“成为另一个城市的 proxenos 并不排除要与该城市爆发战争，因为 proxenos 的最终忠诚在于对自己城市的忠诚。

但是，proxenos 自然会竭尽全力防止这种战争爆发。他通过修复威胁战争的任
何分歧来做到这一点。一旦进行和平谈判，proxenos 在敌方城市的接触和善意
可能会非常有用。

“The position of proxenos for a particular city was often hereditary in a particular
family.” “

proxenos 在特定城市的地位通常是特定家庭的世袭。”

<https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Proxeny> [Reference to: The History of the
Peloponnesian War by Thucydides, Donald Lateiner, Richard Crawley & Who's Who in
the Greek World by John Hazel)

The History of the Peloponnesian War by Thucydides

<https://www.gutenberg.org/files/7142/7142-h/7142-h.htm>

Download: <http://www.gutenberg.org/ebooks/7142>

Modern Diplomacy 现代外交

Diplomacy in 13th Century Italy 十三世纪意大利的外交

Living organisms and even human created systems tend to evolve with periods of back-sliding here and there. Nonetheless, over a long enough period time most systems tend to get more complex and sophisticated. And thus, modern diplomacy in Europe was advanced in some ways by Italian innovations beginning in the 13th Century CE.

生命有机体甚至是人类创造的系统都趋向于发展-有时会出现后退时期。但是，在足够长的时间内，大多数系统会变得越来越复杂。因此，始于公元 13 世纪的意大利创新在某种程度上促进了欧洲的现代外交。

Geographically Italy is ideally suited for trade and diplomatic work in the world. It extends into the center of the Mediterranean Sea (between Europe, West Asia, the Middle East and Africa). No other nation holds such a central geographic advantage for trade and diplomacy as Italy.

从地理上讲，意大利非常适合世界上的贸易和外交工作。它延伸到地中海的中心（在欧洲，西亚，中东和非洲之间）。没有哪个国家能像意大利那样拥有如此重要的贸易和外交地理优势。



Figure 1- By O H 237 [CC BY-SA 4.0
<https://creativecommons.org/licenses/by-sa/4.0>
Wikimedia Commons

“Originally diplomats were sent only for specific negotiations, and would return immediately after their mission concluded. Diplomats were usually relatives of the ruling family or of very high rank in order to give them legitimacy when they sought to negotiate with the other state. “

最初，外交官只被派去进行特定的谈判，他们的任务结束后将立即返回。外交官通常是统治家族的亲戚，或者是非常高级的官僚，以使他们在寻求与另一国谈判时具有合法性。

“Modern diplomacy's origins are often traced to the states of Northern Italy in the early Renaissance, with the first embassies being established in the thirteenth century. Milan played a leading role, especially under Francesco Sforza who established permanent embassies to the other city states of Northern Italy.

“现代外交的起源通常可以追溯到文艺复兴初期的意大利北部各州，最早的使馆建于十三世纪。米兰发挥了领导作用，尤其是在弗朗切斯科·斯福尔扎（Francesco Sforza）的领导下，他建立了常驻意大利北部其他城市的使馆。

It was in Italy that many of the traditions of modern diplomacy began, such as the presentation of an ambassador's credentials to the head of state.

在意大利，现代外交的许多传统开始出现，例如向国家元首赠送大使证书。

“The practice spread from Italy to the other European powers.”

“这种做法从意大利传播到了其他欧洲列强。”

<http://www.ediplomat.com/nd/history.htm> (This site has many valuable resources for the study of diplomacy.

这个网站有许多有价值的资源可供学习外交)

Research by Professor Raymond Cohen on the Amarna Letters however strongly suggests many features of Italian diplomacy in the 14th Century are vastly older, including such things as the presentation of an ambassador's credentials to the head of state, and even the establishment of permanent embassies.

然而，雷蒙德·科恩教授对阿玛纳信件的研究强烈地表明，14世纪意大利外交的许多特点都要古老得多，包括向国家元首出示大使证书，甚至建立永久大使馆。

Likewise, Greece had a system for the maintenance of chief diplomats from other nations. Nonetheless, in Italy during the 14th Century a more formalized and routine system of diplomacy was established which then spread around the rest of Europe. Europe at that time was several millennia behind the nations of the ancient Silk Roads in terms of development.

但是，在14世纪的意大利，建立了更为正规和常规的外交体系，此体系随后遍及欧洲其他地区。就发展而言，当时的欧洲落后于古代丝绸之路国家几千年。

Regardless as to the above criteria for the development of international diplomacy, Italy contributed significantly in other ways.

无论上述发展国际外交的标准如何，意大利都以其他方式作出了重大贡献。

Alberico Gentili (January 14, 1552 – June 19, 1608) was an Italian lawyer, jurist, and a former standing advocate to the Spanish Embassy in London, whose *Opus Magnus* was a book titled: *On the Laws of War and Peace*.

Alberico Gentili (1552年1月14日-1608年6月19日)是一位意大利律师、法学家，曾任西班牙驻伦敦大使馆律师，他的“巨著”是一本书，书名为：战争与和平法。

He is one of only three men referred to as the “Father of international law” in Europe. Gentili was the earliest European writer on public international law and the first person to introduce secularism as distinct from Roman Catholic canon law and theology.

他是欧洲仅有的三名被称为“国际法之父”的人之一。根蒂利(Gentili)是最早的欧洲国际公法作家，也是第一个介绍世俗主义的人，与罗马天主教的正典法和神学不同。

Institutionalizing a form of international law is certainly a major leap forward in the history of diplomacy. Though many or most of his concepts have older roots, it began to bring Europe “up to speed” with Ancient Egypt, Mesopotamia and Babylon, and had vast and positive influences on subsequent European and American diplomatic efforts.

国际法制度化无疑是外交史上的一次重大飞跃。尽管他的许多或大部分概念都有着较古老的渊源，但它开始把欧洲带到古埃及、美索不达米亚和巴比伦的高度，并对后来的欧美外交努力产生了广泛而积极的影响。

For more information see: 有关更多信息，请参见：

Alberico Gentili's ius post bellum and Early Modern Peace Treaties, Lesaffer, Randall

Published in: *The Roman foundations of the Law of Nations*

阿尔贝里科·根蒂利(Alberico Gentili)的《ius post bellum》和早期现代和平条约，莱德尔，兰德，发表在：国际法的罗马基础

https://pure.uvt.nl/ws/files/12488373/Gentili_on_peacemaking_and_peace_treaties_7.pdf

<https://www.diplomacy.edu/resources/general/history-and-evolution-diplomacy>

Greatest Diplomats in History 历史上最伟大的外交官

The following is my own list compiled from various sources in chronological order. Naturally I refuse to assert “this one is better than that” as each was great in his own way and time.

Amenhotep III of Egypt 埃及阿蒙霍特普三世

After studying thoroughly, the content of the Amarna letters, it is clear that Amenhotep III (1386 to 1349 BC) possessed all the seven virtues that Harold Nicolson (Nicolson 1939) attributes to the ideal diplomat. Nicolson underscores that an ideal diplomatist should be **truthful, accurate, calm, patient, good tempered, modest and loyal**. With the exception of modesty (Amenhotep III referred to himself as the Dazzling Sun disk), this pharaoh proved to have all these qualities. However, a lack of modesty was expected from a pharaoh, who was considered Horus reborn, a living god. But ultimately Amenhotep III was courteous in his dealings with the other rulers. Various sources portray Amenhotep as intelligent, knowledgeable, discerning, prudent, hospitable, charming, industrious, courageous and even tactful. <https://dailynewsegypt.com/2010/08/03/amenhotep-iii-the-father-of-diplomacy>

在深入研究了《阿玛那书信》的内容之后 显然，阿蒙霍特普三世（公元前 1386 年至 1349 年）拥有哈罗德·尼科尔森（1939 年）赋予理想外交官的所有七种美德。

尼科尔森强调，一个理想的外交官应该诚实、准确、冷静、耐心、脾气好、谦虚和忠诚。除了谦虚（阿蒙霍特普三世称自己为耀眼的太阳圆盘），这位法老证明了他拥有所有这些品质。

法老不能太谦虚。 人们认为他是荷鲁斯重生的活神。但最终，阿蒙霍特普三世在与其他统治者的交往中很有礼貌。 各种资料都将阿蒙霍特普描绘成聪明，知识渊博，敏锐，审慎，好客，迷人，勤奋，勇敢甚至机智的人。

Read: Chapter 5, the Ideal Diplomatist by Harold Nicholson

阅读：哈罗德·尼科尔森的《理想外交家》第五章

http://www.ucg.ac.me/skladiste/blog_9972/objava_10925/fajlovi/Nicolson,%20The%20Ideal%20Diplomatist.pdf

Moses of the Abraham line of Prophets 亚伯拉罕先知系的摩西

He was a diplomatic person by virtue of having freed his Jewish people from slavery in Egypt without a fight. He personally only killed one Egyptian (Exodus 2:11-15). How did he do this? The Jewish Bible asserts that he persuaded the Egyptian Pharaoh that he had the one and only God on his side and that resisting his request for granting freedom to the Jewish people was suicide for Egypt.

摩西是一个外交人士，因为他在埃及解放了他的犹太人民，使他们摆脱了奴役。他个人只杀了一个埃及人。他是如何为他的人民赢得自由的？犹太圣经声称摩西说服了埃及法老他有上帝支持他。他证明了拒绝他给予犹太人自由的请求是埃及的自杀。

Eventually Pharaoh came to believe him and Moses earned the freedom for his people. One might argue that God did most of the work for Moses (inflicting plagues on the Egyptians), however one could counter-argue that to get God on one's side in the first place one must possess great diplomatic skill.

最终法老信了他，摩西为他的子民赢得了自由。有人可能会说上帝为摩西做了大部分的工作（给埃及人带来瘟疫），但是有人可能会反驳说，首先要让上帝站在自己一边，摩西必须具备高超的外交技巧。

Islamic Prophet Muhammad 伊斯兰先知穆罕默德

The Prophet Muhammad (c. 22 April, 571–11 June, 632) of Islam came along much later in history than any other prophet of the Abrahamic line. Consequently, he is known as the “Seal of the Prophets.” He also initiated innovative diplomatic methodologies and installed a uniquely liberal system mandating tolerance and protection of other religions' systems and people. Muhammad lived during a feudalist time in Arabic history and yet he unified many tribes and set up a system of international relationships unlike any before him.

伊斯兰教的先知穆罕默德（公元 571 年 4 月 22 日至 632 年 6 月 11 日）在历史上出现的时间比亚伯拉罕家族的任何其他先知都要晚得多。

因此，他被称为“先知之印”，他还开创了创新的外交方法，建立了一个独特的自由制度，授权容忍和保护其他宗教的制度和人民。穆罕默德生活在阿拉伯历史上的封建主义时期，但他统一了许多部落，建立了一个与他之前任何一个部落都不同的国际关系体系。

His international relationships were built via letters, assigned envoys, and by visiting other tribal leaders personally. Instances of written correspondence include letters to Heraclius, the Negus and Khosrau, the Vicegerent of Egypt called Muqawqas, the Emperor of Persia Chosroes, The Envoy to Caesar, King of Rome, Mundhir bin Sawa, Governor of Bahrain, Haudha bin 'Ali, Governor of Yamama, Harith Al-Ghassani, King of Damascus, the King of 'Oman, Jaifer, and his Brother, and others.

https://d1.islamhouse.com/data/en/ih_books/single2/en_The_letters_of_the_Prophet_Muhammad_to_the_Kings_beyond_Arabia.pdf

他的国际关系是通过信件，指派的使节以及亲自拜访其他部落首领来建立的。书面信函包括写给 Heraclius, Negus 和 Khosrau 的信件，埃及副总称为“Muqawqas”“波斯楚索罗斯皇帝”罗马国王凯撒使节“巴林省州长本萨沃（Mundhir bin Sawa），”Yamama 州长 Haudha bin'Ali，“大马士革国王哈里斯·加萨尼（Harith Al-Ghassani），”阿曼国王“Jaifer”和他的兄弟，和别的。

After arriving in Medina in 622, the prophet Mohammed settled a longstanding feud between various tribes (principally the Banu Aus and Banu Khazraj by establishing the “Charter of Medina.” This Charter regulated interactions between the different factions. He also negotiated and implemented various other treaties including the “Pledges of al-Aqaba,” the “Treaty of Hudaibiyyah,” and the “Pledge of the Tree.”

先知穆罕默德在 622 年抵达麦地那后，通过建立“麦地那宪章”，解决了不同部落（主要是巴努奥斯和巴努哈兹拉杰）之间的长期不和。该宪章为不同派别之间的和平互动制定了指导方针。他还谈判和执行了其他各种条约，包括“阿克巴保证书”、“哈德比亚条约”和“树的保证书”

During his life time Prophet Muhammad (SM) received many envoys from different heads of states...

先知穆罕默德（SM）一生中接待了来自不同国家元首的许多使节...

He is also on record to have allowed the delegation of Christians of Najran to hold their service in his mosque. Another charter, which is known as charter of Najran, pledged the security of the lives, religion and property of the Christians. There should be no interference with the practice of the faith or observance or any change in their rights or privileges...

他还允许纳吉兰的基督教徒代表团在他的清真寺里举行仪式。另一个宪章，被称为纳吉兰宪章，保证基督徒的生命、宗教和财产安全。不应干涉信仰或遵守的实践或改变他们的权利或特权。。。

When Wahshi presented his credential to the Prophet, he was accorded unprecedented treatment which was described by some Islamic scholars as “both unexpected and unparalleled in the annals of Arab history”. It had been the practice in those old days that the envoys were received through ceremonial reception and provided with gifts. Similar treatment was accorded to an envoy on completion of tour of duty. If a Muslim envoy received gifts from a foreign ruler it would go to the treasury of the state. Similarly, Prophet Muhammad SM also deposited in the state coffer gifts received from foreign country. This system exists in the present day modern world.

当瓦希向先知出示他的证书时，他得到了前所未有的待遇，一些伊斯兰学者将其描述为“在阿拉伯历史的史册中既出乎意料又无与伦比”。过去的惯例是通过礼节接待使节，并向使节提供礼物。一名特使在完成任务时也受到类似待遇。如果一个穆斯林特使收到了外国统治者的礼物，他就会去国库。同样，先知穆罕默德也将从外国收到的礼物存入国库。这种制度存在于当今的现代世界。

The Prophet also sent envoys to the Arab and non-Arab rulers. The first mission was sent to Abyssinia during Prophet’s early days in Mecca...

先知还派使节到阿拉伯和非阿拉伯统治者。第一次任务被派往阿比西尼亚（埃塞俄比亚现代）。这是先知在麦加初期的时候。

Envoys were sent to the rulers of Yemen, Bahrain, Oman and the Governors of Damascus and Alexandria by the Prophet [Mohammed swt].

先知[Mohammed swt]将使节派往也门，巴林，阿曼的统治者以及大马士革和亚历山大州的州长。

Islamic envoys carried the official letter to hand over to the head of state of the receiving country. This letter was either in the form of letter of credence empowering the envoy to deliver the message verbally or general statement explaining the purpose of the mission.

这些伊斯兰使节被赋予了进行谈判，和解或缔结条约或同盟的全部权力。特使过去常常带着正式信交给接收国国家元首。这封信可以是授权书的形式，也可以是特使以口头方式传达信息，也可以是一般性声明，以说明任务的目的。

<https://fairbd.net/diplomacy-in-islam>

Zheng He 郑和

The Seven Voyages of Zheng He 郑和的七次航行 by Mark Cartwright, February 7, 2019

Admiral Zheng He (aka Cheng Ho, c. 1371-1433 CE) was a Chinese Muslim eunuch explorer who was sent by the Ming dynasty emperor Yongle (r. 1403-1424 CE) on seven diplomatic missions to increase trade and secure tribute from foreign powers.

Between 1405 and 1433 CE Zheng He commanded huge fleets loaded with trade goods and high-value gifts to such far-flung places as Hormuz in the Persian Gulf and Mogadishu in East Africa.

Following established sea routes but often finding himself the first ever Chinaman to land at many of his destinations, Zheng He is widely regarded as the greatest ever Chinese explorer. His travels may not have brought much success in terms of new trade or lasting tribute to the imperial court but the knowledge, ideas, and exotic goods he brought back home - from jewels to giraffes - created an interest in foreign countries and a realization of their wealth which contributed to China's increased role in world trade in later centuries.

郑和上将（公元 1371-1433 年）是中国穆斯林宦官探险家，由明朝永乐皇帝（公元 1403-1424 年）派遣七个外交使团，以增加贸易和从外国获得贡品。

公元 1405 年至 1433 年，郑和率领一支庞大的船队，向波斯湾的霍尔木兹和东非的摩加迪沙等偏远地区运送贸易货物和贵重礼品。郑和遵循既定的海上航线，但经常发现自己是有史以来第一个在许多目的地登陆的中国人，他被广泛认为是有史以来最伟大的中国探险家。

他的旅行可能没有带来太多的成功，在新的贸易或持久的朝贡，但知识，思想，他带回的异国商品，从珠宝到长颈鹿，引起了人们对外国的兴趣，并使他们的财富得以实现，这为中国在后几个世纪的世界贸易中扮演越来越重要的角色做出了贡献。

<https://www.ancient.eu/article/1334/the-seven-voyages-of-zheng-he>

On November 16 in the year 1416, Zhu Di, the third emperor of the Ming dynasty (1368-1644), received 30 foreign envoys at court. Presented to the emperor were numerous exotic tributes from lands as far away as east Africa.

Included among them was a *qilin*, a mythical animal which, according to legend, would only show up in times of great peace and prosperity in a land well governed by a heavenly sage. It pleased the emperor tremendously.

Zheng's success was not military. He had successfully projected China's soft power along the way by being open and diplomatic in his dealings with all the foreign powers and people. The proof lay in the fact that numerous monuments and relics scattered along the routes of his expeditions showed respect and warm remembrance of the admiral and his fleet.

1416年11月16日，明朝第三任皇帝朱棣（1368-1644）在朝廷接待了30名外国使节。许多来自遥远的东非的异国贡品呈献给皇帝。

其中包括一个麒麟，一个神话中的动物，根据传说，它只会出现在一个伟大的和平与繁荣时期，在一个由天圣统治的土地上。这使皇帝非常高兴。

郑和的成功不是军事上的。他在与所有外国势力和人民打交道时，以开放和外交的态度，成功地投射了中国的软实力。事实证明，在他远征途中散布的无数纪念碑和遗物，显示了他对海军上将及其舰队的尊敬和热烈纪念。

<http://www.scmp.com/news/hong-kong/article/1909318/beijing-follows-route-well-travelled-admiral-zheng-he-its-belt-and>

Legendary Native American Hero - The Great Peacemaker 伟大的和平缔造者

The Great Peacemaker (Skennenrahawi or Deganawida) is a revered mythological leader from the traditions of the Iroquois tribes. He is considered by most communities to be the founder of the Iroquois Confederacy and the establisher of the Great Peace and Great Law that governed the Confederacy, although in many stories he shared that honor with the orator Hiawatha and a female Seneca chief named Jigonsaseh (sometimes called the Peace Queen.) According to many versions of the story, Deganawida and Hiawatha forbade violent previous practices such as cannibalism, human sacrifice, and black magic. The details of the Peacemaker's story vary significantly between different Iroquois communities. In some stories, he is portrayed as a lionized historical figure, similar to George Washington; in others, as a mythic hero with magical powers, more similar to Odysseus.

伟大的和平缔造者（Skennenrahawi 或 Deganawida）是易洛魁部落的传统中备受尊敬的神话领袖。大多数社区认为他是易洛魁联盟的创始人，也是统治该联盟的《大和平与伟大法律》的建立者。在许多故事中，他与演说家 Hiawatha 和一位名叫 Jigonsaseh（有时称为“和平女王”）的塞内卡女酋长分享了这一荣誉。

根据故事的许多版本，Deganawida 和 Hiawatha 禁止食人主义，人类牺牲和黑魔法等以前的暴力行为。在易洛魁族不同社区之间，调解人故事的细节差异很大。在某些故事中，他被描绘成一个被模仿的历史人物，类似于乔治·华盛顿。在其他传说中，他被认为是具有魔力的神话英雄，类似于奥德修斯。

His spiritual name, which is rarely pronounced aloud, means "Two Rivers Flowing Together." His Mohawk title, Skennenrahawi, literally means "Peace-Maker," which is generally used as his translated name in English. Another commonly heard title is Hononhsoni:donh, which means "Strengthens the Longhouse" in Cayuga (language).

他的属灵名字很少发音，意思是“两条河一起流淌”。他的莫霍克语标题为 Skennenrahawi，字面意思是“和平制造者”，通常被用做英语的翻译名字。另一个常见的标题是 Hononhsoni: donh，意为 Cayuga（语言）中的“加强长屋”。

<http://www.native-languages.org/morelegends/peacemaker.htm>

Mahatma Gandhi 圣雄甘地

Mohandas Karamchand Gandhi was born on October 2, 1869 in Porbandar, India. He became one of the most respected spiritual and political leaders of the 1900's. Gandhi helped free the Indian people from British rule through nonviolent resistance, and is honored by Indians as the father of the Indian Nation. He was highly influenced by Thoreau, Tolstoy, Ruskin, and above all the life of Jesus Christ. The Bible, precisely the Sermon of the Mount and the Bagavad -Gita had a great influence on him. The Indian people called Gandhi 'Mahatma', meaning Great Soul... Gandhi studied law in London and returned to India in 1891 to practice. In 1893 he took on a one-year contract to do legal work in South Africa...

莫汉达斯·卡拉姆汉德·甘地 1869 年 10 月 2 日出生于印度的波尔班达尔。他成为 20 世纪最受尊敬的精神和政治领袖之一。甘地通过非暴力抵抗帮助印度人民从英国统治中解放出来，并被印度人尊为印度民族之父。他深受梭罗、托尔斯泰、罗斯金的影响，尤其是耶稣基督的一生。圣经，确切地说是《山上的布道》和《巴伽梵歌》对他有很大的影响。印度人民称甘地为“圣雄甘地”，意思是伟大的灵魂.....甘地在伦敦学习法律，并于 1891 年返回印度进行实践。1893 年他签了一年的合同在南非做法律工作...

Gandhi stayed in South Africa for 21 years working to secure rights for Indian people. He developed a method of action based upon the principles of courage, non-violence and truth called Satyagraha. He believed that the way people behave is more important than what they achieve. Satyagraha promoted nonviolence and civil disobedience as the most appropriate methods for obtaining political and social goals. In 1915 Gandhi returned to India. Within 15 years he became the leader of the Indian nationalist movement.

甘地在南非呆了 21 年，致力于保障印度人民的权利。他发展了一种基于勇气、非暴力和真理原则的行动方法，称之为萨提亚格拉。他认为人们的行为方式比他们的成就更重要。Satyagraha 提倡非暴力和非暴力反抗，认为这是实现政治和社会目标的最适当方法。1915 年甘地回到印度。15 年内，他成为印度民族主义运动的领袖。

Using the principles of Satyagraha he led the campaign for Indian independence from Britain. Gandhi was arrested many times by the British for his activities in South Africa and India. He believed it was honorable to go to jail for a just cause. More than once Gandhi used fasting to impress upon others the need to be nonviolent. India was granted independence in 1947, and partitioned into India and Pakistan. Rioting between Hindus and Muslims followed. Gandhi had been an advocate for a united India where Hindus and Muslims lived together in peace.

他利用 Satyagraha 的原则领导了印度脱离英国的独立运动。甘地因在南非和印度的活动多次被英国逮捕。他相信为正义的事业坐牢是光荣的。甘地不止一次用禁食来打动别人非暴力的必要性。印度于 1947 年获得独立，分为印度和巴基斯坦。印度教徒和穆斯林之间的暴乱接踵而至。甘地曾是印度统一的倡导者，印度教徒和穆斯林和平共处。

On January 13, 1948, at the age of 78, he began a fast with the purpose of stopping the bloodshed. After 5 days the opposing leaders pledged to stop the fighting and Gandhi broke his fast. Twelve days later a Hindu fanatic, Nathuram Godse who opposed his programme of tolerance for all creeds and religion assassinated him.

1948 年 1 月 13 日，78 岁的他开始了一次禁食，目的是为了停止战斗和杀戮。5 天后，反对派领导人承诺停止战斗，甘地结束了他的斋戒。12 天后，印度教狂热分子纳图拉姆·戈兹（反对甘地对所有信仰和宗教的宽容计划）暗杀了他。

There are five great contributions which Mahatma Gandhi gave to the world as follows: (1) A New spirit and technique- Satyagraha; (2) The Emphasis that the moral universe is one and that the morals of individuals, groups, and nations must be the same. (3) His insistence that the means and the ends must be consistent; (4) The fact that he held no ideals he did not embody or was not in the process of embodying. (5) A willingness to suffer and die for his principles. The greatest of these is his Satyagraha.

圣雄甘地对世界的贡献有以下五点：（1）一种新精神和新技术-萨提亚格拉哈；（2）强调道德世界是一个整体，个人，团体和国家的道德必须相同。（3）坚持手段和目的必须一致；（4）他不抱任何理想，没有体现或没有体现出来。（5）愿意为自己的原则遭受痛苦和死亡。其中最伟大的是他的萨提亚格拉哈

<https://www.mkgandhi.org/africanedsgandhi/biography.htm>

Zhou Enlai 周恩来

Zhou Enlai (March 5, 1898 – January 8, 1976) was the first Premier of the People's Republic of China, serving from October 1949 until his death in January 1976. Zhou served along with Chairman Mao Zedong and was instrumental in the Communist Party's rise to power, and later in consolidating its control, forming foreign policy, and developing the Chinese economy.

周恩来（1898年3月5日至1976年1月8日）是中华人民共和国的第一任总理，从1949年10月任职至1976年1月去世。周恩来与毛泽东主席一起任职，在共产党的崛起中发挥了作用 掌权，后来巩固控制，形成外交政策和发展中国经济。

A skilled and able diplomat, Zhou served as the Chinese foreign minister from 1949 to 1958. Advocating peaceful coexistence with the West after the stalemated Korean War, he participated in the 1954 Geneva Conference and the 1955 Bandung Conference, and helped orchestrate Richard Nixon's 1972 visit to China. He helped devise policies regarding the bitter disputes with the United States, Taiwan, the Soviet Union (after 1960), India and Vietnam.

熟练，能干的外交官，1949年至1958年担任中国外交大臣。在朝鲜战争陷入僵局后，他主张与西方和平共处，他参加了1954年日内瓦会议和1955年万隆会议，并协助组织了理查德·尼克松（Richard Nixon）1972年的访问到中国。他帮助制定了与美国，台湾，苏联（1960年后），印度和越南之间的激烈争端的政策。

Zhou survived the purges of other top officials during the Cultural Revolution. While Mao dedicated most of his later years to political struggle and ideological work, Zhou was the main driving force behind the affairs of state during much of the Cultural Revolution. His attempts at mitigating the Red Guards' damage and his efforts to protect others from their wrath made him immensely popular in the Cultural Revolution's later stages.

在文化大革命期间，周幸免于其他高级官员的清洗。毛泽东晚年大部分时间致力于政治斗争和思想工作，而在文化大革命的大部分时期，周则是推动国家事务的主要动力。他为减轻红卫兵的伤害而进行的尝试，以及为保护他人免遭愤怒而做出的努力，使他在文化大革命的后半期受到了极大的欢迎。

https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Zhou_Enlai

Chairman Xi Jinping 习近平主席

Chairman Xi believes trade and economic development are the best way to build alliances and to those ends he successfully led in the creation of several global economic and financial institutions and consequently is helping millions of people around the world improve their economic conditions.

习主席认为，贸易和经济发展是建立联盟的最佳途径，为此，他成功领导了几家全球经济和金融机构的建立，因此正在帮助世界各地数百万人改善其经济状况。

2013 - BRICS Development Bank was established and headquartered in Shanghai. China contributes to almost half of the emergency reserve fund of the bank. 2013

年-金砖国家开发银行成立，总部位于上海。中国贡献了该银行近一半的应急准备金。

2013 - One Belt One Road (B&R) has a number of functions with one being to rebalance the development of coastal and inland cities - an imbalance that started during the ascendancy of European maritime powers starting in the 1500s when Europeans began to dominate world trade and thus coastal cities flourished and inland cities languished and/or died.

Another goal of the B&R program is cooperative infrastructure, investment and human resources development along both land and maritime Silk Roads. Most of the countries involved have significant natural resources however lack the infrastructure to develop those resources. Chinese companies under Secretary Xi have initiated a number of projects in different countries to develop energy (e.g. hydroelectric plants) and transportation (e.g. trains) to help in the development of many nations.

2013 年-一带一路（B&R）具有许多功能，其中一个功能是重新平衡沿海城市和内陆城市的发展-这种不平衡现象始于 1500 年代欧洲海权崛起之时，当时欧洲人开始主导世界贸易和 因此沿海城市蓬勃发展，内陆城市萎缩和/或死亡。

“一带一路”计划的另一个目标是陆路和海上丝绸之路的合作基础设施，投资和人力资源开发。 所涉大多数国家拥有大量自然资源，但缺乏开发这些资源的基础设施。 习近平书记领导的中国公司已在不同国家启动了多个项目，以开发能源（例如水力发电厂）和运输（例如火车），以帮助许多国家发展。

2014 - Creation of the Asian Infrastructure Investment Bank (AIIB) proposed as an initiative by the government of China under Chairman Xi, which facilitates regional integration in Asia and acts as a substitute for the Asian Development Bank (ADB) which has not been able to keep up with infrastructure development needs in Asia. (As of 31 December 2016, Japan and United States hold the largest proportion of shares in ADB at 15.607%. China holds 6.444%, India holds 6.331%, and Australia holds 5.786%.)

2014 年-习近平主席领导下的中国政府提议设立的亚洲基础设施投资银行（AIIB），该计划促进了亚洲的区域一体化，并替代了亚洲开发银行（ADB）未能跟上亚洲的基础设施发展需求。（截至 2016 年 12 月 31 日，日本和美国在亚行的持股比例最大，为 15.607%。中国持股 6.444%，印度持股 6.331%，澳大利亚持股 5.786%。）

2014 - “APEC Free Trade Area” launched during the APEC Summit hosted by China which is an extension of the Regional Comprehensive Economic Partnership (RCEP)

There are a large number of other infrastructure, trade and development plans in different countries led by Chairman Xi.

2014 年-由中国主办的亚太经合组织峰会期间启动的“亚太经合组织自由贸易区”，是区域全面经济伙伴关系（RCEP）的延伸
在习近平主席的领导下，不同国家还有许多其他基础设施，贸易和发展计划。

2015 - South America 2015 年-南美洲

Chinese president Xi Jinping has agreed to double bilateral trade with the region to \$500 billion and increase investment to \$250 billion over the next decade, according to various deals signed with Latin American countries in 2015. Currently, China is the largest trade partner of three of the leading economies in the region: Brazil, Chile, and Peru. These countries, along with the rest of Latin America, mostly export primary goods and natural resources; copper, iron, oil, and soybeans account for 75 percent of the region's exports to China. In addition to trade and investment, Chinese loans to the region have also increased from \$7 billion in 2012 to \$29 billion in 2015.

根据 2015 年与拉美国家签署的各种协议，中国国家主席习近平已同意与该地区的双边贸易增加一倍，至 5000 亿美元，并在未来十年内将投资增加至 2500 亿美元。目前，中国是拉美三国中最大的贸易伙伴 该地区主要经济体：巴西，智利和秘鲁。 这些国家与拉丁美洲其他国家一起，主要出口初级商品和自然资源。铜，铁，石油和大豆占该地区对中国出口的 75%。 除贸易和投资外，中国对该地区的贷款也从 2012 年的 70 亿美元增加到 2015 年的 290 亿美元。

<https://edspace.american.edu/theworldmind/2017/02/27/building-influence-chinese-infrastructure-investment-in-latin-america>

2015

The Chinese support base in Djibouti is a military base operated by People's Liberation Army Navy (PLAN) of the People's Republic of China at Djibouti in the Horn of Africa. It is the first overseas military base of the People's Liberation Army - Navy, and was constructed west of Djibouti City, adjacent to the Port of Doraleh, a port owned by a major Chinese company. The building of this base is part of China's One Belt One Road Initiative. The base was financed primarily by China, costing US\$590 million. The facility is expected to significantly increase China's power projection capabilities in the Horn of Africa and the Indian Ocean.

中国在吉布提的支援基地是由中华人民共和国人民解放军海军在非洲之角吉布提经营的军事基地。 它是中国人民解放军的第一个海外军事基地，建在吉布提市以西，毗邻由中国一家大型公司拥有的港口多拉莱港。 该基地的建设是中国“一带一路”倡议的一部分。 该基地的资金主要来自中国，耗资 5.9 亿美元。 预计该设施将大大提高中国在非洲之角和印度洋的电力投射能力。

https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Chinese_naval_base_in_Djibouti

August 2017 2017 年八月

\$13bn rail project, the 688km East Coast Rail Link (ECLR) that will link Malaysia's east and west coasts, as well as the peninsula's main shipping ports.

这个耗资 130 亿美元的铁路项目，全长 688 公里的东海岸铁路线（ECLR），将连接马来西亚的东，西海岸以及半岛的主要航运港口。 <https://www.railway-technology.com/features/featurechina-turns-malaysias-east-coast-rail-link-into-reality-5938409>

2017

“In Myanmar China ranked first on the list of foreign investment countries with overall investments of US\$18 billion in 183 projects permitted as of end of May, according to the statistics of the Directorate of Investment and Company Administration (DICA).

“China’s investment in Myanmar accounted for over 26 per cent of total foreign investment value. Singapore placed second with investments of over US\$16 billion, followed by Thailand and Hong Kong at third and fourth place, respectively.”

“根据投资和公司管理总局（DICA）的统计，截至 5 月底，中国在缅甸的对外投资国家中排名第一，总投资额为 180 亿美元，涉及 183 个项目。

“中国在缅甸的投资占外国投资总值的 26% 以上。新加坡排名第二，投资额超过 160 亿美元，其次是泰国和香港，分别排名第三和第四。<https://consult-myanmar.com/2017/06/22/china-first-in-overall-foreign-investment-list>

April 06, 2018 2018 年 4 月 6 日

“A 200-year-old dream might finally become a reality under China’s Belt and Road. The establishment of a Kra Canal in Thailand may soon become a reality as part of China’s Belt and Road Initiative (BRI). The canal would permit ships to bypass the Malacca Strait, a crucial maritime chokepoint, amplifying the strategic significance of the project.”

“一个有 200 年历史的梦想可能最终会在中国的“一带一路”下实现。作为中国“一带一路”倡议（BRI）的一部分，在泰国建立 Kra 运河可能很快就会成为现实。运河将使船只绕过马六甲海峡，这是一个至关重要的海上枢纽，这扩大了该项目的战略意义。”

<https://thedi diplomat.com/2018/04/thailands-kra-canal-chinas-way-around-the-malacca-strait>

Thanks to Dr. Simon Shen, Associate Professor & Director of Global Studies Program, Faculty of Social Science and Co-Director of International Affairs Research Center, Hong Kong Institute of Asia-Pacific Studies at the Chinese University of Hong Kong for his excellent article “10 Characteristics of Chinese Diplomacy in the Xi Jinping Era,” which helped me compile the above list of diplomatic achievements of Chairman Xi Jinping.

感谢香港中文大学香港社会研究所社会科学学院副教授兼全球研究计划主任沉西博士博士的出色文章“《习近平时代中国外交的十大特征》，这有助于我整理上述习近平主席的外交成就清单。

<https://foreignpolicyblogs.com/2016/04/19/10-characteristics-of-chinese-diplomacy-in-the-xi-jinping-era>

Student Presentation Project 学生介绍项目

Choose someone you think was or is a great diplomat and prepare a 3-5-minute PPT presentation on that person.

选择一个您认为曾经或曾经是出色外交官的人，并为该人准备 3-5 分钟的 PPT 演示文稿。

Practice Being a Diplomat 练习当外交官

What is a treaty? 什么是条约?

1. a formal agreement between two or more nation/states designed to promote peace, alliance, trade, and/or other international relations.
 2. the formal document with the terms and conditions of such an international agreement.
 3. any agreement between two or more people designed to promote peace and cooperation
- 1.两个或多个国家/州之间旨在促进和平，联盟，贸易和/或其他国际关系的正式协议。
2.具有该国际协议的条款和条件的正式文件。
3.两个或两个以上旨在促进和平与合作的人之间的任何协定

How to Make a Peace Treaty 如何订立和平条约

There are many possible conditions which may be included in a peace treaty. Some of these may be: 和平条约可能包含许多可能的条件。其中一些可能是：

- Formal designation of borders
- Processes for resolving future disputes
- Access to and apportioning of resources
- Status of refugees
- Status of POW
- Settling of existing debts
- Defining of unjust behavior
- The re-application of existing treaties

In modern times certain intractable conflict situations may first be brought to a ceasefire and are then dealt with via a peace process where a number of discrete steps are taken on each side to eventually reach the mutually desired goal of peace and the signing of a treaty.

- 边界的正式名称
- 解决未来争议的流程
- 资源的获取和分配
- 难民身份
- 战俘状态
- 解决现有债务
- 定义不公正行为

重新适用现有条约在现代，某些棘手的冲突局势可能首先停火，然后通过和平进程加以处理，在和平进程中，各方都采取了许多分立的步骤，最终实现了双方期望的和平目标和条约的签署。

https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Peace_treaty

Confidence Building Measures (CBM) 建立信任措施 (CBM)

Once some measure of peace has been established some confidence building measures can help build more long-term positive trusting relationships between nations. These can include things like promoting trade, and cultural, technical and educational exchanges.

Starting an Agreement Instead of a Fight 达成协议而不是打架

Find and list things both or all parties can agree on.

查找并列双方或各方都可以同意的事情。

Explain your point of view and what is required for your satisfaction.

解释您的观点以及满足您的要求。

Negotiate and be prepared to compromise in some areas.

进行谈判并准备在某些方面做出让步。

Bring in an arbitrator if necessary.

如有必要请一名仲裁员。

Respond to criticism with reasonable questions to find middle ground.

用合理的问题回应批评，找到中间立场。

Peace Treaty Vocabulary 和平条约词汇

1. Hostile - Angry, aggressive and/or attacking 敌对-生气，侵略和/或攻击
2. Armistice - Agreement to stop hostilities/fighting or surrender - a proposition for the end of a conflict; a permanent ceasefire.
停战协定-同意停止敌对行动/战斗或投降-结束冲突的主张；永久停火。
3. Arbitration - Third party negotiation between belligerents in a conflict
仲裁-冲突中交战方之间的第三方谈判
4. Declaration - Public document signed by all relevant parties publicly stating something
声明-由所有相关各方签署的公开文件，其中声明了某些内容
5. Dispute - Argument over something 争议-关于某事的争论
6. Resources - Usually natural resources though it could be industrial or human resources
资源-通常是自然资源，尽管可能是工业资源或人力资源
7. Debt – something owed to another person, usually money but can be anything

债务—欠他人的东西，通常是金钱，但可以是任何东西

8. Borders – usually the lines on the grounds separating one country from another, however can refer to lines of separation between any two entities or ideas.

边界—通常以一国与另一国为由的界线，但是可以指任何两个实体或思想之间的界线。

9. Negotiation - an attempt to find common ground between two or more parties.

谈判-试图在两个或多个个人或实体之间寻找共同点的尝试。

10. Confidence Building Measures - (CBM) Actions taken to reduce the probability of hostilities re-starting which might include exchange of prisoners of war, starting trade, gifts, etc.

建立信任措施- (CBM) 为减少重新爆发敌对行动的可能性而采取的行动，其中包括交换战俘，开始贸易，送礼等。

Some Famous Treaties 一些著名条约

Probably the most famous ancient treaty was: 也许最著名的古代条约是:

1258 BCE - Kadesh Treaty “Kadesh” 条约

“The treaty of Kadesh is the earliest known parity peace-treaty that had been concluded between the Hittite king Hattusilis III and the Egyptian pharaoh Ramses II, and was written in Akkadian: the international language of the day, in 1269 B.C. Three main versions of the treaty written in Akkadian language is known to exist. Of the treaty-documents of Kadesh discovered at the (capital city) Bogazkoy-Buyukkale in 1906 by Hugo Winckler and Teodor Makridy as a result of a joint expedition of Turkey and Germany, one of them presently is in Berlin and two of them are in the Istanbul Archaeological Museums.”

“卡迪什条约是赫梯国王哈图西里斯三世与埃及法老拉美西斯二世之间达成的最早的已知平价和平条约，该条约以公元前 1269 年的阿卡德语（即当时的国际语言）书写。已知存在以阿卡德语编写的该条约的三个主要版本。1906 年，由于土耳其和德国的联合远征，雨果·温克勒和特奥多·马克里迪（Teodor Makridy）在（首都）Bogazkoy-Buyukkale 发现了 Kadesh 的条约文件，其中之一目前在柏林，其中两个在柏林 伊斯坦布尔考古博物馆。”

https://www2.uned.es/geo-1-historia-antigua-universal/EGIPTO%20HISTORIA/RAMSES_II_TRATADO_KADESH_VERSION_HITITA.htm

A part of that treaty reads: 该条约的一部分内容为:

Look, Reamasesa-mai-Amana, the great king, the king of the country of Egypt, will establish the bond that the Sun God [Ra] has wanted and that the god of the Tempest [the great Hittite god] has wanted for the country of Egypt and the country of Hatti according to the eternal bond, for not letting enmity settle between them.

看，伟大的国王 Reamasesa-mai-Amana，埃及国家的国王，将建立太阳神[Ra]想要的纽带和暴风雨的[赫梯大帝]的神想要的纽带。埃及国和哈蒂国根据永恒的纽带，因为他们不让仇恨在他们之间安定。

But now Reamasesa-mai-Amana, the great king, the king of the country of Egypt, has established this bond by treaty on a silver tablet with Hattusili, the great king, the king of the country of Hatti, his brother, starting from this day, to settle forever among them a good peace and a good fraternity.

He is a brother to me and he is at peace with me; and I am a brother to him and I am forever at peace with him.

但是现在，伟大的国王 Reamasesa-mai-Amana，

埃及国家的国王，已根据条约在银牌上与伟大的国王 Hattusili（他的兄弟哈蒂的国家的国王哈蒂）建立了这种纽带。今天，要在他们中间永远安定好和平与友爱。

他是我的兄弟，与我和睦。我是他的兄弟，我永远和他和平相处。

Look, the children of Reamasesa, the great king, the king of the country of Egypt, they will be forever in state of peace and of fraternity with the children of Hattusili, the great king, the king of the country of Hatti. They will remain in the line of our bond of fraternity and of peace; the country of Egypt and the country of Hatti will be forever be in a state of peace and of fraternity as it is with us.

看哪，伟大的国王 Reamasesa 的孩子，埃及国家的国王，他们将永远与伟大的国王 Hattusili 的孩子，哈蒂国家的国王哈图图西里的孩子们永远处于和平与博爱的状态。它们将继续与我们的博爱与和平联系在一起；埃及国家和哈蒂国家将永远和我们一样处于和平与博爱的状态。

https://www2.uned.es/geo-1-historia-antigua-universal/EGIPTO%20HISTORIA/RAMSES_II_TRATADO_KADESH_VERSION_HITITA.htm

Unequal Treaties 不平等条约

Unfortunately, many or most of the peace treaties in history were between nation/states with very unequal power such that one warring party dictated the terms and the other was more or less forced to agree. For example:

不幸的是，历史上的许多或大多数和平条约都是在权力不平等的国家之间进行的，以至于一个交战方规定了条件，而另一交战方则或多或少地被迫同意。例如：

The Treaty to end the Mexican–American War (1846–1848) 结束墨西哥-美国战争的条约（1846-1848）

The Mexican-American War and Constitutional War Powers,

墨裔美国人战争与立宪战争大国

by Matthew Waxman, February 2, 2020

True, this is probably the clearest early example of a president unilaterally starting a war (an especially hot issue now with regard to Iran). Although Congress declared war, the House of Representatives in 1848 passed a resolution pronouncing the war “unnecessarily and unconstitutionally begun” because Polk had deliberately induced it. But American history is replete with examples of presidents wielding their military and diplomatic powers to set the United States on a path toward conflict and using their control of information to press Congress to authorize it. For example, Thomas Jefferson went to Congress for authorization to fight the Barbary States after first sending to the Mediterranean a squadron, which was predictably attacked. In 1818, Congress mustered no formal response when the Monroe administration defended General Andrew Jackson’s “defensive” campaign across Spanish Florida.

没错，这可能是总统单方面发动战争的最明显的早期例子（现在是伊朗的一个特别热门的问题）。尽管国会宣战，但 1848 年众议院通过了一项决议，宣布战争“不必要地和违宪地”，因为波尔克故意发动了战争。

但是，美国历史上充斥着总统运用军事和外交力量使美国走上冲突之路，并利用对信息的控制促使国会授权的例子。例如，托马斯·杰斐逊（Thomas Jefferson）首次向地中海派遣了一个中队，该中队据推测遭到袭击，之后他去国会授权与巴巴里国作战。1818 年，当门罗政府捍卫安德鲁·杰克逊将军在整个西班牙佛罗里达州的“防御”战役时，国会没有做出正式回应。

Focusing on the end of the conflict helps bring into sharper focus many other important constitutional dimensions. This was the republic’s first major war of conquest. Polk’s strategy was to seize quickly Mexico’s northern provinces and areas to the west and south of Texas, in combination with blockading Mexico’s eastern ports, to compel Mexico to give up its northern provinces.

关注冲突的结束有助于使人们更加关注许多其他重要的宪法方面。这是共和国的第一次重大征服战争。波尔克的策略是迅速占领德克萨斯州以西和南部的墨西哥北部省份和地区，同时封锁墨西哥的东部港口，以迫使墨西哥放弃北部省份。

<https://www.lawfareblog.com/mexican-american-war-and-constitutional-war-powers>

Blocking the Mexican ports effectively put a stranglehold on Mexico. This was not the first massive crime (by the tenets of natural law and later international law) by American politicians and most certainly not the last massive crime by subsequent American politicians. It did in many ways however set a precedent for the scale and international nature of American perfidy.

February 2, 1848: Treaty of Guadalupe Hidalgo Ends Mexican-American War, Annexes West by Dan Morenoff

1848 年 2 月 2 日：瓜达卢佩·伊达尔戈条约（Guadalupe Hidalgo）结束了美西战争，并吞了附件西方

And almost no American knows anything about the Treaty of Guadalupe-Hidalgo that formally ended it: not its name, not its terms, not who signed it, and not the drama that went into creating a Mexican government willing to enter it.

几乎没有美国人对正式终止该条约的瓜达卢佩-伊达尔戈条约一无所知：不是它的名字，不是它的条款，不是它的签署者，也不是创建愿意加入该条约的墨西哥政府的戏剧。

We have good reason to studiously remember to forget these details. Guadalupe-Hidalgo was an unjust treaty forced on a weaker neighbor to conclude our least-just war. It was also hugely consequential, and we spectacularly benefited from imposing it on Mexico.

我们有充分的理由刻意记住忘记这些细节。瓜达卢佩-伊达尔戈（Guadalupe-Hidalgo）是一项不公正的条约，被迫迫使一个较弱的邻国结束我们最不公正的战争。这也是非常重要的，我们将其强加于墨西哥也从中受益匪浅。

<https://constitutingamerica.org/february-2-1848-treaty-of-guadalupe-hidalgo-ends-mexican-american-war-annexes-west-guest-essayist-dan-morenoff>

The Treaty of Guadalupe-Hidalgo was a landmark shameless treaty – ending the equally shameless Mexican American War.

Treaty of Nanjing to end the First Opium War 南京条约结束第一次鸦片战争

The First Opium War - The Anglo-Chinese War of 1839-1842 Essay by Peter C. Perdue

第一次鸦片战争-彼得·C·珀杜（Peter C. Perdue）1839-1842 年的英中战争随笔

Under the Treaty of Nanking, signed on August 29, 1842, China agreed to open the five ports requested (Canton, Amoy, Foochow, Ningpo, and Shanghai), pay an indemnity of 20 million silver dollars, abolish the Cohong monopoly that hitherto had controlled trade in and through Canton, and adhere to a fixed schedule of customs duties. Additionally, the British were granted the right to occupy Hong Kong in perpetuity; this was their sole outright territorial acquisition.

根据 1842 年 8 月 29 日签订的《南京条约》，中国同意开放所要求的五个港口（广州、厦门、福州、宁波和上海），赔付 2000 万银元，废除迄今为止控制广州和广州之间贸易的科隆垄断，并遵守固定的关税表。此外，英国被授予永久占领香港的权利；这是他们唯一的直接领土获取。

Among other costly and humiliating conditions inflicted on the losing side in the first Opium War, the Chinese were forced to pay a huge indemnity of 20 million silver dollars to the victors. 12 million of this sum was for covering British war costs; three million was for covering debts to English merchants; and five million was compensation for the opium stocks Commissioner Lin had destroyed in 1839.

在第一次鸦片战争给输家一方造成的其他代价高昂、屈辱性的条件中，中国人被迫向胜利者支付 2000 万银元的巨额赔偿金。这笔款项的 1200 万用于支付英国战争费用；三百万用于支付英国商人的债务；五百万是“赔偿”。这一赔偿是针对香港州专员林在 1839 年间销毁的鸦片库存。

In 1844, the United States and France rode on England's triumph to negotiate their own treaties with the Qing government, effectively internationalizing and consolidating the basis of what became known as the "unequal treaty" system.

These treaties, together with England's, began the inexorable process of pressuring China to allow foreigners, including missionaries, traders, doctors, and travelers, to move into the interior.

1844 年，美国和法国乘胜追击，与清政府谈判自己的条约，有效地实现了国际化，巩固了所谓“不平等条约”制度的基础。这些条约，加上英国的条约，开始了向中国施压的无情过程，迫使中国允许外国人，包括传教士、商人、医生和旅行者进入内地。

Three treaty provisions in particular constituted the core of this inequitable system: "extraterritoriality" (exemption of the foreigners from Chinese law); "most favored nation" privileges (guaranteeing each nation the same rights other foreigners might be able to extract in the future); and the legal basis for imposing what turned out to be a generally low "fixed tariff" on China (which prevented China from protecting native industries that might become threatened by foreign imports).

特别是三项条约条款构成了这一不平等制度的核心：“治外法权”（外国人不受中国法律的约束）；“最惠国”特权（保证每一个国家享有其他外国人将来可能享有的相同权利）；以及实施结果是什么的法律依据对中国征收普遍较低的“固定关税”（这使中国无法保护可能受到外国进口威胁的本国产业）。

The war and the 1842 treaty that ended it also, as it turned out, left unresolved the fundamental issue that had triggered hostilities in the first place. Apart from stipulating that of the huge indemnity China agreed to pay, one part (six million silver dollars) was compensation for the opium Commissioner Lin had destroyed, the opium trade itself went unmentioned.

事实证明，战争和 1842 年结束战争的条约也未解决根本引起敌对情绪的根本问题。除了规定中国同意支付的巨额赔偿外，其中一部分（六百万银元）是对林专员销毁的鸦片的赔偿，鸦片贸易本身没有提及。

It did not go away. In 1856, fourteen years after the Treaty of Nanking, China and England (together with France) embarked on a second Opium War.

它没有消失。1856年，即《南京条约》签署十四年后，中国和英国（连同法国）开始了第二次鸦片战争。

https://visualizingcultures.mit.edu/opium_wars_01/ow1_essay04.html

Treaties to end the Second Opium War 结束第二次鸦片战争的条约

In June 1858, the first part of the war ended with the four Treaties of Tientsin, to which Britain, France, Russia, and the U.S. were parties. These treaties opened 11 more ports to Western trade. The Chinese initially refused to ratify the treaties.

1858年6月，战争的第一部分以四份《天津条约》结束，英国，法国，俄罗斯和美国加入了四份条约。这些条约为西方贸易又开放了11个港口。中国最初拒绝批准这些条约。

The major points of the treaty were: 该条约的要点是：

- Britain, France, Russia, and the U.S. would have the right to establish diplomatic legations (small embassies) in Peking (a closed city at the time)
- Ten more Chinese ports would be opened for foreign trade, including Niuzhuang, Tamsui, Hankou, and Nanjing
- The right of all foreign vessels including commercial ships to navigate freely on the Yangtze River
- The right of foreigners to travel in the internal regions of China, which had been formerly banned
- China was to pay an indemnity of four million taels of silver to Britain and two million to France. https://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Second_Opium_War

Roleplay: 'Negotiate' or 'Arbitrate' a Treaty 角色扮演：“谈判”或“仲裁”条约

Arbitrate a Peace Treaty 仲裁和平条约

You, a representative of “Country A” have been asked to arbitrate a peace treaty between the rulers of “Country B” and “Country C.”

你，一个“a国”的代表被要求仲裁“B国”和“C国”统治者之间的和平条约

The war between “Country B” and “Country C” began in 666 CE when according to the histories of “Country B,” someone from “Country C” stole one of their cows. Representatives from “Country B” went to “Country C” to demand their cow back, but everyone in “Country C” denied the theft. A big fight started. Many people died on both sides.

“B 国”和“C 国”之间的战争始于公元前 666 年，根据“B 国”的历史记载，“C 国”有人偷了他们的一头牛。“B 国”的代表前往“C 国”要求归还母牛，但“C 国”的所有人都否认了这起盗窃案。一场大战开始了。双方都有很多人死亡。

Since then millions have died in a series of battles between these two huge powerful nations and what's worse is they both have nuclear weapons now. They are about to totally destroy each other.

从那时起，在这两个强大国家之间的一系列战斗中，数百万人丧生，更糟糕的是，他们现在都拥有核武器。他们将要彻底毁灭对方。

You have been called in to negotiate a treaty between the representatives of “Country B” and “Country C.” 你被召来谈判“B 国”和“C 国”代表之间的条约

Negotiate a Climate Control Treaty

1. Students study national interests in climate control balancing nation's need for development and long and short-term costs of pollution
学生研究国家在气候控制方面的利益，平衡国家发展需要和污染的长期和短期成本
2. Negotiate between different sides in order to obtain sustainable goals towards reducing greenhouse emissions and other pollutants over time
双方之间进行谈判，以期实现可持续目标，以逐步减少温室气体排放量和其他污染物
3. Write a paper or give presentation on the process of negotiation of realistic goals.
就实现现实目标的谈判过程撰写论文或进行演讲。

Renegotiate the Treaty of Versailles 重新谈判凡尔赛条约

The Treaty of Versailles was the peace settlement signed after World War One had ended in 1918 and in the shadow of the Russian Revolution and other events in Russia. The treaty was signed at the vast Versailles Palace near Paris – hence its title – between Germany and the Allies.

The three most important politicians there were David Lloyd George, Georges Clemenceau and Woodrow Wilson. The Versailles Palace was considered the most appropriate venue simply because of its size – many hundreds of people were involved in the process and the final signing ceremony in the Hall of Mirrors could accommodate hundreds of dignitaries. Many wanted Germany, now led by Friedrich Ebert, smashed; others, like Lloyd George, were privately more cautious.

凡尔赛条约是 1918 年第一次世界大战结束后，在俄国革命和俄国其他事件的阴影下签署的和平协议。这项条约是在巴黎附近的巨大凡尔赛宫签署的，因此被称为德国和盟国之间的条约。

三位最重要的政治家是大卫·劳埃德·乔治、乔治·克莱门索和伍德罗·威尔逊。凡尔赛宫之所以被认为是最合适的地点，仅仅是因为它的规模——数百人参与了这一过程，镜子厅的最后签字仪式可以容纳数百名政要。许多人希望现在由弗里德里希·埃伯特领导的德国崩溃；其他人，如劳埃德·乔治，私下里更加谨慎。

<https://www.historylearningsite.co.uk/modern-world-history-1918-to-1980/the-treaty-of-versailles>

Diplomacy and Intercultural Competence 外交与跨文化能力

https://www.diplomacy.edu/sites/default/files/IC%20and%20Diplomacy%20%28FINAL%29_Part27.pdf

Resources and Quiz 资源和测验

Be careful with the following resources. Anything in any way associated with Harvard University is going to have trapdoors and a hidden agenda. They will present a face enlightened liberal thinking and then suck a person down into worshipping an American agenda (global hegemony), complete with wildly distorted histories and very deceptive logic.

<https://www.belfercenter.org/thucydides-trap/resources/china-quiz>

<https://adst.org/students-teachers>

<https://adst.org/take-our-diplomatic-history-quiz>

Vocabulary for Diplomacy 外交词汇

<http://www.ediplomat.com/nd/glossary.htm>

Student Challenge 学生挑战赛

Can you summarize or paraphrase the following paragraph? What is the writer saying?

你能用一句话概括下一段吗？作者在说什么？

ANCIENT NEAR EAST (CA.1600–1200 B.C.E.): INTERNATIONAL HISTORY MEETS IR THEORY ALEX AISSAOUI (PH.D. CANDIDATE), University of Helsinki

“In fact, the ancient Near East was often more cosmopolitan and diverse than what the more homogenous, posterior and culturally restricted Sino-Hellenic–Greek city-state polis system so vividly described by Thucydides and that of the Warring States Period in China – show us (for a comparative perspective, see especially Cohen 1999: 3–16; also Holsti 1992: 17–35; Walker 1953: 75, 82, 99; Xu 2011: 203–04). The cosmopolitanism became evident at the beginning of the second millennium when Akkadian in its Babylonian form was adopted as the international language of diplomacy of the Near Eastern polities (see Bryce 2003: 13–14). It is against this kind of lacuna in research – where there is still a tendency in international theory to consider the Greek city-state system as the international arena where we see the makings of a ‘nascent’ international society – that this paper aims to address (see Little 2005: 54; see also Giddens 1985: 4).”

“事实上，古代近东往往比修昔底德和中国战国时期生动描述的更加同质、落后和受文化限制的中希腊城邦体系更具世界性和多样性（从比较的角度来看，尤其见 Cohen 1999:3-16; Holsti 1992:17-35; Walker 1953:75、82、99; Xu 2011:203-04）。世界主义在第二个千年开始时变得明显，当时巴比伦形式的阿卡德语被采纳为近东政治国家的国际外交语言（见布莱斯 2003:13-14）。这篇论文旨在解决研究中的这种空白，即国际理论仍然倾向于将希腊城邦体系视为国际舞台，在这里我们看到了“新生”国际社会的形成（见小 2005:54；另见 Giddens 1985:4）。”

http://paperroom.ipsa.org/papers/paper_12434.pdf

Chapter 11 – Utopias 乌托邦

Discussion/Debate Questions 讨论/辩论问题

Please take five minutes with your partner and discuss: “What is a perfect world for you?” The questions below might help in generating ideas. But, don’t feel you have to use any of them. Please feel free to create your own totally fresh perfect world.

请花五分钟和你的搭档讨论：“什么是你的完美世界？”下面的问题可能有助于产生想法。但是，不要觉得你必须使用它们。请随意创造你自己完全新鲜完美的世界。

In a perfect world 在一个完美的世界里 _____?

1. Do you have to go to school or work? 你必须上学还是工作?
2. If you do go to school, what would you be studying? The same things or different?
如果你真的去上学，你会学什么？相同还是不同？你不学什么？
3. If you were working what kind of work would you do? 如果你在工作，你会做什么工作？
4. How many hours a day, and days a week would you go to school or work? 你一天几小时，一周几天去上学或工作？
5. What would you do the rest of the time? 剩下的时间你会怎么做？
6. Do you think a perfect world for you is about the same as most people, or different? Is it possible your utopia might be my dystopia? 你认为一个完美的世界对你来说是和大多数人一样，还是不同？你的乌托邦可能是我的反乌托邦吗？

Probably since the evolution of the modern human brain about two hundred thousand years ago* people have dreamed of a “perfect world.” Below is some of the literature on ancient peoples’ conceptions of “utopia.”

- <https://www.newscientist.com/article/mg21128311-800-a-brief-history-of-the-brain>

Ancient Utopias 古代乌托邦

Having one of the most ancient civilizations with an advanced system of writing, ancient Chinese concepts of a utopian world are some of the most fascinating and thought provoking.

中国是世界上最古老的文明之一，有着先进的文字体系，中国古代的乌托邦世界观是最引人入胜、最发人深思的。

All-Under-Heaven - Tiānxià 天下 - Zhou Dynasty 周朝



周文王 (? - 前1046) 明人绘

King Wen of Zhou (周文王 Zhōu Wén Wáng)

Earned the first 'Mandate of Heaven' in China

获得中国第一个“天命”

Painting by unknown artist Ming Dynasty

Public Domain from https://www.ancient.eu/Zhou_Dynasty

Key Vocabulary 关键词汇

All Under Heaven - 天下 Tiānxià

Mandate of Heaven - 天命 Tiānmìng

To become Emperor by the grace of Heaven / to 'receive the Mandate of Heaven' - 受命于天 Shòu mìngyútiān

Benevolence - 仁爱 rén'ài

The nearly 800-year Zhou Dynasty (1046-256 BCE) was the longest-lasting of ancient China's dynasties. It followed the Shang Dynasty (c. 1600-1046 BCE).

近 800 年的周朝（公元前 1046-256 年）是中国古代王朝中延续时间最长的一个。它跟随商朝（公元前 1600-1046 年）。

Thought Provoking Question 发人深省的问题

Why would an 800-year dynasty – just by itself – represent a kind of utopia?

为什么一个 800 年的王朝——仅仅是它自己——会代表一种乌托邦？

The first important historical figure of the Zhou is King Wen (1152-1056 BCE), who is described as a living standard of benevolence and wisdom. 周朝第一位重要的历史人物是文王（公元前 1152-1056 年），他被描述为仁智双全的生活标准。

https://www.ancient.eu/Zhou_Dynasty

[Eight hundred years without a major war would appear heavenly (utopian) to most people. Since the ascension of European hegemony in the early 1500s how many periods of relative peace have there been? Zero. Euro-American hegemony has been marked by endless wars.]

A modern Chinese Social/political philosopher named Zhao Tingyang dove deeply into the history of Chinese philosophy and discovered at least one layer of the ancient roots of Chinese utopianism.

中国现代社会政治哲学家赵廷阳深入中国哲学史，至少发现了中国乌托邦主义的一个古老根源。

Below is a brief quote from one of his publications: 以下是他的一篇文章的简短引述：

“There is an old story about the invention of the all-under-heaven system. Approximately 3,000 years ago, the Zhou Dynasty supplanted the Shang, by means of a military campaign. The dynasty was to last 800 years. This constituted a political revolution, establishing Chinese politics in a very different way, compared to the Greek polis. In much the same way as in Europe prior to the Greek polis, politics (literally ‘justified order’ in Chinese) didn’t exist in China before the Zhou. There was only rule by force. However, whereas in Greece politics started with the problem of the polis, the Zhou invention ‘all-under-heaven’ meant that its Chinese counterpart began with a world perspective.

“有一个古老的故事讲的是天下一家的发明。大约 3000 年前，周朝通过军事行动取代了商朝。这个王朝将延续 800 年。这构成了一场政治革命，以一种与希腊城邦截然不同的方式确立了中国政治。就像在希腊城邦之前的欧洲一样，政治（中文字面意思是“正当秩序”）在周朝之前在中国并不存在。只有武力统治。然而，在希腊，政治始于城邦问题，而周发明的“天下一家”则意味着中国的政治始于世界观。

It might appear unusual for this to happen in the early days of civilization, since it would seem too avant-garde. However, this is indeed what happened. An unusual situation was responsible for this.

在文明的早期，这种情况似乎并不常见，因为它看起来太前卫了。然而，这的确是事实。这是一个不寻常的情况造成的。

The story is as follows. The Shang had for centuries been the leaders of a tribal alliance. The last Shang king was extremely strong but very cruel, and enjoyed nothing but wars and killing. A small tribe known as the Zhou rebelled with great courage, supported by several other tribes, and finally destroyed the huge Shang army. Now at the head of all of the other tribes, the Zhou were confronted with the problem of governance: how to lead all tribes and enjoy their continuous support, while some were much larger in population and potentially stronger. At the time, there were about 1,000 tribes in China, which were different culturally and even ethnically. The population of the Zhou tribe is estimated to have been less than 70,000, very small in comparison to other tribes...

故事如下。几个世纪以来，商朝一直是部落联盟的首领。最后一个商朝国王非常强大但非常残忍，除了战争和杀戮什么也不享受。一个叫周的小部落，在其他几个部落的支持下，以极大的勇气反抗，最终摧毁了庞大的商朝军队。现在，在所有其他部落的领导下，周朝面临着一个治理问题：如何领导所有部落并得到他们的持续支持，而有些部落的人口要多得多，而且可能更强大。当时，中国大约有 1000 个部落，这些部落在文化上甚至种族上都不同。据估计，周氏部落的人口不到 7 万，与其他部落相比非常少。。。

“Zhao: A Political World Philosophy in terms of All-under-heaven (Tian-xia) especially the Shang, with a population of more than one million. The problem of how to control larger entities made global (as opposed to local) politics a priority. The brilliant Zhou leaders, especially the first one, the Duke of Zhou, came up with some major political ideas:

(1) successful solutions to the problems of world politics should resort to a universally-accepted system and not force; (2) a universal system is politically justified if it consists of a political institution which benefits the people of all nations, and produces the greatest common wellbeing in the world; (3) a universal system works if it creates harmony between all nations and cultures. In accordance with these principles, the Zhou created a universal system, by means of the concept ‘all-under-heaven.’”

“赵：一种政治世界哲学，以天下（天下）尤其是商，有一百多万人口。如何控制更大实体的问题使全球（而不是地方）政治成为一个优先事项。杰出的周代领导人，特别是第一位周公，提出了一些主要的政治思想：

（1）世界政治问题的成功解决，应该依靠一个普遍接受的制度，而不是武力；（2）如果一个普遍制度是由一个惠及人民的政治制度组成的，那么它在政治上是正当的在所有国家中，并产生世界上最大的共同福祉；（3）一个普遍的制度，如果它创造了所有国家和文化之间的和谐。根据这些原则，周建立了一个普遍的制度，通过概念“天下”

<https://ceulearning.ceu.edu/overviewfiles/0102TingyangTianXia>

Thought Provoking Questions 发人深省的问题

- After reading the above quote try to answer the following question: In what way was the Shang Dynasty much the same as the world today? (During the Shang Dynasty there was only rule by force.)

在阅读了上述引文后，试着回答以下问题：商朝在什么方面与当今世界大同小异？

- Summarize the three principles of governance devised by the Duke of Zhou. Adoption of a universally-accepted system of politics as compared to the use of force; Creation of a political system benefitting all the people and thereby producing the greatest common wellbeing and 3. Creates harmony between all nations.

总结周公提出的三大治国原则

- In what ways do those three principles differ from rulership by wealthy capitalists today? Wealthy capitalists use and sell weapons to maintain hegemony, only the wealthy benefit from the conflicts they create and escalate, and they intentionally promote conflicts between and within groups to maintain and promote their hegemony.

这三项原则与当今富裕资本家的统治有什么不同？

There is little doubt that by the 5th Century BCE each of the “100 schools of thought” had their own ideas about a “perfect” society. The diversity of those 100 schools of thought suggests that one person’s utopia may be another person’s dystopia.

毫无疑问，到公元前 5 世纪，“100 个学派”中的每一个都有自己关于“完美”社会的想法。这 100 种思想流派的多样性表明，一个人的乌托邦可能是另一个人的反乌托邦。

From a systems evolution point of view however, Zhao Tingyang has struck a harmonious chord making many valid observations concerning the chaotic state of the world today.

He opens that article with the observations:

然而，从系统演化的角度来看，赵廷阳对当今世界的混沌状态作出了许多有效的观察，并发出了和谐的和弦。他在那篇文章开头发表了自己的看法：

“Our supposed world is still a non-world. This side of creation, our globe, has not yet become a world of oneness, but remains a Hobbesian chaos, since there is no truly coherent world society governed by a universally-accepted political institution. Politically abandoned, the world we live in, in a geographical sense, is the only one we have. A lack of political unity means that a universal political identity is still nowhere to be found...”

“我们假设的世界仍然是一个非世界。创造的这一面，我们的地球，还没有成为一个统一的世界，但仍然是霍布斯式的混乱，因为没有真正连贯的世界社会由一个普遍接受的政治制度来统治。政治上被抛弃，我们生活的世界，从地理意义上说，是我们唯一拥有的。缺乏政治团结意味着，仍然找不到普遍的政治认同.....”

ibid

The infinite tragedy and suffering that has resulted from the Hobbesian chaos referred to above cannot be measured. However, the nine million human beings that starve to death every year while the wealthy in developed countries increasingly suffer from obesity might be a reasonable general indicator as to the state of extreme inequality and injustice in the world.

上述霍布斯混乱所造成的无限悲剧和苦难是无法衡量的。然而，每年有 900 万人饿死，而发达国家的富人却越来越患上肥胖症，这可能是一个合理的总体指标，表明世界上极度不平等和不公正的状况。事实上，赵在这里可能是错的。只有一种制度，但它只对富人有利。

A few paragraphs later Zhao notes: 几段之后，赵提到：

"A modern world system is far from just an institutional system of the world. A world system is always imperialistic dominance, as Wallerstein points out in *The Modern World System*. In other words, one or a group of powerful nation-states wields political, economic and cultural domination over less powerful ones. It could be said that a world system is essentially imperialistic in terms of dominance, having evolved from the concept of empire in terms of rule by power. Now, imperialism has definitely proven not to be a solution to the problems of world politics, since it is imposed on the world, rather than being of and for the world, or by the world. What the world needs is an institutionalized system to promote universal wellbeing, and not just the interests of some dominating nations."

“现代世界体系远远不仅仅是世界的制度体系。正如沃勒斯坦在现代世界体系中指出的那样，世界体系总是帝国主义的统治。换言之，一个或一组强大的民族国家在政治、经济和文化上对实力较弱的国家实行统治。可以说，一个世界体系在支配地位上本质上是帝国主义的，它是从帝国主义的权力统治概念演变而来的。现在，帝国主义已经明确地证明不是解决世界政治问题的办法，因为它是强加给世界的，而不是属于世界、为世界、为世界的。世界需要的是一个促进普遍福祉的制度化体系，而不仅仅是一些主导国家的利益。”

Ibid

Zhao is however, absolutely correct in this conclusion.

然而，赵在这个结论中是绝对正确的。

Thought Provoking Questions 发人深省的问题

What international institution was created in 1945 with the stated purpose of preventing war, guaranteeing universal human rights and the maintenance of international law?

1945 年建立了什么国际机构，其明确目的是防止战争、保障普遍人权和维护国际法？

How long did that organization appear credible?

该组织看起来可信多久了？

- What specific unit within that larger organization guaranteed that it only represented the interests of the few most powerful nations?

在这个更大的组织内，哪个具体单位保证它只代表少数几个最强大国家的利益？

Answer

The Security Council within the “United Nations” acts as a choke-hold guaranteeing that organization’s abject and complete failure. The five permanent members of the UN Security Council are: China, France, Russian Federation, United Kingdom, and United States. In other words, four white guys representing the largest most powerful hegemonic states, and a (token) Chinese. How many votes are required to veto any draft resolution in the UN Security Council? One.

“联合国”内的安全理事会充当了一个扼杀令，保证该组织的彻底失败。联合国安理会五个常任理事国是：中国、法国、俄罗斯联邦、英国和美国。换言之，四个白人代表最大最强大的霸权国家，一个（象征性的）中国人。在联合国安理会否决任何决议草案需要多少票？一个。

Anyone with a moral conscience, or who lost loved ones in some modern capitalist inspired war, or spent more than a few minutes in a refugee camp, would happily agree with Zhao’s conclusion: “What the world needs is an institutionalized system to promote universal wellbeing, and not just the interests of a few dominant imperial powers.”

任何有道德良知的人，或是在某些现代资本主义引发的战争中失去亲人的人，或是在难民营里待了几分钟以上的人，都会很高兴地同意赵的结论：“世界所需要的是一个促进普遍福祉的制度化体系，而不仅仅是几个残酷统治的国家的利益。

At the end of this chapter we will revisit Zhao Tingyang’s modern conceptions of Tianxia.

在本章的最后，我们将重温赵廷阳的现代天下观。

Greek Utopias 希腊乌托邦

The Greeks and the Utopia: an overview through ancient Greek Literature, Rosanna Lauriola, University of Idaho

希腊人与乌托邦：古希腊文学概观，罗莎娜·劳里奥拉，爱达荷大学

It is a common experience to dream of a world where everyone would live happy and in harmony with both the environment and the other people, without sufferings and injustice, under a perfect socio-political system, without wars or hunger. This dream has inspired different people from different eras and cultures to build imaginary worlds for compensating the dissatisfaction with the current one.

梦想一个世界，在一个完美的社会政治制度下，没有战争或饥饿，每个人都将幸福生活，与环境和其他人和谐相处，而没有痛苦和不公正，这是一种普遍的经验。这个梦想激发了来自不同时代和文化的人们建立起虚构的世界，以弥补对当前世界的不满。

“Utopia” is the name of the imaginary world they proposed either as alternative one or as temporary oasis able to release people from the reality. Literally meaning ‘no-place’, the term has an ancient Greek root but it does not exist in the vocabulary of ancient Greek language.

他们提出的“乌托邦”是假想世界的名称，它既可以作为替代现实，又可以作为暂时的绿洲，使人们脱离现实。该词的字面意思是“无处不在”，具有古希腊词根，但在古希腊语言词汇中并不存在。

Although ancient Greeks did not have a conscious concept of utopia, they, however, dreamt, wrote, proposed – with different aims - what we would call now (paradoxically using a ‘modern’ term) ‘utopic’ worlds. From the archaic to the post-classic period, we find literary expressions of utopic thought in ancient Greek culture. Such expressions constitute the basis of the modern Utopia and Utopianism with their positive and negative implications.

尽管古希腊人没有自觉的乌托邦概念，但是，他们梦想，写道，提出了不同的目标，即我们现在所称呼的（异乎寻常的是用“现代”术语）“异位”世界。从古时代到后经典时期，我们发现古希腊文化中关于异位思想的文学表达。这种表述构成了现代乌托邦和乌托邦主义的基础，具有积极和消极的含义。

This essay takes a more detailed look at the work of Aristophanes, considered one of the greatest Greek playwrights, and inquires whether his comedies can be considered utopias.

本文详细介绍了被认为是希腊最伟大的剧作家之一的 Aristophanes 的作品，并询问他的喜剧是否可以被视为乌托邦。

<http://www.periodicos.uem.br/ojs/index.php/EspacoAcademico/article/view/7223>

Enlightenment as a form of psychological utopia 启蒙作为一种心理乌托邦

We modern humans tend to think of utopia as an imaginary land, dreamed of perhaps, but ultimately unobtainable. Likewise, we tend to think of “enlightenment” as an imaginary state of mind, that is equally unobtainable.

我们现代人往往认为乌托邦是一个想象中的土地，梦想也许，但最终无法实现。同样，我们倾向于认为“启蒙”是一种想象中的精神状态，这同样是无法实现的。

Few will argue however it is possible our modern world teaches us all to be at least a little cynical. None-the-less we all can agree some people are more enlightened than others.

然而，很少有人会争辩说，我们的现代世界可能教会我们所有人至少要有一点愤世嫉俗。我们都同意有些人比其他人更“有意识”。

Megalomaniacs who are totally self-centered, greedy and violent are amongst the least enlightened. Selfless individuals who relentlessly work to improve the conditions of other people tend to be more enlightened. There are many ways we can all make efforts to become more enlightened.

大多数人会同意那些完全以自我为中心、贪婪和暴力的自大狂是最不开明的。无私的人如果坚持不懈地努力改善他人的条件，往往会更开明。我们有很多方法可以努力变得更加开明。

Many ancient schools of philosophy and religion teach systems to assist willing people along the (any of the multitude of) paths of greater enlightenment.

许多古老的哲学和宗教流派教导系统，以帮助有意愿的人沿着（众多的）道路更大的启蒙。

Chan (Zen) and Pure Land Buddhism are different in some ways yet are same in essence: Attaining enlightenment through relinquishing the ego and attaining the profound awareness of truth.

禅宗和净土佛教在某些方面是不同的，但在本质上是相同的：通过放弃自我获得启蒙，获得深刻的真理意识。

Honen (1133-1212), an exponent of Pure Land Buddhism near the end of his life, said: "Even if one is able to see the jeweled trees [of the Pure Land], they could not be more beautiful than the blossoms and fruit of plum and peach trees [found in this world]."* Just so, Mazu Daoyi (709-788) (馬祖道) said: "Chan mind is ordinary mind."

霍南（1133-1212）是一位净土佛教的倡导者，在他生命的尽头，他说：“即使你能看到（净土）上的宝石树，也不会比（在这个世界上发现的）李树和桃树的花朵和果实更美。”，马祖道一（709-788）说：“禅心是平常心。”

[*https://pages.uoregon.edu/munno/OregonCourses/WGS352W09/R255_Pure_Land,_Dogen_Zen.html]

The path of (Islamic mystical) Sufi enlightenment reflects a similar series of stages as those described in the above schools of Buddhism.

（伊斯兰神秘）苏菲启蒙运动的道路反映了与上述佛教流派所描述的类似的一系列阶段。

Through meditation (*Muraqabah*) a person watches and gains insight into their spiritual heart and its relation to the creator and surrounding. Essential qualities include humility (*tawadu*) and modesty (*haya*). One must resolve to do the best one can in every action, do good deeds and avoid sin, speak only good or stay quiet, and relentlessly stand up for truth.

通过冥想（*Muraqabah*），一个人观察并洞察他们的精神心脏及其与造物主和周围环境的关系。基本素质包括谦逊（*tawadu*）和谦逊（*haya*）。一个人必须下定决心，在每一个行动中尽其所能，行善避罪，只说好话或保持沉默，并坚持不懈地坚持真理。

In Sufism, 'fanaa' refers to the annihilation of the individual ego or self (*nafs*) in God. The highest stage of *fana* is reached when even the consciousness of having attained *fana* disappears. ("the passing-away of passing-away," *fana al-fana*). To be absorbed into the divinity for too long however is "shirk" (sinful) and the next level is to come back into existence at which point God appoints the purified soul to guide other humans along the path to spiritual enlightenment.

在苏菲主义中，“fanaa”指的是个人自我或自我（*nafs*）在上帝中的毁灭。当获得了 *fana* 的意识消失时，*fana* 达到了最高阶段。（“逝去的逝去”，*fana al fana*）。然而，被神性吸收太久是“逃避”（罪恶的），下一个层次是回到存在中，在这一点上，神指定净化的灵魂引导其他人走上灵性启蒙的道路。

This cycle of shedding ego, immersion in a transcendent state, and ultimately reemerging into the mundane world a better more real person appears to be ubiquitous in different spiritual systems of belief.

这种摆脱自我，沉浸在超越状态中，最终重新融入世俗世界的循环，一个更好更真实的人似乎在不同的信仰精神系统中无处不在。

<http://www.columbia.edu/cu/weai/exeas/resources/oxherding.html>

Modern Utopias 现代乌托邦

In the mid-1800s an American transcendentalist named Henry David Thoreau wrote a book called: *Walden, or, Life in the Woods*, published in Boston by Ticknor and Fields (Published 1854).

19 世纪中期，一位名叫亨利·大卫·梭罗的美国超验主义者写了一本名为《瓦尔登湖》或《森林中的生活》的书，由蒂克诺和菲尔兹在波士顿出版（1854 年出版）。

Henry David Thoreau was a naturalist, poet and philosopher. He felt that modern people had lost contact with nature and reality. He built a small house next to a small lake in the forest. He opposed slavery and the Mexican-American war. He refused to pay the Mexican American war tax for six years. In July 1846 he was arrested and sent to jail. His friends paid the war taxes for him, even though he told them not to. He was released from jail the next day. A few years later he went to live in a commune with other transcendental philosophers.

亨利·大卫·梭罗（Henry David Thoreau）是一位博物学家，诗人和哲学家。他感到现代人与自然和现实失去了联系。他在森林中一个小湖旁边建了一个小房子。他反对奴隶制和墨西哥裔美国人的战争。他拒绝支付六年的墨西哥美国战争税。1846 年 7 月，他被捕并入狱。他的朋友为他支付了战争税，即使他告诉他们不要。他于第二天从监狱获释。几年后，他与其他先验哲学家一起生活在一个公社。

The following is description of his book and its effects on later events in the U.S:

以下是他的书及其对美国以后事件的影响的描述：

America and the Utopian Dream 美国与乌托邦梦

<http://brbl-archive.library.yale.edu/exhibitions/utopia/ut08.html>

Almost a hundred years later a great American psychologist named B.F. Skinner wrote a novel about a Utopia he called “Walden 2.”

大约一百年后，一位名叫 B.F. Skinner 的伟大美国心理学家写了一本关于乌托邦的小说，他称之为“沃登 2”。

“Either we do nothing and allow a miserable and probably catastrophic future to overtake us, or we use our knowledge about human behavior to create a social environment in which we shall live productive and creative lives and do so without jeopardizing the chances that those who follow us will be able to do the same. Something like a Walden Two would not be a bad start.” (p. xvi)

“要么我们什么都不做，任由一个悲惨的、可能是灾难性的未来超越我们，要么我们利用我们对人类行为的知识创造一个社会环境，在这个环境中，我们将过上富有成效和创造性的生活，这样做不会危及那些跟随我们的人也能这样做的机会。像瓦尔登湖二号这样的起点并不坏。”（第十六页）

<https://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC2778813>

Two small towns were built where they tried to live a utopian life based on Skinner’s book, one is in Mexico called: Los Horcones:

根据斯金纳的书，两个小镇被建造成了他们试图过乌托邦生活的地方，其中一个在墨西哥叫做：洛斯霍尔科纳：

<http://www.nytimes.com/1989/11/07/science/isolated-desert-community-lives-by-skinner-s-precepts.html?pagewanted=all>

The other is Twin Oaks Community in Virginia. 另一个是弗吉尼亚州的双橡树社区。

<https://www.twinoaks.org/culture-government-65/ecovillage-twinoaks>

<https://www.theatlantic.com/business/archive/2016/08/utopia-erik-reece/494741/>

A newspaper called Huffington Post reviewed nine utopias: 一家名为《赫芬顿邮报》的报纸评论了九个乌托邦:

https://www.huffingtonpost.com/2013/08/21/utopias_n_3768023.html

Discussion 讨论

Can you think of any “utopias” in China you can tell me about?

你能想到中国有什么“乌托邦”可以告诉我吗?

<http://nationalinterest.org/feature/why-china-thinks-it-can-build-utopian-world-order-18486>

Some Utopias in the U.S. 美国的一些乌托邦。

Five 19th-Century Utopian Communities in the United States By Elizabeth Dunn // January 22, 2013

美国五个 19 世纪的乌托邦社区作者: 伊丽莎白·邓恩 // // 2013 年 1 月 22 日

<http://www.history.com/news/history-lists/5-19th-century-utopian-communities-in-the-united-states>

Brief Return to Tiānxià 短暂天下

Zhang Feng (张锋) of Tsinghua University (清华大学), Beijing did a good summary of some of Zhao's main points:

北京清华大学的张锋 (Zhang Feng) 很好地总结了赵的主要观点:

First, Tianxia, a dense concept referring to ‘the world’, has three meanings: 1) the earth or all lands under the sky; 2) a common choice made by all peoples in the world, or a universal agreement in the ‘hearts’ of all people; and, 3) a political system for the world with a global institution to ensure universal order.

首先, 天下是一个紧凑的概念, 指的是“世界”, 具有三个含义: 1) 地球或天空下的所有土地; 2) 世界上所有民族的共同选择, 或所有民族“心”中的普遍协议; 3) 世界政治体系, 其全球体制确保普遍秩序。

With the concept of tianxia, therefore, the world is understood as consisting of the physical world (land), the psychological world (the general sentiment of peoples) and the institutional world (a world institution). Zhao claims that this conceptualization regards ‘the world’ as the highest political unit, setting it apart from Western conceptualizations that stop at the nation-state as the highest unit of analysis. This Chinese-style analysis uses the structure of ‘family–state–tianxia’, which Zhao argues is a wider and more powerful explanatory framework than those found in Western theories.

因此，按照天下的概念，世界被理解为由物质世界（土地），心理世界（人民的普遍情感）和制度世界（世界制度）组成。Zhao 声称，这种概念化将“世界”视为最高的政治单位，与西方的概念化（以民族国家为最高分析单位）区分开来。这种中国式的分析使用了“家庭-国家-天下”的结构，赵认为这是一个比西方理论中发现的框架更广泛，更强大的解释框架。

Second, an important principle of the tianxia system is ‘the exclusion of nothing and no one’, or, put differently, ‘the inclusion of all peoples and all lands’. That is, under the tianxia system nobody can be excluded or pushed aside, since no one is essentially incompatible with others; nothing is considered ‘foreign’ or ‘pagan’. Moreover, tianxia is fair and impartial to all peoples: it is meant to be of all and for all, and never of and for anybody in particular. Thus, the right to rule or the legitimacy of governance in the tianxia system is, in theory, open to all peoples. The central idea of tianxia, furthermore, is to reconstitute the world along the lines of the family, thereby transforming the world into a home for all peoples.[5] It is this principle of ‘non-exclusion’ that makes Tianxia such an expansive system.

其次，天下制度的一项重要原则是“不排斥任何地方，不排斥任何人”，或者换句话说，“包括所有人民和所有土地的包容性”。也就是说，在天下制度下，没有人可以被排除在外或推开。由于没有人本质上与他人不相容；没有什么被视为“外国”或“异教徒”。而且，天下对所有民族都是公平公正的。天涯海角意味着它适合我们所有人。因此，从理论上讲，天下系统中的统治权或治理的合法性向所有人开放。此外，“天下”的中心思想是按照家庭的方式来重建世界，从而使世界成为所有人的家园。[5] 正是这种“不排斥”的原则使天下成为了一个广阔的体系。

Third, Zhao insists on the importance of a world institution as the highest political entity or authority capable of caring for the entire world. This, in effect, amounts to saying a world government is necessary in the tianxia system. According to his theory, internal order depends on external order; or to put it differently, a lower-level order such as the one between nation-states always depends on a higher-level world order of which nation-states are only constituent parts.[6] He therefore argues that ‘internationality’, which is the concept upon which most Western theories of international relations are based, is unsuitable for thinking about world order. Instead, it must be replaced by the concept of what he calls ‘worldness’, whose scope is broader than and subsumes ‘national interests.’

第三，赵坚持认为世界机构作为能够关爱整个世界的最高政治实体或权威的重要性。实际上，这等于说天下系统中必须有一个世界政府。根据他的理论，内部秩序取决于外部秩序。或者换句话说，诸如民族国家之间的秩序这样的低级秩序总是取决于民族国家只是组成部分的更高层次的世界秩序。[6] 因此，他认为，“国际性”是大多数西方国际关系理论所基于的概念，不适合考虑世界秩序。取而代之的是，必须用他所谓的“世界性”这个概念来代替，这个概念的范围比“国家利益”更广泛，也包含“国家利益”。

Fourth, the Tianxia system envisions a world system characterized by harmony and cooperation without hegemony. The coherence of the system is maintained through the internal harmony of diversity.[7]

第四，天下系统构想了一个世界体系，其特征是和谐与合作，没有霸权。系统的一致性是通过多样性的内部和谐来维持的。[7]

However, the pathways to harmony and a world institution receive very little treatment in Zhao's first book. To fill this gap, the 2009 volume develops the two ideas of 'the strategy of common imitation' and 'Confucian improvement', couched in the language of game theory. The strategy of common imitation is regarded as the key to the formation of a stable institution, since it is argued that a common imitation of the best strategy available among all the players in a game will lead to a stable equilibrium.[8]

但是，在赵的第一本书中，通往和谐的途径和建立世界机构的途径很少得到处理。为了填补这一空白，2009年出版的《博弈论》一书提出了“共同模仿战略”和“儒家改进”这两种思想。普遍模仿的策略被认为是建立稳定制度的关键，因为有人认为，在游戏中所有玩家之间共同模仿最佳策略可导致稳定的平衡。[8]

'Confucian improvement' aims to achieve harmony as a mutually beneficial condition by creating a situation in which the common interests achieved by co-operation among players will always be greater than separate interests achieved by individual players on their own. Zhao argues that 'Confucian improvement' is a major advance over 'pareto improvement' as discussed in the Western literature.[9] Named after the Italian economist Vilfredo Pareto, a pareto improvement is a situation where a reallocation of resources within an economic system improves the lot of at least one individual without making any other individual worse off.

“儒学改良”的目的是通过创造一种局面，使参与者之间合作所获得的共同利益永远大于单个参与者自己所获得的单独利益，从而实现和谐这一互利条件。赵教授认为，正如西方文献所讨论的，“儒家改良”是对“帕累托改良”的一大进步，帕累托改进是指在一个经济系统内重新分配资源，在不使任何其他个体恶化的情况下，至少改善一个个体的命运。

http://www.chinaheritagequarterly.org/tien-hsia.php?searchterm=021_utopia.inc&issue=021

These are reasonable hopes and assertions. There most certainly are win-win scenarios that can be expanded to serve on a global basis. The heart of the central theme of Tianxia: "...to reconstitute the world along the lines of the family, thereby transforming the world into a home for all peoples," exemplifies the height of humanism and elegance for its simplicity and utilitarian value. The current corporate-imperialist-profit-driven world is unwaveringly wasteful, and infinitely cruel.

这些都是合理的希望和主张，表明了双赢的可能性，可以扩大到服务于全球的基础上。《天下》的中心主题是：“.....以家庭的方式重建世界，从而把世界变成万民之家”，体现了人文和高雅的高度。当前的企业帝国主义利润驱动的世界是残酷的浪费和非道德的。

In his review article's concluding paragraph Zhang Feng notes:

张峰在评论文章的最后一段指出：

In the final analysis, Zhao's Tianxia system is an interesting and perhaps exceedingly beautiful utopia. He has synthesized the best traditions of ancient Chinese thought to imagine a perfect future world order, but without providing a feasible pathway that can connect the two.

归根结底，赵的“天下一家”是一个有趣的，也许是非常美丽的乌托邦。他综合了中国古代最优秀的思想传统，设想了一个完美的未来世界秩序，但却没有提供一条可行的途径来连接两者。

He should be praised for thinking about Tianxia seriously, for introducing Chinese concepts to the outside world and for taking a balanced and eclectic approach to political theory by drawing on both the Chinese and Western traditions. He is perhaps the first modern Chinese scholar to have systematically theorized the Tianxia, without committing the fallacies of Radical Confucianism, which wants to take China back into the ancient society in toto, or those of New Confucianism, which claims that Chinese culture has every ingredient of modernity already, even liberal democracy. From Zhao's works one can also glimpse the rising intellectual tide among Chinese scholars in rethinking China's international role. Zhao's project itself remains incomplete. But it has at least succeeded in stirring up a Chinese imagining of the future world order.

他认真思考天下，对外引进中国观念，借鉴中西传统，对政治理论采取平衡兼顾的态度，应该受到赞扬。他也许是第一位系统地将“天下为家”理论化的现代中国学者，而没有犯下激进儒学的谬误，激进儒学想把中国完全带回到古代社会，或是新儒学的谬误，后者声称中国文化已经具备了现代性的一切要素，甚至自由民主。从赵树理的作品中，我们也可以看到中国学者在重新思考中国的国际角色方面的知识浪潮。赵的项目本身仍然不完整。但它至少成功地激起了中国人对未来世界秩序的印象。

http://www.chinaheritagequarterly.org/tien-hsia.php?searchterm=021_utopia.inc&issue=021

Here I'd like to suggest that Chairman Xi Jinping's "One Belt One Road" project is clearly "providing a pathway that can connect the two." It may in some ways still be only a "finger pointing to the moon," yet it appears to be moving the world in the right direction by bridging the fathomless gaps between the haves and have-nots in this world.

这里我想说的是，习近平主席的“一带一路”建设，显然是“提供了一条连接两条道路的通道”，可能在某些方面还只是“指点月亮”，然而，它似乎正在通过弥合世界上富人和穷人之间的深不可测的鸿沟，使世界朝着正确的方向前进。

“无知的人抓指尖而不抓月亮，所以那些抓着信的人，不知道我的真相。”（D.T.铃木翻译）from the Lankavatara Sutra “The ignorant grasp the finger-tip and not the moon, so those who cling to the letter, know not my truth.” (D.T. Suzuki Translation)

http://lirs.ru/do/lanka_eng/lanka-nondiaccritical.htm LXXXII - 3

Final Discussion 最后讨论

Is the following statement true or false, and why?: 以下陈述是真是假，以及原因?:

Paradise is not a place; it's a state of mind. 天堂不是一个地方，而是一种精神状态。

Don't hurry too much to answer this question. The answers mature with the person.

不要急于回答这个问题。答案随人成熟。

Appendix 1: Suggestions for Teachers 附件 1: 对教师的建议

I would not teach this book in sequential order, e.g. Chapter 1, then later Chapter 2 and so on.

我不会按顺序教这本书，例如第一章，然后是第二章等等。

Depending on the length of each class I might run two chapters in parallel. For example, if a class is 90 minutes long I might break that into two 45 minute segments and run Chapters 1, 3 simultaneously. Then I might start Chapter 2 while finishing Chapter 3. And so on.

根据每节课的长度，我可以平行地教两章。例如，如果一堂课有 90 分钟长，我可能会把它分成两个 45 分钟的部分，同时运行第 1、3 章。在第一章之后，我可以从第二章开始，同时完成第三章。等等。

I usually start the semester (playing some games, e.g. the “lie game” and then) by asking students to write a vacation story during the first class. I then carefully edit them. I make photocopies of their work and give them back their original story. Thus, I have a baseline on student’s writing skills and general life outlook and they can find out the strengths and weaknesses of their writing.

我通常在第一节课上让学生写一个假期故事（在玩了一些游戏，例如“谎言游戏”之后）作为学期的开始。然后我仔细编辑它们。我复印了他们的作品，还给他们原来的故事。因此，我有一个学生写作技巧和一般生活观的基线，他们可以找出自己写作的长处和短处。

Next, I introduce the basic story format, and ask them to write short 1) action (from brushing their teeth to getting on an airplane) paragraphs using sequence words, and 2) description (people, places & things) paragraphs. After that I introduce Levels 2 & 3 for story writing.

接下来我将介绍基本的故事格式，让他们用顺序词写出简短的 1) 动作（从刷牙到上飞机）段落，2) 描述（人、地、物）段落。之后，我将介绍故事写作的 2 级和 3 级。

Then, during the 3rd of 4th week ask the students to rewrite their original vacation stories more completely.

然后，在第四周的第三周，让学生们更完整地重写他们原来的假期故事。

I certainly don’t go through all the philosophies and religions together. One or two in a single class is enough. I like students doing research and presentations, so asking them to research and prepare presentations on different class topics is best.

我当然不会一起经历所有的哲学和宗教。一个班一两个就够了。我喜欢学生们做研究和报告，所以让他们研究和准备关于不同课堂主题的报告是最好的。

In classes with some students that have limited vocabulary we all read through the Vocabulary 3 lists (that have English definitions and Chinese translations) aloud together before reading the passages. I like students to know what is going on. I like them to know how to pronounce new words they’re reading in text.

在一些词汇量有限的学生的课堂上，我们都一起大声阅读了词汇 3 列表（具有英语定义和中文翻译），然后阅读段落。我希望学生知道发生了什么。我希望他们知道如何发音他们在文本中读到的新单词。

Too much new vocabulary is really frustrating and not a fun way to learn. This way students understand the key concepts they're reading about and also learn how to pronounce the new vocabulary first. With that key information they can often figure out a lot more.

太多的新词汇确实令人沮丧，而且不是一种有趣的学习方式。这样，学生可以了解他们正在阅读的关键概念，还可以学习如何首先发音新词汇。有了这些关键信息，他们通常可以发现更多。

Part of many of my classes includes a reading component. and I sometimes get free e-books from <http://www.gutenberg.org/ebooks>. There are thousands of classics on that site students can download or read online without registering or using a credit card.

我的许多课程中有一部分包含阅读组件。有时我会从 <http://www.gutenberg.org/ebooks> 获得免费的电子书。该站点上有成千上万的经典作品，学生无需注册或使用信用卡即可在线下载或阅读。

I love student interaction, presentations, debates, role-play, dialogues and so-on. I incorporate student interaction into every topic. If they "live the text" they understand and remember it. I don't like lecturing for more a few minutes to a) introduce a topic and 2) get things started. I like students to teach each other. They have more fun and learn quicker.

我喜欢学生互动，演讲，辩论，角色扮演，对话等。我将学生互动融入每个主题。如果他们“活出文字”，他们就会理解并记住文字。我不喜欢讲几分钟，以便 a) 介绍一个主题，以及 2) 开始工作。我喜欢学生互相教书。他们有更多的乐趣，学习更快。

Lastly this book is far from complete.

最后，这本书还远远不够完整。

Appendix 2 - Chinas Diplomacy 外交

From: People's Daily Online 发自：人民日报网

<http://en.people.cn/92824/92845/92870/6441512.html>

China gave birth to one of the four greatest ancient civilizations of the world and has a recorded history of about 4,000 years. In feudal times (1)(封建时代) the Chinese created a civilization that led the world, but China lagged behind the West after the Industrial Revolution. In 1840 Britain launched the Opium War (2)(鸦片战争) and forced open the door of China with its warships and cannons. After that, other Western powers such as France, Russia, Japan, Germany and the United States also invaded (入侵) China successively, and as a result the country lost almost all of its national sovereignty (国家主权). Statistics show that between 1840 and 1949, the imperialist powers had forced 1,175 unequal treaties (不平等条约) on China. The history of China's diplomacy in that period of more than a century was full of humiliation (羞辱).

中国是世界四大文明古国之一，有着约 4000 年的历史。在封建时代，中国人创造了领导世界的文明，但工业革命后，中国落后于西方。1840 年，英国发动鸦片战争，用军舰和大炮强行打开了中国的大门。此后，法国、俄罗斯、日本、德国和美国等西方列强也相继入侵中国，使中国丧失了几乎所有的国家主权。据统计，1840 年至 1949 年间，帝国主义列强对中国实施了 1175 项不平等条约。一个多世纪的中国外交史充满了屈辱。

To fight for national independence (民族独立) and liberation and for democracy and freedom, the Chinese people made endless sacrifices (牺牲). In 1921 the Communist Party (共产党) of China was set up. Led by the Communist Party, the Chinese people overthrew (推翻) the rule of imperialism (帝国主义), feudalism (封建主义) and bureaucrat capitalism (官僚资本主义) after 28 years of armed struggle (武装斗争), and founded the People's Republic of China in 1949. Thereupon the Chinese people stood up and became masters of their own destiny (主宰自己命运的人), and China's diplomacy began a new chapter.

中国人民为争取民族独立、民族解放、争取民主自由，作出了无休止的牺牲。1921 年中国共产党成立。中国人民在共产党的领导下，经过 28 年的武装斗争，推翻了帝国主义、封建主义和官僚资本主义的统治，1949 年建立了中华人民共和国。从此，中国人民站起来，掌握了自己的命运，中国外交开始了新的篇章。

After the founding of New China, the basic objectives of its diplomacy included:

新中国成立后，外交的基本目标是：

To secure national independence, sovereignty (主权) and territorial integrity (领土完整),
maintain world peace,

维护国家独立、主权和领土完整，维护世界和平，

And strive for an international environment favorable to the country's development.

努力营造有利于国家发展的国际环境。

At that time the socialist countries headed by the Soviet Union and the imperialist countries headed by the United States were in relentless confrontation. The United States refused to recognize the Government of the People's Republic of China, and it even went further to impose (强加)

当时以苏联为首的社会主义国家和以美国为首的帝国主义国家进行了无情的对抗。美国拒绝承认中华人民共和国政府，甚至更进一步强加

Political containment (政治遏制),

Economic blockade (经济封锁) and

Military threat against China (对中国的军事威胁).

In face of such a situation, China openly declared that it sided with the socialist camp, strived to enhance the alliance with the Soviet Union and other socialist countries, and firmly opposed the US policy of aggression and war (侵略和战争政策).

面对这种情况，中国公开宣称自己站在社会主义阵营一边，努力加强同苏联等社会主义国家的同盟关系，坚决反对美国的侵略战争政策

The Common Program of the Chinese People's Political Consultative Conference, which served as the interim Constitution (临时宪法) in the early days of the People's Republic, stipulates (规定), "The principle of the foreign policy (对外政策) of the People's Republic of China is the:

建国初期作为临时宪法的《中国人民政治协商会议共同纲领》规定：“中华人民共和国对外政策的的原则是：

Protection of the independence, 独立性保护

Freedom, integrity of territory and 自由、领土完整和

Sovereignty of the country, 国家主权

Upholding of lasting international peace and 维护持久的国际和平和

Friendly cooperation between the peoples of all countries, 各国人民友好合作

and opposition to the imperialist policy of aggression and war. 反对帝国主义侵略战争政策。

In conformity with new changes, the new Constitution enacted in 1982 summarizes the basic principles of China's foreign policy as the following:

根据新的变化，1982年颁布的新宪法将中国外交政策的基本原则概括如下：

"China adheres to an independent foreign policy as well as to the five principles of:

中国坚持独立自主的外交政策，坚持五项原则

Mutual respect for sovereignty and territorial integrity, 相互尊重主权和领土完整，

Mutual non-aggression, 互不侵犯

Non-interference in each other's internal affairs, 互不干涉内政

Equality and mutual benefit, 平等互利

And peaceful coexistence in developing diplomatic relations and economic and cultural exchanges with other countries; 和平共处发展对外关系和经济文化交流

China consistently opposes imperialism, hegemonism (霸权) and colonialism (殖民主义), works to strengthen unity (统一) with the people of other countries, supports the oppressed nations (被压迫民族) and the developing countries in their just struggle (正义斗争) to:

中国一贯反对帝国主义、霸权主义和殖民主义，同各国人民加强团结，支持被压迫民族和发展中国家的正义斗争：

Win and preserve national independence and 赢得并维护国家独立

Develop their national economies, and 发展本国经济，以及

Strives to safeguard world peace and 努力维护世界和平

Promote the cause of human progress. 促进人类进步事业

In the past two decades and more, great changes have taken place in China and the world, and the Chinese Government has accordingly adjusted and developed the basic principles of its foreign policy.

二十多年来，中国和世界发生了巨大变化，中国政府相应地调整和发展了外交政策的基本原则。

In short, China pursues an independent foreign policy of peace. The basic objectives of this policy are to 总之，中国奉行独立自主的和平外交政策。这项政策的基本目标是

Safeguard China's independence, sovereignty and territorial integrity,
维护中国的独立、主权和领土完整

Promote friendly exchanges and cooperation with other countries,
促进对外友好交流与合作

Work for a better international and peripheral environment for the country's reform, opening up and modernization drive,

为国家改革开放和现代化建设营造良好的国际和周边环境，

Maintain world peace, and 维护世界和平

Promote common development. 促进共同发展。

This policy includes the following: 该政策包括以下内容

1. Follow the principle of independence. In all international affairs, China decides its own stance and policy in the fundamental interests of the people of China and the world and according to the merits of issues concerned, it will not succumb to any external pressure, and it will not ally itself with any large country or any group of countries.

遵循独立原则。在一切国际事务中，中国从中国人民和世界人民的根本利益出发，根据有关问题的是非曲直，决定自己的立场和政策，不屈服于任何外部压力，不与任何大国、任何国家集团结盟。

2. Oppose hegemonism and maintain world peace. China pursues a foreign policy of peace, and it will not go in for any military bloc, arms race or military expansion. China holds that countries should resolve their disputes and conflicts peacefully through consultation, no country should resort to the use or threat of force or interfere in the internal affairs of other countries on any pretext, and **no country should, using its strength at will, bully, invade or subvert any other country.** China has never forced its social system or ideology on any other country, nor will it allow others to impose their social systems or ideologies on itself. China will never seek hegemony.

反对霸权主义，维护世界和平。中国奉行和平外交政策，不搞任何军事集团、军备竞赛和军事扩张。中国不应以任何借口，以武力或武力干涉别国内政。中国从来没有把自己的社会制度和意识形态强加于任何国家，也不会允许其他国家把自己的社会制度和意识形态强加给自己。中国永远不称霸。

3. Establish and develop relations of friendship and cooperation with all other countries on the basis of the five principles of mutual respect for sovereignty and territorial integrity, mutual nonaggression, non-interference in each other's internal affairs, equality and mutual benefit, and peaceful coexistence. China has worked energetically to develop good-neighborly relations of friendship with neighboring countries, following the principle of good-neighborly relationship and good partnership and the policy of promoting a neighborhood of amity (友好), stability (稳定性) and prosperity (繁荣). China has established or resumed normal relations with all its neighbors, and solved problems left over from the past with most of the neighboring countries.

在相互尊重主权和领土完整、互不侵犯、互不干涉内政、平等互利、和平共处五项原则的基础上，同各国建立和发展友好合作关系。中国坚持睦邻友好、睦邻友好的原则和睦邻、稳定、繁荣的睦邻友好政策，积极发展同周边国家的睦邻友好关系。中国同所有邻国建立或恢复了正常关系，同大多数邻国解决了过去遗留的问题。

To strengthen solidarity (团结) and cooperation with developing countries is an underpinning principle for China's foreign policy. As they had similar destinies in the past and share common tasks of safeguarding national independence and promoting economic development, China and other developing countries have a solid foundation and bright prospects for cooperation.

加强同发展中国家的团结与合作是中国外交政策的基本原则。中国和其他发展中国家在过去有着相似的命运和共同的维护国家独立和促进经济发展的共同任务，有着坚实的基础和光明的合作前景。

China attaches importance to improving its relations with developed countries and strives to identify and expand areas where their interests meet. China holds: state-to-state relations should transcend (超越) their differences in social system and ideology (思想); countries should respect each other, seek common ground (共同点) while shelving differences (求同存异), and expand cooperation for mutual benefit (互惠互利); and countries should strive to gradually resolve (决定) their differences through dialogue and consultation on the basis of equality and mutual respect (相互尊重), so as to promote steady growth of their relations.

中国重视改善同发达国家的关系，努力确定和扩大发达国家利益相通的领域。中国认为：国与国之间的关系应超越社会制度和意识形态上的差异；各国应相互尊重，求同存异，扩大互利合作在平等和相互尊重的基础上，通过对话和协商，促进双方关系的稳定发展。

4. Maintain the authority and the role of the United Nations (联合国 [lián hé guó]), promote multi-polarity (多极化) of the world, advocate democracy in international relations and diversity in modes of development, and push economic globalization toward common prosperity (共同繁荣) of all countries. China adheres to a new concept of security based on mutual trust, mutual benefit, equality and coordination, opposes terrorism in all forms, and works continuously for a new international political and economic order that is just and rational. China takes an active part in multilateral diplomacy with the United Nations at the core, and engages in international cooperation in the areas of counterterrorism, arms control, peace keeping, development, human rights, justice, and environment.

中国重视改善同发达国家的关系，努力确定和扩大发达国家利益相通的领域。中国认为：国与国之间的关系应超越社会制度和意识形态上的差异；各国应相互尊重，求同存异，扩大互利合作在平等和相互尊重的基础上，通过对话和协商，促进双方关系的稳定发展。

5. Open to the rest of the world in an all-round way, and engage in trade, economic and technological cooperation and scientific and cultural exchanges with other countries and regions on the basis of equality and mutual benefit, so as to promote common prosperity.

全面对外开放，在平等互利的基础上同其他国家和地区开展贸易、经济技术合作和科学文化交流，促进共同繁荣。

6. Safeguard the legitimate rights and interests (合法权益) of Chinese legal entities and citizens in the world in accordance with the principle of the people first and governance for the people.

The Chinese Government has scored great achievements in pursuing its independent foreign policy of peace. By September 2004, China had established diplomatic relations with 165 countries and consular ties with the principality of Monaco; it had joined 135 inter-governmental organizations in the world, engaged in economic and cultural exchanges with over 220 countries and regions, and established scientific and technological cooperation relations with 152 countries and regions. China now exerts a great influence on and enjoys a high prestige in international affairs.

按照以人为本、执政为民的原则，维护中国法人和公民在世界上的合法权益。中国政府奉行独立自主的和平外交政策，取得了巨大成就。截至 2004 年 9 月，中国已与 165 个国家建立外交关系，与摩纳哥公国建立领事关系；加入世界 135 个政府间组织，与 220 多个国家和地区开展经济文化交流，与摩纳哥建立了科技合作关系 152 个国家和地区。中国在国际事务中具有重要影响和威望。

NOTES 笔记

(1) The phrase “Feudal times” can have a lot of meanings in a Chinese context as different writers interpret it in many ways. I rather like the following article:

“封建时代”一词在中国语境中可以有很多含义，因为不同的作家对它的解释有很多种。我比较喜欢下面这篇文章：

<http://pages.ucsd.edu/~dkjordan/chin/chinahistory/ChinaPeriods.html>

Appendix 3: A Critical Review of the IB (Eng)/ 国际预科 (IB) 课程的批判性评审

ABSTRACT

This review article reviews some of fine qualities of the International Baccalaureate® (IB) education program including stated foci on multi-culturalism and multi-disciplinary approaches to education, with the ultimate goal of world peace. This article also reviews some of the criticisms of the International Baccalaureate® (IB) education program specifically that it appears to some people to be a stealthy weaponized form of neo-colonial truncated education that abrogates the study of the ancient languages of exclusively people of color and is dressed up in mostly unreferenced pseudo-scientific language grossly overlaid with acronyms for the purpose of ensuring western hegemony in perpetuity. This article also briefly reviews some of history of, and real world need for measuring validity and reliability, as well as some scientific methods of measuring validity and reliability and compares those methodologies with the International Baccalaureate® (IB) “Theory of Knowledge” class textbook’s explanations of validity and reliability. In conclusion the reviewer suggests that with some major modifications the International Baccalaureate® (IB) could live up to its’ own stated goals.

Introduction

An objective assessment of the International Baccalaureate® (IB) program should acknowledge it has many fine qualities. For example, the IB program encourages “Ten Learner Profile Characteristics” encouraging students to be inquirers, knowledgeable, thinkers, communicators, principled, open minded, caring, risk-takers, balanced and reflective. Certainly those are noble goals for all students. Likewise, the IB curriculum also encourages multi-cultural and multi-disciplinary approaches to inquiry, also splendid goals in the view of most educators. The ultimate goal of the IB Program they say is “world peace,” certainly a wonderful ideal by most people’s standards.

On top of all that the IB Program is respected world-wide as a - if not the - leader in international education. In 2017 the IB program had 92,746 diploma candidates up from 55,743 in 2010.

<http://www.ibo.org/contentassets/9faa0cd4d3eb4c4ab5f239f7342d4547/annual-review-2017-en.pdf>
(Downloaded March 21, 2019)

Thus on the surface at least the IB program appears to be a first rate, truly excellent educational program.

Critics however ask, do the structure and curriculum of the IB actually live up to its stated noble goals and ideals? Are there hidden agendas woven through its design and at least one textbook which undermine the attainment of those noble goals?

The following are some of the questions raised by critics of the IB program, and a look at what some might consider substantiation of some of the criticisms of the IB program.

Criticisms of the IB Program

Abrogation of the classical languages of people of color

Why does IB curriculum encourage learning ancient Latin and Greek, and not permit the learning of the classical languages of people of color, even by those people in their own countries? Is this a form of racial/cultural/linguistic prejudice? Is it a form of intellectual colonialism?

[*The phrase “people of color” is a euphemism referring to “non-whites” in general, and generally speaking the vast majority of people inhabiting the “developing world” - another euphemism generally used to refer to Asia, Africa and Latin America, formerly referred to as the “Third World.” Somewhere between 24% and 30% of Americans are people of color depending on which statistics one looks at and there are estimates that those percentages are changing; that people of color will become a majority of the American working class in 2032. (Wilson, Valerie, Economic Policy Institute Report, 2016)]

Is the implied meaning of that alleged abrogation: “Your ancient languages don’t matter?”

The IB Diploma Program (“DP”) Hexagon curriculum plan includes “two modern languages,” or a “modern language and a classical language” (International Baccalaureate Organization Ltd, 2013). Thus, IB students have an option to study a classical language.

However, the only two classical languages IB permits for inclusion in the IB curriculum are Latin and Greek languages which were spoken primarily by white Caucasian people in antiquity.

Sogdian language however was more widespread worldwide, and certainly classical Chinese had far more classic literature at far earlier dates than Latin or Greek. (See for example Joseph Needham’s *Science and Civilization in China*).

Sogdian language dates at least as far back as Achaemenid Empire (559–323 BCE) and was the *lingua franca* of the Silk Roads from about 100-1200 ACE. It was the *sine qua non* language of civilization for more than a thousand years. Sogdian, a descendant of Aramaic, was spoken from Turkey in the West to Urumqi (now in northwest China) in the East.

Aramaic, ancient Egyptian, ancient Hindi, and ancient Chinese to name only a few are classical languages with huge corpora of law, science and classical literature worthy of study.

Why are Sogdian and classical Chinese, Aramaic, ancient Egyptian etc. languages not recognized by IB as “classical” languages?

Why are students limited to the classical languages of Western Europe?

Are students only encouraged to do learning and research that explores ancient history, law, religion, culture, history as translated and interpreted by Caucasian people? Is this a form of linguistic hegemony?

Are the ancient classical languages of people of color somehow not as good as the ancient classical languages of white people?

A secondary school introduction to the classical languages of the ancient world (beyond Latin and Greek) would go a long way to furthering and strengthening the cultural identities of the people from those cultures. Is there some problem with this? Why does the IB program disallow it?

Not allowing students in those countries to explore their own cultural identities via study of their own classical languages while they are IB students in their own countries could appear to contradict IB's stated goals of promoting "multi-culturalism" and "world peace." Instead it could be interpreted as a form of European inspired linguistic hegemony by a "critical thinker."

Unfortunately, not so many young people these days are even interested in something as exotic as ancient languages, but blocking those few that have such interests also appears antithetical to the IB's stated learner profile characteristic of "open-minded inquiry." It doesn't seem "principled." It would appear to lack "balance." Denigrating all classical languages of the world except two - white peoples' classical languages might not be considered "balanced."

Presented with the above argument IB promoters might counter-argue that foreign students that want to study in the U.S. or Europe should learn the ancient languages of western countries.

Only a few western universities offer study programs in ancient languages and yet disallowing high school students in foreign countries to study their own ancient language roots increases the probability that primarily westerners will have the depth of background to interpret archeological findings and writings from the ancient world and thus western hegemony is attained and maintained at an academic level.

Mention should also be made that some of the oldest city states in the world - like Mesopotamia, now Iraq, and many of the nations that were part of the Babylonian Empire which stretched from Iraq, Syria, Iran, Israel, Jordan, Egypt and half of modern day Turkey – have been bombed daily over the period of years by weapons manufactured by Caucasian dominated superpowers or their surrogates in wars, and thus much of the ancient world's artifacts have been and/or continue to be obliterated. And thus forbidding the descendants of those empires to even study their own ancient languages in an IB DP program could be interpreted as adding egregious insult to outrageous injury.

Overuse of Obscure Acronyms and the Ivory Tower

Acronyms

"Well I've got IA and EE meetings this morning before a TOK class this afternoon! Poor me!"

The above sentence might appear unintelligible to the common person unless they are an acolyte of the rather pricy IB program. One might argue that the IB program has many "cult-like" properties, including an English sub-language known only to the followers of that program which safely locks out comprehension to all but initiates to that program.

Certainly most parents of IB students would not understand the above sentence but most, in developing countries would be and are awed at the highly technical and “sophisticated” language - which appears to be designed for that purpose - rather like selling brightly colored beads to “primitive” people during the colonial era - or maybe brightly colored candy to children.

Ivory Tower

In the late 1970’s and early 1980s a new philosophy swept through the American university scene. It had come to pass, largely due to the rapid advances in so many sciences and arts each with its own specialized vocabularies representing nothing less than completely different languages, that academicians couldn’t communicate with each other much less normal working people very well. A dermatologist for example had problems understanding a pediatrician, and neither could understand an anthropologist or physicist. A restaurant worker was very unlikely to understand anything any of them said. The opacity of their bombastic verbosity inculcated communicative conundrums beyond the plebeian’s truncated comprehension. In other words, the high and mighty intellectuals used so many ridiculously unnecessary big words and acronyms no regular person could possibly understand them. Babble so to speak, in full swing.

Simultaneously for decades universities had literally put up fences and walls to keep out the riffraff, read: regular, normal people.

The anti-ivory tower movement sought to fix these problems, first by encouraging people in all academic disciplines to use simple, understandable language when possible to make sure other people could actually understand what they were saying. They also literally took down the fences around most universities, both the wooden and metal ones, such that people – normal, ordinary people could get in when and where they liked. In addition, they actively courted people of all ages to attend the university, and made “continuing education” a desirable thing. The anti-ivory tower movement further promoted making universities more community based and encouraged engagement in community issues, as if they were responsible members of the community, rather than aloof aliens looking down on regular people from high atop their ivory towers.

The IB program however is British, and the scions of the UK do rather like their aristocracy and indeed many are those who are born as hereditary peers of England, Scotland, Great Britain, and the United Kingdom who were entitled to sit in the House of Lords at least until the passing of the “House of Lords Act 1999, although 92 hereditary peers remained in the “House of Lords” during an interim period. Thus, though they lost some of their more overt political power, they none-the-less remain a potent force in UK society and of course maintain their titles and for the most part - wealth.

This brief review is in no way a criticism of the aristocracy of the UK for one could argue that being a large group their personality types would, or should according to the Central Tendency Theorem in statistics probably be normally distributed. However one could also argue that as inheritors of an ancient system of patronage that for the most part was most intimately involved in and profited from the colonialization of the Americas, Asia and Africa a disproportionate number of them might well wish to continue such activities as those “activities” have proven to be profitable indeed. Thus, their personality types might not be normally distributed but negatively skewed with a preponderance of those personality types centered on the extreme “right” or “conservative” end of the political spectrum.

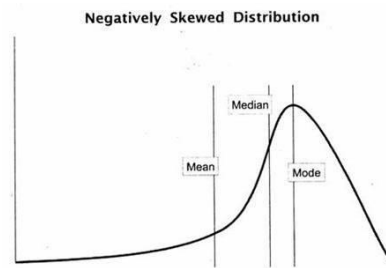


Figure 1 - Negative Skew

Thus, some people might wonder, is a continuing tendency towards an “Ivory Tower” approach to education in the UK profit motivated(?) and is negation of the classical languages of people of color part and parcel of consciously or even unconsciously motivated intellectual, linguistic and cultural neo-colonialism?

The “Theory of Knowledge” (TOK) Textbook: Validity, Reliability and Faith

“Degree Program” (usually referred to as “DP” though really referring to the IB high school program) students are required to take a class called “Theory of Knowledge,” though it’s almost always referred to as TOK.

Some people have suggested there may be a number of “significant issues” even with the newest version of the TOK textbook.

1. Some might question the relatively small number of references so it appears the amazingly brilliant writers of this textbook invented most of the concepts. In fact most of the concepts appear borrowed from one place or another, primarily cognitive psychology. A lack of adequate referencing may appear - at least to someone who is trained in the sciences - as plagiarizing. Though most of the book presents concepts borrowed from cognitive psychology, in the index only three pages are cited as relating to cognitive psychology.

2. Others have questioned the validity of many of the assertions contained within this textbook.

“The significant part knowledge plays in understanding the nature of human cognition has revealed itself in a large body of research, not the least of which was the German Wisserispsychologie Project. This project dealt with many different aspects of the psychology of knowledge, most of them showing the positive effects resulting from existing knowledge...”

“More specifically, we describe misconceptions as, in many cases, powerless knowledge which contains non-functional contents. We distinguish three different kinds of misconceptions: incorrect or incomplete cognitive concepts, biased prioritizations of concepts, and dysfunctional beliefs about domains.”

Mandl, Heinz, Gruber, Hans, and Renk, Alexander (1993)

3. On the subject of what some might consider “biased prioritizations of concepts,” “Faith” is listed in the TOK textbook as the “third way of knowing” (Dombrowski et.al 2013, P. 71) without references or presentation of methodologies used to substantiate that claim.

However, different TOK literature ranks it differently in different locations:

“The TOK course identifies eight specific ways of knowing (WOKs). They are:

Language
sense perception
emotion
reason
imagination
faith
intuition
memory

https://ibpublishing.ibo.org/exist/rest/app/tsm.xql?doc=d_0_tok_gui_1304_1_e&part=2&chapter=3 Downloaded March 22, 2019

Here, “faith” is apparently ranked sixth, begging the question, why is it explicitly stated to be third on page 71 of the TOK textbook?

Thus, critics might say that the TOK ranking of ways of knowing is not internally consistent, if indeed their rankings have any meaning at all.

The textbook makes a distinction between beliefs and knowledge, yet claims faith to be a form of knowledge. Critics of this assertion however say faith is based on belief - conditioned “instrumental learning,” and is not strictly speaking in English at least, a source of knowledge, lacking sufficient empirical support, e.g. different measures of validity for “faith.” Many are the followers of “faith” who participated in colonialization.

For example:

“After their initial difficulties the Portuguese struck up an amicable relationship with the Mani-Kongo. King Joao saw an opportunity to establish a Christian state in black Africa under the protection of Portugal... Dropping anchor in March 1491 at Mpinda, a village... (Meridith, P. 83)

“A Portuguese account noted that in 1507, in addition to some 2,000 slaves working on plantations, the island held 5-6,000 slaves awaiting re-export... During the 1520s the number of slaves being shipped each year from Mpinda, at the mouth of the Congo River, rose to about 3,000.” (Meridith, P. 83)

“In 1861 when the Lagos hinterland was plagued by further outbreaks of Yoruba warfare, the British government stepped in to secure control of Lagos by annexing it as a colony, paying off the Dosunmu with a pension of £1,000 a year. The handing-over ceremony was concluded by the singing of the British national anthem by a choir of 300 local schoolchildren conducted by two missionaries.” (Meridith, P. 155)

“These changes alienated much of the burgher population. Many colonists found the idea that Khoikhoi and slaves could be placed on an equal footing with white Christians repugnant, ‘contrary to the laws of God and the natural distinction of ‘race and religion.’”

(Meridith, P. 164)

People identifying themselves as “Christians,” following their “faith” virtually always spearheaded colonization in the Americas, Asia and Africa somewhat discrediting the notion of “faith” as a way of “knowing.”

“The steady encroachment of white rule and its many manifestations - magistrates, missionaries, farmers, labour agents, taxation and land-grabbing continued to provoke African revolts. In September 1877, in what marked the started the ninth Xhosa war...” (Meridith P. 243)

“In his report to London on the success of the mission the governor, Sir John Cradock, remarked: “I am happy to add that in the course of this service there has not been shed more Kaffir (African) blood than would seem necessary to impress on the minds of these savages a proper degree of terror and respect.” (Meridith, P. 161)

4. Critics of the TOK textbook note what they claim is “an extremely superficial review of the cornerstones of scientific inquiry” specifically methods of determining/measuring validity and reliability. “Their review of these critically important concepts is so poorly done as to mislead the students who use this textbook,” critics assert. “This textbook appears to have been written by a philosophy major, not a scientist who actually had to measure the different kinds of validity or reliability as they are measurable scientifically and have been used in courts as evidence because of their scientific empirical basis.”

Different sciences have derived different methods of determining validity and reliability.

The Equal Opportunity in Education Act (1972) helped usher in a new era in scientific measurement of validity and reliability in education in the United States.

In the late 1970s a black psychologist touring some EMR (Educable Mentally Retarded) programs in California found all of the children in several of them to be black. He felt that this reflected bias in IQ testing. The court decision in 1979, *Larry P. V. Wilson Riles* case (also called the Larry P. Case) found that the “IQ test was the culprit.” (Reynolds, 2014)

Because many of the items (questions) on the IQ tests were subsequently found to be culturally biased, new IQ tests had to be designed which demanded that each question be “item analyzed” to ensure that it did not discriminate based on culture or race, in addition to the entire tests themselves in order to comply with the Equal Opportunity in Education Act (1972). Failure to comply with the law meant law suits, something IQ test designers could not afford to deal with.

Currently statisticians involved in the design and construction of IQ tests need to demonstrate at least three kinds of validity in regards to their test:

- Face validity
- Predictive validity
- Construct validity

And several kinds of reliability including:

- Test re-test reliability
- Across items (internal consistency)
- Across different researchers (inter-rater reliability)
- Inter-test reliability (reliability correlations between tests measuring the same thing, e.g. IQ, or anything else for that matter).

Instead of illuminating the student with any of the science behind measurement of validity and reliability, the TOK textbook presents rather “odd” explanations, according to some critics:

“Questions of validity apply to the argument, to the process of logic, quite independent of what the premises say. The premises could be total nonsense, but still be manipulated logically in exactly the same way. (All fleebles are geep. Tubby is a fleeble. Therefore Tubby is geep.)” (Dombrowski, 2013, P. 122-123)

“Fleebles” and “geep” are nonsense words and their example is really an example of syllogistic logic rather than the science of determining validity *per se*, some critics of the TOK textbook assert. Also, “Tubby” is an insulting term for “large” people, rather like calling someone “fatso,” or “piggy.” Though this may seem amusing the writers of the TOK textbook, it must be maddening obscure and frustrating to a second language learner who can’t find any of the words in a dictionary, except possibly the insulting term: “tubby.”

In another section on “validity” the TOK textbook states:

“Validity applies to the reasoning process. If the reasoning has been done according to the rules, it is valid. It is free from contradictions.” (Dombrowski, 2013, P. 365)

Nowhere in this textbook, critics assert, is any science of determining validity, much less different ways to measure validity discussed beyond application of relatively antiquated syllogistic logic which naturally enough dates back to the Greeks. Modern scientific measurements of and the reality based critical need for the determination of validity are not mentioned.

“Reliability” is not found in the index of the TOK textbook, however “Religious knowledge” is and earns 15 subtopics referring to some 17 pages. A scientifically minded critic might find this to not be “balanced” one of the learner profile characteristics at the foundation of the IB educational system.

This is not to suggest that the designers of the IB program don’t know what “reliability” is, or at least one way to measure it. After scoring student “assessments” those tests must be sent to other IB assessors in different schools who then do a second scoring of the student assessments. This is a way of measuring the “reliability” of teachers’ assessments, in theory. In fact however, scoring other teachers’ students’ work lower, can raise one’s own ranking on international standards. Many teachers get cash rewards for higher scores on international rankings. Thus, there is motivation built into their system of checking other teachers’ scoring, to lower the scores of other teachers’ students assessment results as a way to raise ones’ own.

Other Issues Regarding IB Structure and Curriculum Raised by critics

- Though the IB program promotes multi-disciplinary approaches to education as a cornerstone of its Theory of Knowledge (TOK) class, it fails to make the point this concept is derivative of “polymathy” (meaning versed in many fields including some depth in the major arts and sciences, as well as contemporary affairs and issues), a word and concept that is quite old, dating back in Western Europe at least to Heraclitus in 500 BCE (Granger, 2004). Likewise, the terms “*Homo universalis*” and “*Uomo Universale*,” (universal man) referring to a polymathy, were commonly used in the fifteenth Century. The contemporary phrase describing this sort of person is “Renaissance man.” Yet, the TOK textbook for some reason fails to cite any of history behind its cornerstone paradigm of multi-disciplinary approaches to study. Incidentally, the opposite of polymathy according to Robert Burton, a 16 century Oxford scholar is a “‘polypragmatist’, representing a kind of miscellaneous learning which is shallow, deceptive, and mercenary.” (*ibid*) In any case the student reading the TOK textbook must be dazzled at the brilliance of the writers in thinking up so many fabulous ideas themselves! Herein lays the rub. Some consider borrowing ideas without referencing them to be plagiarism.
- Changes to the IB rules governing the writing of Extended Essays (EEs) and “Internal Assessments” (IAs) can and do change relatively often, and even half a sentence change in IBs curricular paradigm can require a teacher to re-do an entire semester of work with students if they miss the change or the IB accredited school provides them with an older edition book. Thus, schools, their bookstores and libraries have to constantly update relatively expensive books, some critics assert.
- Diagrams etc. are in several places in the TOK textbook are not labeled.

Conclusions

Historical revisionism is built within the textbooks of all nations.

Likewise, the realities of colonialism are intentionally ignored in all western educational programs and EFL textbooks. Critics of the IB program and some of its curriculum assert that there are a surprisingly large number of significant issues that need to be addressed in the program overall and the TOK textbook in particular.

Critics of the TOK program argue that hundreds of thousands of the best and the brightest (and wealthiest) young minds around the world have been and are currently being shaped into a nearly exclusively Euro-centric perspective of the universe, while the worlds of the people of color have been decimated by wars, poverty, and destruction of their cultural heritages during the past 500 years of colonial rule by western European colonial powers. Ancient “classical languages” die all too often, and critics argue that some of the “best and brightest” could and should do something more to help prevent that from happening.

To be a teacher of or student in the TOK class requires faith; faith that the cited TOK sources of knowledge are accurate and complete, however critics of the TOK textbook argue that their list of sources of knowledge represents nothing more than a “tossed salad” of opinions generated by - what appears to have been - the philosophy major that compiled it. Furthermore teachers and students of TOK must memorize a lot of the cant of TOK in order to satisfy its requirements which is time consuming and tedious given that measures of the validity and reliability of the information therein isn’t presented in any way, shape or form.

On one hand the IB Program is the most respected primary and secondary school curriculum in the world. Also, their stated goal to promote “World Peace” is certainly noteworthy.

Typing "Ivory Tower" into eric.gov (the world's largest educational database) yields 384 articles addressing this topic.

One article at least sings the praises of the IB program:

Critical Service Learning: A Participatory Pedagogical Approach to Global Citizenship and International Mindedness

"International mindedness and global citizenship are two key terms within international education, which underpin much of the discourse within the International Baccalaureate Diploma Programme. This article proposes how a participatory approach to education for international mindedness and global citizenship can help educators within international schools to encourage students to think critically about reality beyond their 'ivory tower isolation,' questioning the inequalities in the world that surrounds them."

Wasner, Victoria (2016)

There is little doubt many of the author's conclusions are valid. Conversely, the critics assert, the IB Diploma Program (DP) is the paragon of an Ivory Tower approach to education and colonialists were certainly "internationally minded" and in some respects "global citizens" also, though decidedly not principled or balanced.

In the final analysis it appears possible that at least some changes in the structure of the IB "DP" program and the Theory of Knowledge textbook may be needed for that internationally acclaimed educational program to live up to the criteria listed in their own list of "Learner Profile Characteristics."

References

Dombrowski, Eileen, Lena Rotenberg, Bick, Mimi, (2013) *Theory of Knowledge, Course Companion 2013 Edition*, Oxford University Press, Oxford

Granger, Herbert (2004) Heraclitus' Quarrel with Polymathy and Historie, *Transactions of the American Philological Association*, Johns Hopkins University Press, Volume 134, Number 2, Autumn, pp. 235-261

International Baccalaureate Organization (UK) Ltd. (2013) Language B Guide, Printed in the UK by Antony Rowe Ltd, Chippenham, Wiltshire

Mandl, Heinz, Gruber, Hans, and Renk, Alexander, (1993) Misconceptions and Knowledge Compartmentalization, *The Cognitive Psychology of Knowledge*, Elsevier Science Publishers

https://www.academia.edu/25950859/Misconceptions_and_knowledge_compartmentalization

Downloaded March 22, 2019

Needham, Joseph, *Science and Civilization in China*, Volumes 1 - 7 (1954-2004) Cambridge University Press

Reynolds, Cecil R., Fletcher-Janzen, Elaine, (Eds.) (2014) *Encyclopedia of Special Education: A Reference for the Education of Children*, 4th Edition

Wasner, Victoria, (2016) Critical Service Learning: A Participatory Pedagogical Approach to Global Citizenship and International Mindedness, *Journal of Research in International Education*, v15 n3 p238-252 (Dec.)

Wilson, Valerie, (2016) People of color will be a majority of the American working class in 2032 - What this means for the effort to grow wages and reduce inequality, An Economic Policy Institute Publication, <https://www.epi.org/publication/the-changing-demographics-of-americas-working-class> Downloaded March 23, 2019

国际预科® (IB) 课程的批判性评审

摘要

本评论文章回顾了一些国际预科® (IB) 教育课程的优点，其中包括多元文化主义的重点及多学科教育方法，其最终目标是实现世界和平。本文还特别回顾了人们对国际预科® (IB) 教育课程提出的一些批评，尤其是在某些人看来，这些课程似乎是隐形武器化的新殖民主义教育形式，这些教育废除了对有色人种古代语言的研究，被披上了通常未引用且使用缩略词语情况较为过分的伪科学语言的外衣，以确保西方霸权的永久性。此外，本文也简要回顾了衡量有效性和可靠性的一些历史及现实需要，以及一些科学衡量方法，并将其与国际预科® (IB) 《认识论》课本中的有效性和可靠性解释进行了比较。最后，评论人员认为，在进行一些重大修改后，国际预科® (IB) 可能会达成自己的目标。

作者: Gregory Brundage

在客观评价国际预科® (IB) 课程时，应承认其存在的众多优点。例如，IB 课程支持“十大学习者培养目标”，鼓励学生成为询问者、博学者、思考者、沟通者和冒险者，并具备原则性、虚心、同情心、公正和反思性。当然，这些均是全体学生希望达成的崇高目标。同样，IB 课程还鼓励进行多文化和多学科调查方法，这在大多数教育者眼中也是宏伟的目标。根据教育者的观点，IB 课程的最终目标是实现“世界和平”，这当然也是根据大多数人的标准设定的一个美好的理想。

最重要的是，IB 课程在全球被尊为国际教育的领导者。2017 年，IB 课程的证书申请人数达到 92,746 人，2010 年为 55,743 人。

[Http://www.ibo.org/contentassets/9faa0cd4d3eb4c4ab5f239f7342d4547/annual-review-2017-en.pdf](http://www.ibo.org/contentassets/9faa0cd4d3eb4c4ab5f239f7342d4547/annual-review-2017-en.pdf)
(2019 年 3 月 21 日下载)

因此，IB 课程至少在表面上看起来是真正卓越、一流的教育课程。

然而，评论家会问道，IB 的结构和课程能达到其崇高的目标和理想吗？是否有通过其设计编制的隐藏日程以及是否至少有一本强调达成这些崇高目标的课本？

以下内容为 IB 课程评论家提出的一些问题，以及评论家将哪些视为证实了对 IB 课程的批判。

对 IB 课程的批判

废除有色人种的古典语言

为何 IB 课程鼓励学习古拉丁语和希腊语，但不允许学习有色人种的古典语言，甚至不允许这些有色人种在自己的国家内学习古典语言呢？比如中国学生不可以在 IB 课程中学习古汉语课程.* 这是否为一种种族/文化/语言偏见？这是否为一种知识殖民主义的形式？

[*短语“有色人种”通常是对“非白种人”的委婉说法，一般而言是指居住于“发展中世界”——亚洲、非洲和拉丁美洲（称之为“第三世界”）的另一种常见的委婉说法——的绝大多数人们。约有 24%至 34%的美国人为有色人种，具体根据所依据的数据而不同，据估计，该等百分比一直在发生变化；在 2032 年，有色人种将成为美国绝大多数的工薪阶层。（Wilson、Valerie,《经济政策研究所报告》,2016 年）]

其隐含之义是否是指所谓的废除：“你的古代语言并不重要？”

IB 证书课程（DP）的 Hexagon 课程计划包括“两种现代语言”或“一种现代语言和一种古典语言”（国际预科组织有限公司，2013 年）。因此 IB 学生可以选择学习一种古典语言。

然而，IB 仅允许在 IB 课程中开设两种古典语言，即拉丁语和希腊语，这两种语言在古代主要由白种人高加索人使用。

然而，在当时，粟特语在全球的使用更为广泛，当然，文言文是比拉丁语或希腊语更早的更古典的学问。（例如，参见 Joseph Needham 的《中国科学技术史》）。

粟特文最早可追溯至阿契美尼德王朝（公元前 559 年至公元前 323 年），是公元 100 年至 1200 年间丝绸之路的通用语言。它在一千多年里一直是必备的文明语言。粟特语是阿拉姆语的衍生物，使用范围主要从西部的土耳其到东部的乌鲁木齐（现在位于中国西北）。

举几个例子，阿拉姆语、古埃及语、古北印度语和文言文等都是古典语言，拥有大量值得研究的法律、科学和古典文学。

为何 IB 不认可粟特语和文言文、阿拉姆语、古埃及语等为“古典”语言？

为何学生只能学习西欧的古典语言？

是否只鼓励学生学习并研究一些由高加索人翻译的古历史、法律、宗教、文化、历史？这是否为一种语言霸权主义？

有色人种的古代古典语言在某种程度上并不像白种人的古代古典语言那么好吗？

在中学介绍古代世界古典语言（不包括拉丁语和希腊语）需要很长的时间才能促进并加强这些文化背景下人们的文化认同。对此是否有一些问题？为何 IB 课程不允许？

IB 课程不允许 IB 学生在自己的国家通过学习自己的古典语言探索自己的文化认同，这一举动似乎与 IB 促进“多文化”和“世界和平”的目标相悖。相反，“批判性思考者”可能将其解释为欧洲语言霸权的一种形式。

不幸的是，如今很多年轻人甚至对诸如古代语言之类的异国物品不感兴趣，但是阻止少数对此感兴趣的人亦似乎与 IB 阐述的“虚心求教”的学习者培养目标相悖。它似乎也并不“具有原则性”，似乎缺少“公正性”。诋毁世界上所有的古典语言（两种白种人的古语言除外）可能不会被视为“公正”。

在提出上述论点后，IB 宣传者可能会辩称，想要在美国或欧洲学习的留学生应该学习西方国家的古代语言。

在西方只有少数几个大学古代语言课程，并且目前尚不允许外国的高中生学习其自己的古代语言来源的这一做法可能使西方人首先具备解释来自古代世界的考古发现和著作的背景深度，因此可以在学术层面实现并保持西方霸权。

还需注意的是，世界上一些最古老的城邦——如美索不达米亚（如今的伊朗）及很多延伸自伊朗、叙利亚、以色列、乔丹、埃及和当今土耳其一半国土且新巴比伦王国包含的国家——在过去几年里一直处于战争中，遭受以高加索为主的超级力量生产的武器或其替代品的轰炸，导致很多古代世界的手制品遭到彻底毁坏，或正在遭受彻底毁坏。因此，禁止此类帝国的替代国在 IB DP 课程中学习其自己的古代语言可被解释为在无耻伤害的基础上又增令人发指的侮辱。

模糊缩写和象牙塔的过度使用

- 缩略词语

“Well I’ve got IA and EE meetings this morning before a TOK class this afternoon! Poor me!”

普通人似乎听不懂这句话，除非他们是相当昂贵的 IB 课程的学生。人们可能辩称，IB 课程具备很多“类似邪教”的特性，包括只有该课程学生才知道的英语子语言，因此只有参加该课程的人才能理解。

当然，大多数 IB 学生的父母不会理解上述句子，但是，在发展中国家，大多数这样的句子因技术性很强和“巧妙”的语言而备受人敬仰——似乎目的便是如此——更像是在石器时代向“原始”人出售色彩斑斓的珠子——或者向孩子们出售色彩斑斓的糖果。

- 象牙塔

二十世纪七十年代晚期和二十世纪八十年代早期，所有的美国大学出现了一股新哲学热潮。它的出现在很大程度上得益于许多科学与艺术的快速发展，每种科学与艺术的专业词汇都代表着完全不同的语言，学者们都无法彼此交流，更不用说普通的劳动者了。例如，皮肤科医生可能难以理解儿科医生的专业语言，可能也无法理解人类学家或物理学家的专业语言。餐馆的工作人员不可能理解他们中任何一人所说的话。他们的夸夸其谈对于普通人而言，超出了他们的理解能力。换言之，趾高气昂的知识分子使用了如此多可笑、不必要的大话，普通人可能无法理解他们。可以说，他们是胡言乱语、滔滔不绝。

与此同时，几十年来，大学几乎在字面上建起了栅栏和围墙，阻挡着被称为普通人的乌合之众。

反象牙塔运动试图解决这些问题，首先是鼓励所有学术领域的人们在可能的情况下使用简单、易懂的语言，确保其他人能够真正地理解他们所说的话。他们还在字面上拆除了大学大多数的木质和金属栅栏，这样普通人就可以随时随地进入其中。此外，他们积极设法吸引各个年龄段的人们上大学，使“继续教育”成为一件好事。反象牙塔运动进一步促进了大学更多地围绕社区开展活动，鼓励大学参加社区活动，如同他们是社区的一员，而不是高高在上蔑视普通人的冷漠的外星人。

但是，IB 课程是英国开设的课程，英国后裔相当喜欢自己国家的贵族统治，实际上，很多人生来便是英格兰、苏格兰、大不列颠和英国的世袭贵族，在《1999 年上议院法案》通过之前，他们均有权在上议院发言，即使是在过渡时期仍有 92 名世袭贵族位列“上议院”。因此，尽管他们失去了一些更明显的政治权利，但是他们仍是英国社会一股强大的力量，当然，也维持着自己的头衔和最重要的部分——财富。

本文的简要回顾并非对英国贵族阶层的一种批判，有人可能辩称，根据统计学中的集中趋势定理，英国贵族阶层作为一个庞大的群体，他们的性格类型会或应该呈正态分布。然而，还有人辩称，作为在很大程度上最密切参与并受益于美国、亚洲和非洲殖民化的古代庇护制的继承者，他们中相当一部分很可能希望继续这些活动，因为经证明，这些“活动”确实是有利可图的。因此，他们的个性类型可能并非正态分布，而是负偏态，多数个性类型集中于政治派别中的极“右”或“保守”派。

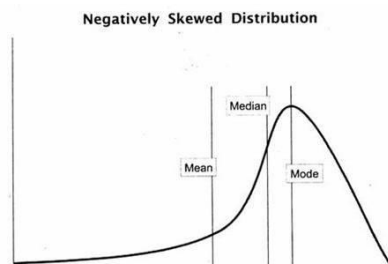


图 1——负偏态

因此，有些人可能想知道，英国教育中出现的“象牙塔”式的持续趋势是否是以盈利为动机的？是否是对有色人种古典语言的否定，是否是有意识，或者甚至是无意识激发知识、语言和文化新殖民主义的重要组成部分？

《认识论》（TOK）课本：有效性、可靠性和信念

学位课程（通常简称为“DP”，尽管实际上其被称为 IB 高中课程）的学生需要参加一门被称为《认识论》的课程，尽管该课程几乎总是被称为 TOK。

有些人认为，即使是最新版的 TOK 课本，也有可能存在一些“重大问题”。

5. 有些人可能对质疑称参考文献相对较少，因此，这本课本才华横溢的作者似乎虚构了书中大多数的概念。实际上，大多数概念似乎摘自一个地方或其他地方，主要为认知心理学的内容。如果缺乏足够的参考可能会被视为剽窃——至少对于受过科学培训的人是如此。虽然这本书大部分概念均来自于认知心理学，但索引中只有三页内容被认为与认知心理学相关。
6. 其他人则质疑这本书中很多断言的有效性。

“大量研究已经揭露了知识在理解人类认知本质中所发挥的重要作用，其中最重要的是德国的 *Wisserspsychologie* 项目。该项目涉及到认知心理学的很多方面，大多数内容都表明了现有的知识所带来的积极影响……”

“更具体地说，在很多情况下，我们将迷思概念描述为包含非功能性内容的无力量的内容。我们区分了三种不同类型的迷思概念：不正确或不完整的认知概念、概念的偏见顺序及领域的功能失调信念。”

Mandl、Heinz、Gruber、Hans 和 Renk、Alexander (1993)

7. 对于有些人可能视为“概念偏见顺序”的主题，TOK 课本将“信念”列为“第三种认知方式”（Dombrowski 等人，2013 年，第 71 页），没有引用或呈现证实这一说法的方法。

然而，不同的 TOK 文献，其在不同地方的排名也不尽相同：

“TOK 课程共确定了八种具体的认知方式（WOK）。他们分别为：

语言
感觉
情感
推论
想象
信念
直觉
记忆

[Http://www.ibo.org/contentassets/9faa0cd4d3eb4c4ab5f239f7342d4547/annual-review-2017-en.pdf](http://www.ibo.org/contentassets/9faa0cd4d3eb4c4ab5f239f7342d4547/annual-review-2017-en.pdf)（2019 年 3 月 22 日下载）

在该排名中，“信念”显然排在第六位，由此就产生了一个问题，为何在 TOK 课本的第 71 页它被排在了第三位？

因此，评论家可能会说，如果 TOK 中认知方式的排名确实有任何意义的话，那么该排名在内部并不一致。

课本对信念和认知进行了区分，但是却声称信念是一种认知形式。然而，对这一论断持批评态度的人们认为，信念是建立在以信仰为条件的“工具性学习”上的，至少从严格意义上来说，在英语中它不是一种认知来源，缺少足够的经验支持，例如，不同的“信念”有效性的衡量方法。很多人是参与了殖民化的“信念”的追随者。

例如：

“在经历最初的艰难困苦之后，葡萄牙人与 Mani-Kongo 建立了友好的关系。在葡萄牙的保护下，Joao 国王在黑人的非洲建立了一个基督教国家，并在 1491 年 3 月进驻 Mpinda，一个小村庄。”（Meridith, 第 83 页）

“一份葡萄牙的报告指出，1507 年，除了约 2,000 名在种植园工作的奴隶外，该岛还关押着 5,000 至 6000 名等待再出口的奴隶.....十六世纪二十年代，每年从刚果河河口 Mpinda 运输过来的奴隶数量达到 3,000。”（Meridith, 第 83 页）

“1861 年，约鲁巴战争的进一步爆发使拉各斯腹地饱受折磨，这时英国政府介入其中，将拉各斯并入到殖民地中，以每年 1,000 英镑的养老金回馈 Dosunmu，以此掌握该地的控制权。交接仪式在两名传教士的带领下，由 300 多名当地学校的小学生组成的唱诗班唱着英国的国歌而结束。”（Meridith, 第 155 页）

“这些变化疏远了大多数市民。很多殖民者认为，科依人和奴隶与白种基督徒平起平坐的想法令人反感，‘违背了上帝的律法及种族和宗教的自然区别’。”（Meridith, 第 164 页）

人们将自己视为“基督徒”并追随自己“信念”的这种做法实际上是在美洲、亚洲和非洲率先实现殖民化，这在一定程度上让人们“信念”这一“认知”方式产生了怀疑。

“白人统治的持续入侵及其很多表现形式——地方行政官、传教士、农民、劳工代理、税收和掠夺土地——不断激起非洲的叛乱。1877年9月，第九次科萨战争爆发……”（Meridith, 第243页）

“总督约翰·克拉多克爵士在向伦敦提交的任务成功的报告中称：“很高兴地补充道，在这项服务的过程中，卡菲尔人(非洲人)所流的血并不足以使这些野蛮人的心中产生适当的恐怖和尊重。”（Meridith, 第161页）

8. TOK 课本的评论者指出，他们所称的是“一种对科学探究基础进行的非常肤浅的评审”，具体而言是一种确定/衡量有效性和可靠性的方法。评论家断言，“他们对这些极其重要的概念的回顾不足，以至于误导了使用这本课本的学生，这本教科书似乎是哲学专业的学生所编写，而非实际上必须衡量在科学上可以衡量的并且由于其科学经验基础已经用于法院证据的不同类别的有效性或可靠性的科学家。”

不同的科学衍生出了确定有效性和可靠性的不同方法。

《教育机会均等法》（1972年）帮助开启了美国科学衡量教育有效性和可靠性的新纪元。

在二十世纪九十年代晚期，一位黑人心理学家参观了加利福尼亚州一些 EMR（可教育的智力迟钝儿童）课程，发现几个课程中的儿童均是黑人。他觉得这反映了智力测试的偏见性。1979年法院在 *Larry P. V. Wilson Riles 案件*（也称为 *Larry P 案例*）中的判决也指出“智力测试是造成犯罪的罪魁祸首”。(Reynolds, 2014)

由于之后发现智力测试中的很多项（问题）都存在文化偏见，因此在设计新的智力问题时必须对每个问题进行“项目分析”，确保整个测试在符合《教育机会均等法》的情况下，并没有文化或种族偏见。未遵守该法律则意味着要提起法律诉讼，这是智力测试设计者无法处理的问题。

目前，参与智力测试设计和构建的统计学家需要证明他们的测试至少在三个方面有效：

- 表面有效性
- 预测有效性
- 结构有效性

及其他几种可靠性，包括：

- 重测信度
- 所有的项（内部一致性）
- 不同的研究者（评者信度）
- 测试信度（衡量相同项目（如智商或该方面的其他内容）的测试之间的可靠性系数）

“有效性的问题适用于完全独立于前提内容的论证和逻辑过程。前提可能完全是无稽之谈，但仍可以按照相同的方式进行逻辑操作。（All fleebles are geep。Tubby is a fleeble. Therefore Tubby is geep.）”(Dombrowski, 2013, 第122页至第123页)

TOK 课本的一些评论者认为，“Fleebles”和“geep”都是毫无意义的词，他们的例子实际上是三段论逻辑，而不是确定自身有效性的科学。此外，“Tubby”对于“体型较大”的人来说也是一个侮辱性词汇，相当于叫某人为“胖子”或“猪”。虽然这看起来可能是取笑 TOK 课本的作者，但对于无法在字典中找到除侮辱性术语：“tubby”之外的任何一个词的第二语言学习者而言，它的晦涩让人抓狂、让人感到沮丧。

在另一个关于 TOK 课本“有效性”的章节中称：

“有效性适用于推理过程。如果根据规定进行推理，那么课本便是有效的。也无任何矛盾。”(Dombrowski, 2013 年, 第 365 页)

评论者认为，在这本教科书中没有任何一个地方是关于确定有效性的科学的内容，除了运用相对陈旧的可追溯到希腊时期的三段论逻辑外，关于衡量方法的讨论内容少之又少。书中并没有提及对确定有效性的现代科学衡量方法及基于关键需求的现实。

TOK 课本的索引中并没有找到“可靠性”，但是却有 15 个副标题涉及到“宗教知识”，页数达 17 页左右。富有科学头脑的科学家可能会发现这并非 IB 教育体系成立之时学习者培养目标的“平衡性”特点。

这并不是说 IB 课程的设计者不知道什么是“可靠性”，或者至少一种衡量方法。在对学生“评价”进行评分后，这些测试必须发送给其他学校的其他 IB 评估人员，由其对学生的评价进行第二次评分。从理论上讲，这是一种衡量教师评估“可靠性”的方法。然而，事实上，给其他老师的学生打低分可以提高自己在国际标准的排名。老师在国际排名越高，现金奖励越多。因此，在核查其他教师的评分时会有一种内在的动机，即降低其他教师的学生的评估结果来提升自己学生的评分。

评论者提出的关于 IB 结构和课程的其他问题

虽然 IB 课程促进多学科教育方法作为其《认识论》(TOK)课程的基石，但其无法证明该概念是“博学”(意思是精通多个领域，包括主要艺术和科学深度以及当代事务和问题)的衍生物，这是一个非常古老的词语和概念，可至少追溯到公元前 500 年西欧的赫拉克利特(Granger, 2004 年)。同样，称之为博学的“*Homo universalis*”和“*Uomo Universale*”(宇宙人)的术语通常用于十五世纪。当代用于描述这类人的短语为“文艺复兴时期的人”。然而，由于某些原因，TOK 课本未提及多学科研究方法基础范式背后的历史。顺便提一句，16 世纪牛津学者罗伯特·伯顿认为，与博学相对的是“博学者”，它代表着一种肤浅、欺骗性和唯利是图的杂学。(同上)在很多情况下，阅读 TOK 课本的学生一定会为作者自己想出这么多绝妙想法的才华所折服！而这就是问题所在。有些人认为，在没有参考的情况下借用创意是一种剽窃。

可以相对频繁地更改“扩展性论文”(EE)和“内部评估”(IA)编写的 IB 规则，并且如果 IB 课程范式中半个句子被更改，而教师并未注意到，或 IB 认证学校提供较旧版的书本，则可能需要教师重新准备整个学期工作。因此，一些评论家认为，学校、书店和图书馆必须不断更新相对昂贵的书籍。

TOK 课本中几个地方的图表等均未进行标注。

结论

几乎所有国家的教科书中都存在一定程度的文化中心和历史修正主义。同样，有可能某些文化新殖民主义的衡量方法也可能有意或无意地嵌入到大多数西方教育课程和 EFL 课本中。IB 课程及其一些课程的评论者认为，该课程，尤其是 TOK 教科书总体上有很多问题需要解决，由此提出了其是否有意的问题。

TOK 课程的评论者认为，全世界成千上万名最优秀、最聪明（及最有财富）的年轻思想已经并且正在塑造近乎完全以欧洲为中心的宇宙视角，而有色人种的世界已经被战争、贫穷所摧毁，而其文化遗迹被西欧殖民国家长达 500 年的殖民统治毁坏。古代“古典语言”的消亡太过频繁，评论者认为，有些“最优秀、最聪明”的人可以而且应该做更多的事情来防止这种情况的发生。

作为 TOK 班的教师或学生需要信念；而引用 TOK 认知来源的信念是准确、完整的，然而，TOK 课本评论者认为，其认知来源只不过是编写该教材的哲学专业学生——似乎已经——产生的各种观点的“大杂烩”。此外，鉴于并未以任何方式、形状或形式呈现信息有效性和可靠性衡量方式，TOK 教师和学生必须记忆很多 TOK 隐语才能满足其要求，这是一项耗时、乏味的过程。

另一方面，IB 课程是世界上最受敬仰的小学和中学课程。此外，他们还指出，促进“世界和平”的目标值得关注。

在 eric.gov(世界上最大的教育数据库)中输入“象牙塔”可以得到 384 篇关于该主题的文章。

其中至少有一篇文章对 IB 课程大加赞赏。

关键服务学习：全球公民意识和国际意识的参与式教学方法

“国际化思维和全球公民身份是国际教育中的两个关键术语，它们奠定了国际预科证书课程的大部分论述。本文提出了全球公民意识和国际意识的参与式教学方法如何帮助国际学校的教育者鼓励学生在超越其“象牙塔隔离”的情况下批判性地思考现实，质疑周围世界的不平等性。

Wasner, Victoria (2016)

毫无疑问，作者的许多结论均是有效的。相反，评论者认为，IB 证书课程（DP）是象牙塔式教育方法的典范，殖民主义者当然具备“国际思维”并在某些方面，“全球公民”也具有“国际思维”，尽管其毫无原则，也不公正。

在最后的分析中，IB“DP”课程结构可能至少进行一些更改，对于国际认可的教育课程，也需要《认识论》这样的课本才能达成“学习者培养目标”清单中所列的标准。

参考文献

Dombrowski, Eileen, Lena Rotenberg, Bick, Mimi, (2013) *Theory of Knowledge, Course Companion 2013 Edition*, Oxford University Press, Oxford

Granger, Herbert (2004) Heraclitus' Quarrel with Polymathy and Historie, *Transactions of the American Philological Association*, Johns Hopkins University Press, Volume 134, Number 2, Autumn, pp. 235-261

国际预科组织（2013）B 语言指南，在英国由 Antony Rowe Ltd 打印，切本哈姆，威尔特郡

Mandl, Heinz, Gruber, Hans, and Renk, Alexander, (1993) Misconceptions and Knowledge Compartmentalization, *The Cognitive Psychology of Knowledge*, Elsevier Science Publishers

https://www.academia.edu/25950859/Misconceptions_and_knowledge_compartmentalization 2019 年 3 月 22 日下载

Needham, Joseph, *Science and Civilization in China*, Volumes 1 - 7 (1954-2004) Cambridge University Press

Reynolds, Cecil R., Fletcher-Janzen, Elaine, (Eds.) (2014) *Encyclopedia of Special Education: A Reference for the Education of Children*, 4th Edition

Wasner, Victoria, (2016) Critical Service Learning: A Participatory Pedagogical Approach to Global Citizenship and International Mindedness, *Journal of Research in International Education*, v15 n3 p238-252 (Dec.)

Wilson, Valerie, (2016) People of color will be a majority of the American working class in 2032 - What this means for the effort to grow wages and reduce inequality, An Economic Policy Institute Publication, <https://www.epi.org/publication/the-changing-demographics-of-americas-working-class> 2019 年 3 月 23 日下载

Appendix 4 – Good Books and Movies 附录 4——好书和电影

and Good Movies I'd Like to See Made – Before It's Too late

附录 4 –好书和电影，以及我希望有人能写和制作的好电影 - 在太迟之前

Books 书

I started reading when I was three and was the youngest person to get a university library card in the city at age five.

我三岁时开始读书，五岁时是城里最年轻的拿到大学图书馆卡的人。

The first books I read were very simple: 我读的第一本书很简单:

See Jack run. Run Jack run.

Jack has a dog. Jack's dog is named Spot.”

They like to play.

看杰克跑。快跑杰克快跑。

杰克有一条狗。杰克的狗叫斯波特。”

他们喜欢玩。

And so on. 等等。

At age five or so I read Pearl Buck's book: "The Good Earth." Why? My mother suggested it was a good book. I was hugely impressed, delighted and amazed at the world I discovered in that book.

五岁左右，我读了 Pearl Buck 的书：《好地球》。为什么？我母亲建议这是一本好书。我对那本书中发现的世界印象深刻，感到高兴和惊奇。

After that I fell in love with Mark Twain's books, especially Tom Sawyer, Huckleberry Finn and The Prince and the Pauper. I thought those were totally great.

在那之后，我爱上了马克吐温的书，特别是汤姆索耶，哈克贝利费恩，王子和乞丐。我觉得那太棒了。

I can't count the number of books I read when I was a child. Hundreds for sure. I also loved Edward Duma's stories. When I was nine years old or so I found a biography of Abraham Lincoln in my father's library. That got me thinking about a lot of things. I also read about half of Shakespeare's works, memorizing some key quotes.

I also enjoyed books by Lobsang Rampa which introduced me to another set of fascinating worlds. When I was 11 or so I was changing physically and psychologically and quite enjoyed novels about Conan the Barbarian by Robert Howard. At age 12 living in Madrid I went to the American Expatriate Center there and read all the James Bond books by Ian Fleming. Those books were very interesting. A few years later back in the USA I saw a couple of James Bond movies and totally hated them. They were so shallow and stupid compared to the books.

我不能数我小时候读过多少书。成百上千。我也喜欢爱德华·杜马的故事。当我九岁左右的时候，我在我父亲的图书馆里发现了一本亚伯拉罕·林肯的传记。这让我想了很多事情。我还读了大约一半莎士比亚的作品，背诵了一些重要的名言。

我也喜欢洛桑兰帕的书，这本书把我介绍给了另一个迷人的世界。在我 11 岁左右的时候，我在生理和心理上都发生了变化，非常喜欢罗伯特·霍华德写的关于野蛮人柯南的小说。12 岁时，我住在马德里，去了那里的美国侨民中心，读了伊恩·弗莱明写的所有詹姆斯·邦德的书。那些书很有趣。几年后回到美国，我看了几部詹姆斯邦德的电影，我完全讨厌它们。与书相比，他们是如此肤浅和愚蠢。

Around age 13 or so I discovered science fiction and really enjoyed books by Isaac Asimov, and Frank Herbert. Another novelist I enjoyed include James Michener. I especially his book "The Source." The novel "Spartacus" by Howard Fast was one of my favorites as well. The fact that Howard Fast wrote the novel about the slave revolution against Rome while he was in an American prison for the "crime" of being a socialist had a powerful impact on me. Also in the summer of 1969 my father gave me a copy of Mao's Little Red Book, Quotations from Mao Tse-Tung. That was an eye opener.

Shortly thereafter I read books by Malcolm X and Tom Wolfe. During those early teen years I also read the Trilogy of the Ring series by English author and scholar J. R. R. Tolkien. Those were fantastic. The Seven Pillars of Wisdom by T.E. Lawrence was very interesting me to as well.

大约 13 岁左右，我发现了科幻小说，非常喜欢艾萨克·阿西莫夫和弗兰克·赫伯特的书。我喜欢的另一位小说家包括詹姆斯·米切纳。我尤其喜欢他的书《源头》，霍华德·法斯特的小说《斯巴达克斯》也是我的最爱之一。霍华德·法斯特在美国监狱里写了一部关于反对罗马的奴隶革命的小说，因为他是一名社会主义者而犯下了“罪行”，这对我产生了强烈的影响。

同样在 1969 年夏天，我父亲给了我一本毛泽东的小红皮书，引自毛泽东的话。真让人大开眼界。此后不久，我读了马尔科姆 X 和汤姆沃尔夫的书。在我十几岁的时候，我也读过英国作家、学者托尔金的《指环》三部曲。真是太棒了。T.E.劳伦斯的《七大智慧支柱》也让我很感兴趣。

Later in the university of course I kept reading at a remarkable speed. I would read everything written by some research scientists that related to what I was studying. My goal was to learn more than my professors about everything. As a psychology undergraduate I read everything by Freud, B.F. Skinner, Abraham Maslow, Albert Bandura, Fredrick Perls and dozens of other famous psychologists. I especially enjoyed works by Ashley Montagu and Jean Piaget.

后来在大学里，我当然继续高速阅读。我会阅读一些研究科学家写的与我正在研究的内容相关的所有文章。我的目标是比我的教授学到更多的东西。作为一名心理学本科生，我阅读了弗洛伊德、B.F.斯金纳、亚伯拉罕·马斯洛、阿尔伯特·班杜拉、弗雷德里克·珀尔斯和其他几十位著名心理学家的著作。我特别喜欢阿什利·蒙塔古和让·皮亚杰的作品。

But I read other things as well. In the late 1980s I found Ishmael Reed's satire, especially "Reckless Eyeballing" funny, horrifying and very enlightening. And in the 1980s I read a lot of books about feminism like "Goddesses in Every Woman: A New Psychology of Women," by Jean Shinoda Bolen (1984), "Ancient Mirrors of Womanhood" by Merlin Stone (1979), "Even Cowgirls get the Blues" by Tom Robbins and "The Mists of Avalon" by Marion Zimmer Bradley. I tried to read "The Feminine Mystique" by Betty Friedan but it reminded too much of my mom. I guess Ms. Bradley was right about everything.

但我也读其他的东西。20 世纪 80 年代末，我发现伊士梅尔·里德的讽刺作品，尤其是《鲁莽的眼球》有趣、恐怖，而且很有启发性。在 20 世纪 80 年代，我读了很多关于女权主义的书，比如 Jean Shinoda Bolen（1984 年）的《每个女人的女神：女性的新心理学》，Merlin Stone（1979 年）的《女性的古老镜子》，Tom Robbins 的《连牛仔女孩都会忧郁》和 Marion Zimmer Bradley 的《阿瓦隆的迷雾》。我试着读贝蒂·弗里丹的《女性的神秘》，但这让我太想起我妈妈了。我想布拉德利女士说得对。

Not long after I read "Fear of Flying" by Erica Jong and became disgusted at some aspects of feminism. Why? Maybe I'm old fashioned. I've lived with one woman (or another) since I was fifteen. I'm a "one-woman man" and like stable relationships. I really prefer to know, like and have mutual respect with a woman before getting too close. I have never tried to follow a "playboy" lifestyle. I don't respect that lifestyle. I think it is "soulless."

不久之后，我读了埃里卡·琼（Erica Jong）的《恐惧飞翔》，对女权主义的某些方面感到厌恶。为什么？也许我是老式的。我从 15 岁起就和一个女人（或另一个）住在一起。我是一个“单身男人”，喜欢稳定的人际关系。我真的更喜欢在离得太近之前认识，喜欢并互相尊重一个女人。我从未尝试过遵循“花花公子”的生活方式。我不尊重这种生活方式。我认为这是“没有灵魂的”。

One of the strange things is nobody ever encouraged me to read. I just liked it. Some people called it an "escape." To me I wasn't escaping anything, I was going to more interesting places than my immediate environments. Please remember that good readers can read at ten times normal human speech. This means one can learn 10 times faster reading than listening to people. Sadly, I found, and still find most people kind of boring because they don't know much. But, some people are incredibly wise (and funny) and they truly are treasures.

奇怪的是，从来没有人鼓励我读书。我只是喜欢。有些人称之为“逃避”。对我来说，我没有逃避任何事情，我去的地方比周围的环境更有趣。请记住，好的读者可以阅读十倍于正常人的语言。这意味着一个人学习阅读的速度比听别人说的快 10 倍。可悲的是，我发现，而且仍然发现大多数人有点无聊，因为他们知道的不多。但是，有些人非常聪明（又有趣），他们确实是宝藏。

I have to skip a bunch of years to try to keep this short, but during the past 11 years I've collected and read some of the greatest of Chinese classic literature including Journey to the West attributed to Wu Cheng'en, "Romance of the Three Kingdoms" written by Luo Guanzhong, and "The Outlaws Of The Marsh" by Shi Nai'an. The classic novels "Dream of the Red Chamber" by Cao Xueqin I found interesting, but disturbing, as it seemed like a very long "case study" of terrible parenting. Poor little rich boy Bao Yu's life experiences were just about the opposite of mine. He was locked in a rich boy's world. I got to travel all over Europe over the period of years. His parents smothered and sheltered him. My parents pretty much ignored me which was fine with me. He was never in a real fist fight; I was in more than a hundred of them. He was soft and weak. I had great martial art teachers, he didn't. I was so fortunate to get to spend a lot of time in nature, running around in mountains like a wild child and camping along the Roman Roads. His life was so limited I really felt sorry for him reading those terribly sad books.

为了缩短这段时间，我不得不跳过很多年，但在过去的 11 年里，我收集并阅读了一些最伟大的中国古典文学作品，包括罗贯中翻译的《三国演义》吴承恩的《西游记》，而《水浒传》也由罗冠中翻译。曹雪芹的经典小说《红楼梦》我觉得很有趣，但令人不安，因为它似乎是一个很长的可怕的父母的案例研究。可怜的富家小伙包玉的生活经历和我正好相反。他被锁在一个富家子弟的世界里。这些年来，我不得不周游欧洲。他的父母闷闷不乐地保护他。我父母几乎不理我，这对我很好。他从来没有打过真正的拳赛，我参加过一百多场。他又软又弱。我有很好的武术老师，但他没有。我很幸运能在大自然中度过很多时光，像个野孩子一样在山里奔跑，在罗马路上露营。他的生命是如此的有限，我真的为他读那些悲伤的书感到难过。

I also collected and read a lot of histories of the Silk Roads, with my favorite being "The Silk Roads - A New History of the World," by Peter Frankopan. In addition to that I collected and read a large number of books on Chinese medicine, a hobby of mine since the early 1970s. I also have a number of Chinese history books, with the best being written by Chinese writers. I also enjoyed "The Untold History of the United States" by Oliver Stone and Peter Kuznick, except they just covered up so much of the maleficence by Democrats, especially William Clinton. I've also found some novels, like "The Syndrome" by John Case, and "World Order" by Andrew Goliszek to be very interesting.

我还收集和阅读了许多丝绸之路的历史，我最喜欢的是彼得·弗兰科潘的《丝绸之路——世界新历史》。除此之外，我还收集和阅读了大量关于中医的书籍，这是我自 70 年代初以来的一个爱好。我还有许多中国历史书，其中最好的是由中国作家写的。我也很喜欢奥利弗·斯通和彼得·库兹尼克的《美国的不为人知的历史》，只不过他们只是掩盖了民主党人，尤其是威廉·克林顿的诸多恶行。我也发现一些小说，像约翰·凯斯的《综合症》和安德鲁·戈利斯泽克的《世界秩序》非常有趣。

When I was in Indonesia last year, I picked up a novel series by (my "sudara") Pramoedya Ananta Toer, "The Earth of Mankind, "Child of all Nations," "Footsteps," and "House of Glass." I think those novels should be required reading for all high school students everywhere on earth. He's the greatest 20th Century novelist in my opinion. Why? He told the story of colonialism from the side of the colonized. He lived his stories too, having been imprisoned by the Dutch from 1947 to 1949, and then from 1969-1979 by the Indonesian government.

去年我在印度尼西亚的时候，我读了一本由普拉莫迪亚·阿南塔·托尔（我的“苏达拉”）写的小说系列，《人类的地球》，《万国之子》，《脚步声》和《玻璃屋》。我认为这些小说应该是全世界所有高中生必读的。在我看来，他是 20 世纪最伟大的小说家。为什么？他从被殖民者的角度讲述了殖民主义的故事。他也有自己的故事，从 1947 年到 1949 年被荷兰人囚禁，然后从 1969 年到 1979 年被印尼政府囚禁。

All the above is only 2% or 3% of books I've read and enjoyed. 以上这些只占我读过和喜欢的书的 2% 或 3%。

Movies 影视

There are some generally good movies. 有一些一般来说很好的电影。

"Born on the Fourth of July" - 1989 American biographical war drama directed by Oliver Stone. The film was based on the 1976 autobiography by Ron Kovic 生于 1989 年 7 月 4 日奥利弗·斯通执导的美国传记战争剧。这部电影是根据罗恩·科维奇 1976 年的自传改编的

“Enemy of the State” - 1998 American action-thriller film directed by Tony Scott starring Will Smith and Gene Hackman 《国家的敌人》——1998年由托尼·斯科特执导，威尔·史密斯和吉恩·哈克曼主演的美国动作惊悚片

“Hotel Rwanda” - 2004 drama film directed by Terry George about the United Nations catastrophic failures during the genocide in Rwanda 《卢旺达旅馆》——2004年特里·乔治执导的关于卢旺达种族灭绝期间联合国灾难性失败的戏剧电影

“Apocalypto” - 2006 American epic adventure film co-produced, co-written and directed by Mel Gibson (I believe this is the single best movie metaphorically describing American foreign policy since WWII) “启示录”-2006年美国史诗冒险电影，由梅尔·吉布森（Mel Gibson）共同制作，共同编写和导演（我相信这是比喻自第二次世界大战以来美国外交政策最好的电影）

“The Situation” - 2006 The story of an American journalist, a CIA operative, and an Iraqi photographer during the bloody war in Iraq. 2006年，在伊拉克血腥战争的背景下，一名美国记者、一名中情局特工和一名伊拉克摄影师的故事。

“Rendition” - 2007 movie Directed by Gavin Hood and starring Reese Witherspoon and Meryl Streep (the U.S. practice arresting and torturing suspected terrorists in secret prisons) Rendition 2007年由盖文·胡德执导，瑞茜·威瑟斯彭和梅丽尔·斯特里普主演的电影（美国在秘密监狱逮捕和折磨恐怖嫌疑犯的做法）

“Australia” - 2008 movie directed by Baz Luhrmann and starring Nicole Kidman and Hugh Jackman. 《澳大利亚》——2008年由巴兹·鲁尔曼执导，妮可·基德曼和休·杰克曼主演的电影。澳大利亚土著人民的压迫与混血男孩的经历

“Green Zone” - 2010 action thriller film directed by Paul Greengrass documenting life within the Green Zone in Baghdad during the 2003 invasion of Iraq. “绿色地带”——2010年动作惊悚片，由保罗·格林格拉斯执导，记录了2003年入侵伊拉克期间巴格达绿色地带内的生活。

“In the Land of Blood and Honey” - 2011 American war film written, produced, and directed by Angelina Jolie (about the Bosnian war) “血与蜜之地”-由安吉丽娜·朱莉（Angelina Jolie）撰写，制作和导演的2011年美国战争电影（关于波斯尼亚战争）

“Dirty Wars” - 2013 documentary film, which accompanies the book Dirty Wars: The World Is a Battlefield by Jeremy Scahill “肮脏的战争”-2013年的纪录片，随附杰里米·斯卡希尔（Jeremy Scahill）的《肮脏的战争：世界是战场》

There are dozens of other good anti-war movies I’m sure. But, I’m busy and don’t have access to most movies. 我敢肯定，还有很多其他好的反战电影。但是，我很忙，无法观看大多数电影。

Unfortunately, for every good anti-war movie, capitalist-driven Hollywood can produce three higher budget pro-war movies. In the battle for the soul of the world, the greedy evil people are winning in the media. Make no mistake about it, those greedy evil people kill millions of innocent human beings. Most of their names will not be remembered as the USA DoD is very good at erasing most traces of their crimes all around the world.

不幸的是，对于每部优秀的反战电影，以资本家为主导的好莱坞都可以制作三部预算更高的战争电影来美化战争。在争夺世界灵魂的斗争中，贪婪的邪恶人民在媒体上取胜。毫无疑问，那些贪婪的邪恶人民杀死了数百万无辜的人类。他们的大多数名字都不会被记住，因为美国国防部非常擅长消除世界各地的大多数犯罪痕迹。

What kind of movies would I like to see more of? 我想看什么电影？

I'd like to see movies about the real-life dramas of real people that excelled in the arts, sciences, law, sports and so on. Each of the great champions in human endeavor have amazing and entertaining stories. Where are they? There are so few movies like that.

我想看电影，讲述在艺术，科学，法律，体育等方面表现出色的真实人物的真实生活戏剧。人类努力中的每一个伟大冠军都有令人赞叹和有趣的故事。他们在哪？这样的电影很少。

I'd like to see a movie that gives an overview to the 500 years of Western hegemony and how the United States has turned most of the world into one huge American colonial slave-state.

我想看一部电影，概述 500 年的西方霸权，以及美国如何将世界上大多数地区变成一个庞大的美国殖民奴隶制国家。

I'd like to see a movie that gives an accurate depiction of Ibn Battuta. He was an amazing character.

我想看一部能准确描绘伊本·白图泰（Ibn Battuta）的电影。他是一个了不起的人物。

I'd like to see a good movie about Saladin (Salah-al-Din 1137/38–93), the gentleman warrior who fought against the crusaders.

我想看一部关于萨拉丁（Salah-al-Din 1137 / 38–93）的好电影，萨拉丁是与十字军作战的绅士。

I'd like to see a movie about the American endless wars against Islam and socialism.

我想看一部关于美国无休止的反伊斯兰和社会主义战争的电影。

I'd like to see a movie about the “behind the scenes” creation of the United Nations, and how they managed to justify the Nakba – which will be a lesson in ultimate hypocrisy. Such a movie will have to be very dramatic, and painful, as was the Nakba.

我想看一部有关联合国“幕后”创作的电影，以及他们如何设法证明纳卡（Nakba）的正当性-这将是极端伪善的教训。像那霸一样，这样的电影必须是非常戏剧性和痛苦的。

I'd like to see a movie about the drama within the United Nations to try to prosecute the United States for War Crimes and Crimes Against Humanity.

我想看一部有关联合国内部戏剧的电影，以起诉美国犯下战争罪和危害人类罪。

I would truly love to see a movie about an end to war, the world transitioning to socialism, and the new global utopia that would emerge.

我非常希望看到一部关于战争结束，世界向社会主义过渡以及将会出现的新的全球乌托邦的电影。

I'd like to see more morality and reality in movies.

我想在电影中看到更多的道德与现实。

I am totally sick of seeing movies that glorify the American war machine, even if they are fighting ghastly aliens, or whatever.

我完全讨厌看能赞美美国战争机器的电影，即使它们正在与可怕的外星人作斗争或其他事情。

The Future 未来

There is about a 50% chance WWII will start during the summer of 2020.

This draft of this book is being completed in late July, 2020. Like everyone else, I sure wish I could see around the bends in time and predict what will happen next. But that is impossible. Hopefully wiser minds will prevail, and the American Department of Defense will not have its' dream come true: WWII, and the preservation of American hegemony in perpetuity.

现在是 2020 年 5 月下旬。我希望和其他所有人一样，我可以在“时间的转折”中看到并预测接下来会发生什么。但这是不可能的。希望有明智的思想占上风，而美国国防部将无法实现它的梦想：第三次世界大战，以及永久保留美国霸权。

Hopefully in the future I'll write Volume II of this book that will include a chapter on the psychobiology of peace and aggression. The human brain has built-in neurological/hormonal circuitry with the potential for great and terrible things. As long as all that genetic potential remains unconscious, we are susceptible to having it manipulated by outside forces.

希望将来我能写这本书的第二卷，其中包括一章关于和平与侵略的心理生物学。人脑有许多内在的神经/荷尔蒙回路，有可能产生奇妙和/或可怕的事情。只要所有的遗传潜能都保持无意识，我们就容易受到外界力量的操纵。

There is so much fascinating research relating to peace studies, but the vast majority of it is collecting dust on library shelves in the Ivory Tower. Why? The economies of the western Ivory Tower nations have - for the past 500 years - thrived by raping and pillaging the worlds of the people of color, in Africa, Asia and the Americas. And, they continue to do so today.

与和平研究有关的研究非常吸引人，但绝大多数都是在象牙塔的图书馆书架上收集灰尘。为什么？在过去的 500 年里，西方象牙塔国家的经济通过强奸和掠夺非洲、亚洲和美洲有色人种的世界而繁荣起来。而且，他们今天继续这样做。

Also, a chapter on cultural anthropology would be interesting. Some traditional human tribes are extraordinarily peaceful, and others are quite violent. The histories and belief systems that led to those cultures are very interesting.

关于文化人类学的一章将会很有趣。一些传统的人类部落非常和平，而另一些则非常暴力。导致这些文化的历史和信仰体系非常有趣。

For example, the Semai tribe of Malaya and Hopi native Americans in the American southwest are very peaceful. Equally interesting are the more aggressive traditional tribes like the Yanomamo Indians living in Brazil and Southern Venezuela, and the Apaches in the United States.

例如，马来亚的塞迈部落和美国西南部的霍皮族印第安人非常和平。同样有趣的是更具侵略性的传统部落，例如居住在巴西和委内瑞拉南部的亚诺玛诺印第安人，以及美国的阿帕奇人。



Yanomami woman and her child at Homoxi, Brazil, June 1997.

雅诺玛美妇女和她的孩子，1997年6月在巴西霍莫西。

Other comparisons could be made between modern groups like the rather peaceful Mormons and the more aggressive Wall Street businessmen, and street gangs of New York, LA, Chicago, etc.

可以在现代集团之间进行其他比较，例如相对和平的摩门教徒和更具进取心的华尔街商人，以及纽约，洛杉矶，芝加哥等地的街头帮派。

Similarly, a book such as this should have a chapter examining the nature/nurture controversy and I'd greatly enjoy reviewing research by Conrad Lorenz and Ashley Montague to name just a couple of the writers on this subject.

同样，这样的书应该有一章探讨自然/养育之争，而我非常乐于回顾康拉德·洛伦兹（Conrad Lorenz）和阿什利·蒙塔古（Ashley Montague）的研究，仅举几个关于该主题的作家。

For now, I hope readers enjoy this book and help contribute to making the world more peaceful and harmonious for everyone.

目前，我希望读者喜欢这本书，并为使世界变得更加和平与和谐做出贡献。

About the Author 关于作者

The author has lived in and traveled through some 40 countries since he was six years old in 1963. He's a retired journalist and teacher who has spent about half his life in foreign countries. He received his Bachelor's Degree in 1981, continued for three years as a Special Student at the university doing research in neurophysiology, before four years of Graduate School. After all that he became a reporter for the African American press in the US. He resigned that position when he moved to Southeast Asia in February 1992. Since then he only returned to the US briefly once. He has lived in China since 2009.

自1963年6岁起，作者已在40多个国家居住和旅行。他是一位退休的记者和教师，他大约有一半的生命都在国外度过。他于1981年获得学士学位，在四年的研究生院学习之前，他作为一名特殊学生在大学学习了三年的神经生理学研究。在那之后，他成了美国非裔美国人的记者。他在1992年2月移居东南亚时辞去了那个职位。从那时起，他只短暂地回到美国一次。他自2009年以来一直居住在中国。



Diogenes in Search of an Honest Man - 第欧根尼在寻找一个诚实的人

By Wikipedia User: Andreas Praefcke (Public Domain) 维基百科用户: Andreas Praefcke (公共域)

Also see 另见: https://www.ancient.eu/Diogenes_of_Sinope/

This book explores the physical, social, philosophical, religious, political, legal and economic evolution of humankind in the context of learning English as a Foreign Language (EFL). In the Preface the author explains that most foreign students going to western countries for tertiary education are ill prepared for the onslaught of belief systems that mitigate against a balanced education due to the presumption of western hegemony being an inherently superior and eternal system. Fourteen major religions and philosophies, as well as capitalism, socialism and communism, conflict resolution strategies, professional counseling skills, the history and practice of diplomacy, current armed conflicts, international humanitarian principles and utopias are explored. Reading passages, writing exercises, vocabulary, grammar, discussion, debate, presentations, role plays and quizzes are presented throughout the book.

本书探讨了在学习英语作为外语（EFL）的背景下人类在身体，社会，哲学，宗教，政治，法律和经济方面的发展。在序言中，作者解释说，大多数去西方国家接受高等教育的外国学生没有为推定西方霸权是一种固有的优越和永恒的制度做好准备。本书探讨了 14 种主要的宗教和哲学，以及资本主义，社会主义和共产主义，解决冲突的策略，专业咨询技能，外交的历史和实践，当前的武装冲突，国际人道主义原则和乌托邦。全书介绍了阅读段落，写作练习，词汇，语法，讨论，辩论，演讲，角色扮演和测验。这本书是用英文和中文写的。

This book is written in Chinese and English 这本书是用英文和中文写的。